

F I F T H E D I T I O N

# Lu's Basic Toxicology

*Fundamentals, Target Organs,  
and Risk Assessment*



**Frank C. Lu**  
**Sam Kacew**

**informa**  
healthcare

# **Lu's Basic Toxicology**

*Fundamentals, Target Organs,  
and Risk Assessment*

F I F T H   E D I T I O N

# Lu's Basic Toxicology

*Fundamentals, Target Organs,  
and Risk Assessment*

**Frank C. Lu**

*Consulting Toxicology  
Miami, Florida, USA*

**Sam Kacew**

*University of Ottawa  
Ontario, Canada*

**informa**  
healthcare

---

New York London

Informa Healthcare USA, Inc.  
52 Vanderbilt Avenue  
New York, NY 10017

© 2009 by Informa Healthcare USA, Inc.  
Informa Healthcare is an Informa business

No claim to original U.S. Government works  
Printed in the United States of America on acid-free paper  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

International Standard Book Number-10: 1-4200-9311-8 (Softcover)  
International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-4200-9311-7 (Softcover)

This book contains information obtained from authentic and highly regarded sources. Reprinted material is quoted with permission, and sources are indicated. A wide variety of references are listed. Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and the publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or for the consequence of their use.

No part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, please access [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com) (<http://www.copyright.com/>) or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC) 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. CCC is a not-for-profit organization that provides licenses and registration for a variety of users. For organizations that have been granted a photocopy license by the CCC, a separate system of payment has been arranged.

**Trademark Notice:** Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

---

### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

---

Lu, Frank C.

Lu's basic toxicology : fundamentals, target organs, and risk  
assessment / Frank C. Lu, Sam Kacew. – 5th ed.

p. ; cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN-13: 978-1-4200-9311-7 (softcover : alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 1-4200-9311-8 (softcover : alk. paper) I. Kacew, Sam.

II. Title. III. Title: Basic toxicology.

[DNLM: 1. Toxicology. 2. Poisoning—physiopathology. 3. Poisons—pharmacokinetics.

4. Toxicity Tests—methods. QV 600 L926b 2009]

RA1211.L8 2009

615.9—dc22

2008055978

---

**For Corporate Sales and Reprint Permission call 212-520-2700 or write to: Sales Department,  
52 Vanderbilt Avenue, 16th floor, New York, NY 10017.**

**Visit the Informa Web site at  
[www.informa.com](http://www.informa.com)**

**and the Informa Healthcare Web site at  
[www.informahealthcare.com](http://www.informahealthcare.com)**

# Preface

Toxicology is an important science. It provides a sound basis for formulating measures to protect the health of workers against toxicants in factories, farms, mines, and other occupational environments. It is also valuable in the protection of public health hazards associated with toxic substances in food, air, and water. Toxicology has played and will continue to play a significant role in the health and welfare of the world. Cognizant of the importance of toxicology, the World Health Organization (WHO) organized a toxicology training course in China in 1982, as part of the ongoing China–WHO collaborative program on medical sciences. One of the authors (FCL) was invited to lectures on basic toxicology. The first edition of this book originated from those lecture notes.

Over the years, a number of important developments have occurred in toxicology. Furthermore, some readers of the book have suggested that discussions on a few groups of important chemicals and toxicants would not only provide some general knowledge of these substances, but also facilitate a deeper appreciation of the various aspects of toxicology. The book has received worldwide acceptance, as evidenced by its repeated editions and reprintings, and by the appearance of six foreign language versions (Chinese, French, Indonesian, Italian, Spanish, and Taiwan Chinese).

This new edition has been further updated and expanded. Thus, there are chapters on lactation, over-the-counter products, occupational toxicology, as well as a section describing the symptomatology of the Gulf War Syndrome and the probable toxicants implicated. A number of other chapters have been updated/expanded, notably those on carcinogenesis, developmental toxicology, immunology, food additives and contaminants, environmental toxicology, and safety/risk assessment. However, details of some toxicity tests have been abbreviated to keep the size of the book within bounds, the retained material is intended to portray more clearly the effects of toxicants.

It is hoped that these additions and updates will enhance the usefulness of the book. In making these changes, the authors have kept in mind the broad aim of the first edition, namely, relatively comprehensive coverage of the subjects and brevity, thereby continuing to serve as an updated introductory text for toxicology students and for those involved in allied sciences who require a background in toxicology. Furthermore, since toxicology is a vast subject and is fast expanding,

the book is likely to be useful to those who have become specialized in one or a few areas in toxicology but wish to brush up in other areas. The extensive chemical index and subject index will facilitate the retrieval of specific topics.

*Frank C. Lu*

*Sam Kacew*

# Contents

*Preface . . . . iii*

## **PART I: General Principles of Toxicology**

### **1. General Considerations 3**

- Definition and Purpose of Toxicology 3
- Scope and Subdisciplines 4
- Early Developments 5
- Recent Developments 6
- Some Challenges and Successes 8
- Toxicity vs. Other Considerations 9
- Future Prospects 10
- References 11
- Appendix 1 U.S. Laws That Have a Basis in Toxicology 12
- Appendix 2 Examples of Outbreaks of Mass Poisoning 13

### **2. Absorption, Distribution, and Excretion of Toxicants 15**

- Introduction 16
- Absorption 18
- Distribution 21
- Excretion 23
- Physiologically Based Pharmacokinetic Modeling 25
- Levels of Toxicants in the Body 27
- References 28

### **3. Biotransformation of Toxicants 31**

- General Considerations 32
- Phase I (Degradation) Reactions 32
- Phase II (Conjugation) Reactions 34
- Bioactivation 36
- Complex Nature of Biotransformation 39
- References 42
- Appendix 1 Examples of Bioactivation 44

### **4. Toxic Effects 47**

- General Considerations 48
- Spectrum of Toxic Effects 48
- Target Organs 51
- Mechanisms of Action 53

Molecular Targets: Chemical Nature	55
Receptors	58
References	62

## **5. Modifying Factors of Toxic Effects 65**

General Considerations	65
Host Factors	66
Environmental Factors	73
Chemical Interaction	73
References	76
Appendix 1 Mechanisms Underlying Certain Modifying Factors	78
Appendix 2 Strain-Related Differences in Drug-Induced Responses	79

## **PART II: Testing Procedures for Conventional and Nontarget Organ Toxicities**

### **6. Conventional Toxicity Studies 83**

Introduction	84
Acute Toxicity Studies	85
Short-Term and Long-Term Toxicity Studies	91
Good Laboratory Practice	94
References	95
Further Reading	96
Appendix 1 General Observations, Clinical Laboratory Tests, and Pathology Examinations That May Be Used in Short- and Long-Term Toxicity Studies	97

### **7. Carcinogenesis 99**

Introduction	100
Mode of Action	102
Categories of Carcinogens	106
Some Human Carcinogens/Target Organs	109
Tests for Carcinogenicity	111
Evaluation	114
References	117
Further Reading	119
Appendix 1 Biomarkers of Carcinogenesis/Human Cancers	120
Appendix 2 Probable Carcinogenic Chemicals	121

### **8. Mutagenesis 123**

Introduction	124
Gene Mutation	126
Chromosomal Effects	131
DNA Repair and Recombination	133
Other Tests	134
Evaluation	135
References	137



**9. Developmental Toxicology 139**

- Introduction 140
- Teratogens (Developmental Toxicants) and Their Effects 142
- Mode of Action 143
- Teratogens of Special Interest 145
- Testing Procedures 146
- Evaluation of Teratogenic Effects 147
- References 148
- Appendix 1 Teratogens in Animal Models 150

**10. Lactation 151**

- General Remarks 151
- Benefits of Breast-Feeding 153
- Biomarkers of Exposure 154
- Toxicants 155
- References 160

**PART III: Target Organs and Systems****11. Toxicology of the Immune System 165**

- General Considerations 165
- Components of the System 166
- Immunotoxicants 169
- Immunotoxicities 172
- References 174
- Further Reading 175

**12. Respiratory System Inhalation Toxicology 177**

- Introduction 177
- Toxicants and Their Effects 178
- References 183
- Appendix 1 Site of Action and Pulmonary Disease Produced by Selected Occupationally Inhaled Toxicants 184
- Appendix 2 Mechanisms Underlying the Oxidative Stress Induced by Cigarette Smoke 186

**13. Toxicology of the Liver 187**

- General Considerations 187
- Types of Liver Injury 189
- Hepatotoxicants 193
- Clinical Biochemical Tests 193
- References 194
- Appendix 1 Examples of Hepatotoxic Agents and Associated Liver Injury 197

**14. Toxicology of the Kidney 199**

- Introduction 200

Nephrotoxicants: Mechanism and Site of Action	202
Testing Procedure	205
Nature of Toxicity	208
References	208
Further Reading	209
<b>15. Toxicology of the Skin</b>	<b>211</b>
General Considerations	211
Types of Toxic Effects and Dermatotoxicants	213
Testing Procedures	217
References	219
Appendix 1 Primary Irritation	220
<b>16. Toxicology of the Eye</b>	<b>223</b>
General Considerations	223
Toxicants and Site of Their Effects	224
Testing Procedures	228
Evaluation	231
References	231
Appendix 1 Cataractogenic Chemicals	232
Appendix 2 Grading of Eye Irritation	233
<b>17. Toxicology of the Nervous System</b>	<b>235</b>
Introduction	236
Neurotoxic Effects and Neurotoxicants	238
Testing Procedures	244
Behavioral Studies: Testing Procedures	246
Evaluation	248
References	249
Appendix 1 Select Neurotoxicants Described in the Text	251
<b>18. Reproductive and Cardiovascular Systems</b>	<b>253</b>
Reproductive System	254
Toxicants and Their Effects	256
Routine Testing: Multigeneration Reproduction Studies	258
Other Tests	259
Cardiovascular System	260
Toxic Effects on the Heart	261
Toxic Effects on Blood Vessels	263
Testing Procedures	264
References	265
<b>PART IV: Toxic Substances and Risk Assessment</b>	
<b>19. Food Additives and Contaminants</b>	<b>271</b>
Introduction	272
Toxicological Testing and Evaluation	274

	Additives of Toxicological Concern	275
	Indirect Additives and Contaminants	277
	Contaminants	279
	References	282
	Appendix 1 Major Functional Groups of Direct Food Additives	285
<b>20.</b>	<b>Toxicity of Pesticides</b>	<b>287</b>
	Introduction	288
	Categories of Pesticides	289
	Toxicological Properties	292
	Testing, Evaluation, and Control	296
	Gulf War Syndrome	298
	References	300
	Appendix 1 Toxicological Findings and Evaluation on Certain Insecticides	302
<b>21.</b>	<b>Toxicity of Metals</b>	<b>303</b>
	Introduction	304
	Certain Common Features	305
	Common Toxic Effects	309
	Metals of Major Toxicological Concern	310
	Risk/Benefit Considerations	317
	References	321
<b>22.</b>	<b>Over-the-Counter Preparations</b>	<b>325</b>
	General Remarks	325
	Prevalence in Society	326
	Adverse Consequences	327
	References	330
<b>23.</b>	<b>Environmental Pollutants</b>	<b>333</b>
	General Remarks	334
	Air Pollutants	335
	Water and Soil Pollutants	339
	References	343
<b>24.</b>	<b>Occupational Toxicology</b>	<b>345</b>
	General Remarks	346
	Exposure Limits	346
	Occupational Toxicants	348
	Monitoring	354
	References	355
	Appendix 1 Acute Pesticide Toxicity, General Signs, and Symptoms in Humans	357
<b>25.</b>	<b>Toxicologic Evaluation</b>	<b>359</b>
	Introduction	360
	Major Approaches	361
	Acceptable Daily Intake (ADI/RfD)/Safety Assessment	362

Mathematical Models/Risk Assessment	365
Other Procedures	370
International Activities in Toxicological Evaluation	371
References	373
Further Reading	375

*Chemical Index* .... 377

*Subject Index* .... 387

# **Part I**

---

## **General Principles of Toxicology**



# 1

## General Considerations

### CONTENTS

Definition and Purpose of Toxicology	3
Scope and Subdisciplines	4
Early Developments	5
Recent Developments	6
Some Challenges and Successes	8
Toxicity vs. Other Considerations	9
Future Prospects	10
References	11
Appendix 1 U.S. Laws That Have a Basis in Toxicology	12
Appendix 2 Examples of Outbreaks of Mass Poisoning	13

People are exposed to a great variety of natural and man-made substances. Under certain conditions such exposures produce adverse health effects, ranging in severity from subtle biologic changes to death. Society's ever-increasing desire to identify and prevent these effects has prompted the dramatic evolution of toxicology as a study of poisons to the present-day complex science.

### DEFINITION AND PURPOSE OF TOXICOLOGY

To state it simply and concisely, toxicology is the study of the nature and mechanisms underlying toxic effects exerted by substances on living organisms and other biologic systems. Toxicology also deals with quantitative assessment of the adverse effects in relation to the concentration or dosage, duration, and frequency of exposure of the organisms.

The assessment of health hazards of industrial chemicals, environmental pollutants, and other substances represents an important element in the protection of the health of the workers and members of communities. In-depth studies of the nature and mechanism of the effects of toxicants are invaluable in the invention of specific antidotes and other ameliorative measures. Along with other sciences, toxicology contributes to the development of safer chemicals used as drugs, food additives, and pesticides, as well as of many useful industrial chemicals. Even the adverse effects per se are exploited in the pursuit of more effective insecticides, anthelmintics, antimicrobials, and agents used in chemical warfare.

## SCOPE AND SUBDISCIPLINES

Toxicology has a broad scope. It deals with toxicity studies of chemicals used (1) in medicine for diagnostic, preventive, and therapeutic purposes; (2) in the food industry as direct and indirect additives; (3) in agriculture as pesticides, growth regulators, artificial pollinators, and animal feed additives; and (4) in the chemical industry as solvents, components, and intermediates of plastics and many other types of chemicals. It is also concerned with the health effects of metals (as in mines and smelters), petroleum products, paper and pulp, toxic plants, and animal toxins.

Because of its broad scope as well as the need to accomplish different goals, toxicology has a number of subdisciplines. For example, a person may be exposed, accidentally or otherwise, to excessive large amounts of a toxicant, and become severely intoxicated. If the identity of the toxicant is not known, *analytical toxicology* will be called upon to identify the toxicant through analysis of body fluids, stomach contents, suspected containers, etc. Those engaged in *clinical toxicology* administer antidotes, if available, to counter the specific toxicity, and take other measures to ameliorate the symptoms and signs and hasten the elimination of the toxicant from the body. There may also be legal implications, and that will be the task of *forensic toxicology*.

Intoxication may occur as a result of occupational exposure to toxicants. This may result in acute or chronic adverse effects. In either case, the problem is in the domain of *occupational toxicology*. The general public is exposed to a variety of toxicants, via air and water, contact with skin as well as from food as additives, pesticides, and contaminants, often at low levels that may be harmless acutely but may have long-term adverse effects. The sources of these substances, their transport, degradation, and bioconcentration in the environment, and their effects on humans are dealt with in *environmental toxicology*. *Regulatory toxicology* attempts to protect the public by setting laws, regulations, and standards to limit or suspend the use of very toxic chemicals as well as defines use conditions for others. Some of the relevant laws in the United States are listed in Appendix 1.

To set meaningful regulations and standards, extensive profiles of the toxic effects are essential. Such profiles can be established only with a great variety of relevant toxicological studies, which form the foundation of regulatory toxicology.



The basic part of such studies is referred to as *conventional toxicology*. In addition, knowledge of the mechanism of action, provided by *mechanistic toxicology*, enhances the toxicological evaluation and provides a basis for other branches of toxicology. The knowledge gained is then utilized to assess the risk of adverse effects to the environment and humans and is termed as risk assessment. A health risk assessment constitutes a written document that is based upon all pertinent scientific information regarding toxicology, human experiences, environmental fate, and exposure. These data are subject to critique and interpretation. The aim of this assessment is to estimate the potential of an adverse effect that occurs in humans and wildlife ecological system posed by a specific amount of exposure to a chemical. Risk assessments include several elements such as (1) description of the potential adverse health effects based on an evaluation of results of epidemiologic, clinical, toxicologic, and environmental research; (2) extrapolation from these results to predict the type and estimate the extent of health effects in humans under given conditions of exposure; (3) judgments as to the number and characteristics of individuals exposed at various intensities and durations; (4) and summary judgments on the existence and overall magnitude of the public health problem (Paustenbach, 2002). Risk characterization represents the final and the most critical step in the risk assessment process whereby data on the dose–response relationship of a chemical are integrated with estimates of the degree of exposure in a population to characterize the likelihood and severity of a health risk outcome (Williams and Paustenbach, 2002).

## EARLY DEVELOPMENTS

The earliest human was well aware of the toxic effects of a number of substances, such as venoms of snakes, the poisonous plants hemlock and aconite, and the toxic mineral substances arsenic, lead, and antimony. Some of these were actually used intentionally for their toxic effects to commit homicide and suicide. For centuries, homicides with toxic substances were common in Europe. To protect against poisoning, there were continual efforts directed toward the discovery and development of preventive and antidotal measures. However, a more critical evaluation of these measures was only begun by Maimonides (1135–1204) with his famous medical work *Poisons and Their Antidotes*, published in 1198.

More significant contributions to the evolution of toxicology were made in the 16th century and later. Paracelsus stated: “No substance is a poison by itself. It is the dose (the amount of the exposure) that makes a substance a poison” and “the right dose differentiates a poison and a remedy.” These statements laid the foundation of the concept of the “dose–response relation” and the “therapeutic index” developed later. In addition, he described in his book *Bergsucht* (1533–1534) the clinical manifestations of chronic arsenic and mercury poisoning as well as miner’s disease. He might be considered the forefather of occupational toxicology. Orfila wrote an important treatise (1814–1815) describing a systematic correlation between the chemical and biologic information on certain poisons.

He also devised methods for detecting poisons and pointed to the necessity for chemical analysis for legal proof of lethal intoxication. The introduction of this approach ushered in a specialty area of modern toxicology, namely, forensic toxicology.

## **RECENT DEVELOPMENTS**

In the face of a growing population, modern society demands improvements in health and living conditions, including nutrition, clothing, dwelling, and transportation. To meet this goal, a great variety of chemicals, many of them in large quantities, must be manufactured and used. It has been estimated that tens of thousands of different chemicals are in commercial production in industrialized countries. In one way or another, these chemicals come in contact with various segments of the population: individuals are engaged in their manufacture, handling, use (e.g., painters, applicators of pesticides), consumption (e.g., drugs, food additives, natural food products or nutraceuticals), or misuse (e.g., suicide, accidental poisoning, environmental disasters). Furthermore, people may be exposed to the more persistent chemicals via various environmental media and be affected more insidiously. To illustrate the devastating effects of toxicants, some examples of massive acute and long-term poisonings are listed in Appendix 2. In some of these episodes, a considerable amount of sophisticated toxicological investigation was done before the etiology was ascertained.

These and other tragic outbreaks of massive chemical poisonings have resulted in intensified testing programs, which have revealed the great diversity of the nature and site of toxic effects. This revelation, in turn, has called for more studies using a greater number of animals, a greater number of indicators of toxicity, biomonitoring of chemicals, etc. There is, therefore, a need to render the task of toxicologically assessing the vast number of chemicals by using increasingly more complex testing procedures more manageable. As an attempt to fulfill this need, criteria have been proposed and adopted for the selection of chemicals to be tested according to their priority. In addition, the "tier systems" allow decisions to be made at different stages of toxicologic testing, thus avoiding unnecessary studies. This procedure has been particularly useful in the testing for carcinogenicity, mutagenicity, reproductive capacity, and immunotoxicity because of the large expenses involved and the great multitude of test systems that are available (Chaps. 7, 8, 11, and 25).

Because of the large number of individuals exposed to these chemicals, society cannot defer appropriate control until serious injuries have appeared. The modern toxicologist, therefore, must attempt to identify, where possible, indicators of exposure, and early, reversible signs of health effects. These will permit the formulation of decisions at the right time to safeguard the health of individuals, either as occupational workers or in exposed communities. The achievements in these areas have assisted responsible personnel in instituting appropriate medical surveillance of occupational workers and other exposed populations. Notable

examples are the use of cholinesterase inhibition as an indicator of exposure to organophosphorous pesticides and various biochemical parameters to monitor the exposure to lead. Such “biological markers” are intended to measure exposure to toxicants or their effects as well as to detect susceptible population groups (NRC, 1987); they are used for clinical diagnosis, monitoring of occupational workers, and facilitating safety/risk assessment (WHO, 1993).

Advances made in biochemical and toxicokinetic studies as well as those in genetic toxicology, immunotoxicology, reproductive toxicology, morphologic studies on a subcellular level, and biochemical studies on a molecular and genetic level have all contributed to a better understanding of the nature, site, and mechanisms of action of toxicants. For example, technological breakthroughs enabled *in vitro* studies to demonstrate that whether the hepatocytes or the nonparenchymal cells affected by a chemical carcinogen is related to differences in their ability to repair the DNA damage induced by the chemical. Studies using isolated nephrons have provided insight on the site and mode of action of nephrotoxics (Chap. 14). Various other types of *in vitro* studies have demonstrated the possibility of their use in screening toxicants for specific effects such as mutagenicity and dermal irritancy. Numerous studies have shown that the responses to toxicants are better correlated with the effective dose, that is, the concentration of the toxicant at the site of action, rather than the administered dose. Furthermore, where the effect results mainly or entirely from an active metabolite, the concentration of the metabolite rather than that of the parent chemical is important.

An important function of toxicology is to determine safe levels of exposure to natural and man-made chemicals (see Risk Assessment above), thereby preventing the adverse effects of exposures to toxicants. One of the earliest official actions in this field was taken by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. It stipulated that a 100-fold margin was required for a food additive to be permitted for use. In other words, a chemical additive should not occur in the total human diet in a quantity greater than 1/100 of the amount that is the maximum safe dosage in long-term animal experiments (Lehman and Fitzhugh, 1954). For several reasons this approach was not practicable on an international level (see Chap. 25). While evaluating a number of food additives in 1961, WHO coined the term “acceptable daily intake” (WHO, 1962). Using ADI procedure, WHO has since convened annual meetings of experts on food additives, contaminants, residues of veterinary drugs, and pesticide residues. Assessment of these chemicals has resulted, where appropriate, in the assignment of ADIs (Chap. 25). The term “ADI” and the WHO evaluations have been adopted by regulatory agencies in many nations. The inception, evolution, and application of ADI have been outlined by Lu (1988). For toxicants in the occupational settings, quantitative assessments are provided in terms of “threshold limit values” (Federal Register, 1971).

These determinations involve comprehensive studies of the toxic properties, demonstration of dosages that produce no observable adverse effects,

establishment of dose–effect and dose–response relationships, and toxicokinetic and biotransformation studies.

The greatly increased scope and the multiplicity of subdisciplines as outlined above provide a vivid view of recent progress in toxicology.

## SOME CHALLENGES AND SUCCESSES

The so-called aniline tumors were reported by Rehn (1895), a German surgeon, in the urinary bladders of three men who had worked in an aniline factory. The role of aniline and aniline dyes as etiologic agents was confirmed only some 40 years later, after much experimental investigation in animals (e.g., Hueper et al., 1938), and extensive epidemiologic studies by Case et al. (1954) had been carried out. This discovery led to improved occupational standards and more stringent controls of food colors derived from coal tar.

In the late 1950s, thalidomide was widely used as a sedative. It has a very low acute toxicity and readily met the toxicity testing protocol prevailing at that time. However, a rare form of congenital malformation, phocomelia (the virtual absence of extremities), was observed among some offspring of mothers who had taken this drug during the first trimester (Lenz and Knapp, 1962). This tragedy led to the explosive development of teratology (developmental toxicology), an important specialty area of toxicology. The importance of modifying factors has been dramatized by the tragic effect of cobalt among heavy beer drinkers (see Chap. 5).

The once prevalent lead poisoning in certain areas of industrialized countries has now largely disappeared. This great accomplishment in the field of public health has resulted from the implementation of control measures devised on the basis of the knowledge gained from the numerous toxicologic studies of lead. However, this has now raised new concerns. Lead has been replaced by the gasoline additive methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Combustion of MMT-containing gasoline generates tailpipe emissions of manganese and studies have shown that manganese produces central nervous system disturbances (Gwiadza et al., 2007). Thus, it should be borne in mind that removal of one chemical and replacement with another does not necessarily reduce the risk for development of adverse effects.

Many cases of serious illness that culminate in permanent paralysis and death have been reported in Minamata and Niigata in Japan in the 1950s and 1960s, respectively (Study Group of Minamata Disease, 1968; Tsubaki and Irukayama, 1977). The cause of the illness was eventually traced to methyl mercury in the fish caught locally. The fish were contaminated with this chemical, which had been discharged as such into the water by a factory, or the contaminant was derived from elemental mercury discharged by the factory and methylated through microorganisms in the mud. Measures to rehabilitate the surviving patients and legal control of the factories have been instituted.

On the other hand, the cause of another mysterious illness in Japan, known as itai-itai disease, remains unsolved, although cadmium apparently played a role. The patients had resided for many years in areas that were in the vicinity of mines and where the cadmium levels in rice and water were excessive.

A more solid foundation in the assessment of risks of chemical carcinogens resulted from recent advances in epidemiologic studies, long-term animal studies, short-term mutagenesis/carcinogenesis tests, and mechanistic studies, as well as the realization that carcinogens differ in their potency, latency, and mode of action (Chaps. 7 and 25).

## TOXICITY VS. OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

In general, exposure to toxic substances is to be avoided. However, the severity of the effects varies greatly; some chemicals induce mild, transient, reversible effects, whereas those of others may be irreversible, serious, and even fatal. Exposure to the former type of substances might thus be acceptable, but, as a rule, not the latter. Examples of the exceptions: methyl mercury, which is extremely toxic, is present in many species of fish. Because of the nutritional value of fish, permissible levels of methyl mercury are established to minimize the risk, yet not deny this valuable source of nutrients. Aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> is one of the most potent carcinogens but is present in a variety of foods. Yet the contaminated food is not banned as long as the toxin does not exceed the permissible levels.

The complex nature of assessing the toxicity of a substance in light of its benefits is also exemplified by the toxicology seen in lactation and over-the-counter (OTC) products. The former involves weighing the benefits of breast-feeding versus the toxicity of certain potential contaminants. OTC products, when improperly used, present toxicologic problems. However, the value of these products in general cannot be ignored. There is a growing debate of natural food products (nutraceuticals) where the benefits are accepted by some, yet these products have not been assessed toxicologically and there are reports of adverse effects. The therapeutic value of these products is subject to debate and needs extensive study as the number of consumers is in the millions, but the toxicity remains unknown.

The perception of risk and the benefits to society are crucial. It is clearly documented that with the introduction of chemicals to control infectious diseases and diminished occupational exposure through the use of protective gear have increased the life expectancy (or benefit) for humans. However, to completely eliminate any risk at all requires excessively high costs. Hence, it may not be realistic to derive any benefits if society demands that all risk be removed no matter the cost. In essence, by completely removing all chemicals and potential risk, the life expectancy would decrease and mortality would rise. The concept of acceptable risk/benefit ratio needs to be borne in mind. The dilemmas involved in these topics are further described and discussed in other chapters.

## **FUTURE PROSPECTS**

The need of new substances will undoubtedly continue. Some of them will treat or prevent a variety of diseases, which are currently untreatable or unpreventable. Others will render food more plentiful, tastier, and hopefully healthier. Still others will improve living conditions in various ways. At the same time, people are more conscious of subtle adverse effects on health and expect the new substances to be “absolutely safe.” Furthermore, the disposal of these substances and their by-products is expected to produce no environmental hazards, adversely affecting humans and the ecosystem.

To satisfy these seemingly irreconcilable societal demands, the toxicologist must carry out a series of studies on each substance: is it readily absorbed, distributed to specific organs, stored, and/or readily excreted? Is it detoxicated or bioactivated? What kind of adverse effects does it induce and what are the host and environmental factors, termed confounding factors, which can alter these effects? How does it produce the effect on a cellular and molecular level? What type of “general toxicity” does it produce? What organs are its targets? What is its predominant mechanism of action? How or can it be eliminated from the organism? Answers to these and other questions will provide a scientific basis for assessing its safety and risk for the intended use.

It is evident that the multitude of studies involved will place an increasing demand on the limited facilities for toxicologic testing and on the short supply of qualified personnel. It is of utmost importance therefore that toxicity data generated anywhere be accepted internationally. However, to ensure general acceptance, the data must meet certain standards. The “Good Laboratory Practice” promulgated by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA, 1980) and the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD, 1982) should be adopted by all countries involved in toxicological testing.

To streamline the long and costly testing of each chemical separately, there have been schemes that test a representative chemical extensively and verify the results on other members of the group with minimal testing. This practice has been adopted successfully when the substances included in a group are essentially similar. A proposal to ban all chlorine compounds, however, appears to have gone too far in ignoring the great diversity of the toxic nature and potency of such a large group of substances (Karol, 1995). Similar calls for the ban of substances containing bromine, especially flame retardants present in furniture, computers, televisions, which are crucial for protection against hazards from fire damage, have been instituted by a segment of the population based on the adverse effects of these chemicals. It will be a major challenge to determine how diverse a variety of chemicals can be rationally grouped for toxicological testing and assessment purposes.

Other trends designed to simplify and hasten the testing include a reduction in the use of laboratory animals and supplement or supplant them with *in vitro* studies. This is done partly in response to a societal call on humane grounds.

Isolated organs, cultured tissues and cells, and lower forms of life will be increasingly used. Furthermore, such test systems will likely be faster and less expensive, and will augment the variety of studies, especially those related to the mechanism of toxicity. An understanding of the mechanism of action of a chemical is often valuable in providing a sounder basis for the assessment of its safety/risk. Other types of improvements of the testing procedure with respect to simplicity and reliability will continue to be made.

As noted earlier, to provide a basis for proper assessment of the safety/risk of a chemical and for a variety of other purposes, toxicology is increasingly becoming a multifaceted science. To facilitate the acquisition of a broad knowledge of toxicology, this book covers four major areas.

Part I describes general topics related to absorption, distribution, and excretion of toxicants, their transformation in the body, the various types of toxic effects they exert, and the host and environmental factors that modify these effects.

Procedures used in determining the general and specific effects are described in Part II.

Part III describes the organ/system-specific toxicants and the procedures commonly used to detect their effects.

Part IV discusses several major groups of toxicants such as food additives and contaminants, pesticides, metals, over-the-counter preparations, various environmental pollutants, and toxicants in the workplace. The last chapter outlines the widely adopted approaches to the assessment of safety/risk of noncarcinogenic and carcinogenic chemicals. In addition, two indices are appended listing chemicals and subjects, respectively, to assist the reader in retrieving relevant parts of the text.

## REFERENCES

- Case RAM, Hosker ME, McDonald DB, et al. (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in workmen engaged in the manufacture and use of certain dyestuff intermediates in the British chemical industry. *Br J Ind Med* 11, 75–104.
- FDA (1980). Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs. Part 58. Washington, D. C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- Federal Register (1971). Threshold Limit Values Adopted by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists, 1968, vol. 36, no. 105, May 29. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- Gwiadza R, Lucchini R, Smith D (2008). Adequacy and consistency of animal studies to evaluate the neurotoxicity of chronic low-level manganese exposure in humans. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 594–605.
- Hueper WC, et al. (1938). Experimental production of bladder tumors in dogs by administration of beta-naphthylamine. *J Ind Hyg Toxicol* 20, 46.
- Karol MH (1995). Toxicologic principles do not support the banning of chlorine: A Society of Toxicology position paper. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 24, 1–2.

- Lehman AJ, Fitzhugh OG (1954). 100-fold margin of safety. *Q Bull Assoc Food Drug Officials U.S.* 18, 33–35.
- Lenz W, Knapp K (1962). Thalidomide embryopathy. *Arch Environ Health* 5, 100–105.
- Lu FC (1988). Acceptable daily intakes: Inception, evolution and application. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 8, 45–60.
- NRC Committee on Biological Markers (1987). Biological markers in environmental health research. *Environ Health Perspect* 74, 3–9.
- OECD (1982). Good Laboratory Practice in the Testing of Chemicals. Paris Cedex, France: Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development.
- Paustenbach DJ (2002). Human and Ecological Risk Assessment. Theory and Practice. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons, Inc.
- Rehn L (1895). Blasengeschwulste bei Fuchsin-Arbeiten. *Arch Klin Chir* 50, 588.
- Study Group of Minamata Disease (1968). Minamata Disease. Minamata, Japan: Minamata University.
- Tsubaki T, Irukayama K (1977). Minamata Disease: Methyl Mercury Poisoning in Minamata and Niigata, Japan. New York, NY: Elsevier Scientific.
- WHO (1962). Sixth Report of the Joint FAD/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1993). Biomarkers and Risk Assessment: Concepts and Principles. *Environ Health Criteria* 155.
- Williams PRD, Paustenbach DJ (2002). Risk characterization: Principles and practice. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 5, 337–406.

### Appendix 1 U.S. Laws That Have a Basis in Toxicology

Responsible agency	Law
Food and Drug Administration (FDA)	Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)	Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act
	Clean Air Act
	Safe Drinking Water Act
	Toxic Substances Control Act
Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC)	Consumer Product Safety Act
	Federal Hazardous Substances Act
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)	Occupational Safety and Health Act



**Appendix 2** Examples of Outbreaks of Mass Poisoning

Location and year	Toxicant	Adverse effect	Number affected
Detroit, MI., 1930	Tri- <i>o</i> -cresyl phosphate in “ginger Jake”	Delayed neurotoxicity	16,000
London, U.K., 1952	Sulfur dioxide and suspended particulate matter in air	Increased deaths from heart and lung diseases	3,000
Toyama, Japan, 1950s	Cadmium in rice	Severe kidney and bone disease	200*
Minamata, Japan, 1950s	Methyl mercury in fish	Severe neurological disease (“Minamata disease”)	200*†
Southeast Turkey, 1956	Hexachlorobenzene in wheat	Porphyria, neurological diseases	4,000
Morocco, 1959	Tri- <i>o</i> -cresyl phosphate in adulterated oil	Delayed neurotoxicity	10,000
Japan, 1956–1977	Clioquinol	Subacute myelo-optic neuropathy (SMON)	10,000
Western Europe, late 1950s and early 1960s	Thalidomide	Phocomelia	10,000
Fukuoka, Japan, 1968	Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB)	Skin disease, general weakness	1,700
Iraq, 1972	Methyl mercury in wheat	Deaths from neurological disease	500
Madrid, Spain, 1981	Toxic oil in food	Nonfatal cases	50,000
		Deaths with various symptoms and signs	340
Bhopal, India, 1984	Methylisocyanate released into air	Nonfatal cases	20,000
		Deaths from acute lung disease	6,000
Chernobyl	Radioactivity release	Nonfatal cases	200,000
		Deaths	31
		Childhood leukemia	75*
			Normally less than 1

\*Many more cases with mild or moderate symptoms and signs of intoxication.

†Hundreds of cases occurred in Niigata, Japan, in 1960s.



## 2

---

# Absorption, Distribution, and Excretion of Toxicants

### CONTENTS

Introduction	16
Passive Diffusion	16
Filtration	18
Carrier-Mediated Transport	18
Engulfing by the Cell (Endocytosis)	18
Absorption	18
Gastrointestinal Tract	19
Respiratory Tract	19
Skin	20
Distribution	21
Barriers	21
Binding and Storage	22
Excretion	23
Urinary Excretion	23
Biliary Excretion	24
Lungs	24
Other Routes	24
Physiologically Based Pharmacokinetic Modeling	25
Levels of Toxicants in the Body	27
References	28

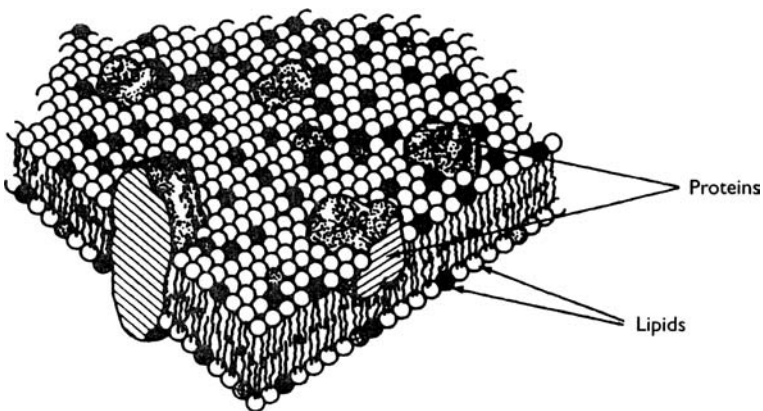
## INTRODUCTION

Apart from local effects at the site of contact, a toxicant can cause injury only after it is absorbed by the organism. Absorption can occur through the skin, the gastrointestinal tract, the lungs, and several minor routes. Furthermore, the nature and intensity of the effects of a chemical on an organism depend on its concentration in the target organs. The concentration depends not only on the administered dose but also on other factors, including absorption, distribution, binding, and excretion. For a chemical to be absorbed, distributed, and eventually excreted, a toxicant must pass through a number of cell membranes. A cell membrane generally consists of a biomolecular layer of lipid molecules with proteins scattered throughout the membrane (Fig. 1).

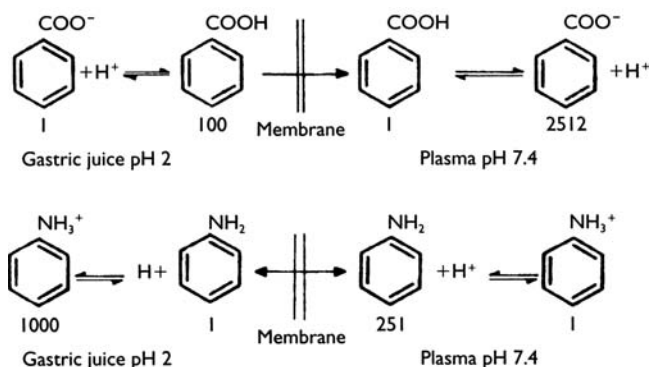
There are four mechanisms by which a toxicant may pass through a cell membrane; the most important of them is passive diffusion through the membrane. The others are filtration through the membrane pores, carrier-mediated transport, and engulfing by the cell. The last two mechanisms are different in that the cell takes an active part in the transfer of a toxicant across its membranes.

### Passive Diffusion

Most toxicants cross cell membranes by simple, passive diffusion. The rate of passage is related directly to the concentration gradient across the membrane, and to the lipid solubility. For example, mannitol is hardly absorbed (<2%), acetylsalicylic acid is fairly well absorbed (21%), and thiopental is even more readily absorbed (67%). It is noteworthy that the chloroform:water partition of



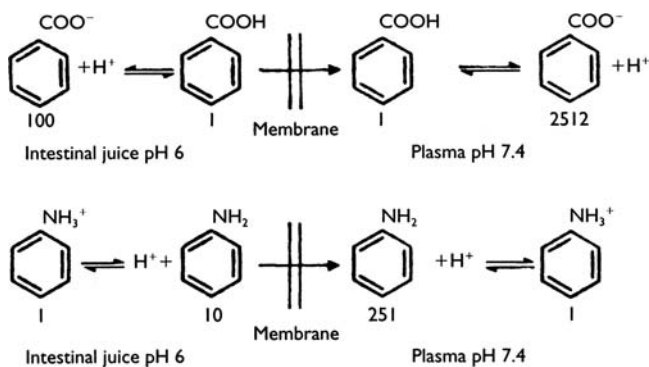
**Figure 1** Schematic diagram of biologic membrane. Spheres represent head groups (phosphatidylcholine) and zig-zag lines indicate tail ends of lipids. Black, white, and stippled spheres indicate different kinds of lipids. Large bodies represent proteins; some are located on the surface, others within the membrane. *Source:* From Singer and Nicholson (1972).



**Figure 2** Disposition of benzoic acid and aniline in gastric juice and plasma. Figures immediately below the structural formulas represent proportions of ionized and nonionized forms. *Source:* From Timbrell (1991).

the nonionized forms of these chemicals is, respectively,  $<0.002$ , 2, and 100. For references to this and other examples, see Hogben et al. (1958).

Many toxicants are ionizable. The ionized form is often unable to penetrate the cell membrane because of its low lipid solubility. On the other hand, the nonionized form is likely lipid-soluble enough to do so, and its rate of penetration depends on the lipid solubility. The extent of ionization of weak organic acids and bases depends on the pH of the medium. Thus, for the former, such as benzoic acid, diffusion is facilitated in acidic environment, where they exist mainly in the nonionized form; for the latter, such as aniline, diffusion is facilitated in basic environment (Figs. 2 and 3).



**Figure 3** Disposition of benzoic acid and aniline in intestinal juice and plasma. *Source:* From Timbrell (1991).

## Filtration

The membranes of the capillaries and the glomeruli have relatively large pores (about 70 nm) and allow molecules smaller than albumin (molecular weight 60,000 Da) to pass through. Bulk flow of water through these pores results from hydrostatic and/or osmotic pressure and can act as a carrier of toxicants. The pores in most cells, however, are relatively small (about 4 nm) and allow chemicals only up to a molecular weight of 100 to 200 Da to pass through. Chemicals of larger molecules, therefore, can filter into and out of the capillaries. They can, therefore, establish equilibrium between the concentrations in the plasma and in the extracellular fluid, but they cannot do so by filtration between the extracellular and intracellular fluids.

## Carrier-Mediated Transport

This involves the formation of a complex between the chemical and a macromolecular carrier on one side of the membrane. The complex then diffuses to the other side of the membrane, where the chemical is released. Thereafter the carrier returns to the original surface to repeat the transport process. The carrier has a limited capacity. When it is saturated, the rate of transport is no longer dependent on the concentration of the chemical and assumes zero order kinetics. Structure, conformation, size, and charge are important in determining the affinity of a chemical for a carrier site, and competitive inhibition can occur among chemicals with similar characteristics.

*Active transport* involves a carrier that moves molecules across a membrane against a concentration gradient, or, if the molecule is an ion, against an electrochemical gradient. It requires the expenditure of metabolic energy and can be inhibited by poisons that interfere with cell metabolism.

*Facilitated diffusion* is similar to active transport but does not move molecules against a concentration gradient. Furthermore, it is not energy-dependent, and metabolic poisons will not inhibit this process.

## Engulfing by the Cell (Endocytosis)

Particles may be engulfed by cells. When the particles are solid, the process is called phagocytosis and when they are liquid, it is called pinocytosis. Such special transport systems are important for the removal of particulate matter from the alveoli and of certain toxic substances from the blood by the reticuloendothelial system. Carrageenans (molecular weight about 40,000) is also absorbed from the gut by this process.

## ABSORPTION

The main routes by which toxicants are absorbed are the gastrointestinal tract, lungs, and skin. However, in toxicologic studies, such special routes as intraperitoneal, intramuscular, and subcutaneous injections are also used.

## **Gastrointestinal Tract**

Many toxicants can enter the gastrointestinal tract along with food and water or alone as drugs or other types of chemicals. With the exception of those that are caustic or very irritating to the mucosa, most toxicants do not exert any toxic effect unless they are absorbed. Absorption can take place along the entire gastrointestinal tract. For example, certain drugs are administered as sublingual tablets and suppositories to be absorbed in the mouth and the rectum, respectively. However, the mouth and rectum are, in general, insignificant sites of absorption of environmental chemicals.

The stomach is a significant site of absorption, especially for weak acids, which will exist in the diffusible, nonionized, lipid-soluble form. On the other hand, weak bases will be highly ionized in the acidic gastric juice and therefore not readily absorbable. The difference in absorption is further amplified by the circulating plasma. Weak acids will exist mainly in ionized form in plasma and be carried away, whereas weak bases will exist in nonionized form and can diffuse back to the stomach. The influence of these factors, using benzoic acid and aniline as examples, is shown in Figure 2.

In the intestine, weak acids will exist mainly in the ionized form, hence they are less readily absorbable. However, upon entering the blood, they become ionized and thus will not readily diffuse back. On the other hand, weak bases will exist mainly in the nonionized form, hence more readily absorbable, as shown in Figure 3. It should be noted that intestinal absorption is further enhanced by the long contact time and the large surface area provided by the villi and microvilli.

In the intestine, there are special carrier-mediated transport systems that are responsible for the absorption of nutrients, such as monosaccharides, amino acids, and such elements as iron, calcium, and sodium. However, a few toxicants, such as 5-fluorouracil, thallium, and lead, are known to be absorbable from the intestine by active transport systems. In addition, particulate matters such as those of the azo dyes and polystyrene latex can enter the intestinal cell by pinocytosis.

## **Respiratory Tract**

The main site of absorption in the respiratory tract is the alveoli in the lungs. This is especially true for gases such as carbon monoxide, nitrogen oxides, and sulfur dioxide, and for vapors of volatile liquids such as benzene and carbon tetrachloride. Their ready absorption is related to the large alveolar area, high blood flow, and proximity of the blood to the alveolar air.

The rate of absorption is dependent on the solubility of the gas in the blood—the more soluble it is, the faster the absorption. However, equilibrium between the air and the blood is reached more slowly for more soluble chemicals, such as chloroform, compared to less soluble chemicals, such as ethylene. This is because the more soluble a chemical, the more of it can be dissolved in the blood. As the alveolar air can carry only a limited amount of the chemical, more respirations

and hence a longer time will be required to attain equilibrium. It will take even longer if the chemical is also deposited in the fat tissue.

In addition to gases and vapors, liquid aerosols and airborne particles may also be absorbed. In general, large particles ( $>10\ \mu\text{m}$ ) do not enter the respiratory tract; when they do, they are deposited in the nose and disposed of by wiping, blowing, and sneezing. Very small particles ( $<0.01\ \mu\text{m}$ ) are likely to be exhaled. Those in the range of  $0.01$  to  $10\ \mu\text{m}$  are deposited in various parts of the respiratory tract. The larger ones are likely to be deposited in the nasopharynx and absorbed either through the epithelium of this region or through the gastrointestinal tract epithelium after they are swallowed along with the mucus. Smaller particles are deposited in the trachea, bronchi, and bronchioli, and are then either aspirated onto the mucociliary escalator or engulfed by phagocytes. The particles carried up by the escalator will be coughed up or swallowed. The phagocytes with engulfed particles will be absorbed into the lymphatics. Some free particles can also migrate into the lymphatics. Soluble particles may be absorbed through the epithelium into the blood.

A detailed examination of the deposition of particles of various sizes in different parts of the respiratory tract is provided by a Task Group on Lung Dynamics (1966). However, as a rough estimate, 25% of inhaled particles are exhaled, 50% are deposited in the upper respiratory tract, and 25% are deposited in the lower respiratory tract (Morrow et al., 1966).

## Skin

In general, the skin is relatively impermeable, and therefore it constitutes a good barrier, separating the organism from its environment. However, some chemicals can be absorbed through the skin in sufficient quantities to produce systemic effects.

A chemical may be absorbed via the hair follicles or through the cells of the sweat glands or those of the sebaceous glands. These are, however, minor routes for absorption because they constitute only a small surface area of the skin. Therefore, the percutaneous absorption of a chemical is essentially through the skin proper, which consists of the epidermis and dermis (Fig. 1 of Chap. 14).

The first phase of percutaneous absorption is diffusion of the toxicant through the epidermis, which, especially its stratum corneum, is the most important barrier. The stratum corneum consists of several layers of thin, cohesive, dead cells that contain chemically resistant material (protein filament). Small amounts of polar substances appear to diffuse through the outer surface of the protein filaments of the hydrated stratum corneum; nonpolar substances dissolve in and diffuse through the lipid matrix between the protein filaments.

In the human stratum corneum, there are significant differences in structure and chemistry from one region of the body to another, which are reflected in the permeability to chemicals. For example, toxicants cross the scrotum readily, cross



the abdominal skin less readily, and cross the sole and palm with great difficulty (Zbinden, 1976).

The second phase of percutaneous absorption is diffusion of the toxicant through the dermis, which contains a porous, nonselective, aqueous diffusion medium. Therefore it is much less effective as a barrier than the stratum corneum, and, as a consequence, abrasion or removal of the latter causes a marked increase in the percutaneous absorption. Acids, alkalis, and mustard gases will also increase the absorption by injuring this barrier. Some solvents, notably dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), also increase dermal permeability.

## DISTRIBUTION

After a chemical enters the blood, it is distributed rapidly throughout the body. The rate of distribution to each organ is related to the blood flow through the organ, the ease with which the chemical crosses the local capillary wall and the cell membrane, and the affinity of components of the organ for the chemical.

### Barriers

The *blood-brain barrier* is located at the capillary wall. The capillary endothelial cells are tightly joined, leaving few or no pores between these cells (Bradbury, 1984). Thus, the toxicant has to pass through the capillary endothelium itself. A lack of vesicles in these cells further reduces their transport ability. Finally, the protein concentration of the interstitial fluid in the brain is low, in contrast to that in other organs; protein binding therefore does not serve as a mechanism for the transfer of toxicants from the blood to the brain. For these reasons, the penetration of toxicants into the brain depends on their lipid solubility. An outstanding example is the toxicant methyl mercury, which enters the brain readily and the main toxicity of which is on the central nervous system. In contrast, inorganic mercury compounds are not lipid-soluble, do not enter the brain readily, and exert their main adverse effects not on the brain but on the kidney.

The *placental barrier* differs anatomically among various animal species. There are six layers of cells between fetal and maternal blood in some species, whereas in others there is only one layer. Furthermore, the number of layers may change as the gestation progresses. Although the relationship of the number of layers of the placenta to its permeability needs quantitative determination, the placental barrier does impede the transfer of toxicants to the fetus, which is therefore protected to some extent. However, the concentration of a toxicant such as methyl mercury may be higher in certain fetal organs, such as the brain, because of the less-effective fetal blood-brain barrier. On the other hand, the fetal concentration of the food coloring amaranth is only 0.03% to 0.06% of that of the mother (Munro and Willes, 1978).

Other barriers are also present in organs such as the eyes and testicles. In addition, the erythrocyte plays an interesting role in the distribution of certain

toxicants. For example, its membrane acts as a barrier against the penetration of inorganic mercury compounds but not that of alkyl mercury. Furthermore, there is affinity of the erythrocyte cytoplasm for alkyl mercury compounds. Because of these factors, the concentration of inorganic mercury compounds in the erythrocytes is only about half that in the plasma, whereas that of methyl mercury in the erythrocyte is about 10 times that in the plasma (WHO, 1976).

### Binding and Storage

As noted above, binding of a chemical in a tissue can result in a higher concentration in that tissue. There are two major types of binding. The covalent type of binding is irreversible and is, in general, associated with significant toxic effects. The noncovalent binding usually accounts for a major portion of the dose and is reversible. Therefore, this process plays an important role in the distribution of toxicants in various organs and tissues. There are several types of noncovalent binding as outlined by Guthrie (1980).

*Plasma proteins* can bind normal physiologic constituents in the body as well as many foreign compounds. Most of the latter are bound to the albumin and are therefore not immediately available for distribution to the extravascular space. However, since the binding is reversible, it permits the bound chemical to dissociate from the protein, thereby replenishing the level of unbound chemical, which may then cross the capillary endothelium. The toxicologic significance of the binding can be illustrated by the possible induction of coma by the administration of sulfonamide drugs to patients who are taking antidiabetic drugs. The antidiabetic drugs are bound to the plasma proteins but can be replaced by the sulfonamide drugs, which have a greater affinity for the plasma protein. The antidiabetic drugs thus released may precipitate a hypoglycemic coma.

The *liver* and *kidney* have a higher capacity for binding chemicals. This characteristic may be related to their metabolic and excretory functions. Certain proteins have been identified in these organs for their specific binding property, such as metallothionein, which is important for the binding of cadmium in the liver and kidney, and possibly also for the transfer of the metal from the liver to the kidney. Binding of a substance can increase its concentration in an organ rapidly. For example, 30 minutes after a single administration of lead, its concentration in the liver is 50 times higher than that in the plasma.

The *adipose tissue* is an important storage depot for lipid-soluble substances such as DDT, dieldrin, and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB). They appear to be stored in the adipose tissue by simple dissolution in the neutral fats. There exists the potential that the plasma concentration of the substances stored in the fat may rise sharply as a result of rapid mobilization of fat following starvation. Conjugation of fatty acid to toxicants, such as DDT, may also be a mechanism by which these chemicals are retained in the lipid-containing tissues and cells of the body (Leighty et al., 1980).

*Bone* is a major site for storage of such toxicants as fluoride, lead, and strontium. The storage takes place by an exchange adsorption reaction between the toxicants in the interstitial fluid and the hydroxyapatite crystals of bone mineral. By virtue of similarities in size and charge,  $F^-$  may readily replace  $OH^-$ , and calcium may be replaced by lead or strontium. These stored substances can be released by ionic exchange and by dissolution of bone crystals through osteoclastic activity.

## EXCRETION

After absorption and distribution in the organism, toxicants are excreted, rapidly or slowly. A generally accepted indicator of the rate of elimination of a toxicant is its "half-life" ( $t_{1/2}$ ), which is the time required to remove 50% of it from the bloodstream.

The toxicants are excreted as the parent chemicals, as their metabolites, and/or as conjugates of them. The principal route of excretion is the urine, but the liver and lungs are also important excretory organs for certain types of chemicals. In addition, there are a number of other minor routes for excretion.

### Urinary Excretion

The kidney removes toxicants from the body by the same mechanisms as those used in the removal of end products of normal metabolism, namely, glomerular filtration, tubular diffusion, and tubular secretion.

The glomerular capillaries have large pores (70 nm), therefore, most toxicants will be filtered at the glomerulus, except those that are very large (greater than 60,000 Da) or those that are tightly bound to plasma protein. Once a toxicant enters the glomerular filtrate, it will either be passively reabsorbed across the tubular cells if it has a high lipid/water partition coefficient or remains in the tubular lumen and be excreted if it is a polar compound.

A toxicant can also be excreted through the tubules into the urine by passive diffusion. As urine is normally acidic, this process plays a role in the excretion of organic bases. On the other hand, organic acids are unlikely to be excreted by passive diffusion through the tubular cells. However, weak acids are often metabolized to stronger acids, thereby increasing the percentage of the ionic forms that are not reabsorbed through the tubular cells and are thus excreted.

Certain toxicants can be secreted by the cells of the proximal tubules into the urine. There are two distinct secretory mechanisms, one for organic acids (e. g., glucuronide and sulfate conjugates) and the other for organic bases. Protein-bound toxicants can also be secreted, provided the binding is reversible. Furthermore, chemicals of similar characteristics compete for the same transport system. For example, probenecid can increase the serum level of penicillin and prolong its activity by blocking its tubular excretion.

## Biliary Excretion

The liver is also an important organ for the excretion of toxicants, especially for compounds with high polarity (anionic and cationic), conjugates of compounds bound to plasma proteins, and compounds with molecular weights greater than 300. In general, once these compounds are in the bile, they are not reabsorbed into the blood and are excreted via the feces. However, there are exceptions, such as the glucuronide conjugates, which can be hydrolyzed by intestinal flora, enabling the reabsorption of the free toxicants.

The importance of the biliary route of excretion for some chemicals has been well demonstrated in experiments that showed a several-fold increase of the acute toxicity in animals with ligated bile ducts. Such chemicals include digoxin, indocyanine green, ouabain, and, most dramatically, diethylstilbestrol (DES). The toxicity of DES is increased by a factor of 130 in rats with ligated bile ducts (Klaassen, 1973).

## Lungs

Substances that exist in the gaseous phase at body temperature are excreted mainly by the lungs. Volatile liquids are also readily excreted via the expired air. Highly soluble liquids such as chloroform and halothane are excreted slowly because of their storage in the adipose tissue and the limited ventilation volume. Excretion of toxicants from the lung is accomplished by simple diffusion through cell membranes.

## Other Routes

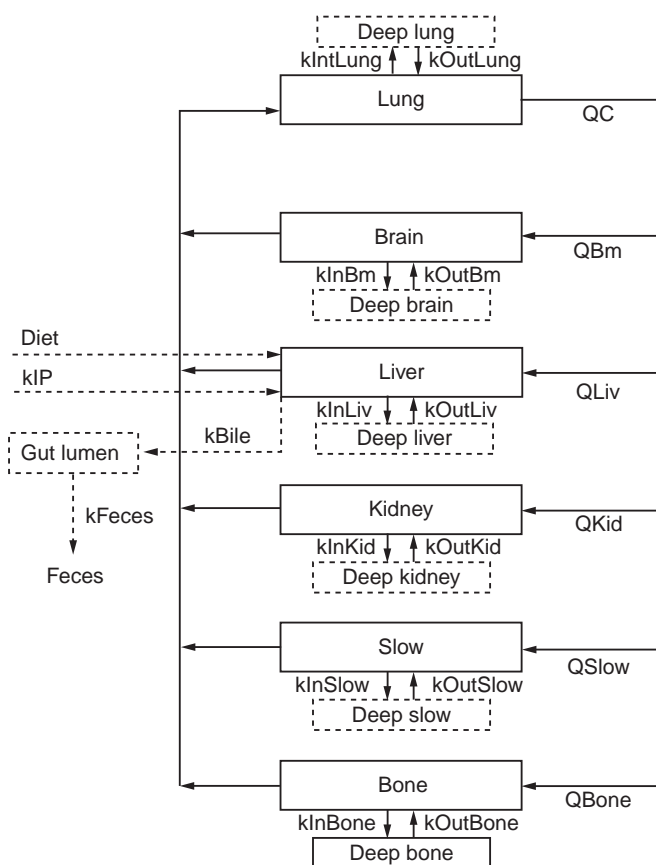
The *gastrointestinal tract* is not a major route of excretion of toxicants. However, because the human stomach and intestine each secretes about 3 L of fluid per day, some toxicants are excreted along with the fluid. The excretion is mainly by diffusion and thus the rate depends on the  $pK_a$  of the toxicant and the pH of the stomach and intestine.

The excretion of toxicants in mother's *milk* is not important as far as the host organism is concerned. However, the presence of toxic substances in milk may be toxicologically significant because they can be passed in the milk from the mother to the nursing child and from cows to humans. The excretion is also via simple diffusion. As milk is slightly acidic, basic compounds will reach a higher level in milk than in plasma, while the opposite is true with acidic compounds. Lipophilic compounds such as DDT and PCB also reach a higher level in milk because of its higher fat content.

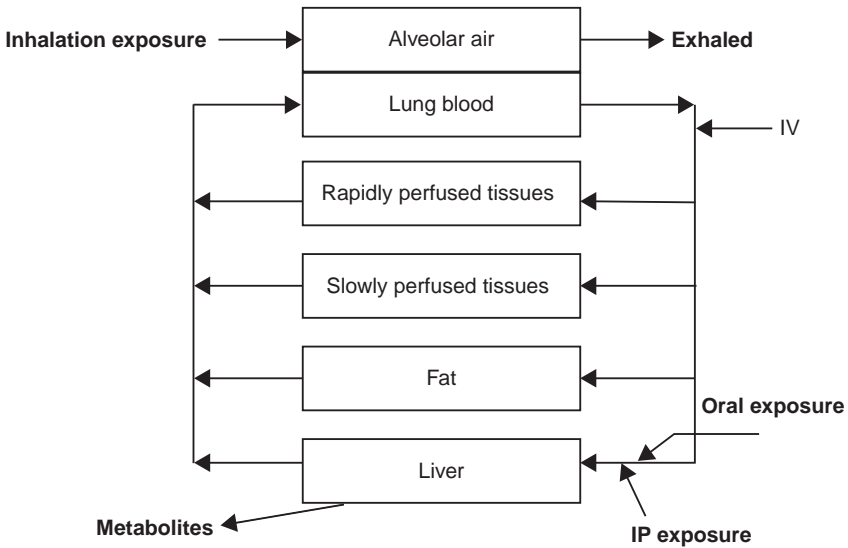
*Sweat* and *saliva* are also minor routes of excretion of toxicants. The excretion also occurs by diffusion; thus it is confined to the nonionized, lipid-soluble forms of the toxicants. Substances excreted in the saliva are usually swallowed and then become available for absorption in the gastrointestinal tract.

## PHYSIOLOGICALLY BASED PHARMACOKINETIC MODELING

Physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models represent the body as a set of functional compartments including blood, brain, liver, muscle, skin, and remainder of the body. A schematic PBPK model for manganese is illustrated in Figure 4. All compartments need not necessarily be involved as shown in Figure 5, as a PBPK model for methyl ethyl ketone, where brain as opposed to manganese, is not a significant target. PBPK facilitates simulation of pharmacokinetic profiles of chemicals on the basis of available information on relevant physiologic, physicochemical, and biochemical factors (Thompson et al., 2008). These models utilize biological information to predict the disposition of chemicals for which limited human data are available. It is essential to understand that the chemical is present



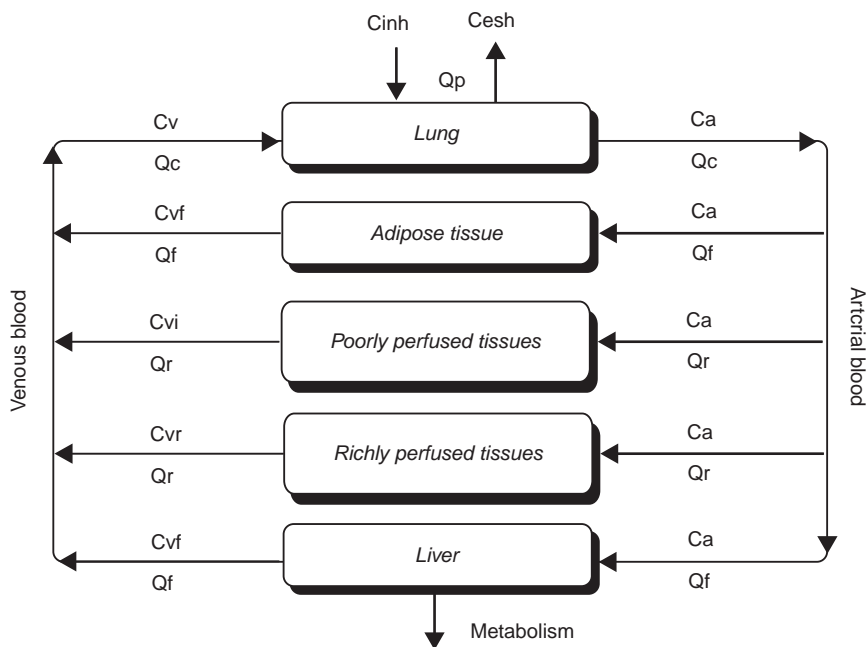
**Figure 4** Schematic of PBPK model for assessing tracer doses of radiolabeled and total manganese. *Source:* From Teeguarden JG, Gearhart J, Clewell HJ et al. (2007). *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 1515–1526.



**Figure 5** Schematic diagram of PBPK model for methyl ethyl ketone. *Source:* From Thrall KD, Soelberg JJ, Weitz KK et al. (2002). *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 65, 881–896.

at low or pharmacological levels and the responses are linear. PBPK models are becoming increasingly important in chemical health risk assessment. In order to construct PBPK models to predict the disposition of chemicals, it is important to take into account genetic makeup, life-stage, and health status, because these are confounding factors that will affect the disposition and subsequently the risk assessment. The PBPK model for an infant would be markedly different from an adult and thus the risk for a child in general is greater than for the adult (Price et al., 2003). Governmental agencies have come to rely in recent years on PBPK modeling as an essential tool in the overall assessment of a chemical hazard for humans.

A further step is the use of physiologically based toxicokinetic (PBTK) models where the chemical is present at excessive or toxic levels and where the responses do not follow a linear pattern (Dixit et al., 2003). Toxicokinetic models are often defined based upon the nature of the rate processes, be it absorption across the gastrointestinal tract, hepatic metabolism, or elimination by the kidney. A conceptual representation of a PBTK model for volatile organic chemicals is illustrated in Figure 6. At toxic concentrations, the solubility of chemicals is altered leading to different absorption patterns, excess bioavailability and accumulation, and the predictability of chemical disposition becomes less reliable. A toxicokinetic model is only a tool to estimate chemical concentrations and generates parameters that are useful for further analysis and quantification of biological processes under study. Toxicokinetics serves as a bridge for extrapolating chemical concentrations across different species, from *in vitro* to *in vivo* studies, from chemical exposure to systemic dose in risk assessment, or as a link between physiology or genetics and chemical disposition in populations of animals and humans.

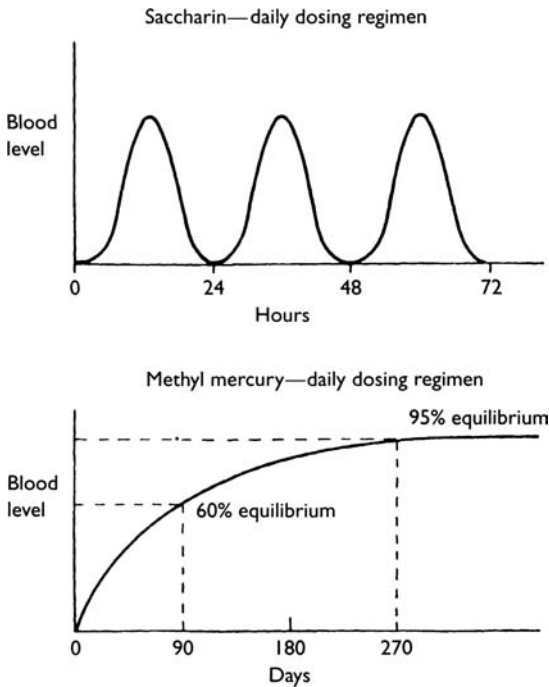


**Figure 6** Conceptual representation of PBTK model for volatile organic chemicals.  $Q_p$  and  $Q_c$  refer to alveolar ventilation rate and cardiac output.  $C_{inh}$ ,  $C_{esh}$ ,  $C_v$ , and  $C_a$  refer to chemical concentration in inhaled air, exhaled air, venous blood, and arterial blood, respectively.  $C_{vf}$  and  $Q_f$  refer to venous blood concentrations leaving tissue compartments and blood flow to tissues (i.e., f, adipose tissue; s, slowly perfused tissues; r, richly perfused tissues; and l, liver). *Source:* From Haddad S, Charest-Tardif G, Krishnan K (2000). *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 61, 209–223.

## LEVELS OF TOXICANTS IN THE BODY

As noted above, the nature and intensity of the effects of a chemical depend on its concentration at the site of action, namely, the effective dose rather than the administered dose. The level in the target organ is, in general, a function of the blood level. However, binding of a toxicant in a tissue will increase its level, whereas tissue barriers tend to reduce the level. Since the blood level is more readily determined, especially over a time period, it is the parameter often used in toxicokinetic studies.

While the toxicant is being absorbed, its blood level rises. In the meantime, the rates of its excretion, biotransformation (see Chap. 3), and the distribution to other organs and tissues also increase. The curve depicting the blood level against time and the area under that curve (AUC) is useful tools in toxicokinetics. In a series of experimental studies, Smyth and Hottendorf (1980) demonstrated that the AUC for a solution of a chemical is, in general, greater than that for its suspension,



**Figure 7** Comparative chemobiokinetics of saccharin and methyl mercury chloride. *Source:* From Munro and Willes (1978).

and it is greater for acidic than basic chemicals. They also illustrated the effects of the route of administration, dose level, and dosing vehicle on the AUC.

The influence of the rate of excretion on the blood level is vividly shown in Figure 7. Saccharin is rapidly excreted; hence its blood level drops rapidly, even after repeated administration. On the other hand, methyl mercury is excreted very slowly; its gradual accumulation culminates in a near plateau only after 270 days (Munro and Willes, 1978).

Methods for determining the rate and extent of absorption, distribution, binding, storage, and excretion at various organs and tissues are readily found in the literature. A summary of some of them is given in a WHO publication (WHO, 1986).

## REFERENCES

- Bradbury MWB (1984). The structure and function of the blood–brain barrier. *Fed Proc* 43, 186–190.
- Dixit R, Riviere J, Krishnan K, et al. (2003). Toxicokinetics and physiologically based toxicokinetics in toxicology and risk assessment. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 6, 1–40.



- Guthrie FE (1980). Absorption and distribution. In: Hodgson E, Guthrie FE, eds. *Introduction to Biochemical Toxicology*. New York, NY: Elsevier.
- Hogben CAM, Tocco DJ, Brodie BB, et al. (1958). On the mechanism of intestinal absorption of drugs. *J Pharmacol Exp Therap* 125, 275–282.
- Klaassen CD (1973). Comparison of the toxicity of chemicals in newborn rats to bile duct-ligated and sham-operated rats and mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 24, 37–44.
- Leighty EG, Fentiman AF Jr, Thompson RM (1980). Conjugation of fatty acids to DDT in the rat: Possible mechanism for retention. *Toxicology* 15, 77–82.
- Morrow PE, Hodge HC, Newman WF, et al. (1966). Deposition and retention models for internal dosimetry of the human respiratory tract. *Health Phys* 12, 173–207.
- Munro IO, Willes AF (1978). Reproductive toxicity and the problems of in vitro exposure. In: Galli A, Paoletti R, Veterazzi G, eds. *Chemical Toxicology of Food*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier/North Holland.
- Price K, Haddad S, Krishnan K (2003). Physiological modeling of age-specific changes in the pharmacokinetics of organic chemicals in children. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 66, 417–433.
- Singer SJ, Nicolson GC (1972). The fluid mosaic model of the structure of cell membranes. *Science* 175, 720–731.
- Smyth AD, Hottendorf GH (1980). Application of pharmacokinetics and biopharmaceutics in the design of toxicological studies. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 53, 179–195.
- Task Group on Lung Dynamics (1966). Deposition and retention models for internal dosimetry of the human respiratory tract. *Health Phys* 12, 173–207.
- Timbrell JA (1991). *Principles of Biochemical Toxicology*. London, U.K.: Taylor & Francis.
- Thompson CM, Sonawane B, Barton HA, et al. (2008). Approaches for applications of physiologically based pharmacokinetic models in risk assessment. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 11.
- WHO (1976). *Mercury: Environmental Health Criteria 1*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, p. 70.
- WHO (1986). *Principles of Toxicokinetic Studies. Environmental Health Criteria 57*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Zbinden G (1976). Percutaneous drug permeation. In: *Progress in Toxicology*, vol. 2. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.



# 3

## Biotransformation of Toxicants

### CONTENTS

General Considerations	32
Phase I (Degradation) Reactions	32
Oxidation	32
Reduction	34
Hydrolysis	34
Phase II (Conjugation) Reactions	34
Glucuronide Formation	35
Sulfate Conjugation	35
Methylation	35
Acetylation	35
Amino Acid Conjugation	35
Glutathione Conjugation	35
Bioactivation	36
Epoxide Formation	37
N-Hydroxylation	38
Free Radical and Superoxide Formation	38
Other Pathways	39
Activation in the G.I. Tract	39
Complex Nature of Biotransformation	39
Developmental and Children Considerations	40
Elderly	42
References	42
Appendix 1 Examples of Bioactivation	44

## GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

As noted in the previous chapter, a toxicant can be absorbed into an organism via different routes. After absorption it is distributed to various parts of the body, including the excretory organs, and is thus available for excretion. Many chemicals are known to undergo biotransformation (metabolic transformation), which occurs in the organs and tissues. The most important site of such reactions is the liver; the others being the lungs, stomach, intestine, skin, and kidneys.

There are two types of biotransformation:

1. Phase I involving oxidation, reduction, and hydrolysis may be considered degradation reactions and
2. Phase II involving the production of a compound (a conjugate) that is biosynthesized from the toxicant, or its metabolite, plus an endogenous metabolite may be considered conjugation reactions.

Biotransformation is, therefore, a process that, in general, converts the parent compounds into metabolites and then forms conjugates, but it may involve only one of these reactions. For example, benzene undergoes oxidation, a phase I reaction, to form phenol, which conjugates with sulfate, a phase II reaction. However, when the administered chemical is phenol, it will conjugate with sulfate without a phase I reaction. The metabolites and conjugates are usually more water-soluble and more polar, hence more readily excretable. Biotransformation can therefore be considered a mechanism of detoxication by the host organism.

However, it must be noted that in certain cases the metabolites are more toxic than the parent compounds. Such reactions are known as "bioactivation."

The rate of biotransformation and the type of biotransformation of a toxicant often differ from one species of animal to another and even from one strain to another, a fact that often accounts for the difference of toxicity in these animals (see Chap. 5). The age and sex of the animal and its exposures to other chemicals may also alter the biotransformation. Knowledge of such factors is important in the design of toxicologic studies and in the interpretation of health hazards of toxicants to humans.

## PHASE I (DEGRADATION) REACTIONS

The three types of phase I reactions, namely, oxidation, reduction, and hydrolysis, are briefly described.

### Oxidation

The biotransformation of a great variety of chemicals involves oxidative processes. The most important enzyme systems catalyzing the processes involve cytochrome P-450 and NADPH cytochrome P-450 reductase. In these reactions, one atom of molecular oxygen is reduced to water and the other is incorporated into the

substrate as follows:  $\text{SH} + \text{O}_2 + \text{NADPH} + \text{H} \rightarrow \text{SOH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{NAPD}$ , where S is the substrate.

The cytochrome-linked monooxygenases (oxidases) are located in the endoplasmic reticulum. When a cell is homogenized, the endoplasmic reticulum breaks down to small vesicles known as microsomes. Because of the location of these enzymes and the great variety of chemicals that they may catalyze, they are also known as microsomal, mixed-function oxidases (MFO). The human P-450 MFO system consists of more than 30 isozymes. They catalyze a great variety of chemicals as shown below. In addition, oxidation of a number of toxicants is catalyzed by nonmicrosomal oxidoreductases that are located in the mitochondrial fraction in the 100,000-g supernatant of tissue homogenates.

Oxidation may take place in a variety of reactions, and often more than one metabolite is formed. The following are some examples.

#### A. Microsomal oxidation

1. Aliphatic oxidation involves oxidation of the aliphatic side chains of aromatic chemicals: for example, *n*-propylbenzene  $\rightarrow$  3-phenylpropan-1-ol, 3-phenylpropan-2-ol, and 3-phenylpropan-3-ol, as well as aliphatic compounds such as *n*-hexane.
2. Aromatic hydroxylation generally proceeds through an epoxide intermediate: for example, naphthalene  $\rightarrow$  naphthalene-1, 2-epoxide  $\rightarrow$  1-naphthol + 2-naphthol.
3. Epoxidation: for example, aldrin  $\rightarrow$  dieldrin.
4. Oxidative deamination: for example, amphetamine  $\rightarrow$  phenylacetone.
5. N-dealkylation: for example, *N,N*-dimethyl-*p*-nitrophenyl carbamate  $\rightarrow$  *N*-methyl-*p*-nitrophenyl carbamate.
6. O-dealkylation: for example, *p*-nitroanisole  $\rightarrow$  *p*-nitrophenol.
7. S-dealkylation: for example, 6-methylthiopurine  $\rightarrow$  6-mercapt thiopurine.
8. N-oxidation: for example, trimethylamine  $\rightarrow$  trimethylamine oxide.
9. N-hydroxylation: for example, aniline  $\rightarrow$  phenylhydroxylamine.
10. P-oxidation: for example, diphenylmethylphosphine  $\rightarrow$  diphenylmethylphosphine oxide.
11. Sulfoxidation: for example, methiocarb  $\rightarrow$  methiocarb sulfone.
12. Desulfuration involves the replacement of S by O: for example, parathion  $\rightarrow$  paraoxon.

#### B. Nonmicrosomal oxidations are catalyzed by enzymes in mitochondria, cytosol, and nuclei.

1. Amine oxidation: Monoamine oxidase is located in mitochondria and diamine oxidase is a cytosolic enzyme. Both are involved in the oxidation of the primary, secondary, and tertiary amines, such as 5-hydroxytryptamine and putrescine into their corresponding aldehydes.

2. Alcohol and aldehyde dehydrogenations are catalyzed, respectively, by alcohol dehydrogenase and aldehyde dehydrogenase: for example, ethanol → acetaldehyde → acetic acid.

## Reduction

Toxicants may undergo reductions through the function of reductases. These reactions are less active in mammalian tissues but more so in intestinal bacteria. A notable example is the reduction of prontosil to sulfanilamide converting an inactive chemical to an effective antibacterial drug.

- A. Microsomal reduction
  1. Nitro reduction: for example, nitrobenzene → nitrosobenzene → phenylhydroxylamine → aniline.
  2. Azo reduction: for example, azobenzene → aniline.
- B. Nonmicrosomal reductions occur via the reverse reaction of alcohol dehydrogenases (see "Oxidation," B2 above).

## Hydrolysis

Many toxicants contain ester-type bonds and are subject to hydrolysis. These are essentially esters, amides, and compounds of phosphate. Mammalian tissues, including the plasma, contain a large number of nonspecific esterases and amidases, which are involved in hydrolysis. The esterases, usually located in the soluble fraction of the cell, may be broadly categorized into four classes:

1. arylesterases, which hydrolyze aromatic esters;
2. carboxylesterases, which hydrolyze aliphatic esters;
3. cholinesterases, which hydrolyze esters in which the alcohol moiety is choline; and
4. acetylersterases, which hydrolyze esters in which the acid moiety is acetic acid.

In contrast to esterases, amidases cannot be classified according to substrate specificity. Furthermore, enzymatic hydrolysis of amides proceeds much more slowly than that of esters, probably a result of the lack of substrate specificity.

## PHASE II (CONJUGATION) REACTIONS

Phase II reactions involve several types of endogenous metabolites that, as noted above, may form conjugates with the toxicants *per se* or their metabolites. These conjugates are generally more water-soluble and more readily excretable. This is because the physiological transport mechanisms for the endogenous metabolites also recognize the conjugates and hence facilitate their excretion.

## Glucuronide Formation

This is the most common and the most important type of conjugation. The enzyme catalyzing this reaction is UDP-glucuronyl transferase (uridine diphosphate glucuronyl transferase) and the coenzyme is UDPGA (uridine-5'-diphospho- $\alpha$ -D-glucuronic acid). This enzyme is also located in the endoplasmic reticulum. There are four classes of chemical compounds that are capable of forming conjugates with glucuronic acid: (1) aliphatic or aromatic alcohols, (2) carboxylic acids, (3) sulfhydryl compounds, and (4) amines.

## Sulfate Conjugation

This reaction is catalyzed by sulfotransferases. These enzymes are found in the cytosolic fraction of liver, kidney, and intestine. The coenzyme is PAPS (3'-phosphoadenosine-5'-phosphosulfate). The functional groups of the foreign compounds for sulfate transfer are phenols and aliphatic alcohols as well as aromatic amines.

## Methylation

This reaction is catalyzed by methyl transferases. The coenzyme is SAM (S-adenosylmethionine). Methylation is not a major route of biotransformation of toxicants because of the broader availability of UDPGA, which leads to the formation of glucuronides. Furthermore, it does not always increase the water solubility of the methylated products.

## Acetylation

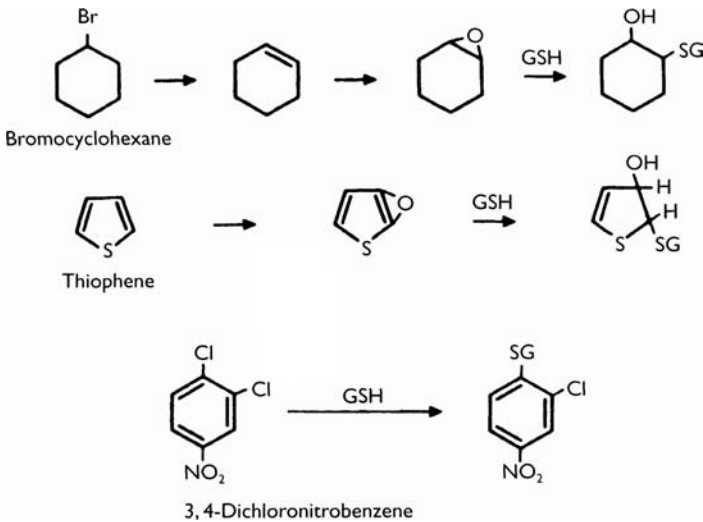
Acetylation involves transfer of acetyl groups to primary aromatic amines, hydrazines, hydrazides, sulfonamides, and certain primary aliphatic amines. The enzyme and coenzyme involved are, respectively, *N*-acetyl transferases and acetyl coenzyme A. In certain cases, such as isoniazid, acetylation results in a decrease in water solubility of an amine and an increase in toxicity.

## Amino Acid Conjugation

This conjugation is catalyzed by amino acid conjugates and coenzyme A. Aromatic carboxylic acids, arylacetic acids, and aryl-substituted acrylic acids can form conjugates with not only  $\alpha$ -amino acids, mainly glycine, but also with glutamine in humans and certain monkeys and ornithine in birds.

## Glutathione Conjugation

This important reaction is affected by glutathione S-transferases and the cofactor glutathione. Glutathione conjugates subsequently undergo enzymatic cleavage and acetylation, forming *N*-acetylcysteine (mercapturic acid) derivatives of the toxicants, which are readily excreted. Examples of chemicals such as epoxides



**Figure 1** Conjugation of epoxide and dehalogenation catalyzed by glutathione (GSH) transferase. *Source:* From Timbrell (1991).

and aromatic halogens that conjugate with glutathione are shown in Figure 1. In addition, glutathione can conjugate unsaturated aliphatic compounds and displace nitro groups in chemicals.

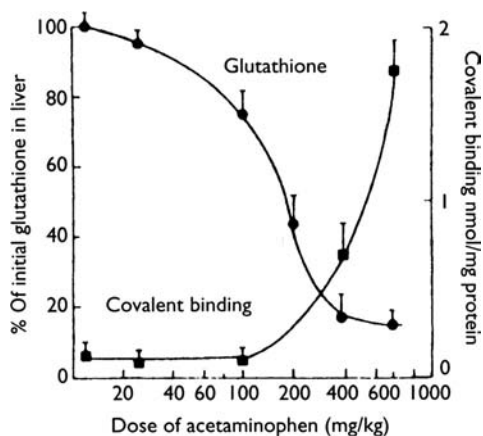
In the process of biotransformation of toxicants, a number of highly reactive electrophilic metabolites are formed. Some of these metabolites can react with cellular constituents and cause cell death, induce tumor formation, or affect immune function. The role of glutathione is to react with the electrophilic metabolites and thus prevent their harmful effects on the cells. However, exposure to very large amounts of such reactive substances can deplete the glutathione, thereby resulting in marked toxic effects. An example of the depletion of glutathione by acetaminophen and the concomitant increase in covalent binding to macromolecules is shown in Figure 2. Similarly, 3-methylindole is bioactivated mainly in lungs and, after depleting the glutathione, will induce lung damages (Adams et al., 1988). Furthermore, certain glutathione conjugates may become toxic (Anders et al., 1988).

For additional information on the biological functions of glutathione in the conjugation of electrophiles and as antioxidant, see DeLeve and Kaplowitz (1991) and Commandeur et al. (1995).

## BIOACTIVATION

Certain chemically stable compounds can be converted to chemically reactive metabolites. The reactions are generally catalyzed by cytochrome





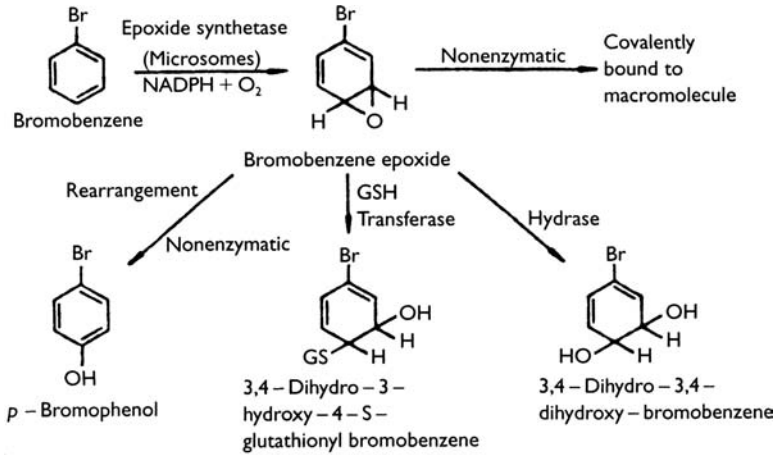
**Figure 2** Protective effect of glutathione against covalent binding of acetaminophen to liver proteins. *Source:* From Wills (1981).

P-450-dependent monooxygenase systems, but other enzymes, including those of the intestinal flora, are involved in certain cases. Furthermore, additional phase I or phase II reactions may be required. The reactive metabolites, such as epoxides, can become covalently bound to cellular macromolecules and cause necrosis and/or cancer. Others, such as free radicals, can cause lipid peroxidation resulting in tissue damage. Descriptions of the bioactivation of various classes of chemicals are available in the literature, such as the book edited by Anders (1985). The following are some notable examples. Appendix 1 lists a number of chemicals that are known to be bioactivated.

### Epoxide Formation

Many aromatic compounds are converted to epoxides by microsomal mixed-function oxygenase systems. The biotransformation of bromobenzene to its epoxide and subsequent reactions serve as an interesting example of bioactivation and its consequences. These are depicted in Figure 3.

Although bromobenzene epoxide may become covalently bound to tissue macromolecules and cause injury, the alternative routes of metabolism may prevent or reduce the injury. The most important of these routes is the conjugation with glutathione. This reaction is important in that it serves as a protective mechanism. Only after the hepatic levels of reduced glutathione have been greatly depleted will the bromobenzene epoxide significantly bind to macromolecules and result in hepatic necrosis. Depletion of glutathione occurs when a huge dose of bromobenzene is present or when there has been an induction of microsomal enzymes; both conditions increase the amount of bromobenzene epoxide. Other



**Figure 3** The bromobenzene epoxide formed from the parent chemical may covalently bind to macromolecules, but such binding may be minimal when the other metabolic routes are predominant. *Source:* Gillette and Mitchell (1975).

reactions include a nonenzymatic rearrangement to form *p*-bromophenol and the formation of 3,4-dihydro-3,4-dihydroxy-bromobenzene catalyzed by hydrase.

Other chemicals that undergo epoxidation include aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub>, benzene, benzo{*a*}pyrene, furosemide, olefins, polychlorinated and polybrominated biphenyls, trichloroethylene, and vinyl chloride. The bioactivation takes place mainly in the liver, and the resulting reactive metabolites induce toxicity through covalent binding with macromolecules in the tissue, resulting in necrosis or cancer formation.

### N-Hydroxylation

Microsomal enzymes from many tissues can N-hydroxylate a variety of chemicals. Some of the *N*-hydroxy metabolites, such as those of acetaminophen, 2-AAF, urethane, and certain aminoazo dyes, can cause cancer or tissue necrosis through covalent binding, whereas others, such as certain aromatic amines, can induce hemolysis or methemoglobinemia.

*N*-Hydroxy metabolites are also subject to conjugation reactions. Their conjugates with glucuronic acid are readily excreted; those formed with sulfuric or acetic acid, however, may be unstable and thus can be mutagenic, carcinogenic, and highly toxic (Weisburger and Weisburger, 1973).

### Free Radical and Superoxide Formation

Certain halogen-containing compounds undergo metabolism to form free radicals. For example, carbon tetrachloride forms trichloromethyl radical, which

causes peroxidation of polyunsaturated lipid as well as covalently binds to protein and unsaturated lipid. These initial reactions are followed by disturbances of various cellular components, as described in Chapter 12. Halothane and bromotrichloromethane are other examples of chemicals that may form free radicals. The herbicide paraquat is known to produce superoxide radicals (Halliwell et al., 1992).

### **Other Pathways**

Ethanol can be oxidized by a dehydrogenase to acetaldehyde, which has been implicated in some of the manifestations of alcohol toxicity. Pyrrolizidine alkaloids are dehydrogenated to reactive pyrrole derivatives, which are carcinogenic. There is evidence confirming that the acute toxicity of aliphatic nitriles is attributable to the cyanide released through hepatic microsomal enzyme activities (Willhite and Smith, 1981).

### **Activation in the G.I. Tract**

Nitrites and certain amines can react in the acidic environment of the stomach to form nitrosamines, many of which have been shown to be potent carcinogens, and nitrates, which, under certain conditions, can be converted to nitrites that may induce methemoglobinemia. The artificial sweetener cyclamate is converted by intestinal bacteria to cyclohexylamine, which can induce testicular atrophy. Cycasin is converted to its aglycone, methylazoxymethanol, which is hepatotoxic and can induce tumors.

## **COMPLEX NATURE OF BIOTRANSFORMATION**

Toxicants generally undergo several types of biotransformation, resulting in a variety of metabolites and conjugates. Some of the various metabolites and conjugates of bromobenzene are shown in Figure 3. Organophosphorous insecticides, such as fenitrothion, chlorofenvinphos, and omethoate, can be metabolized through dealkylation, oxidation, desulfuration, or hydrolysis, yielding 10 or more different metabolites.

Parathion, an organophosphorous pesticide, is bioactivated in the liver to paraoxon, which is a much more potent cholinesterase inhibitor. Infusion of parathion by way of the vena cava, bypassing the liver, therefore produced little cholinesterase inhibition, but a moderate effect was induced following infusion by way of the portal vein. On the other hand, infusion of paraoxon via the vena cava nearly completely blocked the cholinesterase activity, whereas it had negligible effect after an infusion via the portal vein, since it is detoxicated in the liver (Westermann, 1961).

A reactive metabolite formed in a phase I reaction can be further metabolized, such as carbon tetrachloride and halothane. Such a metabolite may also be followed by a phase II reaction to produce another reactive metabolite.

2-Acetylaminofluorene, for example, after N-hydroxylation can undergo acetylation or form sulfate or glutathione conjugates, all of which are highly reactive.

The relative importance of various types of biotransformation of a toxicant depends on many host, environmental, and chemical factors as well as the dose of the toxicant. Since the metabolites resulting from different biotransformations are often markedly different in their effects, the toxicity of a chemical can be greatly altered by these factors, as will be discussed in Chapter 5.

Some of the metabolic reactions take place in sequence; hence interference with the normal metabolic pathway may have considerable influence on the toxic effects. For example, ethanol is normally metabolized through the intermediary product acetaldehyde. In normal humans the acetaldehyde formed is rapidly further metabolized to acetate, which in turn is converted to carbon dioxide and water. However, if the aldehyde dehydrogenase is inhibited, such as after the administration of disulfiram, the level of acetaldehyde rises and results in distress symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, headache, and palpitations.

A toxicant may be transformed in one organ to a stable proximate metabolite, which is transported to another organ and metabolizes to the ultimate toxic metabolite (Cohen, 1986).

Reeves (1981) provides a number of examples of biotransformations of "typical" chemicals, as well as a limited generalization of the typical routes of foreign compound metabolism in humans (Fig. 4).

## Developmental and Children Considerations

The ability to handle chemicals in the fetus, infant, and child vary distinctly from that in the adult. Makri et al. (2004) described the metabolic characteristics of neonates to the adolescent, which would ultimately affect the susceptibility of the subject to various chemicals. In general, the neonate, infant, or child is more susceptible to chemical exposure. The age categories are as follows: neonate as 0 to 1 month, infant from 1 month to 2 years, preschool from 2 to 6 years, the child from 6 to 12 years, and adolescent from 12 to 16 years. Cytochrome P-450 is low from zero to one year, which indicates that a chemical half-life is longer and elimination is prolonged. In essence, this manifests as a higher susceptibility to chemical effects. Alcohol dehydrogenase is barely detectable in the infant and is present at five years of age, indicating an inability to handle alcohol and thus toxic consequences to the infant. Glucuronidation pathways and acetylation capacity are not available until three years of age, again indicating an enhanced susceptibility. Although sulfate conjugation is higher from 0 to 3 years, the capacity falls to the adult level 3 to 10 years. The difficulty here is that sulfation is not a predominant route for elimination of various compounds and thus results in enhanced chemical susceptibility.

The U.S. EPA cancer risk assessment guidance recommends a default assumption that children are inherently up to 10-fold more sensitive than adults to carcinogen exposures. However, as pointed out by Pyatt et al. (2007), there

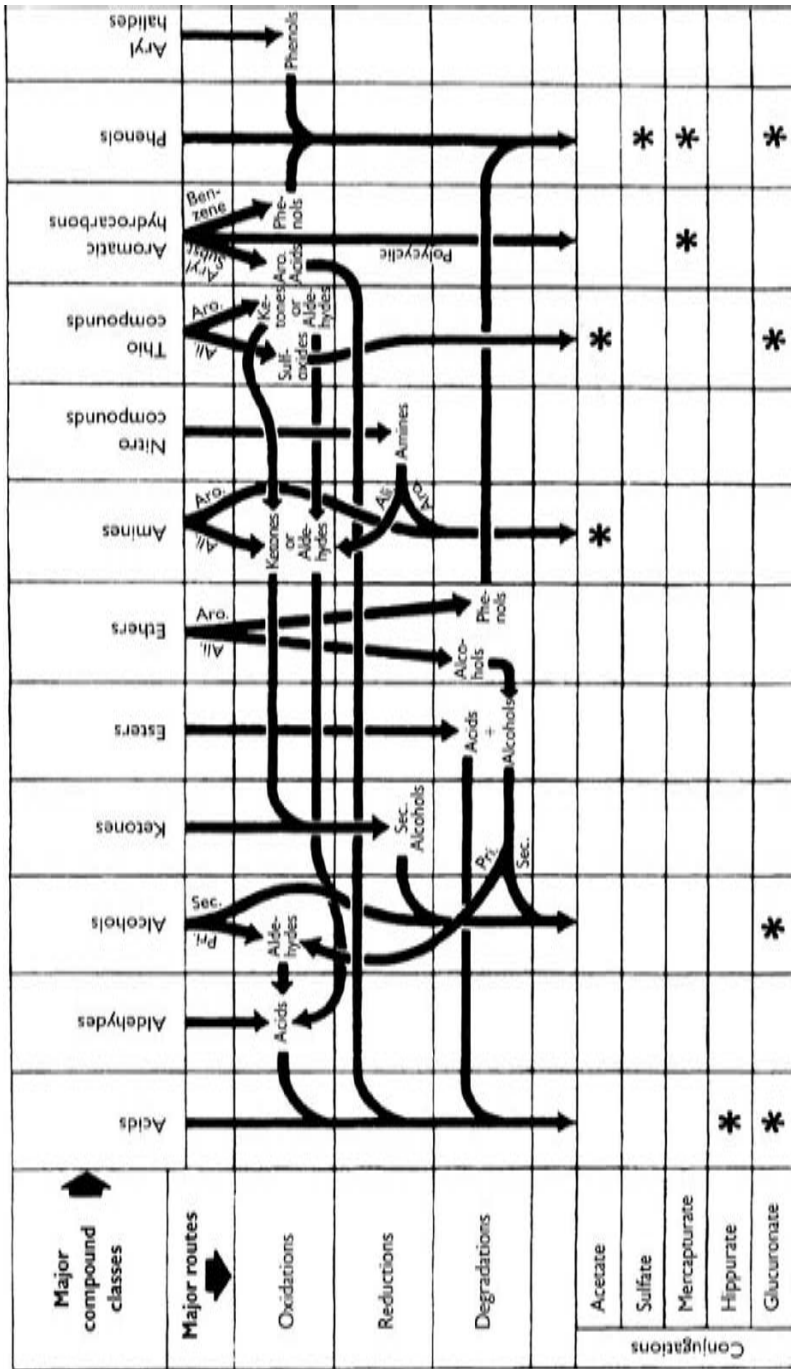


Figure 4 Typical routes of foreign compound metabolism in humans. Source: From Reeves (1981).

is no evidence that children are at increased risk for chemically induced acute myelogenous leukemia development. In fact it would appear that the risk for drug-induced leukemia development is actually lower in younger children. These findings clearly demonstrate that generalized observations in toxicology can result in miscalculations of risk and unnecessary concerns. The need for extensive data in making decisions, especially as it pertains to sensitive subpopulations is warranted.

## Elderly

It must also be borne in mind that the metabolic pathways are age-dependent and less reliable in the elderly, which also manifests as increased susceptibility to toxicity in the elderly. The elderly is generally a population that is exposed to multidrug therapy, resulting in drug interactions and reduced capacity of the liver to handle these agents. With concurrent environmental chemical exposure and multidrug administration in a subject with compromised ability to eliminate chemicals, the occurrence of toxicity attributed to environmental chemicals can be additive or synergistic.

## REFERENCES

- Adams JD Jr, Laegreid WW, Huijzer JC, et al. (1988). Pathology and glutathione status in 3-methylindole-treated rodents. *Res Commun Chem Pathol Pharmacol* 60, 323–336.
- Anders MW, ed (1985). *Bioactivation of Foreign Compounds*. New York, NY: Academic Press.
- Anders MW, Lash L, Dekant W, et al. (1988). Biosynthesis and biotransformation of glutathione S-conjugates to toxic metabolites. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 18, 311.
- Cohen GM (1986). Basic principles of target organ toxicity. In: Cohen GM, ed *Target Organ Toxicity*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Commandeur JNML, Stijntjes GJ, Vermeulen NPE (1995). Enzymes and transport systems involved in the formation and disposition of glutathione S-conjugates. *Pharmacol Revs* 47, 271–330.
- DeLeve LD, Kaplowitz N (1991). Glutathione metabolism and its role in hepatotoxicity. *Pharmacol Ther* 52, 287–305.
- Gillette JR, Mitchell JR (1975). Drug actions and interactions: Theoretical considerations. In: Eichler O, Farah A, Herken H, Welch AD, eds *Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology*. New Series, vol. 28. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 359–382.
- Halliwell B, Gutteridge JMC, Cross CE (1992). Free radicals, antioxidants and human diseases—Where are we now? *J Lab Clin Med* 119, 598–620.
- Makri A, Goveia M, Balbus J, et al. (2004). Children's susceptibility to chemicals: A review by developmental stage. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7, 417–435.
- Pyatt DW, Aylward LL, Hays, SM (2007). Is age an independent risk factor for chemically induced acute myelogenous leukemia in children? *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 379–400.

- Reeves AL (1981). The metabolism of foreign compounds. In: Reeves AL, ed *Toxicology: Principles and Practices*, Vol 1. New York, NY: John Wiley.
- Timbrell JA (1991). *Principles of Biochemical Toxicology*. London, UK: Taylor & Francis.
- Westermann EO (1961). Bioactivation of parathion. *Proceedings of International Pharmacology Meeting 6*: 205. In: Ariens EJ, Simmonis AM, Offermeier J, eds *Introduction to General Toxicology*. New York, NY: Academic Press, 147.
- Weisburger JH, Weisburger EK (1973). Biochemical formation and pharmacological, toxicological and pathological properties of hydroxylamines and hydroxyamic acids. *Pharmacol Rev* 25, 166.
- Willhite CC, Smith RP (1981). The role of cyanide liberation in the acute toxicity of aliphatic nitriles. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 59, 589–602.
- Wills ED (1981). The role of glutathione in drug metabolism and the protection of the liver against toxic metabolites. In: Gorrod JW, ed *Testing for Toxicity*. London, UK: Taylor & Francis.

## Appendix 1 Examples of Bioactivation\*

Parent compound	Toxic metabolite	Mechanism of toxicity	Toxic effect
Acetaminophen	<i>N</i> -Hydroxy derivative	Covalent binding	Hepatic necrosis
2-Acetylaminofluorene (AAF)	<i>N</i> -Hydroxy-AAF, sulfate ester	Covalent binding	Cancers
Aflatoxin B <sub>1</sub>	Aflatoxin-8,9-epoxide	Covalent binding	Hepatic cancer
Allyl formate	Acrolein	Covalent binding	Hepatic necrosis
Amiodarone	Desethylamiodarone	Ethylation	Pulmonary fibrosis
Amygdalin	Mandelonitrile, gut flora	Cyanide formation	Cytotoxic hypoxia
<i>N</i> -Arylsuccinimide	3,5-Dichlorophenyl-2-hydroxysuccinimide	Oxidation and hydrolysis	Nephrotoxicity
Benzene	Benzene epoxide	Covalent binding	Bone marrow depression
Benzo( <i>a</i> )pyrene (BaP)	BaP-7,8-epoxide → BaP-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide	Covalent binding	Cancers
Bromobenzene	Bromobenzene	Covalent binding	Hepatic, renal, bronchiolar
Butadiene	Epoxide	Covalent binding	Necrosis
2-Butoxyethanol	Butadiene monoepoxide	Covalent binding	Hepatic carcinogen
Carbon tetrachloride	2-Butoxyacetic acid	Oxidation	Hemolytic disorders
	Trichloromethane free radical	Covalent binding	Hepatic necrosis, hepatic cancer
Carcinogenic alkylnitrosamines	$\alpha$ -Hydroxylation	Alkylation	Hepatic cancer
Carcinogenic aminoazo dyes	<i>N</i> -Hydroxy derivatives	Covalent binding	Hepatic cancer
Carcinogenic polycyclic hydrocarbons	Epoxides, many organs	Covalent binding	Cancers, cytotoxicity
Chloroform	Phosgene	Covalent binding	Hepatic, renal necrosis
Cycasin	Methylazoxymethanol, gut flora	Alkylation	Cancers, hepatic necrosis



Cyclophosphamide	Many proposed	Alkylation	Cytotoxic
Formaldehyde	Protein, DNA	Covalent binding	Cytotoxicity and cancer
Fluoroacetate	Fluorocitrate	Enzyme inhibition	General toxicity
Furosemide	Epoxide?	Covalent binding	Hepatic, renal necrosis
Haloethane	Free radical	Covalent binding	Hepatic necrosis
Isoniazid	Acetylhydrazine	Covalent binding	Hepatic necrosis
Metam sodium	(Metabolite of methylisothiocyanate)	Reduction	Immunosuppression, spontaneous abortion increase frequency
Methemoglobin-producing aromatic amines and nitro compounds	N-Hydroxy metabolites	Cyclic oxidoreduction	Methemoglobinemia
Methoxyflurane	Inorganic fluoride	Enzyme inhibition	Renal failure
Monocrotaline	Monocrotaline pyrrole	Dehydrogenation	Lung and liver damage
Naphthylamine	N-Hydroxy naphthylamine	Covalent binding	Bladder cancer
Nitrates	Nitrites, gut flora	Hemoglobin oxidation	Methemoglobin
Nitrites plus secondary or tertiary amines	Nitrosamines	Alkylation	Hepatic, pulmonary cancers
Parathion	Paraoxon	Covalent binding to cholinesterase	Neuromuscular paralysis
Purine and pyrimidine base analogues	Mononucleotides, nucleotide triphosphates	Lethal synthesis, lethal incorporation	Cytotoxicity
Safrole	1'-Hydroxysafrole	Covalent binding	Cancers
Styrene	Styrene oxide	Oxidation	Lung tumors
Urethane	N-Hydroxyurethane	Alkylation	Cancers, cytotoxicity
Vinyl chloride	Epoxide	Covalent binding	Liver cancer

\*Site of bioactivation is the liver, except as otherwise noted.



---

# 4

---

## Toxic Effects

### CONTENTS

General Considerations	48
Spectrum of Toxic Effects	48
Local and Systemic Effects	48
Reversible and Irreversible Effects	48
Immediate and Delayed Effects	49
Morphologic, Functional, and Biochemical Effects	49
Allergic and Idiosyncratic Reactions	50
Graded and Quantal Responses	50
Target Organs	51
Sensitivity of the Organ	52
Distribution	52
Selective Uptake	52
Biotransformation	53
Repair Mechanism	53
Mechanisms of Action	53
Molecular Targets: Chemical Nature	55
Proteins	55
Receptors	55
Enzymes	55
Carriers	56
Structural Proteins	56
Coenzymes	57
Lipids	57
Nucleic Acids	57
Others	57
Receptors	58
Historical Notes	58

Functional Categories	58
Structure and Signal Transduction	59
Receptors in Toxicology	61
References	62

## GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Toxic effects are greatly variable in nature, potency, target organ, and mechanism of action. A better understanding of their characteristics can improve assessment of the associated health hazards. It can also facilitate the development of rational preventive and therapeutic measures.

All toxic effects result from biochemical interactions between the toxicants (and/or their metabolites) and certain structures of the organism. The structure may be nonspecific, such as any tissue in direct contact with corrosive chemicals. More often it is specific, involving a particular subcellular structure. A variety of structures may be affected.

The nature of effects may vary from organ to organ. The organ-specific effects will be discussed in some detail in the chapters in Part III of this book. In some cases, the reason why a particular organ is affected is known. This knowledge is useful in many ways. A few examples are described in this chapter.

## SPECTRUM OF TOXIC EFFECTS

The great variety of toxic effects can be grouped according to the target organ, mechanism of action, or other characteristics such as those discussed below.

### Local and Systemic Effects

Certain chemicals can produce injuries at the site of first contact with an organism. These local effects can be induced by caustic substances on the gastrointestinal tract, by corrosive materials on the skin, and by irritant gases and vapors on the respiratory tract.

Systemic effects result only after the toxicant has been absorbed and distributed to other parts of the body. Most toxicants exert their main effects on one or a few organs. These organs are referred to as the “target organs” of these toxicants. A target organ does not necessarily have the highest concentration of the toxicants in the organism. For example, the target organ of DDT is the central nervous system, but it is concentrated in adipose tissues.

### Reversible and Irreversible Effects

Reversible effects of toxicants are those that will disappear following cessation of exposure to them. Irreversible effects, in contrast, will persist or even progress

after exposure is discontinued. Certain effects are obviously irreversible. These include carcinomas, mutations, damage to neurons, and liver cirrhosis.

Certain effects are considered irreversible even though they disappear some time after cessation of exposure. For example, the “irreversible” cholinesterase-inhibiting insecticides inhibit the activity of this enzyme for a period of time that approximates that required for the synthesis and replacement of the enzyme.

The effect produced by a toxicant may be reversible if the organism is exposed at a low concentration and/or for a short duration, whereas irreversible effects may be produced at higher concentrations and/or for longer durations of exposure.

### **Immediate and Delayed Effects**

Many toxicants produce immediate toxic effects, which develop shortly after a single exposure, a notable example being cyanide poisoning. Delayed effects occur after a lapse of some time. Carcinogenic effects generally become manifest 10 to 20 years after the initial exposure in humans; even in rodents, a lapse of many months is required. In some cases, for example, diethylstilbestrol (DES) was taken by pregnant mothers to prevent miscarriages (Roy et al., 1997; Dean, 1998). However, vaginal adenocarcinomas occurred in the daughters of mothers taking DES. This effect took 15 to 20 years to develop not in the target subject but was found in the offspring. In addition, in males there was evidence of reproductive dysfunctions and increased occurrence of prostatic and testicular cancers. To determine these and other delayed effects of toxicants, long-term studies are essential not only in the directly exposed individual but also in the fetus or offspring.

### **Morphologic, Functional, and Biochemical Effects**

Morphologic effects refer to gross and microscopic changes in the morphology of the tissues. Many of these effects, such as necrosis and neoplasia, are irreversible and serious. Functional effects usually represent reversible changes in the functions of target organs. Functions of the liver and kidney (e.g., rate of excretion of dyes) are commonly tested in toxicologic studies.

Functional effects are in general reversible, whereas morphologic effects are not, and functional changes are generally detected earlier or in animals exposed to lower doses than those with morphologic changes. In addition, functional tests are valuable in following the progress of effects on target organs in long-term studies in animals and humans. It is worthwhile noting that functional tests can be positive for an adverse effect, yet there is no morphologic evidence. An example is the presence of depleted uranium producing proteinuria, indicative of a renal functional alteration, but there are no apparent morphologic changes (NAS, 2008). The role of concentration of depleted uranium at the target site may be important as lower amounts of metal may produce the effect seen, but the concentration is not sufficient to induce morphological alterations. This is of particular concern

for veterans of the Gulf War and for the assessment of hazard characterization. However, the results are often more variable.

Although all toxic effects are associated with biochemical alterations, in routine toxicity testing, “biochemical effects” usually refer to those without apparent morphologic changes. An example of such effects is the cholinesterase inhibition following exposure to organophosphate and carbamate insecticides. ALAD ( $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid dehydratase) inhibition in lead poisoning is another example (see Chaps. 19 and 21).

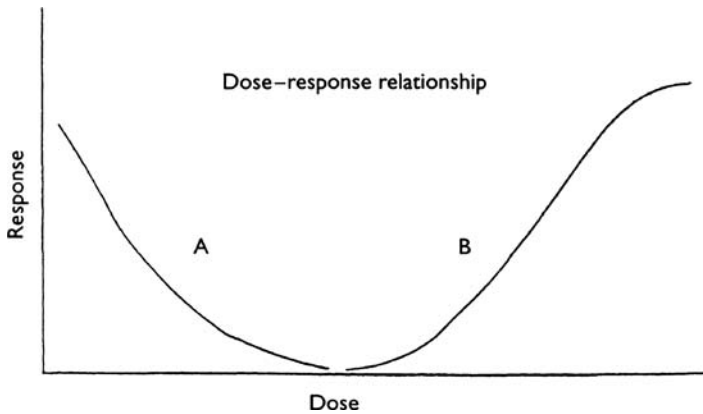
### Allergic and Idiosyncratic Reactions

Allergic reaction (also known as hypersensitivity and sensitization reaction) to a toxicant results from previous sensitization to that toxicant or a chemically similar one. The chemical acts as a hapten and combines with an endogenous protein to form an antigen, which in turn elicits the formation of antibodies. A subsequent exposure to the chemical will result in an antigen–antibody interaction, which provokes the typical manifestations of allergy. Thus, this reaction is different from the usual toxic effects, first because a previous exposure is required, and second because a typical sigmoid dose–response curve is usually not demonstrable with allergic reactions. Nevertheless, threshold doses were demonstrable for the induction as well as the challenge in dermal sensitization (Koschier et al., 1983). In addition to the immune response described above, humans can also generate self- or autoantigens, constituents of the body’s own tissues in response to a specific humoral or cell-mediated immune response termed as autoimmunity. An example of an autoimmune disease is systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), and a chemical implicated in SLE occurrence is trichloroethene (Wang et al., 2007).

Generally an idiosyncratic reaction is a genetically determined abnormal reactivity to a chemical. Some patients exhibit prolonged muscular reaction and apnea following a standard dose of succinylcholine. These patients have a deficiency of serum cholinesterase, which normally degrades the muscle relaxant rapidly. Similarly, people with a deficiency of NADH methemoglobinemia reductase are abnormally sensitive to nitrites and other chemicals that produce methemoglobinemia. Recent studies have shown that the susceptibility to arsenic-induced cancer development was dependent on genetic polymorphism. Arsenic metabolism is dependent on methylenetetrafolate reductase and glutathione S-transferases. Polymorphisms in these enzymes result in differences in arsenic metabolism and thus differences in susceptibility to cancer induction (Steinmaus et al., 2007).

### Graded and Quantal Responses

Effects on body weight, food consumption, and enzyme inhibition are examples of graded responses. On the other hand, mortality and tumor formation are examples of quantal (all-or-none) responses. Both types of responses can be statistically analyzed as illustrated in Chapter 6.



**Figure 1** Schematic representation of dose–response relationship. *Curve A*: certain essential nutrients, with which the response (deficiency syndrome) increases along with decreased intake. *Curve B*: most chemicals with which the response (toxic effects) increases along with increased intake. Certain substances, for example, selenium, exhibit both types of responses.

The relationship between dose and response usually follows an S-shaped curve. Figure 1(A) and 1(B) is a schematic representation of most chemicals and that of certain essential nutrients, respectively. The latter is exemplified by thiamine and ascorbic acid. Insufficient intake of these vitamins will induce deficiency syndromes, but higher intakes will be readily eliminated in the urine. Selenium is an essential element but excessive intake will be toxic (see Chap. 21); therefore its dose–response relationship is represented by curves A and B.

Another type of dose–response relationship consists of an effect observable at doses lower than the NOAEL (no-observed-adverse-effect level) (see Chap. 25) and is opposite to the main toxic effect (e.g., stimulation vs. inhibition). This is known as “hormesis” and has been reported for a number of chemicals (Calabrese and Baldwin, 2001).

As the dose of a toxicant increases, so does the response, either in terms of the proportion of the population responding or in terms of the severity of graded responses. Furthermore, additional toxic effects may also appear along with increased doses. For example, methyl mercury induces paresthesia at low doses, but it also induces ataxia, dysarthria, deafness, and death at higher doses, as shown in Figure 2 of Chapter 21, which depicts both *dose–response* and *dose–effect* relationships.

## TARGET ORGANS

Toxicants do not affect all organs to the same extent. An understanding of the mechanisms that determine organ specificity will assist in the advancement of various aspects of toxicology. Although the reason is not always clear, the probable

mechanisms by which many toxicants act specifically on certain organs are known. In general, the underlying mechanism is either a greater susceptibility of the target organ or a higher concentration of the chemical and/or its metabolite at the site of action. The higher concentration may arise under a variety of conditions. It should be noted that higher concentrations of a compound may be present, for example, in adipose tissue for DDT, yet the effect produced is in the brain at the lower amount. The concentration at the target tissue must be sufficient to produce an effect but this amount may not be the highest in the body.

### **Sensitivity of the Organ**

Neurons and myocardium depend primarily on adenosine triphosphate (ATP) generated by mitochondrial oxidation with little capacity for anaerobic metabolism, and there are rapid ionic shifts through the cell membrane. They are, therefore, especially sensitive to lack of oxygen resulting from disorders of the vascular system or of hemoglobin (e.g., carbon monoxide poisoning).

Rapidly dividing cells, such as those in the bone marrow and the intestinal mucosa, are more susceptible to mitotic poisons (e.g., methotrexate).

### **Distribution**

The respiratory tract and the skin are target organs of industrial and environmental toxicants because these are the sites of absorption. An example is provided by bis(chloromethyl) ether. It produces skin tumors in humans when applied topically, but will induce tumors in the respiratory tract after exposure by inhalation.

On a unit weight basis, the liver and kidney have a higher volume of blood flow, and thus they are in general exposed to toxicants to a greater extent. In addition, these organs have greater metabolic and excretory functions, which also render them more susceptible to toxicants. Being lipophilic, methylmercury can cross the blood–brain barrier and exert its toxic effects on the nervous system. Inorganic mercury compounds, in contrast, are not able to cross the blood–brain barrier and are not neurotoxic.

Radiation may damage DNA and induce tumors. Ultraviolet light has little penetrating power and therefore will only produce skin tumors, whereas ionizing radiation may penetrate tissues and cause leukemia and other types of cancer.

### **Selective Uptake**

Certain cells have a high affinity for selected chemicals. For example, in the respiratory tract, the type I and type II alveolar epithelial cells, which have an active uptake system for endogenous polyamines, will take up paraquat, a structurally similar chemical. This process can result in damage of the local tissue even when paraquat is administered orally.

Melanin is present in the eye, inner ear, etc. Drugs such as chloroquine and kanamycin that have an affinity for melanin may accumulate, after prolonged



administration, in these organs and cause damage. Strontium-90 is selectively deposited in the bone and can induce tumors of the bone.

### **Biotransformation**

As a result of *bioactivation*, reactive metabolites are formed. Liver, being a major site of biotransformation, is susceptible to the action of many toxicants. However, there are exceptions. For example, certain metabolites are sufficiently stable; they may affect other organs after being transported there. Thus bromobenzene, though bioactivated in the liver, can affect the kidney.

With some toxicants, bioactivation at certain sites is predominately responsible for the observed effects. For example, the organophosphorothioate insecticides, such as parathion, are bioactivated mainly in the liver, but the abundance of detoxifying enzymes and of reactive but noncritical binding sites there prevents any overt signs of toxicity. On the other hand, nervous tissue has much less bioactivating enzymes, but because the bioactivation takes place near the critical target sites, that is, the synapses, the main toxic manifestations of this group of toxicants arise from the nervous system.

The bioactivating enzymes are not necessarily evenly distributed in an organ or tissue. For example, the Clara cells (nonciliated bronchiolar epithelial cells) constitute only 1% of the cells in the lung, yet they contain a major portion of the pulmonary cytochrome P-450. The lung is therefore more susceptible to damage by such toxicants as 4-ipomeanol and CCl<sub>4</sub>. Recently, Clara cells were found to metabolize styrene to styrene oxide that ultimately resulted in lung carcinoma. A similar situation exists in the kidney. The proximal tubules, especially the S<sub>3</sub> cells, which are located in the pars recta portion of these tubules, have the highest concentrations of this enzyme system, hence the most susceptible parts of the kidney are the proximal tubules, especially its pars recta portion. The nephrotoxicity of haloalkenes is attributed to renal metabolites generated in the kidney.

### **Repair Mechanism**

A toxicant may affect a specific organ because of lack of the required repair mechanism. For example, N-methyl-N-nitrosourea (MNU) produces tumors in the rat mainly in the brain, occasionally in the kidney, but not in the liver. Kleihues and Cooper (1976) demonstrated that the liver is capable of enzymatically excising the O<sub>6</sub>-alkyl-guanine induced by MNU from the DNA, whereas the brain is deficient in this respect. The capacity of the kidney falls between those of the liver and brain.

### **MECHANISMS OF ACTION**

Although the mechanisms of action of all toxicants are not fully understood, a number of biochemical reactions are likely involved. The underlying processes/subcellular sites are listed, along with some exemplary toxicants, in Table 1.

**Table 1** Some Mechanisms of Toxic Action<sup>a</sup>

Mechanism of action	Process/subcellular site	Examples of toxicants
Interference with normal receptor–ligand interaction	Neurotransmitters	Botulinum toxin, organophosphate pesticides
	Hormone receptors	Amitrole, DES, retinoic acid, TCDD
	Enzymes	Fluoroacetate, cyanide, organophosphate pesticides
	Transport proteins	CO, nitrites
Interference with membrane function	Excitable membrane-ion influx	DDT, saxitoxin, tetrodotoxin
	Membrane-fluidity	Organic solvents (e.g., CCl <sub>4</sub> , chloroform), ethanol
	Lysosomal membranes	CCl <sub>4</sub> , phosphorus, phalloidin
	Mitochondrial membranes	CCl <sub>4</sub> , organotins, phosphorus
Interference with cellular energy production	Hemoglobin	CO, nitrites
	Oxidative phosphorylation-uncoupling	Dinitrophenol, organotins
	Electron transport-inhibition	Cyanide, rotenone
	Carbohydrate metabolism-inhibition	Fluoroacetate
Covalent binding to biomolecules	Lipids-peroxidation	CCl <sub>4</sub> , ozone, paraquat, phenytoin
	Glutathione-depletion	Acetaminophen
	Protein thiols-oxidation	Acetaminophen, phenytoin
	Nucleic acids	Carcinogens, mutagens, teratogens
Perturbation of calcium homeostasis	Cytoskeleton, etc.	Arsenic, cobalt, doxorubicin, microcystin, paraquat, phalloidin
	Apoptosis	TCDD

<sup>a</sup>The toxic effects of a number of the toxicants are described in other sections. For the relevant page, refer to the Chemical Index.

The table clearly shows the diverse nature of the mechanisms as well as the multiple processes/sites that are involved in the action of a number of toxicants. For many of the toxicants listed in Table 1, the mechanisms will be described, along with their toxic manifestations, in the relevant chapters.

Of the various mechanisms of action, disturbance of calcium homeostasis merits special mention because of its importance and complexity. The extracellular level of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is more than 10-fold higher than that in the cytosol. The ionic differential is maintained by a variety of mechanisms including the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transporting ATPase at the plasma membrane, the store in the endoplasmic reticulum, mitochondria, and nucleus as well as the binding with intracellular calmodulin. Increase in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  may be produced via different mechanisms. For example,  $\text{CCl}_4$  and bromobenzene act through inhibition of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase, acetaminophen, and  $\text{CCl}_4$  through damage of plasma membrane, and cadmium by release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from mitochondria. The rise in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  may affect cytoskeleton thereby damaging cellular integrity either directly or through  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated proteases. Oxidant stress produces injury in lung through an increase in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in alveolar macrophages by a Ca-mediated signaling (Hoyal et al., 1998). In addition, TCDD (2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin) may promote "apoptosis" (programmed cell death) by combining with Ah receptor, increasing intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activating endonuclease and inducing DNA breakdown (Timbrell, 1991; Halliwell and Cross, 1994).

Most of the reactions take place at various subcellular sites. Table 1 in Chapter 13 lists a number of hepatotoxicants along with the organelles that they affect.

## MOLECULAR TARGETS: CHEMICAL NATURE

### Proteins

#### Receptors

Receptors are located across plasma membrane, or in cytosol, or nucleus, and serve to transmit physical or chemical signals to the cell. There are many types of receptors serving a variety of functions. Some of them are known to be affected by toxicants (see section Receptors, page 58).

#### Enzymes

Enzymes are common targets of toxicants. The enzyme effects may be specific, such as the inhibition of acetylcholinesterase (AChE). They may be reversible, such as the case with a number of carbamate insecticides on AChE. Irreversible enzyme inhibition is exemplified by DFP (diisopropyl fluorophosphate), which covalently bind with the enzymes.

The effects may be nonspecific. For example, lead and mercury are inhibitors of a great variety of enzymes. However, some enzymes are more susceptible: for

example,  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid dehydrase is especially sensitive to lead, and its activity in erythrocytes is used as an early indicator of lead poisoning.

The last step of the oxidation of many chemicals is catalyzed by the cytochrome oxidase chain. Hydrocyanic acid (HCN) can bind with the iron in these enzymes and block their redox function. The aerobic respiration of cells is then arrested and biochemical asphyxia ensues.

An enzyme can also be inhibited by a chemical derived by synthesis from the toxicant such as fluoroacetic acid and its derivatives. The process is known as *lethal synthesis*. Fluoroacetic acid is metabolized as acetic acid in the citric acid cycle and fluorocitric acid is synthesized, instead of citric acid. Since fluorocitric acid is an inhibitor of aconitase, further metabolism, and consequently the energy production, is blocked.

In a somewhat similar manner, amino acid antagonists (e.g., azaserine and fluorophenylalanine) can interfere with the utilization of specific amino acids in the synthesis of proteins.

The energy that is liberated by biochemical oxidation is normally stored in the form of high-energy phosphates. *Uncoupling agents* such as dinitrophenol interfere with the synthesis of energy-rich phosphates, and thus the energy is liberated as heat instead of being stored.

### Carriers

Carriers such as hemoglobin can be affected by a toxicant through preferential binding. For example, carbon monoxide can bind hemoglobin at the site where oxygen is normally bound. Because of its greater affinity for hemoglobin, it can inactivate hemoglobin and cause manifestations of oxygen deficiency in tissues.

Oxygen transport can also be impaired by an accumulation of methemoglobin, which is an oxidation product of hemoglobin with no oxygen binding ability. In normal individuals, the trace amount of methemoglobin is readily reduced to hemoglobin. Certain toxicants, such as nitrites and aromatic amines, can enhance the formation of methemoglobin and overwhelm the normal process of its reduction to hemoglobin. People with glucose-6-phosphatase dehydrogenase deficiency have a lower capacity to regenerate hemoglobin from methemoglobin and are thus prone to have methemoglobinemia.

P-glycoprotein is a transmembrane protein expressed by small intestine, kidneys, liver, placenta, and the blood-brain barrier (Abu-Qare et al., 2003). The function of P-glycoprotein is to bind to a chemical and then transport the agent from the cell, in essence it serves as a carrier of xenobiotic from the cell. Compounds such as ivermectin, chlorpyrifos, and endosulfan showed decreased effectiveness due to increased expression of P-glycoprotein, which acts as a protective transporter.

### Structural Proteins

Extracellular structural proteins such as collagen are unlikely to be affected by toxicants. However, toxicants such as ozone and asbestos may cause an increase

in fibroblasts and deposition of collagen in the lung (Chap. 11). Intracellular structural proteins, such as cytoskeleton, may be damaged by toxicants such as arsenic (Li and Chou, 1992) paraquat (Li et al., 1987), benzene (Ross, 2000), styrene (Cohen et al., 2002), and deoxynivalenol (Pestka and Smolinski, 2005).

### Coenzymes

Coenzymes are essential for the normal function of enzymes. Their levels in the body can be diminished by toxicants that inhibit their synthesis. For example, pyriethamine can inhibit thiamine kinase, which is responsible for the formation of the coenzyme thiamine pyrophosphate. NADPH can be destroyed in the presence of free radicals, which can be produced by such toxicants as carbon tetrachloride.

Metal-dependent enzymes can be inhibited by chelating agents (e.g., cyanides and dithiocarbamates) through removal of metal coenzymes such as copper and zinc.

### Lipids

*Peroxidation* of polyenoic fatty acids has been suggested as a mechanism of the necrotizing action of a number of toxicants, such as carbon tetrachloride, ozone, and estrogen (Roy et al., 2007).

*Cell membrane* derangement may result after exposure to various types of toxicants. The general anesthetics, ether and halothane, as well as many other lipophilic substances can accumulate in the cell membranes and thereby interfere with transport of oxygen and glucose into the cell. The cells of the central nervous system are especially susceptible to a lowering of oxygen tension and glucose level and are therefore among the first to be deleteriously affected by these substances. Membrane dissolution can follow contact with organic solvents and amphoteric detergents. The ions of mercury and cadmium can complex with phospholipid bases and expand the surface area of the membrane, thereby altering its function. Lead ion can increase the fragility of erythrocytes and result in hemolysis. The oxygen-carrying function of hemoglobin is lost after it escapes from the hemolyzed erythrocytes.

### Nucleic Acids

*Covalent binding* between a toxicant (such as alkylating agents) and replicating DNA and RNA can induce cancer, mutations, and teratogenesis. Such toxicants may also exert immunosuppressive effects.

*Antimetabolites* such as aminopterin and methotrexate may be incorporated into DNA and RNA and then interfere with their replication.

### Others

*Hypersensitivity reactions* result from repeated exposure to a particular substance or to its chemically related substances. The latter phenomenon is referred to as

cross sensitization. The substance, if it is a large polypeptide, acts as an antigen and stimulates the body to form antibodies. Otherwise, the substance acts as a hapten and combines with proteins in the body to form antigens. The reaction between an antigen from a later exposure and the corresponding antibodies results in the release of histamine, bradykinin, and others. The reaction has a typical pattern irrespective of the nature of the antigen. Photosensitization reaction is somewhat similar except sunlight is also required for its induction (see Chaps. 11, 12, and 15).

*Corrosive agents* such as strong acids and bases can destroy local tissues by precipitating cellular proteins. Irritation of the underlying tissues occurs as a consequence.

*Blockade* of renal and biliary tubules may follow the precipitation of relatively insoluble toxicants or their metabolites. For example, acetylsulfapyridine, a metabolite of sulfapyridine, may block renal tubules, and harmol glucuronide from harmol may produce cholestasis.

## RECEPTORS

### Historical Notes

It has long been observed that a number of poisons and toxins exert certain specific biologic effects. John N. Langley proposed in 1905 the concept of a “receptive substance.” That the receptors are protein in nature was first suggested by Welsh and Taub (1951).

To demonstrate the protein nature of acetylcholine receptors, Lu (1952) showed that the stimulant effect of acetylcholine on isolated rabbit ileum was lost after the ileum was treated with the proteolytic enzyme trypsin (10 mg/100 mL, for 30 minutes). That the effect was on the receptor rather than the muscle was demonstrated by the fact that the treated ileum still responded to barium chloride, a direct-acting muscle stimulant. In 1971, Cuatrecasas observed that trypsin, at the same concentration as that used by Lu, eliminated the activity of insulin receptor (Cuatrecasas, 1971).

In the 1970s cholinergic receptors (ChR) were solubilized, isolated, and characterized by several groups of investigators. The amino acid composition of ChR was reported by Heilbronn et al. (1975). They also found that ChR contained about 6% carbohydrates. Although it has been generally agreed that the ligand–receptor complex would initiate responses in the cells, it was Rodbell et al. (1971) who proposed that a “transducer” was required to act between the receptor and the effector. This “transducer” was later confirmed as the G-proteins (see Gilman, 1987).

### Functional Categories

There are many types of receptors, located either in the cell membrane, the cytosol, or the nucleus. They serve a variety of functions such as metabolism, secretion,

muscular contraction, neural activity, and proliferation. In general they are placed in the categories listed below.

*Neurotransmitter receptors* include the cholinergic (nicotinic, located in ganglia and skeletal muscles, and muscarinic in smooth muscles and brain),  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -adrenergic, dopamine, opiates (e.g., endorphin), and histamine ( $H_1$  and  $H_2$ ) receptors.

*Hormone receptors* are for insulin, cortisone, ACTH, thyrotropin, estrogen, progesterone, angiotensin, glucagon, prostaglandin, and others.

Certain chemicals such as antidepressants and antitumor agents bind with specific macromolecules that may be considered as “drug receptors.” These receptors may well have endogenous messengers (such as endorphins and enkephalins for opiates) but these are as yet undiscovered. Another example of such agents is benzodiazepine, for which receptors, and possible endogenous effectors, have been discovered. Furthermore, antagonists have been synthesized (Lal et al., 1988).

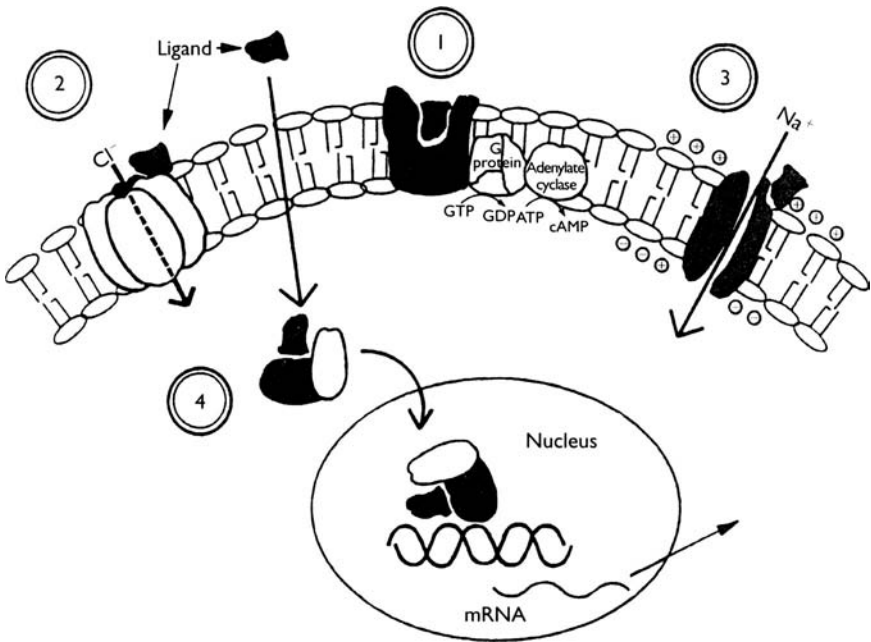
Other receptors are located on *enzymes* and *carrier proteins*. They may also be affected by toxicants as listed in Table 1.

## Structure and Signal Transduction

The various functional categories of receptors described above exert their biological effects upon binding with an appropriate ligand, which may be an endogenous or exogenous substance. These effects are preceded by a series of biochemical activities, the signaling, which vary according to the structural characteristics of the receptor. Structurally they may be placed in four classes of receptors. These are (1) G-protein coupled receptors, (2) ligand-gated ion channels, (3) voltage-gated channels, and (4) intracellular receptors.

With the G-protein coupled receptors (Fig. 2: 1), binding with a ligand results in the activation of the G-protein, converting GTP (guanosine triphosphate) to GDP (guanosine diphosphate), which activates or inhibits a specific enzyme (adenylate cyclase or phospholipase C), followed by the formation of a “second messenger,” for example, cAMP (from ATP), diacylglycerol, or phosphoinositol. The second messenger then initiates the cellular response—the biologic effect. Typical ligands for this class of receptors are adrenergic, muscarinic, cholinergic, and dopaminergic neurotransmitters and their analogs (e.g., ephedrine), as well as others such as diphtheria toxin.

The second class of receptors are transmembrane proteins with an ion channel (Fig. 2: 2). Upon binding with a ligand, the receptor undergoes conformational changes resulting in the opening of the channel. This process allows changes of  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Cl^-$ , or  $Ca^{2+}$  concentrations across the plasma membrane. Nicotinic cholinergic and  $GABA_A$  receptors belong to this class. In addition, glutamate and chemicals such as kainate, diazepam, barbiturates, and picrotoxin also act on this type of ion-channel receptors.



**Figure 2** Schematic representation of the four classes of receptors. 1. G-protein coupled receptor, 2. ligand-gated ion channel, 3. voltage-gated ion channel, and 4. intracellular receptor. *Source:* From Mailman and Lawler, 1994.

The voltage-gated conductance channels (Fig. 2: 3) are located across plasma membranes of excitable cells such as neurons and their axons. At present, no endogenous ligands are known. However, the neurotoxins tetrodotoxin and saxitoxin (see Chap. 17) bind to a site near the extracellular opening of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel and block the entry of  $\text{Na}^+$  through the channel, thereby interfering with the conduction of nerve impulse.

Intracellular receptors are located in the cytosol or nucleus (Fig. 2: 4). The main endogenous ligands are estrogens, androgens, progestins, glucocorticoids, and mineralocorticoids. A representative toxicant that binds with this type of receptor is TCDD. It binds with the Ah receptor in the cytosol, but moves to the nucleus after the binding. For additional details see Mitchell (1992), and Mailman and Lawler (1994).

The ligand that binds with the receptor may be an “agonist” or an “antagonist.” An agonist induces the “physiologic” function of the receptor, whereas an antagonist blocks its functions. For example, methacholine is an agonist interacting with certain cholinergic receptors, mimicking the effects of acetylcholine, whereas atropine, an antagonist, blocks these effects. Both types have adverse



health effects. In addition, an agonist may cause a toxic effect by failing to dissociate from the receptor readily enough, thereby preventing further action of the endogenous messenger, and an antagonist can compete with the messenger for the site on the receptor and block the action of the latter. In addition, a toxicant may induce tolerance to its toxicity by reducing the number of receptors, as shown by Costa et al. (1981) with the chronic treatment with an organophosphate AChE inhibitor.

## Receptors in Toxicology

The receptor concept has been valuable in advancing our understanding of certain biochemical, physiologic, and pharmacologic effects, as well as facilitating the development of drugs. Its role in toxicology is evidenced by an increasing number of receptors being recognized as mediators of effects of toxicants.

Poland and Knutson (1982) reviewed the extensive literature on TCDD and related halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons with respect to their toxicity, their ability to induce AHH (aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase), and their affinity for a cytosol receptor. It was suggested that TCDD binds with the Ah (aromatic hydrocarbon) receptor. The TCDD–receptor complex translocates to the nucleus and there it interacts with specific genomic recognition sites. This initiates the transcription and translation of the specific genes that code for AHH. A preponderance of evidence suggests that most of the TCDD toxicities are receptor-mediated. It was also noted that the concentration of this cytosol receptor is much higher in the liver of C57 BL/6 mice than that of DBA/2 mice, and that the former strain of mice was much more susceptible than the latter with respect to TCDD-induced thymus involution, teratogenesis, and hepatic porphyria. Furthermore, the genetic evidence indicated that the *Ah* locus in mice was the structural gene for the cytosol receptor (see also Whitlock, 1990; Okey et al., 1994).

Many neurotoxicants act through receptors on CNS, PNS, and autonomic nervous systems. For example, certain organophosphorus compounds act not only through acetylcholine but also on muscarinic receptors (Huff et al., 1994). The receptors for TPA (12,0-tetradecanoyl phorbol 13-acetate) and retinoic acid are worth noting. TPA, a tumor promoter, binds with a receptor that initiates a chain of events leading to selected replication of initiated cells (Blumberg et al., 1983). Retinoic acid, as TCDD, acts on an estrogen receptor to exert teratogenic and other effects (see Lu et al., 1994). A few examples of toxicants that act through receptors are mentioned in the previous section. Peroxisome proliferators such as the hypolipidemic drug clofibrate and the plasticizers phthalate esters are active on the receptors that are involved in the metabolism of polyunsaturated fatty acids. Furthermore, many immunotoxicants act through specific receptors on T cell, B cell, cytokine, polymorphonuclear cells, and monocytes (Lad et al., 1995). Aberrant expression and regulation of insulin-like growth factor binding protein 3 regulates normal and malignant cell growth (Zou et al., 1998).

## REFERENCES

- Abu-Qare AW, Elmasry E, Abou-Donia MB (2003). A role for P-glycoprotein in environmental toxicology. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 6, 279–288.
- Blumberg PM, Delcos BK, Dunn JA, et al. (1983). Phorbol ester receptors and the in vitro effects of tumor promoters. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 407, 303–315.
- Calabrese EJ, Baldwin LA (2001). The frequency of U-shaped dose responses in the toxicological literature. *Toxicol Sci* 62, 330–338.
- Cohen JT, Carlson G, Charnley G, et al. (2002). A comprehensive evaluation of the potential health risks associated with occupational and environmental exposure to styrene. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 5, 1–263.
- Costa LG, Schwab BW, Hand H, et al. (1981). Reduced [H3] quinuclidinyl benzilate binding to muscarinic receptors in disulfoton-tolerant mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 60, 441–450.
- Cuatrecasas P (1971). Perturbation of the insulin receptor of isolated fat cells with proteolytic enzymes. *J Biol Chem* 246, 6522–6531.
- Dean BS (1998). Diethylstilbesterol. In: Wexler P, ed. *Encyclopedia of Toxicology*. New York, NY: Academic Press, 477–478.
- Gilman AG (1987). G-proteins: Transducers of receptor-generated signals. *Ann Rev Biochem* 56, 615–649.
- Halliwell B, Cross CE (1994). Oxygen-derived species: Their relation to human disease and environmental stress. *Environ Health Persp* 102(suppl 10), 5–12.
- Heilbronn E, Mattsson C, Elfman L (1975). Biochemical and physical properties of the nicotinic ACh receptor from *Torpedo marmorata*. In: Wollemann M, ed. *Properties of Purified Cholinergic and Adrenergic Receptors*, vol. 37. New York, NY: Elsevier.
- Hoyal CR, Giron-Calle J, Forman HJ (1998). The alveolar macrophage as a model of calcium signaling in oxidative stress. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 117–134.
- Huff RA, Corcoran JJ, Anderson JK, et al. (1994). Chloropyrifos oxon binds directly to muscarinic receptors and inhibits cAMP accumulation in rat striatum. *J Pharmacol Exp Therap* 269, 329–335.
- Kleihues P, Cooper HK (1976). Repair excision of alkylated bases from DNA in vivo. *Oncology* 33, 86–88.
- Koschier FJ, Burden EJ, Brunkhorst CS, et al. (1983). Concentration-dependent elicitation of dermal sensitization in guinea pigs treated with 2,4-toluene diisocyanate. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 67, 401–407.
- Lad PM, Kapstein JS, Lin CE, eds. (1995). *Signal Transduction in Leukocytes. G-Protein-Related and Other Pathways*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Lal H, Kumer B, Forster MJ (1988). Enhancement of learning and memory in mice by a benzodiazepine antagonist. *FASEB J* 2, 2707–2711.
- Li W, Chou IN (1992). Effects of sodium arsenite on the cytoskeleton and cellular glutathione levels in cultured cells. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 114, 132–139.
- Li W, Zhao Y, Chou IN (1987). Paraquat-induced cytoskeletal injury in cultured cells. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 91, 96–106.
- Lu FC (1952). The effects of proteolytic enzymes on the isolated rabbit intestine. *Br J Pharmacol* 7, 624–640.
- Lu Y, Wang X, Safe S (1994). Interaction of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin and retinoic acid in MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 127, 1–8.

- Mailman RB, Lawler CP (1994). Toxicant-receptor interactions: Fundamental principles. In: Hodgson E, Levi PE, eds. Introduction to Biochemical Toxicology. Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange.
- Mitchell RH (1992). Inositol lipids in cellular signalling mechanisms. Trends Biochem Sci 17, 274–276.
- NAS (National Academy of Sciences) (2008). Review of the Toxicologic and Radiologic Risks to Military Personnel from Exposure to Depleted Uranium During and After Combat. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.
- Okey AB, Riddick DS, Harper PA (1994). The Ah receptor: mediator of the toxicity of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin (TCDD) and related compounds. Toxicol Lett 70, 1–22.
- Pestka JJ, Smolinski AT (2005). Deoxynivalenol: Toxicology and potential effects on humans. J Toxicol Environ Health B 8, 39–69.
- Poland A, Knutson JC (1982). 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin and related halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons: Examination of the mechanism of toxicity. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 22, 517–554.
- Rodbell M, Birnbaumer L, Pohl SL, et al. (1971). The glucagon sensitive adenyl cyclase system in plasma membranes of rat liver. V. An obligatory role of guanyl nucleotides in glucagon action. J Biol Chem 246, 1877–1887.
- Ross D (2000). The role of metabolism and specific metabolites in benzene-induced toxicity: Evidence and issues. J Toxicol Environ Health A 61, 357–372.
- Roy D, Cai Q, Felty Q, et al. (2007). Estrogen-induced generation of reactive oxygen and nitrogen species, gene damage and estrogen-dependent cancers. J Toxicol Environ Health B 10, 235–257.
- Roy D, Palangat M, Chen C-W, et al. (1997). Biochemical and molecular changes at the cellular level in response to exposure to environmental estrogen-like chemicals. J Toxicol Environ Health 50, 1–29.
- Steinmaus C, Moore LE, Shipp M, et al. (2007). Genetic polymorphisms in MTHFR 677 and 1298, GSTM1 and T1 and metabolism of arsenic. J Toxicol Environ Health A 70, 159–170.
- Timbrell JA (1991). Principles of Biochemical Toxicology. London, UK: Taylor & Francis.
- Wang G, Ansari GAS, Khan MF (2007). Involvement of lipid peroxidation-derived aldehyde–protein adduct in autoimmunity mediated by trichloroethene. J Toxicol Environ Health A 70: 1977–1985.
- Welsh JH, Taub R (1951). The significance of the carbonyl group and ether oxygen in the reaction of acetylcholine with receptor substance. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 103, 62–73.
- Whitlock JP Jr (1990). Genetic and molecular aspects of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin action. Ann Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 30, 251–277.
- Zou T, Fleisher AS, Kong D, et al. (1998). Sequence alterations of insulin-like growth factor binding protein 3 in neoplastic and normal gastrointestinal tissues. Cancer Res 58, 4802–4804.



# 5

## Modifying Factors of Toxic Effects

### CONTENTS

General Considerations	65
Host Factors	66
Species, Strain, and Individual	66
Gender, Hormonal Status, and Pregnancy	68
Age	69
Nutritional Status	72
Diseases	72
Environmental Factors	73
Physical Factors	73
Social Factors	73
Chemical Interaction	73
Types of Interaction	73
Mechanisms of Action	74
Characteristics of Enzyme Induction	75
Interaction as Toxicologic Tools	75
References	76
Appendix 1 Mechanisms Underlying Certain Modifying Factors	78
Appendix 2 Strain-Related Differences in Drug-Induced Responses	79

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Although toxicity is an inherent property of a substance, the nature and extent of the toxic manifestations in an organism that is exposed to the substance depend on a variety of factors. The obvious ones are the dose and duration of exposure. However, they also include such less obvious host factors as the species and strain of the animal, gender and age, nutritional and hormonal status as well as the

presence of disease such as hypertension or compromised function as in AIDS. Various environmental (physical and social) factors also play a part. In addition, the toxic effect of a chemical may be influenced by simultaneous, concurrent, or prior exposure to other chemicals.

The toxic effects may be modified in a number of ways: alterations of the absorption, distribution, and excretion of a chemical; an increase or decrease of its biotransformation; and changes of the sensitivity of the receptor at the target organ. An example is the combination of *N,N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET), an insect repellent; pyridostigmine (PB), an antinerve agent; and permethrin, an insecticide used in the Gulf War. PB by itself did not produce any adverse effects but when combined with DEET the veterans complained of neurotoxicity. Studies showed that DEET application to skin changed dermal properties such that PB was absorbed to a greater extent and thus toxicity was seen.

A clear understanding of the existence of these factors and of their mode of action is important in designing the protocols of toxicologic investigation. It is equally important in evaluating the significance of the toxicologic data and in assessing the safety/risk to humans under specified conditions of exposure.

The most common mechanism underlying various modifying factors is differences in the rate of detoxication. However, differences in bioactivation, and toxicokinetic, toxicodynamic physiologic, and anatomic characteristics are responsible for a number of modifying factors. Examples are listed in Appendix 1.

## HOST FACTORS

### Species, Strain, and Individual

In general, different species of animals respond similarly to most toxicants. However, differences of toxic effect from one species to another have long been recognized. Knowledge in this field has been used to develop, for example, pesticides, which are more toxic to pests than to humans and other mammals. Among various species of mammals, most effects of toxicants are somewhat more similar. This fact forms the basis of predicting the toxicity to humans from results obtained in toxicologic studies conducted in other mammals, such as rat, mouse, dog, rabbit, and monkey. There are, however, notable differences in toxicity even among mammals (Williams, 1974).

Some of these differences can be attributed to variations in detoxication mechanisms. For example, the sleeping time induced in several species of laboratory animals by hexobarbital shows marked differences, which are obviously attributable to the activity of the detoxication enzyme as shown in Table 1.

Differences in response to hexobarbital, although less marked, also exist among various strains of mice (Jay, 1955). Other examples include ethylene glycol and aniline. Ethylene glycol is metabolized to oxalic acid, which is responsible for the toxicity, or to carbon dioxide. The magnitude of the toxicity of ethylene

**Table 1** Species Differences in Duration of Action and Metabolism of Hexobarbital

Species	Duration of action (win)	Plasma half-life (min)	Relative enzyme activity( $\mu\text{g/g/hr}$ )]	Plasma level on awakening ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ )
Mouse	12	19	598	89
Rabbit	49	60	196	57
Rat	90	140	135	64
Dog	315	260	36	19

Dose of barbiturate 50 mg/kg in dogs, 100 mg/kg in the other animals.

Source: From Quinn et al. (1958).

glycol in animals is in the following order: cat > rat > rabbit, and this is the same for the extent of oxalic acid production. Aniline is metabolized in the cat and dog mainly to *o*-aminophenol, which is more toxic, but it is metabolized mainly to *p*-aminophenol in the rat and hamster, which are less susceptible to aniline (Timbrell, 1991).

Differences in bioactivation also account for many dissimilarities of toxicity. A notable example is 2-naphthylamine, which produced bladder tumors in the dog and human but not in the rat, rabbit, or guinea pig. Dogs and humans, but not the others, excrete the carcinogenic metabolite 2-naphthyl hydroxylamine (Miller et al., 1964). Acetylaminofluorene (AAF) is carcinogenic to many species of animals but not to the guinea pig. However, the *N*-hydroxy metabolite of AAF is carcinogenic to all animals including the guinea pig, demonstrating that the difference between the guinea pig and the other animals is not in their response to the toxicant but in the bioactivation (Weisburger and Weisburger, 1973).

Although differences in biotransformation, including bioactivation, account for species variation in susceptibility to a great majority of chemicals; other factors such as absorption, distribution, and excretion also play a part. In addition, variations in physiologic functions are important in toxic manifestations in response to such toxicants as squill. This toxic chemical is a good rodenticide because rats cannot vomit, whereas humans and many other mammals can eliminate this poison by vomiting (Doull, 1980). Anatomic differences may also be responsible, such as with butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA) (see Chap. 19).

With the diversity in the number of rat strains available, it should not be surprising that there are differences in chemical-induced sensitivities. In general, each chemical will induce a change in all rat strains, but the degree of the effect will vary amongst strains (as in all science, there are no exceptions). However, there may be no response in humans. Clearly there are hormonal differences between males and females, but the precise role of these hormones in strain-associated chemical-induced outcomes still remains to be established. It should be noted that the reproductive cycle in female F344 rats is dramatically different from that of Sprague-Dawley rats (Kacew et al., 1995) (Appendix 2). Consequently, the

incidence of spontaneous and chemical-induced mammary tumorigenesis is markedly higher in Sprague-Dawley rats, as this stock possesses greater estrogen levels. The human does not resemble the Sprague-Dawley strain and thus findings cannot be applied to humans. In comparing both males and females of the same strain, in general, chemicals including nitrosamines, decalin, hydroquinone, chloroform, etc., induce markedly greater responses in the male. It is of interest that in studies where males and females of different strains are compared, the males of certain strains are far more susceptible to adverse effects.

Apart from the differences in susceptibility that exist from one species to another and from one strain to another, there are also variables among individuals of the same species and same strain. Although the magnitude of such individual variations is usually relatively small, there are exceptions. This phenomenon has been widely studied among humans. For example, there are "slow inactivators," who are deficient in acetyltransferase. Such individuals acetylate isoniazid only slowly and are thus likely to suffer from peripheral neuropathy resulting from an accumulation of isoniazid. On the other hand, people with more efficient acetyltransferase require larger doses of isoniazid to obtain its therapeutic effect and are thus more likely to suffer from hepatic damage.

Differences in response to succinylcholine provide another example. Individuals with an atypical or a low level of plasma cholinesterase may exhibit prolonged muscular relaxation and apnea following an injection of a standard dose of this muscle relaxant. Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency and altered stability of reduced glutathione are responsible for hemolytic anemia in subjects exposed to primaquine, antipyrine, and similar agents. A more extensive list of potentially hemolytic chemicals and drugs has been compiled by Calabrese et al. (1979).

Less dramatic but more consistently greater susceptibility to many drugs have been reported to exist among Indonesians, and perhaps also other Asians (Darmansjah and Muchtar, 1992).

### **Gender, Hormonal Status, and Pregnancy**

Male and female animals of the same strain and species usually react to toxicants similarly. There are, however, notable quantitative differences in their susceptibility, especially in the rat. For example, many barbiturates induce more prolonged sleep in female rats than males. The shorter duration of action of hexobarbital in male rats is related to the higher activity of the liver microsomal enzymes to hydroxylate this chemical. This higher activity can be reduced by castration or pretreatment with estrogen. Similarly, male rats demethylate aminopyrine and acetylate sulfanilamide faster than females, and the males are thus less susceptible.

Female rats are also more susceptible than the males to such organophosphorus insecticides as azinphosmethyl and parathion. Castration and hormone treatment reverse this difference. Furthermore, weaning rats of both genders are equally susceptible to these toxicants. However, unlike hexobarbital, parathion is



metabolized more rapidly in the female than in male rat. This faster metabolism of parathion results in a higher concentration of its metabolite, paraoxon, which is more toxic than the parent compound. This higher toxicity resulting from greater bioactivation in female rats, compared to males, is also true with aldrin and heptachlor, which undergo epoxidation. The female rat is also more susceptible to warfarin and strychnine. On the other hand, male rats are more susceptible than females to ergot and lead.

Differences in susceptibility between the genders are also seen with other chemicals. For example, chloroform is acutely nephrotoxic in the male mouse but not in the females. Castration or the administration of estrogens reduces this effect in the males, and treatment with androgens enhances susceptibility to chloroform in the females. The greater susceptibility of male mice was explained on the basis of a much higher concentration of cytochrome P-450 (Smith et al., 1983). Strain and gender also play an important role in hyalin droplet nephropathy. Administration of decalin to male F-344, SD, Buffalo, or BN rats increased  $\alpha_2$ -globulin content associated with hyalin droplet formation. In contrast, female F-344, SD, Buffalo, and BN rats showed no evidence of hyalin droplet formation or accumulation of  $\alpha_2$ -globulin. It is of interest that both male and female NCI-Black Reiter (NBR) rats resembled female responsiveness, as there was no hyalin droplet nephropathy. Clearly, the decalin-induced hyalin droplet nephropathy is strain-related, but the role of male hormones is difficult to decipher due to the lack of response noted in NBR male rats. However, there are marked differences in endogenous circulating testosterone levels among strains and this may account for the differences between NBR and other strains. It is also conceivable that NBR male rats, unlike SD or F-344, lack the gene necessary to synthesize  $\alpha_2$ -globulin. Nicotine is also more toxic to the male mouse, and digoxin is more toxic to the male dog. However, the female cat is more susceptible to dinitrophenol and the female rabbit is more so to benzene.

Imbalances of nonsex hormones can also alter the susceptibility of animals to toxicants. Hyperthyroidism, hyperinsulinism, adrenalectomy, and stimulation of the pituitary–adrenal axis have all been shown to be capable of modifying the effects of certain toxicants (Doull, 1980; Hodgson, 1987).

## Age

It has long been recognized that neonates and very young animals in general are more susceptible to toxicants such as morphine. For a great majority of toxicants, the young are 1.5–10-fold more susceptible than adults (Goldenthal, 1971).

The available information indicates that the greater susceptibility of the young animals to many toxicants can be attributed to deficiencies of various detoxication enzyme systems (Makri et al., 2004). Both phase I and phase II reactions may be responsible. For example, hexobarbital at a dose of 10 mg/kg induced a sleeping time of longer than 360 minutes in one-day-old mice compared to 27 minutes in the 21-day-old mice. The proportion of hexobarbital metabolized

by oxidation in three hours in these animals was 0% and 21% to 33%, respectively (Jondorf et al., 1959). On the other hand, chloramphenicol is excreted mainly as a glucuronide conjugate. When a dose of 50 mg/kg was given to one- or two-day-old infants, the blood levels were 15  $\mu\text{g/mL}$  or higher over a period of 48 hours. In contrast, children aged 1 to 11 years maintained such blood levels for only 12 hours (Weiss et al., 1960). Further the route of exposure plays a significant role in the susceptibility of infants to air pollutants. The lung epithelium is not fully developed until the age of 4 (Foos et al., 2008). Children have a larger lung surface area per kilogram than adults and breathe a greater amount of air per kilogram. Hence air pollution may exert persistent effects on respiratory health, especially in the young. It should be borne in mind that the immune system is immature during this period and it has been postulated that the rise in asthma frequency is attributable to the greater inhalation exposure to pollutants in association with immune function immaturity.

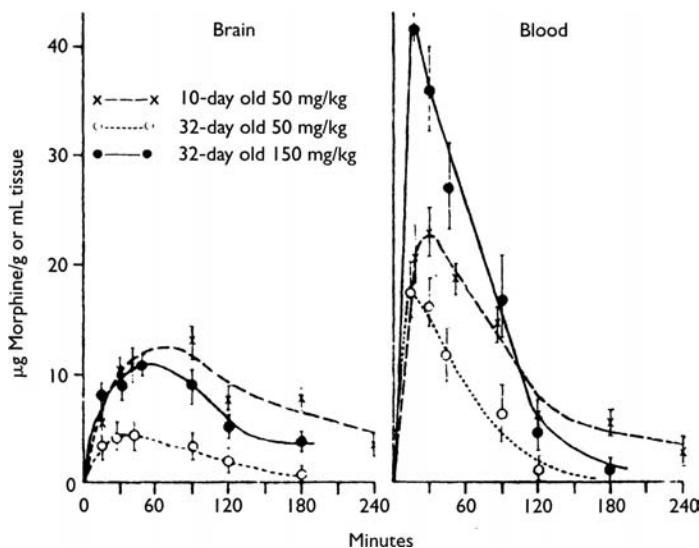
However, not all chemicals are more toxic to the young. Certain substances, notably CNS stimulants, are much less toxic to neonates. Lu et al. (1965) reported that the  $\text{LD}_{50}$  of DDT was more than 20 times greater in newborn rats than in adults, in sharp contrast to the effect of age on malathion (Table 2). This insensitivity to the toxicity of DDT may be reassuring in assessing the potential risk of this pesticide, because of the very much larger intake in young babies via breast feeding and cow's milk, especially on the unit body weight basis.

The effect of age on the susceptibility to other CNS stimulants including other organochlorine insecticides (dieldrin) appears less marked (generally in the range of 2–10-fold). Most organophosphorous pesticides such as malathion are more toxic to the young; Schradan (octamethyl pyrophosphoramidate) and phenylthiourea are notable exceptions (Brodeur and DuBois, 1963).

**Table 2** Effect of Age on Acute Toxicity of Malathion, DDT, and Dieldrin in Rats

Pesticide	Age	$\text{LD}_{50}$ (mg/kg) with 95% confidence limits	
Malathion	Newborn	134.4	(94.0–190.8)
	Prewaning	925.5	(679.01–261.0)
	Adult	3697.0	(3179.0–4251.0)
DDT	Newborn	>4000.0	
	Prewaning	437.8	(346.3–553.9)
	Adult	194.5	(158.7–238.3)
Dieldrin	Newborn	167.8	(140.8–200.0)
	Prewaning	24.9	(19.7–31.5)
	Adult	37.0	(27.4–50.1)

Source: From Lu et al. (1965).



**Figure 1** Brain and blood levels of free morphine at specific time intervals after intraperitoneal injections of morphine. Bracketed vertical lines show the standard error, using four animals per point. *Source:* Kupferberg and Way, 1963.

Apart from differences in biotransformation, other factors also play a role. For example, a lower susceptibility at the receptor has been found to be the reason for the relative insensitivity of young rats to DDT (Henderson and Woolley, 1969).

Certain toxicants are absorbed to a greater extent by the young than by the adult. For example, young children absorb four to five times more lead than adults (McCabe, 1979) and 20 times more cadmium (Sasser and Jarbor, 1977). The greater susceptibility of the young to morphine is attributable to a less efficient blood-brain barrier, as is vividly illustrated in Figure 1 (Kupferberg and Way, 1963). Penicillin and tetracycline are excreted more slowly and hence are more toxic in the young (Lu, 1970). Ouabain is about 40 times more toxic in the newborn than in the adult rat because the adult rat's liver is much more efficient in removing this cardiac glycoside from the plasma. The higher incidence of methemoglobinemia in young infants has been explained on the basis that their lower gastric acidity allows upward migration of intestinal microbial flora and the reduction of nitrates to a greater extent. Furthermore, they have a higher proportion of fetal hemoglobin, which is more readily oxidized to methemoglobin (WHO, 1977).

There is evidence that the newborn is more susceptible to such carcinogens as aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub>. Furthermore, the fetuses, but not the embryos, of rodents are much more susceptible. For example, there was a 50-fold increase in the potency of ethylnitrosourea. This is also true with nonhuman primates, except the maximal effects that occur during the first third of gestation. If this is true with human

fetuses, then they may be exposed to carcinogens before the mothers are aware of their pregnancies (Rice, 1979).

Old animals and humans are also more susceptible to certain chemicals. This problem has not been studied as extensively as in the young. However, the available evidence indicates that the aged patients are generally more sensitive to many drugs. The possible mechanisms include reduced detoxication and an impaired renal excretion (Goldstein, 1990). In addition, the distribution of chemicals in the body may also be altered because of increased body fat and decreased body water (Jarvik et al., 1981). A number of drugs were found to be likely to induce more severe signs of toxicity. These include most CNS depressants, certain antibiotics, cardiac glycosides, and hypotensive agents (WHO, 1981; Rochon et al., 1999).

### **Nutritional Status**

The principal biotransformation of toxicants, as noted in Chapter 3, is catalyzed by the microsomal mixed-function oxidases (MFO). A deficiency of essential fatty acids generally depresses MFO activities. This is also true with protein deficiency. The decreased MFO has different effects on the toxicity of chemicals. For example, hexobarbital and aminopyrine are detoxicated by these enzymes and are thus more toxic to rats and mice with these nutrient deficiencies. On the other hand, the toxicities of aflatoxin A, carbon tetrachloride, and heptachlor are lower in such animals because of their depressed bioactivation of these toxicants. Rats fed low-protein diets were 2 to 26 times more sensitive to a variety of pesticides (Boyd, 1972). MFO activities are decreased in animals fed high levels of carbohydrates.

A number of carcinogenesis studies demonstrated that restriction of food intake decreases tumor yield. Deficiency of protein generally lowers tumorigenicity of carcinogens, such as aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> and dimethylnitrosamine. The importance of diet on carcinogenesis is further demonstrated by the fact that rats and mice fed diets rich in fats have higher tumor incidences compared to those that are given a restricted diet.

Vitamin A deficiency depresses the MFO. In general, this is also true with deficiencies of vitamins C and E. But thiamine deficiency has the opposite effect. Vitamin A deficiency, in addition, increases the susceptibility of the respiratory tract to carcinogens (Nettesheim et al., 1979).

Some foods contain appreciable amounts of chemicals that are potent inducers of MFO, such as saffrole, flavones, xanthines, and indoles. In addition, potent inducers such as DDT and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) are present as contaminants in many foods.

### **Diseases**

The liver is the main organ wherein biotransformation of chemicals takes place. Such diseases as acute and chronic hepatitis, cirrhosis of the liver, and hepatic necrosis often decrease the biotransformation. The microsomal and nonmicrosomal enzyme systems as well as the phase II reactions may be affected.

Renal diseases may also affect the toxic manifestations of chemicals. This effect stems from disturbances of the excretory and metabolic functions of the kidney. Heart diseases, when severe, can increase the toxicity of chemicals by impairing hepatic and renal circulation, thus affecting the metabolic and excretory functions of these organs. Respiratory tract disorders such as asthma render the subjects much more susceptible to air pollutants such as SO<sub>2</sub>.

## **ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS**

### **Physical Factors**

Changes in temperature may alter the toxicity. For example, colchicine and digitalis are more toxic to rat than frog, but toxicity to the frog can be increased by raising the environmental temperature. The duration of the response, however, is shorter when the temperature is higher. The effect of environmental temperature on the magnitude and duration of the response is apparently related to the temperature-dependent biochemical reactions responsible for the effect and biotransformation of the chemical.

Interest in the effect of barometric pressure on the toxicity of chemicals stems from human exposure to them in space and in saturation diving vehicles. At high altitudes, the toxicity of digitalis and strychnine is decreased, whereas that of amphetamine is increased. The influence of changes in barometric pressure on the toxicity of chemicals seems attributable mainly, if not entirely, to altered oxygen tension rather than to a direct pressure effect.

Whole-body irradiation increases the toxicity of CNS stimulants but decreases that of CNS depressants. However, it has no effect on analgesics such as morphine. More details and literature citations have been provided by Doull (1980).

The effects of toxicants often show a diurnal pattern that is mainly related to the light cycle. In the rat and the mouse, the activities of cytochrome P-450 are greatest at the beginning of the dark phase.

### **Social Factors**

It is well known that animal husbandry and a variety of social factors can modify the toxicities of chemicals: the handling of the animals, the housing (singly or in groups), the types of cage, the supplier, and bedding materials are all important factors. Some examples of the influence of environmental factors on toxicity are given in Chapter 6.

## **CHEMICAL INTERACTION**

### **Types of Interaction**

The toxicity of a chemical in an organism may be increased or decreased by a simultaneous or consecutive exposure to another chemical (Table 1 of Chap. 6). If

the combined effect is equal to the sum of the effect of each substance given alone, the interaction is considered to be *additive*; for example, combinations of most organophosphorous pesticides on cholinesterase activity. If the combined effect is greater than the sum, the interaction is considered to be *synergistic*; for example, carbon tetrachloride and ethanol on the liver, and asbestos exposure and cigarette smoking on the lung. In the latter example, Selikoff et al. (1968) reported that there was a 5-fold increase in lung cancer incidence among asbestos workers, an 11-fold increase among cigarette smokers, and a 55-fold increase among asbestos workers who were cigarette smokers. The term *potentiation* is used to describe the situation in which the toxicity of a substance on an organ is markedly increased by another substance that alone has no toxic effect on that organ. For example, isopropanol has no effect on the liver, but it can increase considerably the hepatotoxicity of carbon tetrachloride.

Similarly, trichloroethylene, which exerts little effect on the liver, increases the hepatotoxicity of carbon tetrachloride, as measured by the release of liver enzymes ALT, SDH, and AST (Borzelleca et al., 1990).

The exposure of an organism to one chemical may reduce the toxicity of another. *Chemical antagonism* denotes the situation wherein a reaction between the two chemicals produces a less toxic product, for example, chelation of heavy metals by dimercaprol. *Functional antagonism* exists when two chemicals produce opposite effects on the same physiologic parameters, such as the counteraction between CNS stimulants and depressants. *Competitive antagonism* exists when the agonist and antagonist act on the same receptor, such as the blockade of the effects of nicotine on ganglia by ganglionic blocking agents. *Noncompetitive antagonism* exists when the toxic effect of one chemical is blocked by another not acting on the same receptor. For example, atropine reduces the toxicity of acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors not by blocking the receptors on the AChE, but by blocking the receptors for the accumulated ACh.

## Mechanisms of Action

Chemical interactions are achieved through a variety of mechanisms. For instance, nitrites and certain amines can react in the stomach to form nitrosamines, the majority of which are potent carcinogens, and thus greatly increase the toxicity. On the other hand, the action of many antidotes is based on their interaction with the toxicants; for example, thiosulfate is used in cases of cyanide poisoning. Furthermore, a chemical may displace another from its binding site on plasma protein and thereby increase its effective concentration. A chemical may modify the renal excretion of weak acids and weak bases by altering the pH of urine. Competition for the same renal transport system by one chemical can hinder the excretion of another. A notable example is the administration of probenecid along with penicillin to reduce the renal excretion of the antibiotic, thereby prolonging its duration of action.

One important type of interaction involves the binding of chemicals with their specific receptors. An antagonist blocks the action of an agonist, such as a neurotransmitter or a hormone, by preventing the binding of the agonist to the receptor.

Another important type of interaction results from alterations of the biotransformation of one chemical by another. Some chemicals are *inducers* of xenobiotic-metabolizing enzymes. They augment the activities of these enzymes, perhaps mainly by *de novo* synthesis. The common inducers include phenobarbital, 3-methylcholanthrene (3-MC), PCB, DDT, and BaP. The inducers may lower the toxicity of other chemicals by accelerating their detoxication. For example, pretreatment in which phenobarbital shortens the sleeping time induced by hexobarbital and the paralysis induced by zoxazolamine. Such pretreatment also reduces the plasma level of aflatoxins (Wong et al., 1981). In addition, 3-MC pretreatment greatly reduces the liver necrosis produced by bromobenzene, probably by increasing the activity of the epoxide hydrase (see Fig. 3 of Chap. 3). On the other hand, pretreatment with phenobarbital augments the toxicity of acetaminophen and bromobenzene, apparently by increasing the toxic metabolites formed. Repeated administration of a chemical may induce its metabolizing enzymes, as shown with vinyl chloride.

Piperonyl butoxide, isoniazid, and SKF 525 A and related chemicals are inhibitors of various xenobiotic-metabolizing enzymes. For instance, piperonyl butoxide increases the toxicity of pyrethrum in insects by inhibiting their MFO that detoxifies this insecticide. Isoniazid, when taken along with diphenylhydantoin, lengthens the plasma half-life of the antiepileptic drug and increases its toxicity. Iproniazid inhibits monoamine oxidase and increases the cardiovascular effects of tyramine, which is found in cheese and which is normally readily metabolized by the oxidase.

### Characteristics of Enzyme Induction

Because of the importance of the effect of enzyme induction, much work has been done on certain inducers, notably phenobarbital and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH). These two types of inducers differ in several respects. For example, phenobarbital markedly increases the liver weight and the smooth endoplasmic reticulum, but PAH such as 3-MC and BaP exert little effect on these parameters. Phenobarbital augments mainly the amounts of cytochrome P-450 and NADPH-cytochrome *c* reductase. PAH produce little effect on these enzymes, but increase the amounts of cytochrome P-448, which is also known as P<sub>1</sub>-450, and aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase (AHH). These isozymes have different substrate specificity and hence alter the effects of toxicants differently (Sipes and Gandolfi, 1993).

### Interaction as Toxicologic Tools

Studies on chemical interaction are conducted not only to determine the effects of combinations of chemicals, but the data thereof are also useful in assessing health

hazards associated with exposures to such combinations. These studies are also conducted to elucidate the nature and the mode of action of the toxicity of one chemical by the administration of another, as well as to bring out weak or latent effects of chemicals.

It needs to be made abundantly clear that in reality exposure may not be strictly to one compound but to a mixture of chemicals. ATSDR has deemed that exposure to chemical mixtures is one of the priority areas of concern and has significant health implications (DeRosa et al., 2004). Data in this scientific field is sorely lacking and one cannot assume or presume that the compounds will act synergistically or antagonistically. However, it is known that exposure is to a mixture of low levels of benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene, and xylene (BTEX) and has severe neurotoxicity consequences.

## REFERENCES

- Borzelleca JF, O'Hara TM, Gennings C, et al. (1990). Interactions of water contaminants. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 14, 477–490.
- Boyd EM (1972). *Protein Deficiency and Pesticide Toxicity*. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas.
- Brodeur J, DuBois KP (1963). Comparison of acute toxicity of anticholinesterase insecticides to weanling and adult male rats. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 114, 509–511.
- Calabrese EJ, Moore G, Brown R (1979). Effects of environmental oxidant stressors on individuals with a G-6-PD deficiency with particular reference to an animal model. *Environ Health Persp.* 29, 49–55.
- Darmansjah I, Muchtar A (1992). Dose–response variation among different populations. *Clin Pharmacol Therap* 52, 449–452.
- DeRosa CT, El-Masri HA, Pohl H, et al. (2004) Implications of chemical mixtures in public health practice. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7, 339–350.
- Doull J (1980). Factors influencing toxicology. In: Doull J, Klaassen CD, Amdur MO, eds. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: Macmillan.
- Foos B, Marty M, Schwartz J, et al. (2008). Focusing on children's inhalation dosimetry and health effects for risk assessment: An introduction. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 71, 149–165.
- Goldenthal EI (1971). A compilation of LD50 values in newborn and adult animals. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 18, 185–207.
- Goldstein RS (1990). Drug-induced nephrotoxicity in middle-aged and senescent rats. In: *Proceedings of the V International Congress of Toxicology*. London, UK: Taylor & Francis.
- Henderson GL, Woolley DA (1969). Studies on the relative insensitivity of the immature rat to the neurotoxic effects of DDT. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 170, 173–180.
- Hodgson E (1987). Modification of metabolism. In: Hodgson E, Levi PE, eds. *Modern Toxicology*. New York, NY: Elsevier.
- Jarvik LF, Greenblatt DJ, Harman D (1981). *Clinical Pharmacology and the Aged Patient*. New York, NY: Raven Press.
- Jay GE Jr (1955). Variation in response of various mouse strains to hexobarbital (Evipal). *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 90, 378–380.



- Jondorf WR, Maickel RP, Brodie BB (1959). Inability of newborn mice and guinea pigs to metabolize drugs. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1, 352–354.
- Kacew S, Festing MFW (1995). Role of rat strain in the differential sensitivity to pharmaceutical agents and naturally occurring substances. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 47, 1–30.
- Kacew S, Ruben Z, McConnell RF (1995). Strain as a determinant factor in the differential responsiveness of rats to chemicals. *Toxicol Pathol* 23, 701–714.
- Kupferberg HJ, Way EL (1963). Pharmacologic basis for the increased sensitivity of the newborn rat to morphine. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 141, 105–112.
- Lu FC (1970). Significance of age of test animals in food additive evaluation. In: Roe FJC, ed. *Metabolic Aspects of Food Safety*. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Scientific.
- Lu FC, Jessup DC, Lavellee A (1965). Toxicity of pesticides in young versus adult rats. *Food Cosmet Toxicol* 3, 591–596.
- Makri A, Goveia M, Balbus J, et al. (2004). Children's susceptibility to chemicals: A review by developmental stage. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7, 417–435.
- McCabe EB (1979). Age and sensitivity to lead toxicity: A review. *Environ Health Persp* 29, 29–33.
- Miller EC, Miller JH, Enomoto M (1964). The comparative carcinogenetics of 2-acetylaminofluorene and its *N*-hydroxy metabolite in mice, hamsters and guinea pigs. *Cancer Res* 24, 2018–2032.
- Nettesheim P, Snyder C, Kim JCS (1979). Vitamin A and the susceptibility of respiratory tract tissues to carcinogenic insult. *Environ Health Persp* 29, 89–93.
- Quinn GP, Axelrod J, Brodie BB (1958). Species, strain and sex differences in metabolism of hexobarbitone, amidopyrine, antipyrine and aniline. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1, 152–159.
- Rice JM (1979). Perinatal period and pregnancy: Intervals of high risk for chemical carcinogens. *Environ Health Persp* 29, 23–27.
- Rochon PA, Anderson GM, Tu JV, et al. (1999). Age and gender-related use of low dose drug therapy. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 47, 954–959.
- Sasser LB, Jarbor GE (1977). Intestinal absorption and retention of cadmium in neonatal rat. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 41, 423–431.
- Selikoff IJ, Hammond EC, Churg J (1968). Asbestos exposure, smoking, and neoplasia. *J Am Med Assoc* 204, 106–112.
- Sipes IG, Gandolfi AJ (1993). Biotransformation of toxicants. In: Amdur MO, Doull J, Klaassen CD, eds. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- Smith JH, Maita K, Adler V, et al. (1983). Effect of sex hormone status on chloroform nephrotoxicity and renal drug metabolizing enzymes. *Toxicol Lett* 28(suppl 1), 23.
- Timbrell JA (1991). *Principles of Biochemical Toxicology*. London, UK: Taylor & Francis.
- Weisburger JH, Weisburger EK (1973). Biochemical formation and pharmacological, toxicological and pathological properties of hydroxylamines and hydroxamic acids. *Pharmacol Rev* 25, 166.
- Weiss CG, Glazko AJ, Weston A (1960). Chloramphenicol in the newborn infant. A physiologic explanation of its toxicity when given in excessive doses. *N Engl J Med* 262, 787–794.
- WHO (1977). Nitrates, nitrites and *N*-nitroso compounds. *Environmental Health Criteria* 5. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1981). Health care in the elderly: Report of the technical group on use of medications by the elderly. *Drugs* 22, 279–294.

Williams RT (1974). Inter-species variations in the metabolism of xenobiotics. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2, 359–377.

Wong ZA, Wei Ching-I, Rice DW, et al. (1981). Effects of phenobarbital pretreatment on the metabolism and toxicokinetics of aflatoxin B1 in the rhesus monkey. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 60, 387–397.

### Appendix 1 Mechanisms\* Underlying Certain Modifying Factors

Toxicant	Responsible mechanism	Toxic response
Bioactivation differences		
2-Naphthylamine	2-Naphthyl hydroxylamine	Bladder tumor in dog, human, but not in rat, mouse
Acetylaminofluorene	<i>N</i> -Hydroxy metabolite	Carcinogenic in rat, mouse, and hamster, but not in guinea pigs
Toxicokinetic characteristics		
Lead, cadmium	Greater absorption in the young	Greater toxic effects
Penicillin, tetracycline	Slower excretion in the young	Longer half-life
Morphine	Blood–brain barrier inefficient in the young	Greater CNS effect
Sulfur dioxide	Higher breathing rate in young	Greater lung damage
Toxicodynamic characteristics		
DDT	Susceptibility of receptor	Less susceptible in the young
Anatomic characteristics		
BHA, BHT	Presence of forestomach in rat	Hyperplasia of forestomach
Physiologic characteristics		
Squill	Vomiting reflex	Absence in rat leading to toxic effect

\*Other than detoxication.

**Appendix 2** Strain-Related Differences in Drug-Induced Responses

Parameter	Tissue	Strain/stock	
		Resistant	Susceptible
Ciprofibrate-induced peroxisomal proliferation	Liver	Sprague-Dawley	Long-Evans
Acetaminophen-induced necrosis	Kidney	Sprague-Dawley	F344
Streptozotocin-induced autoimmune reactivity	Popliteal lymph node	F344	Sprague-Dawley or Wistar
Amiodarone-induced phospholipidosis	Lung	Sprague-Dawley	F344
Diethylstilbesterol-induced carcinoma	Mammary tissue	COP	F344
Saccharin-induced histopathologic changes	Urinary bladder	Sprague-Dawley	Wistar
Mepirizole-induced ulceration	Duodenum	DONYRU	Sprague-Dawley or F344
Azaserine-induced carcinoma	Pancreas	F344	Wistar
B-Adrenoceptor suppression of lipolysis	Adipocyte	Wistar	Sprague-Dawley
Diethylstilbesterol-induced prolactin secretion	Pituitary	Sprague-Dawley	F344

Resistant does not imply a lack of effect but a significantly lower responsiveness than susceptible.

*Source:* From Kacew and Festing (1995).



---

## **Part II**

---

### **Testing Procedures for Conventional and Nontarget Organ Toxicities**



# 6

## Conventional Toxicity Studies

### CONTENTS

Introduction	84
Usefulness	84
Categories	84
Importance of Selection of Rat Strains	85
Acute toxicity studies	85
Experimental Design	86
Selection of Species of Animal	86
Route of Administration	86
Dosage and Number of Animals	87
Observations and Examinations	87
Multiple Endpoint Evaluation	87
Evaluation of the Data	87
Dose-Response Relationship	87
Relative Potency	89
Uses of LD <sub>50</sub> Values and Signs of Toxicity	89
Short-term and long-term toxicity studies	91
Experimental Design	91
Species and Number	91
Route of Administration	92
Dosage and Duration	92
Observations and examinations	93
Body Weight and Food Consumption	93
General Observations	93
Laboratory Tests	93
Postmortem Examination	93
Evaluation	94
Good laboratory practice	94

References	95
Further Reading	96
Appendix 1 General Observations, Clinical Laboratory Tests, and Pathology Examinations That May Be Used in Short- and Long-Term Toxicity Studies	97

## INTRODUCTION

### Usefulness

As noted in prior chapters, toxicants vary greatly in their potency, target organ, and mode of action. To provide proper orientation for additional in-depth targeted studies, conventional toxicity studies are generally carried out first. These studies are designed to provide indications of the appropriate dosage range, the probable adverse effect, and the target organ (e.g., liver), system (e.g., respiratory), or special toxicity (e.g., carcinogenicity).

In addition to providing preliminary information for proper orientation of additional investigations, however, the conventional toxicity studies per se yield data that can be used to assess the nature of the adverse effects and the “no-observed-adverse-effect level” (NOAEL) of the toxicant, which are required in the safety assessment described in Chapter 25. For example, approximately half of the pesticides evaluated by the WHO Expert Committee on Pesticide Residues in the past 30 years have been based on conventional toxicity studies, despite the extensive database that is also available (Lu, 1995).

### Categories

In order to examine the different effects associated with various lengths of exposure, the conventional studies are generally divided into four categories: (1) *Acute toxicity studies* involve either a single administration of the chemical under test or several administrations within a 24-hour period. (2) *Short-term* (also known as subacute and subchronic) toxicity studies involve repeated administrations, usually on a daily or five times per week basis, over a period of about 10% of the life-span, namely, three months in rats and one or two years in dogs. However, shorter durations such as 14- and 28-day treatments have also been used by some investigators. (3) *Long-term* (also known as chronic) toxicity studies involve repeated administrations over the entire life-span of the test animals or at least a major fraction of it, for example, 18 months in mice, 24 months in rats, and 7 to 10 years in dogs and monkeys. These types of studies are essential for assessment of the carcinogenic potential of chemicals. (4) *Generational studies* involve the administration of compounds to the parent or first generation, and subsequently compounds are given to the offspring for a second generation. These types of studies are crucial for assessment of reproductive capability as well as for determination of developmental functions.



## Importance of Selection of Rat Strains

In the search for compounds to enhance our living standards, there is a necessity for understanding normal human functions and mechanisms which underlie dysfunction in these processes. Utilization of a suitable animal model, which simulates humans, is necessary to develop new pharmaceutical agents to alleviate diseases or chemicals to enhance lifestyle. It is incumbent upon investigators to choose a species in which pharmacokinetic principles are established and resemble those of humans. The choice of rodent has specific advantages in that there are similar pharmacodynamic parameters resembling those in humans. Other advantages include availability, low cost, ease of breeding, and an extensive literature database to enable comparisons to present findings. Factors that need to be recognized as playing an important role in chemical-induced outcomes include strain, supplier, gender, and dietary intake. This is especially critical in the risk-assessment process.

In an effort to establish animal models to extrapolate to human responses, one must be apprised that choosing the rat, strain can affect the responses observed under normal or chemically altered conditions. Even by limiting genetic variability by simply using the same strain, factors such as supplier and dietary intake can bring about differences in responsiveness of one strain as well as between strains. Further, the rodent may be susceptible while the human is nonresponsive.

## ACUTE TOXICITY STUDIES

These studies are designed either to determine the median lethal dose ( $LD_{50}$ ) of the toxicant or a rough estimate of it. The  $LD_{50}$  has been defined as “a statistically derived expression of a single dose of a material that can be expected to kill 50% of the animals.” In addition, such studies may also indicate the probable target organ of the chemical and its specific toxic effect and provide guidance on the doses to be used in the more prolonged studies.

In certain cases, especially those with low acute toxicities, it may not be necessary to determine precise  $LD_{50}$ s. Simple lethality data can serve useful purposes. For example, synergistic and antagonistic effects can be demonstrated using a few animals as shown by the data presented in Table 1. Furthermore, even the information that a sufficiently large dose produces few or no deaths may suffice. This *limit test* has been applied. For example, a number of food colors were given to rats at a dose of 2 g/kg. Since none of the rats died, it was considered sufficient to rule out any serious acute toxicity and no  $LD_{50}$  was determined (Lu and Lavallée, 1965). This view was accepted by the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (WHO, 1966). EPA (1994) recommends the use of 5 g/kg.

When the route of exposure is inhalation, the end point is then either the median lethal concentration ( $LC_{50}$ ) with a given duration of exposure or the median lethal time ( $LT_{50}$ ) with a given concentration of the chemical in the air.

**Table 1** Using Lethality in Demonstrating Chemical Interaction

Lethality (number of deaths/number on test)			
KBrO <sub>3</sub> (mg/kg)	Control (saline)	Cysteine <sup>a</sup> (400 mg/kg)	Diethyl maleate <sup>b</sup> (0.7 mL/kg)
169	5/5	0/5	
130	5/5	0/5	
49	0/5		4/5
29	0/5		4/5

With five animals per dose group, the interactions between KBrO<sub>3</sub> and the “antagonist” (cysteine) and a “synergist” (diethyl maleate) are evident.

<sup>a</sup>Antagonistic.

<sup>b</sup>Synergistic.

Source: From Kurakawa et al. (1987).

## Experimental Design

### Selection of Species of Animal

In general, the rat, and sometimes the mouse, are selected for use in determining the LD<sub>50</sub>. Their preference stems from the fact that they are economical, readily available, and easy to handle. Further, there are more toxicologic data on these species of animals, a fact that facilitates comparisons of toxicities to other chemicals.

Sometimes a nonrodent species is desirable. This is true, especially when the LD<sub>50</sub> values in rats and mice are markedly different or when the pattern or rate of biotransformation in humans is known to be significantly different from rats and mice.

The LD<sub>50</sub> determination is preferably done in animals of both genders, and also in adult and young animals, because of their differences in susceptibility. In recent years the use of an LD<sub>50</sub> has been supplanted due to the unnecessary overuse of too many animals, and the data generated are not essential for determination of risk for humans. The beneficial value of LD<sub>50</sub> data does not outweigh the cost of animal welfare.

### Route of Administration

Generally, the toxicant is administered by the route by which humans would be exposed. The oral route is most commonly used. The dermal and inhalation routes are used increasingly, not only for chemicals that are intended for human use by such routes but also for chemicals whose health hazards to personnel handling these chemicals are to be assessed (see Chaps. 12 and 15). Parenteral routes are mainly used in assessing the acute toxicity of parenteral drugs. In addition, immediate or very prompt and complete or nearly complete absorption generally follow intravenous and intraperitoneal injection. The intravenous route

is advantageous in determination of the distribution of a compound in the organic system and given in the radioactive form.

### **Dosage and Number of Animals**

To properly ascertain an LD<sub>50</sub>, it is necessary to try to select a dose that would kill about half of the animals, another that would kill more than half (preferably less than 90%), and a third dose that would kill less than half (preferably more than 10%) of the animals. OECD (1992), among others, recommends a "Sighting" study to aid in the selection of the doses, which can be accomplished with no more than five animals. Dosing of the animals is done sequentially, with at least a 24-hour interval to allow adjustment of the dose that the next animal is to receive.

To determine a relatively precise LD<sub>50</sub>, 40–50 animals are used, with a ratio of 1.2 between successive doses (Lu and Lavallée, 1965). For most chemicals, however, approximate LD<sub>50</sub>s are adequate. These doses can be estimated using six to nine animals (Bruce, 1985). As indicated previously, this type of study is outdated and not necessary in light of the cost of animals in order to gain data of limited value.

### **Observations and Examinations**

After administering the toxicant to the animals, they should be examined for the number and time of death in order to estimate the LD<sub>50</sub>. More importantly, their signs of toxicity should be recorded. Table 2 provides a list of body organs and systems that might be affected, along with the specific signs of toxicity. The observation period should be sufficiently long so that delayed effects, including death, would not be missed. The period is usually 7 to 14 days but may be much longer.

Gross autopsies should be performed on all animals that have died as well as at least some of the survivors, especially those that are morbid at the termination of the experiment. Autopsy can provide useful information on the target organ, especially when death does not occur shortly after the dosing. Histopathologic examination of selected organs and tissues may also be indicated.

### **Multiple Endpoint Evaluation**

To derive additional information concerning the chemical on test, the toxic signs, such as those listed in Table 2, should be critically observed and recorded for evaluating nonlethal endpoints. These endpoints may assist in characterizing the nature of the toxicant.

### **Evaluation of the Data**

#### **Dose–Response Relationship**

When the mortality, or the frequency of other effects expressed in percentages, is plotted against the dose on a logarithmic scale, an S-shaped curve is obtained

**Table 2** Relationship Between Toxic Signs and Body Organs or Systems

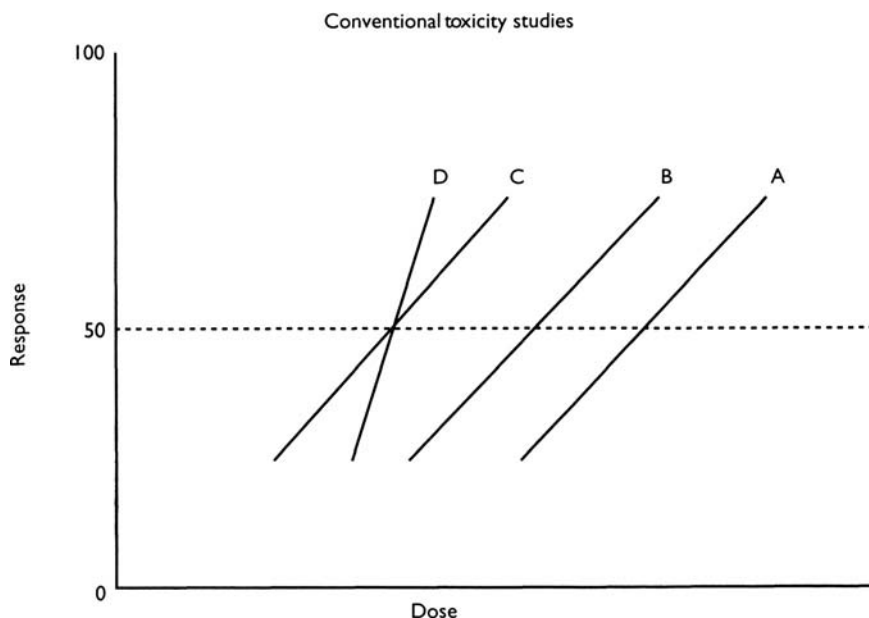
System	Toxic signs
Autonomic	Relaxed nictitating membrane, exophthalmos, nasal discharge, salivation, diarrhea, urination, piloerection.
Behavioral	Sedation, restlessness, sitting position—head up, staring straight ahead, drooping head, severe depression, excessive preening, gnawing paws, panting, irritability, aggressive and defensive hostility, fear, confusion, bizarre activity.
Sensory	Sensitivity to pain; righting, corneal, labyrinth, placing, and hind limb reflex; sensitivity to sound and touch; nystagmus, phonation.
Neuromuscular	Decreased and increased activity, fasciculation, tremors, convulsions, ataxia, prostration, straub tail, hind limb weakness, pain and hind limb reflexes (absent or diminished), opisthotonos, muscle tone, death.
Cardiovascular	Increased and decreased heart rate, cyanosis, vasoconstriction, vasodilation, hemorrhage.
Respiratory	Hypopnea, dyspnea, gasping, apnea.
Ocular	Mydriasis, miosis, lacrimation, ptosis, nystagmus, cycloplegia, pupillary light reflex.
Gastrointestinal, gastrourinary	Salivation, retching, diarrhea, bloody stool and urine, constipation, rhinorrhea, emesis, involuntary urination and defecation.
Cutaneous	Piloerection, wet dog shakes, erythema, edema, necrosis, swelling.

Source: From McNamara (1976).

(Fig. 1, Curve B). The central portion of the curve (between 16% and 84% response) is sufficiently straight for estimating the  $LD_{50}$  or  $ED_{50}$ . However, a much wider range of the curve can be straightened by converting the percentages to probit units. This procedure is especially useful in estimating, for example, the  $LD_{01}$  or  $LD_{99}$ , when the extreme ends of this curve have to be used.

The probit units correspond to normal equivalent deviations around the mean, for example, +1, +2, +3 . . . and -1, -2, -3 . . . deviations, whereas the mean value itself has a zero deviation. However, to avoid negative numbers, the probit units are obtained by adding five to these deviations. The corresponding figures in these systems are as follows:

Deviations	Probit	% Response
-3	2	0.1
-2	3	2.3
-1	4	15.9
0	5	50.0
1	6	84.1
2	7	97.7
3	8	99.9



**Figure 1** Median lethal doses and slopes of the dose–response (death) relationships of four chemicals. Chemical A is less toxic than the others. Chemical C is as toxic as D at the median lethal dose level but is more toxic at lower dose levels. Chemical B is less toxic than D at the median lethal dose level, but it may be more or less so at lower doses.

Detailed methods for estimating the  $LD_{50}$  and its standard errors are given in many papers and books on statistics, including those of Bliss (1957), Finney (1971), and Weil (1952).

#### Relative Potency

The potency of toxicants varies significantly. Table 3 illustrates the range of  $LD_{50}$  values.

To render  $LD_{50}$  values more meaningful, it is advisable to also determine their standard errors (or the confidence limits) and the slopes of the dose–response curves. The importance of the slope can be readily appreciated when comparing two substances with similar  $LD_{50}$ s. The one with a flatter slope will likely produce more deaths than the other at doses smaller than the  $LD_{50}$ s (Fig. 1, chemicals C and D). The examples in Table 4 illustrate the marked differences in slopes.

#### Uses of $LD_{50}$ Values and Signs of Toxicity

These values are useful in a number of ways.

1. Classification of chemicals according to relative toxicity. A common classification is as follows:

Category	LD <sub>50</sub>
Supertoxic (mg/kg)	5 or less
Extremely toxic (mg/kg)	5–50
Highly toxic (mg/kg)	50–500
Moderately toxic (g/kg)	0.5–5
Slightly toxic (g/kg)	5–15
Practically nontoxic (g/kg)	>15

- Other uses include evaluation of the hazard from accidental overdosage; planning subacute and chronic toxicity studies in animals; providing information about (a) variations in response among different animal species and strains, (b) the susceptibility of a particular animal population, and (c) quality control of chemical products to detect toxic impurities, etc.

For toxicants with important health implications (e.g., TCDD), LD<sub>50</sub>s are determined in several species of animals. The extent of variation of these values indicates the range of differences in the toxicokinetics and/or toxicodynamics among these species.

Guidelines for acute oral, dermal, and inhalation toxicity studies have been published by various national and international agencies (e.g., EPA, 1994). However, the prevailing advice is to estimate approximate LD<sub>50</sub>s unless otherwise indicated.

**Table 3** Acute LD<sub>50</sub> Values for a Variety of Chemical Agents

Agent	Species	LD <sub>50</sub> (mg/kg body weight)
Ethanol	Mouse	10,000
Sodium chloride	Mouse	4000
Ferrous sulfate	Rat	1500
Morphine sulfate	Rat	900
Phenobarbital, sodium	Rat	150
DDT	Rat	100
Picrotoxin	Rat	5
Strychnine sulfate	Rat	2
Nicotine	Rat	1
<i>d</i> -Tubocurarine	Rat	0.5
Hemicholinium-3	Rat	0.2
Tetrodotoxin	Rat	0.1
Dioxin (TCDD)	Guinea pig	0.001
Botulinum toxin	Rat	0.00001

Source: From Loomis (1978).

**Table 4** Dose–Response Relationships<sup>a</sup>

Aflatoxin B <sub>1</sub> <sup>b</sup>			Botulinum toxin <sup>c</sup>		
Dose (ppb)	Response (tumor)	Dose (pg)	Response (death)	Dose (pg)	Response (death)
0	0/18	1	0/10	34	11/30
1	2/22	5	0/10	37	10/30
5	1/22	10	0/30	40	16/30
15	4/21	15	0/30	45	26/30
50	20/25	20	0/30	50	26/30
100	28/28	24	0/30	55	17/30
		27	0/30	60	22/30
		30	4/30	65	20/30

<sup>a</sup>Note relatively shallow dose–response relationship with aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> wherein a 100-fold increase existed between the minimal and maximal effective doses, in contrast to the steep slope of botulinum toxin wherein there was a mere 50% increase.

<sup>b</sup>Data quoted from Food Safety Council (1980).

<sup>c</sup>Data supplied by E.J. Schantz (Food Research Institute, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI). Part of the data also appears in the Report of Food Safety Council (1980).

## SHORT-TERM AND LONG-TERM TOXICITY STUDIES

Humans are more often exposed to chemicals at levels much lower than those that are acutely fatal, but they are exposed over longer periods of time. To assess the nature of the toxic effects under these more realistic situations, short-term and long-term toxicity studies are conducted. These studies are also known as subacute (or subchronic) and chronic toxicity studies. The procedures involved in these two types are similar except their duration.

### Experimental Design

#### Species and Number

Generally, two or more species of animals are used. Ideally, the animals chosen should biotransform the chemical in a manner essentially identical to humans. Since this is often unattainable, the rat and the dog are usually selected. This preference is based on their appropriate size, ready availability, and the great preponderance of toxicologic information on chemicals in these animals. As noted in Chapter 5, different strains of rats may respond markedly differently to toxicants.

Equal numbers of male and female animals should be used. Generally, 10 to 50 rats are used in each dose group as well as in the control group. As a rule, this procedure will provide data that are statistically analyzable. Smaller numbers of dogs (48 per group) are used because of the greater number of examinations

that can be made on each animal and because of their size and the expense involved.

#### Route of Administration

The chemical should be administered by the route of the intended use or exposure in humans. For most chemicals, the common route is oral. The preferred procedure is to incorporate the chemical in the diet, although the drinking water is sometimes used as the vehicle. The latter method is advisable when the chemical may react with a component in the diet. The chemical, especially if it is reactive, volatile, or unpalatable, is often administered by gavage or in gelatin capsules, a procedure more often used in dogs. The daily dose of the chemical may also be incorporated in a bolus of canned dog food.

Dermal application, exposure by inhalation, and parenteral routes are used for special purposes, such as industrial and agricultural products and drugs.

#### Dosage and Duration

Since the aims of these studies are to determine the nature and site of the toxic effects, as well as the NOAEL, it is advisable to select three doses: a dose that is high enough to elicit definite signs of toxicity but not high enough to kill many of the animals, a low dose that is expected to induce no toxic effect, and an intermediate dose. Sometimes, one or more additional doses are included to ensure that the above objectives are achieved. As noted earlier, a control group must be included. These animals will not receive the chemical under test but must be given the vehicle used in the study.

The doses are generally selected on the basis of the information obtained in the acute toxicity studies, using both the LD<sub>50</sub> and the slope of the dose–response curve. Any information on related chemicals and on their metabolism, especially the presence or absence of bioaccumulation, is also taken into account. A range-finding study is sometimes done. It consists of dosing five rats of each gender at each of the three or four dose levels for seven days. The criteria for toxic effects are mortality, body weight gain, relative liver and kidney weights, and feed consumption. The results from seven-day tests are generally better than the LD<sub>50</sub> values in predicting the dose levels for the longer-term toxicity study.

In studies in rats, the dose levels may be constant concentrations and expressed in mg/kg diet (ppm) or constant dosage and expressed in mg/kg body weight of the animals. As the animal grows, there are changes in the body weight as well as in the food consumption. For the constant dose regimen, the concentration of the chemical must therefore be adjusted periodically to maintain a relatively constant dose in mg/kg body weight. This is usually done at weekly intervals during the period of rapid growth and biweekly thereafter.

In the short-term studies, the duration in rats is generally 90 days. In dog, the duration is often extended to six months or even one year. The duration of long-term studies in rats is generally 24 months, and seven or more years in dogs.



## Observations and examinations

### Body Weight and Food Consumption

Body weight and food consumption should be determined weekly. Decreased body weight gain is a simple yet sensitive index of adverse effects. Food consumption is also a useful indicator. In addition, a marked decrease in food consumption can induce effects that mimic or aggravate the toxic manifestations of the chemical. In such cases, *paired feeding* or parenteral feeding may have to be instituted. Where the animals receiving the toxicant are affected more than those maintained on a reduced feed alone, the toxicant, apart from the undernutrition, is responsible for the effect.

### General Observations

These should include appearance, behavior, and any abnormality. Dead and moribund animals should be removed from the cages for gross and possibly microscopic examination. Frequent observation is necessary to minimize cannibalism.

## Laboratory Tests

*Hematologic* examinations usually include hematocrit, hemoglobin, erythrocyte count, total leukocyte count, and differential leukocyte count. All dogs should be sampled before the initiation of treatment and at one week, one month, and at the end. Tests at other intervals may be warranted. Because of the small blood volume of rats, only half of them are sampled at various intervals, while the others are sampled only at the end. Special tests such as reticulocyte count, platelet count, methemoglobin, and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G-6-PD) may be indicated.

*Clinical laboratory* tests usually include fasting blood glucose, serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST or SGOT), alanine aminotransferase (ALT or SGPT), alkaline phosphatase (AP), creatine kinase (CK), lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), total protein, albumin, globulin, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), triglycerides, cholesterol, creatinine, and such elements as sodium, potassium, calcium, and chloride. Other tests may be done where indicated. For example, cholinesterase activity is assessed when testing organophosphorus and carbamate pesticides.

*Urinalysis* usually includes color, specific gravity, pH, protein, glucose, creatinine, ketones, formed elements (red blood cells, etc.), and crystalline and amorphous materials.

## Postmortem Examination

Whenever possible, all animals that are found dead or dying should be subjected to a gross pathologic examination. If the state of the tissue permits, histologic examinations should also be done. In addition, the weights of a number of organs,

either in absolute values or in terms of the body weights, should be determined as they serve as useful indicators of toxicity.

The organs that are usually weighed are liver, kidneys, adrenals, heart, brain, thyroid, and testes or ovaries. Those that are histologically examined are the following: all gross lesions, brain (three levels), spinal cord, eye and optic nerve, a major salivary gland, thymus, thyroid, heart, aorta, lung with a bronchus, stomach, small intestine (three levels), large intestine (two levels), adrenal gland, pancreas, liver, gallbladder (if present), spleen, kidney, urinary bladder, skeletal muscle, and bone and its marrow.

A list indicating the correlation between general observations, clinical laboratory tests, and postmortem examinations is produced as Appendix 1.

Guidelines for short-term and long-term studies have been published by WHO (1978, 1990), and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA, 1994) among others.

## Evaluation

Comprehensive short-term and long-term toxicity studies, using the various parameters of observations and examinations described above, usually yield information on the toxicity of the chemical under test, with respect to the target organs, the effects on these organs, and the dose–effect and dose–response relationships. Such information often provides indication on the additional specific types of studies that should be conducted. The quantitative data from the short-term and other studies have been suggested for use in the determination of the NOAEL. This suggestion, however, has not been widely accepted because it is considered more prudent to use the data from long-term studies. This is especially true for chemicals (e.g., food additives, pesticides, environmental pollutants) to which humans may be subjected to lifetime exposure. On the other hand, short-term studies may suffice in testing such chemicals, as most pharmaceuticals are used for short durations.

The NOAEL from the long-term studies, along with data on their acute toxicity and metabolism as well as information from genetic, reproductive, and any other studies, is used in determining their “acceptable intakes” (ADI) for humans. For further discussion on the procedure used for this purpose, see Chapter 25.

## GOOD LABORATORY PRACTICE

In 1975 and 1976, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) raised questions about the integrity of toxicologic data received from certain laboratories. On inspecting these facilities, FDA discovered a number of unacceptable laboratory practices, such as selective reporting, under-reporting, lack of adherence to a specified protocol, poor animal care procedures, poor record-keeping, and inadequate supervision of personnel. In an attempt to improve the validity of the data, FDA proposed a set of regulations for good laboratory practice in 1978. These were

later included in the Regulation for the Enforcement of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

These regulations (FDA, 1987) contain detailed guidance on provisions for the following:

1. Personnel, stipulating the responsibilities of the study director, testing facility management, and quality assurance unit.
2. Facilities for animal care, animal supply, and handling test and control chemicals.
3. Equipment, regarding its design, maintenance, and calibration.
4. Testing facilities operation, including standard operating procedures, reagents and solutions, and animal care.
5. Test and control chemicals, such as their characterization and handling.
6. The protocol and conduct of a laboratory study.
7. Records, their storage, retrieval, and retention, as well as the preparation and contents of reports.
8. Disqualifications of testing facilities.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency also proposed a set of good laboratory practice standards. They contain provisions similar to those of the FDA regulation regarding health effects testing. However, the EPA standards also contain provisions for environmental effects testing. At an international level, OECD (1982) has also produced a set of similar guidelines.

## REFERENCES

- Bliss CL (1957). Some principles of bioassay. *Am Sci* 45, 449–466.
- Bruce RD (1985). An up-and-down procedure for acute toxicity testing. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 5, 151–157.
- EPA (1994). Health Effects Test Guidelines. Hazard Evaluation. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40, Parts 792, 798.
- FDA (1987). Good laboratory practice regulations; Final rule. *Fed Reg* 52, 33768–33782.
- Finney DJ (1971). *Probit Analysis*. Cambridge, MA: Cambridge University Press.
- Food Safety Council (1980). Proposed system for food safety assessment. *Food Cosmet Toxicol* 16(suppl 2).
- Kurakawa Y, Takamura N, et al. (1987). Comparative studies on lipid peroxidation in the kidney of rats, mice and hamsters and the effect of cysteine, glutathione and diethyl maleate treatment on mortality and nephrotoxicity after administration of potassium bromate. *J Am Coll Toxicol* 6, 487–501.
- Loomis T (1978). *Essentials of Toxicology*, 3rd edn. Philadelphia, PA: Lea & Febiger.
- Lu FC (1995). A review of the acceptable daily intakes of pesticides assessed by WHO. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 21, 352–364.
- Lu FC, Lavallée A (1965). The acute toxicity of some synthetic colors used in drugs and foods. *Can Pharm J* 97, 30.

- McNamara BP (1976). Concepts in health evaluation of commercial and industrial chemicals. In: Mehlman MA, Shapiro RE, Blumenthal H, eds. *New Concepts in Safety Evaluation*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere.
- OECD (1982). *Good Laboratory Practice in the Testing of Chemicals*. Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development, France.
- OECD (1992). *OECD Guidelines for Testing Chemicals. Acute Oral Toxicity*. Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development, France.
- Weil CS (1952). Tables for convenient calculation of median effective dose (LD50 or ED50) and instructions for their use. *Biometrics* 8, 249–263.
- WHO (1966). *Specifications for Identity and Purity and Toxicological Evaluation of Food Colors*, WHO/Food Add./66.25. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1978). *Principles and Methods for Evaluating the Toxicity of Chemicals. Part I, Environmental Health Criteria 6*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1990). *Principles for toxicological assessment of pesticide residues in food. Environmental Health Criteria 104*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Workshop on Subchronic Toxicity Testing (1980). In: Page N, Sawbney D, Ryon MG, eds. *Proceedings of the Workshop EPA-560/11–80-028*. Springfield, VA: National Technical Information Service.

## **FURTHER READING**

- Ecobichon DJ (1992). *The Basis of Toxicity Testing*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

**Appendix 1** General Observations, Clinical Laboratory Tests, and Pathology Examinations That May Be Used in Short- and Long-Term Toxicity Studies

Organ or organ system	General observations	Clinical laboratory tests on blood	Pathology examination*
Liver	Discoloration of mucus membranes, edema, ascites	ALT (SGPT), AP, AST (SGOT), LDH cholesterol, total protein, albumin, globulin	Liver
Urinary system	Urine volume, consistency, color	BUN, total protein, albumin, globulin, glucose	Kidney and urinary bladder <sup>†</sup>
Gastrointestinal (G.I.) system	Diarrhea, vomit, stool, appetite	Total protein, albumin, globulin, sodium, potassium	Stomach, G.I. tract, gallbladder (if present), salivary gland, pancreas
Nervous system	Posture, movements, responses, behavior		Brain, spinal cord, and sciatic nerve
Eye	Appearance, discharge, ophthalmologic examination		Eye and optic nerves
Respiratory system	Rate, coughing, nasal discharge	Total protein, albumin, globulin	One lung with a major bronchus
Hematopoietic system	Discoloration of mucus membranes, lethargy, weakness	Packed red cell volume, hemoglobin, erythrocyte count, total and differential leukocyte count, platelet count, prothrombin time, activated partial thromboplastin time	Spleen, thymus, mesenteric lymph nodes, bone marrow smear and section
Reproductive system	Appearance and palpation of external reproductive organs	FSH, LH, estrogen, testosterone	Testes and epididymis or ovaries. Uterus or prostate and seminal vesicles

**Appendix 1** General Observations, Clinical Laboratory Tests, and Pathology Examinations That May Be Used in Short- and Long-Term Toxicity Studies (*Continued*)

Organ or organ system	General observations	Clinical laboratory tests on blood	Pathology examination*
Endocrine system	Skin, hair coat, body weight, urine, and stool characteristics	Glucose, Na, K, AP (dog), cholesterol	Thyroid, adrenal, pancreas
Skeletal system	Growth, deformation, lameness	Calcium, phosphorus, AP	Bone and breakage strength
Cardiovascular system	Rate and characteristic of pulse, rhythm, edema, ascites	Creatine kinase, LDH	Heart, aorta, small arteries in other tissues
Skin	Color, appearance, odor, hair coat	Total protein, albumin, globulin	Only in dermal studies
Muscle	Size, weakness, wasting, decreased activity.	AST creatine, phosphokinase	Only if indicated by observations, clinical chemistry, or gross lesions.
Bone	Deformity, weakness	Calcium, phosphorous, uric acid, AP	Spongy appearance

\*All animals should undergo thorough gross examination; organs or tissues listed should be examined microscopically.

†These organs should also be weighed.

Source: From Workshop on Subchronic Toxicity Testing (1980).

# Carcinogenesis

## CONTENTS

Introduction	100
Historical Background	100
Definition and Identification	101
Weight of Evidence	101
Mode of Action	102
Bioactivation	103
Interaction with Macromolecules	104
Initiation	104
Promotion	104
Conversion and Progression	105
Categories of Carcinogens	106
Genotoxic Carcinogens	106
Direct-Acting Carcinogens	106
Precarcinogens	106
Nongenotoxic Carcinogens	106
Cocarcinogens	107
Promoters	107
Solid-State Carcinogens	108
Metals and Metalloids	108
Secondary Carcinogens	109
Some Human Carcinogens/Target Organs	109
Tests for Carcinogenicity	111
Short-Term Tests for Mutagenesis/ Carcinogenesis	111
Limited Carcinogenicity Tests	111
Skin Tumors in Mice	111
Pulmonary Tumors in Mice	111

Altered Foci in Rodent Liver	112
Breast Cancer in Female Rats	112
Long-Term Carcinogenicity Studies	112
Animals	112
Inception and Duration	113
Route of Administration	113
Doses and Treatment Groups	113
Observations and Examinations	114
Reporting of Tumors	114
Evaluation	114
Preliminary Assessment	114
Chemical Structure	114
Mutagenicity	115
Limited Carcinogenicity Tests	115
Definitive Assessment	115
General Considerations	115
Tumor Incidence	115
Dose–Response Relationship	116
Reproducibility of the Results	116
Evaluation of Safety/Risk	116
References	117
Further Reading	119
Appendix 1 Biomarkers of Carcinogenesis/	
Human Cancers	120
Appendix 2 Probable Carcinogenic Chemicals	121

## INTRODUCTION

### Historical Background

The relation between cancer and exposure to chemicals have long been noted. Thus, in 1761, Hill found that users of tobacco snuff had a high rate of nasal cancer, and Pott observed, in 1775, that exposure to soot by chimney sweeps induced cancer of the scrotum. Twenty years later, Sommering noted that cancer of the lip was often associated with pipe smoking. Rehn discovered in 1895 that bladder tumors occurred among workers in aniline dye factories. In the 20th century, cancers induced by a variety of chemicals under different exposure conditions have been observed.

In view of the seriousness of carcinogenesis, and the rapid development of new chemicals, many governmental agencies as well as academic and industrial laboratories have undertaken extensive research and testing in laboratory animals. These endeavors have provided leads for further epidemiological studies.



## Definition and Identification

The term *chemical carcinogenesis* is generally defined to indicate the induction or enhancement of neoplasia by chemicals. Although in the strict etymologic sense this term means the induction of carcinomas, it is widely used to indicate tumorigenesis. In other words, it includes not only epithelial malignancies (carcinomas) but also mesenchymal malignant tumors (sarcomas). The cells tend to replicate, thereby invading surrounding tissues and metastasizing to remote parts of the body.

A chemical may be identified as a carcinogen based on observations in humans and supported by tests in laboratory animals. Human data may be derived from clinical observations as noted above. However, the relationship between the development of a cancer and the exposure to a chemical is complex. Firstly, there is a long latency, generally in years or decades, between the exposure and the development of the cancer. Furthermore, humans are exposed to a multiplicity of potentially carcinogenic factors. In addition, exposure of the female parent to chemicals during pregnancy can result in cancer development in offspring without any evidence of cancer in the mother. In view of these facts, very extensive epidemiological studies are needed.

In addition to human data, laboratory tests in animals can provide valuable supporting evidence. An important one involves chronic exposure of animals to the test chemical. However, animals, as humans, develop cancer even without being exposed to a known carcinogen. In view of this, it is generally agreed (e.g., WHO, 1969) that the presence of one or more of the following responses of the test animal be considered as positive for carcinogenesis:

1. An increase in the frequency of one or several types of tumors that also occur in the controls.
2. The development of tumors not seen in the controls.
3. The occurrence of tumors earlier than in the controls.
4. An increase in the number of tumors in individual animals, compared to that in the controls.

## Weight of Evidence

Evidence of carcinogenicity consists of human and animal data. However, because of interspecies differences in response to chemicals, sound human data are given much greater weight. In fact, the earliest discoveries of chemical carcinogens were made in humans, as noted above. In view of the seriousness of cancer, however, it would be grossly imprudent to wait for relevant results to be generated from long-term human studies to assess each chemical for its carcinogenicity. Consequently, appropriate studies need to be carried out in animals. The significance of the results unfortunately varies greatly among different studies. For example, aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> induced tumors in a variety of animals, with small doses (in ppb) and with a relatively short latent period. On the other hand, saccharin yielded positive results inconsistently, with very large doses (in tens of thousands of ppm) and

**Table 1** Classification of Carcinogens Based on “Weight of Evidence”

Categories	IARC	EPA	Human data	Animal data
Human carcinogen	1	A	Sufficient	Sufficient or limited
Probable human carcinogen	2A	B1, B2 <sup>a</sup>	Limited or inadequate <sup>b</sup>	Sufficient
Possible human carcinogen	2B	C	Absent or inadequate	Sufficient or limited <sup>b</sup>
Not classifiable	3	D	Absent or inadequate	Inadequate or absent
Not carcinogenic	4	E	Absent or extensive negative data	Negative evidence in at least two species

<sup>a</sup>EPA classifies carcinogens with sufficient animal data as “probable human carcinogen” and places them in category B1 or B2 depending on the weight of human data.

<sup>b</sup>IARC accepts positive genotoxicity in lieu of human data.

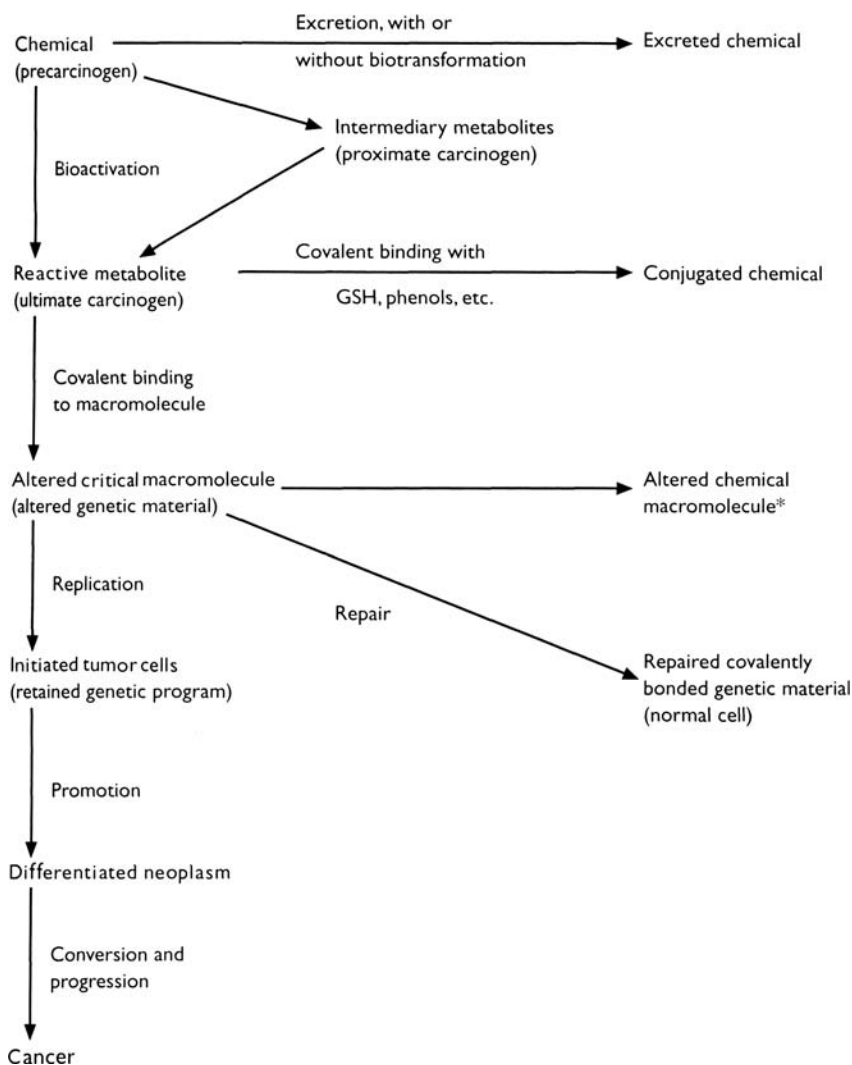
only after very long periods of treatment. Atrazine induced mammary tumors in a rat Sprague-Dawley strain, which does not resemble the human reproductive system in function; and thus findings were not of biological relevance to humans. Furthermore, the experimental design and conduct of the studies also differ in their adequacy.

To facilitate the evaluation of such diverse findings, a *weight of evidence* scheme has been adopted. This scheme must take into account the species used, as interspecies data cannot always be utilized as in the case of atrazine-induced mammary tumors in Sprague-Dawley rats. The findings may be considered “sufficient” when there are benign and malignant tumors in multiple species or strains or in multiple experiments, or there are large numbers of tumors or at an unusual site or being that of a special type.

“Limited” evidence means positive results in only one species, strain or experiment, or when the experimental design or conduct is inadequate. “Inadequate” evidence applies to results that are difficult to interpret. Similarly, data obtained in humans also vary greatly in their significance. Using these criteria, EPA (1996) and IARC (1987) classified chemical carcinogens in five categories (Table 1).

## MODE OF ACTION

Chemical carcinogenesis, as shown in Figure 1, is a multistage process. Carcinogenic chemicals act by initiating certain genetic changes in a cell, promoting the formation of a neoplasm, converting the neoplasm to a cancer, or enhancing the activity of another chemical.



**Figure 1** Schematic diagram depicting fate of a genotoxic carcinogen and its relation with carcinogenesis. Events in the left-hand column lead to cancer formation, whereas those in the right-hand column are harmless. Asterisk (\*) indicates that the step may be important during other stages of carcinogenesis.

### Bioactivation

Most carcinogenic chemicals per se are inactive. However, they undergo bioactivation in the body to yield reactive metabolites. A common type of reactive metabolite is epoxide. For example, aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> is converted to aflatoxin-8,9-epoxide. Benzene, vinyl chloride, and a number of polycyclic hydrocarbons also

form epoxides. Other carcinogens, such as AAF and certain aminoazo dyes form *N*-hydroxy derivatives (see Appendix 1 of Chap. 3). Certain chemicals are bioactivated to ultimate carcinogens via an intermediary step. An example of this is benzo-*a*-pyrene (BaP) which forms BaP-7,8-epoxide, the intermediary carcinogen. The latter then transforms to BaP-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide, the ultimate carcinogen. Styrene undergoes oxidative metabolism to styrene 7,8-oxide, which is the intermediary carcinogen (Nestmann et al., 2005). Chromium undergoes reduction to a lower oxidation state to induce carcinogenesis (Shi et al., 1998).

### Interaction with Macromolecules

The reactive metabolites bind with macromolecules. Some of them, such as proteins, may not play a critical role in carcinogenesis. However, when DNA is the target, the reaction may lead to point mutation, frame-shift mutation, and others. These changes may not persist: they may be reversed by an error-free DNA repair or disappear when the cell dies.

### Initiation

If the cell with an altered DNA undergoes mitosis, the alteration will be retained. The cell with the altered DNA is termed an “initiated” cell. Depending on the site of the alteration, the cell may be partially or fully neoplastic. The process generally involves the conversion of proto-oncogenes to oncogenes.

*Proto-oncogenes* may be converted to *oncogenes* through translocation to a different chromosomal site, or other mechanisms such as genetic amplification, insertions, and gene mutation (Bishop, 1987). In addition, there are *onco-suppressor genes*; a lack of their expression or an inactivation of their products may also lead to carcinogenesis (Weinberg, 1989). One of them, the p53 suppressor gene, is mutated in about half of human cancers (Greenblatt et al., 1994; Sugimura and Ushijima, 2000). In the case of silica, the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) results in activation of nuclear transcription factors, induction of oncogene expression, redox regulation of p53 tumor suppressor gene, and induction of apoptosis (Shi et al., 1998, 1999). ROS generation as a step in the pathway of carcinogenesis is also involved in cigarette smoking, radon, and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (Vallyathan et al., 1998).

### Promotion

The initiated tumor cell, with altered genotype and phenotype, may remain dormant for a long period of time before it becomes a tumor through cell proliferation in the presence of *promoters* (Butterworth and Goldworthy, 1991). The dormancy is probably due to the suppressant influence of the surrounding normal cells exerted through certain intercellular communication (Trosko and Chang, 1988). The influence can be reduced by programmed cell death (apoptosis), cell killing (e.g., from cytotoxic chemicals), cell removal (e.g., partial hepatectomy), growth factors (e.g., hormones), and other factors.

While initiation is generally considered to be a permanent process, promotion is not. Furthermore, it is reversible. Therefore, for an initiated cell to continue to replicate, it must be exposed to a promoter more or less continuously.

### Conversion and Progression

These are characterized by biochemical and/or morphological changes in the activity or structures of the genome. The mechanism of action is not fully understood, but may involve activation of the initiated cells by exposure to clastogenic agents or complete carcinogens (Pitot et al., 1988). During this period, the neoplasm may convert from benign to malignant tumor, which is invasive and metastatic.

Similar to initiation, progression is an irreversible process. Table 2 provides a list of the characteristics of initiation, promotion, and progression.

**Table 2** Morphologic and Biologic Characteristics of the Stages of Initiation, Promotion, and Progression in Hepatocarcinogenesis in the Rat

Initiation	Promotion	Progress/on
Irreversible with constant "stem cell" potential. Initiated "stem cell" not morphologically identifiable	Reversible	Irreversible Measurable and/or morphologically discernible alteration in cell genome's structure
Efficacy sensitive to xenobiotic and other chemical factors	Promoted cell population existence dependent on continued administration of the promoting agent	
Spontaneous (fortuitous) occurrence of initiated cells can be quantitated Requires cell division for "fixation"	Efficiency sensitive to dietary and hormonal factors	Growth of altered cells sensitive to environmental factors during early phase
Dose-response does not exhibit a readily measurable threshold	Dose-response exhibits measurable threshold and maximal effect dependent on dose of initiating agent	Benign and/or malignant neoplasms characteristically seen
Relative effect of initiators depends on quantitation of focal lesions following defined period of promotion	Relative effectiveness of promoters depends on time and dose rate to reach maximal effect and dose rate	"Progressor" agents act to advance promoted cells into this stage but may not be initiating agents

Source: From Pitot et al. (1988).

## CATEGORIES OF CARCINOGENS

Carcinogens may also be classified according to their *mode of action* into genotoxic and nongenotoxic carcinogens.

### Genotoxic Carcinogens

Genotoxic carcinogens initiate tumors by producing DNA damage (Fig. 1). These are of two types.

#### Direct-Acting Carcinogens

These chemicals are also known as ultimate carcinogens. They are electrophilic and can bind to DNA and other macromolecules. Examples are alkyl and aryl epoxides, lactones, sulfate esters, nitrosamides, nitrosoureas, ochratoxin A (Clark and Snedeker, 2006), arsenic (Bernstam and Nriagu, 2000), benzene (Pyatt et al., 2007), and platinum amine chelates. Because of their high reactivity, these direct-acting carcinogens are often more active *in vitro* but less so *in vivo*.

#### Precarcinogens

They are also known as procarcinogens. They require conversion through bioactivation to become ultimate carcinogens, either directly or via an intermediary stage, the proximate carcinogens. Most of the presently known chemical carcinogens fall into this class. These include the polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH), diesel exhaust particles, aromatic amines, halogenated hydrocarbons, nitrosamines, cycasin, aflatoxin B, pyrrolizidine alkaloids, safrole, and thioamides. Different types of bioactivations (such as formation of epoxides, *N*-hydroxy derivatives) are involved in their conversion to the direct-acting agents, as discussed in chapter 3. These chemicals may also activate proto-oncogene to oncogene and inactivate onco-suppressor genes. Another type of activation involves the generation of ROS, which subsequently stimulates the multistep sequence resulting in carcinogenesis.

As noted above, timely and error-free DNA repair play an important part in the prevention of neoplastic transformation. An interesting example is dimethylnitrosamine. Its damage to hepatocyte DNA is rapidly repaired in the rat but only slowly in the hamster, and the latter is thus more susceptible than the rat to this carcinogen. Furthermore, in rat it induces tumors in the brain where the repair mechanism is deficient.

### Nongenotoxic Carcinogens

These substances do not damage DNA but enhance the growth of tumors induced by genotoxic carcinogens or induce tumors through other mechanisms. These are briefly described below.

### Cocarcinogens

These substances enhance the effects of genotoxic carcinogens when given simultaneously. They may act by effecting an increase in the concentration of the initiator, the genotoxic carcinogen itself, or that of the reactive metabolite. This can be achieved either by an increase of the absorption of the carcinogen, via the gastrointestinal tract or the skin, or by an increase of the bioactivation. The same result can also be achieved through a decrease of the elimination of the initiator either by inhibiting the detoxification enzymes or by depleting the endogenous substrates involved in phase II reactions, such as glutathione.

Apart from increasing the concentration of the reactive species at the site of action, cocarcinogens may inhibit the rate or fidelity of DNA repair, or they may enhance conversion of DNA lesions to permanent alterations.

Tobacco smoke contains relatively small amounts of genotoxic carcinogens, such as PAH and nitrosamines; its marked carcinogenic effects are perhaps attributed to catechols which act as cocarcinogens.

### Promoters

These chemicals increase the effects of initiators when given subsequently. The classic example of this phenomenon was provided by studies demonstrating that an initial application on mouse skin of a carcinogenic PAH did not induce skin cancer until after applying, at the same site, phorbol esters from croton oil (Berenblum and Shubik, 1947, 1949). The application of the promoters could be delayed for months or even a year without losing the effect. These studies clearly demonstrate the *two-stage* process of carcinogenesis as well as the persistence of the effect of the initiator.

Incidentally, croton oil is also cocarcinogenic since it is effective when applied at the same time as the initiator.

The possible mechanisms of action of promoters include:

1. stimulation of cell proliferation through cytotoxicity or hormonal effects;
2. inhibition of intercellular communication, thereby releasing the initiated cells from the restraint exercised by the surrounding normal cells; and
3. immunosuppression.

*Cytotoxicants* such as nitrilotriacetic acid (NTA), a noneutrophyng replacement for phosphate in household detergent, produce tumors through cell proliferation resulting from cell injury and death. Unleaded gasoline and a number of other chemicals have been shown to induce renal tubular necrosis resulting from deposition of  $\alpha$ 2u-globulin in male rats. The cell death and subsequent regeneration are believed to produce kidney tumors in male rats (Swenberg et al., 1989).

*Hormones* such as estradiol and diethylstilbestrol have been shown to produce an increase in tumors in animals (e.g., breast cancer in mice) and in humans (e.g., endometrial cancer in menopausal females maintained on estrogen). These substances are not genotoxic but act as promoters. The actual initiators are not

known. Androgens have little, if any, carcinogenic effect. The herbicide aminotriazole and certain fungicides induce thyroid tumors also through a hormonal mechanism (McClain, 1989).

*Gap junction* intercellular communication is an important mechanism in regulating cell growth. A number of chemicals interfere with this mechanism, thereby inducing hyperplasia and acting as promoters in carcinogenesis (Trosko and Chang, 1988). Klaunig (1991) listed, among others, a number of pesticides (e.g., chlordane, DDT, dieldrin, endosulfan, lindane) and pharmaceuticals (phenobarbital and diazepam) as being able to inhibit hepatic gap junctional intercellular communication.

*Immunosuppressive* drugs such as cyclosporin A and azathioprine are increasingly being used in conjunction with organ transplantation. They have been shown to produce leukemias and sarcomas in some of these patients and in mice and rats. The genotoxic agents are likely to be viruses, and the immunosuppressive drugs promote the development of the tumors through nongenotoxic mechanisms (Ryffel, 1992).

*Peroxisome Proliferators* consist of a variety of chemicals that have the common property of inducing rodent liver tumors and increasing peroxisomes in liver cells. These chemicals have therefore been considered as a special class of carcinogen (Reddy and Lalwani, 1983). Examples are hypolipidemic drugs, such as clofibrate and fenofibrate, certain phthalate plasticizers, such as di(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate, and the solvent 1,1,2-trichloroethylene. These chemicals are not genotoxic, but by increasing the number of peroxisomes, they may increase the formation of  $H_2O_2$ , leading to the formation of ROS and thereby enhancing cell replication (Lake, 1995).

### Solid-State Carcinogens

These are exemplified by asbestos and implanted materials such as plastics, metal, and glass. These substances exert no genotoxic effects, but they produce tumors of mesenchymal origin. Although the precise mode of action is not known, the tumors they induce are preceded by an exuberant foreign-body reaction including hyperplastic fibrosis with a high frequency of chromosomal changes in the preneoplastic cells (Weisburger and Williams, 1993). In many cases there is concomitant exposure to the substances in cigarette smoke, and the frequency of lung cancer in individuals exposed to asbestos and cigarette smoke is markedly higher than those exposed to asbestos alone. The absence of tumors in subjects exposed to asbestos alone but the presence of cancer in patients exposed to asbestos and cigarette smoke is a strong indication that asbestos may be acting as an initiator rather than a direct carcinogen (Vallyathan et al., 1998).

### Metals and Metalloids

Arsenic, cadmium, chromium, nickel, uranium, and their compounds are carcinogenic in humans. A number of others such as beryllium, cobalt, and lead are considered to be carcinogens in animals (IARC, 1987). Arsenic was thought to



be an exception in that it is carcinogenic in humans but not in animals (Bernstam and Nriagu, 2000). Recent data, however, show that intratracheal instillation of  $As_2O_3$  in Syrian hamsters resulted in an increase in pulmonary adenomas, and after intrauterine exposure, apparently induced lung tumors in mice. Radon and its daughters diffuse into the ambient air, become attached to particles in uranium mines, and upon inhalation produce lung cancer.

The mechanisms underlying metal-induced carcinogenesis are not fully understood, but may involve genotoxic and/or epigenetic activities. Sunderman (1984) has listed a number of promising avenues for research. Among them are the formation of cross-links between DNA and proteins or between adjacent DNA strands, and impairment of the fidelity of DNA replication by altering the conformation of DNA polymerases. Radon was shown to penetrate bronchial epithelial nuclei resulting in DNA mutation initiation leading to malignant transformation of cells (Vallyathan et al., 1998). These substances may be classified as genotoxic carcinogens because they alter the gene expression in one way or the other. In addition, damages of cytoskeleton by certain metals may contribute to their carcinogenicity (Chou, 1989).

### Secondary Carcinogens

This term has been used to refer to substances that are not directly carcinogenic but can induce cancer following a distinctly noncarcinogenic effect. For example, polyoxyethylene monostearate (Myrj 45), at very high doses, elicited bladder stones that in turn produced bladder tumors. No tumors were observed in any of the animals that had no bladder stones. On the other hand, this term has also been used in connection with those genotoxic carcinogens that require bioactivation.

## SOME HUMAN CARCINOGENS/TARGET ORGANS

As noted above, the designation of a chemical, or mixture, as a human carcinogen is based on sufficient human data and, as a rule, some animal data. Human carcinogens induce cancers in different organs or systems. Table 3 lists the target organs of some human carcinogens, grouped by the "reason"/site of exposure.

In addition to the carcinogens related to diet and lifestyle, it is generally recognized that high intake of fat and/or calories and deficiencies in vitamins A and E pose risks of increasing certain cancers. However, these factors, in the strict sense, are not carcinogens, but they modify/promote carcinogenesis by certain indirect mechanisms. Caloric restriction reduces carcinogenesis and increases survival time.

As noted above, certain biochemical changes take place in the body after exposure to a carcinogen. Some of these changes can be detected in biological samples. Clinically, they may serve to monitor such exposure or to assess the progress of cancer and progress of treatment. Appendix 1 describes a few examples to illustrate their uses.

**Table 3** Some Human Carcinogens and Their Target Organs

---

<i>Dietary and lifestyle</i>	
Aflatoxin	Liver
Alcoholic beverages	Pharynx, esophagus, liver, larynx, oral cavity
Betal chewing	Mouth, pharynx, larynx
Ochratoxin A	Kidney, ureter, urinary bladder
Tobacco smoke	Lung, larynx, oral cavity, pharynx, esophagus, pancreas, kidney, urothelial
<i>Industrial and environmental</i>	
<i>p</i> -Aminobiphenyl	Bladder
Aromatic amines	Bladder
Azo dyes	Bladder
Arsenic	Skin, bronchus, liver
Asbestos	Lung, pleura, peritoneum
Benzene	Bone marrow
Benzidine	Bladder
Cadmium	Lung, prostate
Chromium	Respiratory tract
2-Naphthylamine	Bladder
Nickel	Nasal sinus, bronchus
Polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons, from coke, coal, tar, etc.	Skin, bronchus
Vinyl chloride monomer	Liver
Wood dust	Nasal sinus
<i>Manufacturing</i>	
Anthraquinone dyes	Kidney, liver, urinary bladder
Aluminum production	Lung, bladder
Auramine manufacture	Bladder
Boot and shoe manufacture	Nasal cavity, hematopoietic system
Coke production	Skin, lung, kidney
Iron and steel founding	Nasal cavity
Magenda manufacture	Bladder
Painting	Lung
Rubber industry	Bladder, hematopoietic system
<i>Medicinal</i>	
Azathioprine	Lymph node, skin
Cyclophosphamide	Bladder, bone marrow
Estrogens	Cervix, uterus, breast
Methoxypsoralen with UV radiation	Skin
Phenacetin	Renal pelvis
Thorotrast	Liver

---

## TESTS FOR CARCINOGENICITY

### Short-Term Tests for Mutagenesis/Carcinogenesis

In recent years, a number of relatively simple and much shorter tests have been devised and employed to detect the mutagenic activity of chemicals. These tests utilize a variety of systems, including microbes, insects, and mammalian cells, as well as a battery of parameters such as gene mutation, chromosomal effects, and DNA repair. These mutagenesis tests and tests using cell transformation as endpoints will be described and discussed in the next chapter.

Although not all mutagens are carcinogenic, nor vice versa, the relationship between these two activities is nevertheless so close that mutagenesis tests are performed frequently as a rapid screening of chemicals for their potential carcinogenicity. To improve the reliability of the results, a battery of these tests is usually conducted (e.g., U.S. ISGC, 1986). Weisburger and Williams (1993) recommended the following short-term *in vitro* tests:

1. bacterial mutagenesis,
2. mammalian mutagenesis,
3. mammalian cell DNA repair,
4. chromosome integrity, and
5. cell transformation.

The results of these tests are also useful in defining the mechanism of action. Descriptions of these tests are provided in chapter 8.

### Limited Carcinogenicity Tests

Limited carcinogenicity tests are superior to the mutagenesis tests in that the endpoint is tumor formation. Furthermore, the duration of these tests is much shorter than that of the long-term carcinogenicity studies.

#### Skin Tumors in Mice

Mouse skin responds to topical application of chemicals, such as PAH, and crude products, such as tars from coal and petroleum, by the formation of papillomas and carcinomas. This procedure, introduced by Berenblum and Shubik (1947), has been widely used. Mouse skin responds positively apparently because it has the enzymes that convert the substances into active metabolites.

Some chemicals act as initiator and as promoter; they may therefore be referred to as complete carcinogens. Others act mainly or exclusively as initiators. Their carcinogenicity is revealed only after the application of a promoter. Results obtained in the mouse skin test reported in the literature on the effects of chemicals as initiators and as promoters have been compiled by Pereira (1982).

#### Pulmonary Tumors in Mice

Strain A mice spontaneously have an essentially 100% lung tumor incidence by 24 months of age. Positive results from carcinogens can be obtained in about

24 weeks when few controls have tumors. With some chemicals, the test can be completed in 12 weeks.

#### Altered Foci in Rodent Liver

It has been demonstrated that distinct liver foci appear before the development of hepatocarcinoma. These foci are resistant to iron accumulation, a phenomenon that can be identified histochemically. There are also abnormalities in certain enzymes, which can be demonstrated histochemically. The latter alteration occurs in rats but not in mice. These foci can be detected within three weeks of exposure and occur in large numbers in 12 to 16 weeks (Goldfarb and Pugh, 1982).

#### Breast Cancer in Female Rats

Polycyclic hydrocarbons can induce breast cancers in young female Sprague-Dawley and Wistar rats. The tumors can develop in less than six months (Huggins et al., 1959). The Sprague-Dawley rat lacks progesterone but has very high estrogen levels.

### Long-Term Carcinogenicity Studies

These studies are designed to provide definitive information on the carcinogenic effects of chemicals on the test animals. Because of the great expense and time required, they are undertaken usually after a review of other data, such as the chemical structure and results from short-term mutagenesis tests and long-term chronic toxicity studies, which are described, respectively, below and in chapter 6.

Guidelines on the long-term carcinogenicity studies are outlined in this section. More detailed descriptions and references to some comments are provided in a number of papers (WHO, 1969; OECD, 1981; U.S. ISGC, 1986).

#### Animals

Rats and mice are generally preferred because of their small size, short lifespan, ready availability, and an abundance of information on their response to other carcinogens. Hamsters are also used, especially in studies on cancers of the bladder, breast, gastrointestinal tract, and respiratory tract. Dogs and nonhuman primates are occasionally used for their positive response to 2-naphthylamine, the latter is also used for their higher phylogenetic order. But their use is limited because of their large size and relatively long lifespan, thereby requiring a 7- to 10-year exposure to the chemical on test.

The characteristics of a preferred strain are:

1. known sensitivity to substances of similar chemical structure,
2. low incidence of spontaneous tumors, and
3. similarity of its rate and pattern of biotransformation and those of humans, if known.

Both genders should be included in these studies; differences in response to the carcinogenic activity of chemicals are well documented. To provide a sufficient number of animals surviving until the appearance of tumors for statistical analysis, it is a common practice to start the tests with 50 animals of each gender per dose group, including the controls.

#### Inception and Duration

The studies are generally started shortly after weaning the animals to allow maximum duration of exposure. The duration of the studies is generally 24 months in rats and 18 months in mice. If the animals are in good condition, the duration may be extended to 30 and 24 months, respectively.

#### Route of Administration

The chemical under test should be given to the animals by the route of human exposure and the usual route is oral. This principle readily applies to food additives and contaminants as well as most drugs. For industrial and environmental chemicals, the main route of entry is inhalation. Alternatively, the test chemical may be instilled intratracheally.

#### Doses and Treatment Groups

Usually two or three dose levels are included in such studies. In addition, control groups are also included for comparison. The doses are selected on the basis of the short-term studies and metabolism data, with the aim that the high dose would produce some minor signs of toxicity but not significantly reduce the lifespan of the animals. The two lower doses are generally some fractions of the high dose (e.g., 1/2 and 1/4) and are expected to permit the animals to survive in good health or until a tumor develops.

The "maximally tolerated dose" (MTD) is generally used as the high dose. It is estimated from 90-day studies and defined as one that would (1) not produce morphologic evidence of toxicity of a severity that interferes with the interpretation of the long-term study, and (2) not comprise so large a fraction of the animal's diet that it might lead to nutritional imbalance (U.S. ISGC, 1986). However, the use of MTD has been criticized, especially when it is much higher than the expected human exposure; there is the possibility of alteration of metabolic pattern by "overloading" the animals (Mermelstein et al., 1994).

An untreated group consisting of the same number, or a larger number, of animals as each dose group is included. In addition to these negative controls, another group of animals is often incorporated that is given a known carcinogen at a dose level that had been shown to be carcinogenic. The positive controls provide more confidence in the results on the test chemical by serving as a check on the sensitivity of the particular lot of animals used as well as the adequacy of the facilities and procedures in the specific laboratory. It will also provide some indication of the relative potency of the test chemical. If a vehicle, such as acetone

or dimethyl sulfoxide, is to be used, its possible effect should also be tested in a group of animals as vehicle control.

### Observations and Examinations

The animals should be examined daily for mortality and morbidity. Dead and moribund animals should be removed from the cage for gross and microscopic examinations whenever the condition of the tissues permits. The onset, location, size, and growth of any unusual tissue masses should be carefully examined and recorded. Signs of toxicity should also be noted. All animals found dead or dying should be subjected to gross autopsy. The survivals at the end of the study should be sacrificed and examined. In addition, a number of organs should be weighed, including the liver, kidneys, heart, testes, ovaries, and brain. Samples of all tissues should be preserved for histologic examination. Microscopic examinations should be done on all tumor growths and all tissues showing gross abnormalities.

### Reporting of Tumors

As carcinogenesis can manifest in a variety of forms (see definition and identification), it is necessary to record the following:

1. The number of various types of tumors (both benign and malignant), and any unusual tumors.
2. The number of tumor-bearing animals.
3. The number of tumors in each animal.
4. The onset of tumors whenever determinable.

## EVALUATION

### Preliminary Assessment

#### Chemical Structure

A number of chemicals are known to be carcinogenic. A list of known and suspected human carcinogens is presented in Table 3 and Appendix 2, respectively. In addition, a large number of chemicals have been shown to be carcinogenic in animals (see genotoxic carcinogens). As chemicals that have structures similar to any of these or other carcinogens/mutagens are not necessarily carcinogens, they should be assigned high priority in carcinogenicity testing programs. In fact, certain chemical structures have been shown to be correlated with carcinogenicity (e.g., Ashby and Tennant, 1988). Doi et al. (2005) demonstrated that substitution of a functional group in the anthraquinone dye resulted in either the presence of carcinogenicity, the absence, or the development at a different site. Amino substitutions diminished while bromine substitutions enhanced the carcinogenicity and extended the target tissues to forestomach and lung, as well as kidney and liver.

### Mutagenicity

Mutagenic agents produce heritable genetic changes essentially through their effects on DNA. The mutagenicity tests also provide information on the mode of action as well as on the question as to whether metabolic activation is required for the mutagenicity. Although positive results from these tests do not constitute positive evidence that the chemical is carcinogenic, they do indicate that extensive testing is required. Furthermore, the mutagenesis data are useful in the risk assessment of the chemical in question. On the other hand, negative results do not establish the safety of the chemical.

### Limited Carcinogenicity Tests

The endpoint in these tests is tumor formation. Therefore, certain chemicals, such as cocarcinogens that yield negative results in mutagenesis tests, may be positive in these tests. Positive results from more than one of these limited carcinogenicity tests may be considered unequivocal qualitative evidence of carcinogenicity.

### Definitive Assessment

Data from well-designed and properly executed long-term carcinogenicity studies generally provide a sound basis for assessment of the carcinogenic potential.

### General Considerations

Results from these studies are generally more reliable than those from the rapid screening tests. But the conclusiveness of the results depends on a number of factors. For example, too few animals surviving until tumor development may preclude statistical analysis of the data. This event may occur as a result of insufficient animals placed in each dosage group and/or excessive mortality resulting from improper husbandry or from competing toxicity of the chemical given at inordinately high dose levels. The thoroughness of the postmortem examination also plays an important role. This applies to the gross as well as the microscopic examinations.

### Tumor Incidence

As noted at the beginning of the chapter, carcinogenesis may manifest in one of the four forms or any combination thereof. An appreciable increase in the tumor-bearing animals is the most common form. The occurrence of unusual tumors is an important phenomenon if there are a significant number of them; when one or only a few of them are detected, further critical examination is required. An increase in the number of tumors per animal without a concomitant increase in the tumor-bearing animals usually indicates cocarcinogenicity only. The tumors in the experimental animals may not be at the same stage of development. The stages may include, for example, atypical hyperplasia, benign tumors, carcinomas in situ, invasion of adjacent tissues, and metastasis to other parts of the body. Although

tumors of the same type but at different stages should be separately tabulated, they should be combined for statistical analysis.

### Dose–Response Relationship

As a rule, a positive dose–response relationship is apparent. However, there may be a lower tumor incidence in the high-dose group. This phenomenon usually results from poor survival among these animals, which succumb to competing toxic effects of the chemical.

### Reproducibility of the Results

The confidence in a carcinogenicity study is enhanced if the results are produced in another strain of animals. Reproducibility in another species is even more significant. However, if negative results are obtained in another species, this fact may not nullify the positive findings but does justify further investigation.

### Evaluation of Safety/Risk

The various approaches used in the evaluation of the safety/risk of carcinogens are discussed in chapter 25. The following points, however, are worthy of emphasizing.

First, while the tests enumerated above are a valuable basis for risk/safety assessment, other data relating to the mechanism of action and influences of modifying factors are also essential (U.S. ISGC, 1986). The significant differences between genotoxic and nongenotoxic carcinogens are also considered as valid reasons for assessing their risks differently: it is generally assumed that genotoxic carcinogens exhibit no threshold, whereas nongenotoxic carcinogens induce cancer secondary to other biological effects which are likely to show no-effect dose levels. However, a chemical, such as chloroform, may act as an epigenetic as well as a genotoxic carcinogen.

Furthermore, there are chemicals with carcinogenicity secondary to non-carcinogenic biologic or physical effects that are elicited only at dose levels that could never be approached in realistic human exposure situations. There was general consensus that there are threshold doses for such secondary carcinogens (Lu, 1976; Munro, 1988). The U.S. ISGC (1986) also cautions that extremely high doses of a toxicant may exhibit *qualitatively* different distribution, detoxication, and elimination of the toxicant. The response at such doses therefore may not be applicable to more realistic exposure conditions. Furthermore, evidence of extensive tissue damage, disruption of hormonal function, formation of urinary stones, and saturation of DNA repair function should be carefully reviewed.

Carcinogens also differ in the potency and latent periods. Some carcinogens are active in a particular species, whereas others affect several species and strains of animals. All these factors must be taken into account in evaluating the safety/risk of carcinogens.



Finally, it is important to bear in mind that chemicals differ tremendously in their value to humans. For example, the use of a food color can often be suspended on the basis of suggestive carcinogenicity data. On the other hand, life-saving drugs, even when there is evidence of their carcinogenicity in humans, may still be used clinically. There are also environmental carcinogens, including those in food, that cannot be eliminated with present technology (see also Ames, 1989).

## REFERENCES

- Ames, BN (1989). What are the major carcinogens in the etiology of human cancer? Environmental pollution, natural carcinogens, and the causes of human cancer: Six errors. In: *Important Advances in Oncology, 1989*, Da Vita VT Jr., et al., eds. Philadelphia, PA: J. P. Lippincott.
- Ashby J, Tennant RW (1988) Chemical structure, Salmonella mutagenicity and extent of carcinogenicity among 222 chemicals tested in rodents by the U.S. NCI/NTP. *Mutat Res* 204, 17–115.
- Berenblum I, Shubik P (1947). A new quantitative approach to the study of the stages of chemical carcinogenesis in the mouse's skin. *Br J Cancer* 1, 383–391.
- Berenblum I, Shubik P (1949). An experimental study of the initiating stage of carcinogenesis, and a re-examination of the somatic cell mutation theory of cancer. *Br J Cancer* 3, 109–118.
- Bernstam L, Nriagu J (2000). Molecular aspects of arsenic stress. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 293–322.
- Bishop JM (1987). The molecular genetics of cancer. *Science* 235, 305–311.
- Butterworth BE, Goldworthy TL (1991). The role of cell proliferation in multistage carcinogenesis. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 198, 683–687.
- Chou IN (1989). Distinct cytoskeletal injuries induced by As, Cd, Co, Cr, and Ni compounds. *Biomed Environ Sci* 2, 358–365.
- Clark HA, Snedeker SM (2006). Ochratoxin A: Its cancer risk and potential for exposure. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 9: 265–296.
- Doi AM, Irwin RD, Bucher JR(2005). Influence of functional group substitutions on the carcinogenicity of anthraquinone in rats and mice: Analysis of long-term bioassays by the National Cancer Institute and the National toxicology Program. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 8: 109–126.
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (1996). Guidelines for Arcinogen Risk Assessment. *Fed Reg* 61, 17957–18010.
- Goldfarb S, Pugh MB (1982). The origin and significance of hyperplastic hepatocellular islands and nodules in hepatic carcinogenesis. *J Am Coll Toxicol* 1, 119–144.
- Greenblatt MS, Bennett NP, Hollstein M, et al. (1994). Mutations in the p53 tumor suppressor gene: Clues to cancer etiology and molecular pathogenesis. *Cancer Res* 55, 4855–5878.
- Gu S-Y, Zhang Z-B, Wan J-X, et al. (2007). Genetic polymorphism in CYP1A1, CYP2D6, UGT1A6, UGT1A7 and SULT1A1 genes and correlation with benzene exposure in a Chinese occupational population. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 916–924.
- Huggins C, Briziarelli G, Sutton H Jr (1959). Rapid induction of mammary carcinoma in the rat and the influence of hormones on the tumors. *J Exp Med* 109, 25–41.

- IARC (1987). Monographs for Carcinogenic Chemicals: Overall Evaluation of Carcinogenicity: An Updating of IARC Monographs, vols. 1–42(suppl. 7). Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- Kadlubar FF, Butler MA, Kaderlick KR, et al. (1992). Polymorphisms for aromatic amine metabolism in humans: Relevance for human carcinogenesis. *Environ Health Perspect* 98, 69–74.
- Klaunig JE (1991). Alterations in intercellular communication during the stage of promotion. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 198, 688–692.
- Lake BG (1995). Mechanisms of hepatocarcinogenicity of peroxisome-proliferating drugs and chemicals. *Ann Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 35, 483–507.
- Lu FC (1976). Threshold doses in chemical carcinogenesis: Introductory remarks. *Oncology* 33, 50.
- McClain, RM (1989). The significance of hepatic microsomal enzyme induction and altered thyroid function in rats: Implications for thyroid gland neoplasia. *Toxicol Pathol* 17, 294–306.
- Mermelstein R, Marrow PE, Christian MS (1994). Organ or system overload and its regulatory implications. *J Am Coll Toxicol* 13, 143–147.
- Munro IC (1988). Risk assessment of carcinogens: Present status and future directions. *Biomed Environ Sci* 1, 51–58.
- Nestmann ER, Lynch BS, Ratpan F (2005). Perspectives on the genotoxic risk of styrene. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 8, 95–107.
- OECD (1981). OECD Guidelines for Testing of Chemicals. Paris, France: Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.
- Pereira MA (1982). Mouse skin bioassay for chemical carcinogens. *J Am Coll Toxicol* 1, 47–82.
- Pitot HC, Beer D, Hendrich S (1988). Multistage carcinogenesis: The phenomenon underlying the theories. In: Iversen OH, ed. *Theories of Carcinogenesis*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere.
- Pyatt DW, Aylward LL, Hays SM (2007). Is age an independent risk factor for chemically induced acute myelogenous leukemia in children? *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 379–400.
- Qian GS, Ross RK, Yu MC, et al. (1994). A follow-up study of urinary markers of aflatoxin exposure and liver cancer risk in Shanghai, China. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers, Prevention* 3, 3–10.
- Reddy JK, Lalwani ND (1983). Carcinogenesis by hepatic peroxisome proliferators: Evaluation of the risk of hyperlipidemic drugs and industrial plasticizers to humans. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 12, 1–58.
- Ryffel B (1992). The carcinogenicity of cyclosporin. *Toxicology* 73, 1–22.
- Seidegard J, Pero RW, Markowitz MM, et al. (1990). Isoenzyme(s) of glutathione transferase (class mu) as a marker for susceptibility to lung cancer: A follow-up study. *Carcinogenesis* 11, 33–36.
- Shi X, Castranova V, Halliwell B, et al. (1998). Reactive oxygen species and silica-induced carcinogenesis. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 181–197.
- Shi X, Chiu A, Chen CT, et al. (1999). Reduction of chromium (VI) and its relationship to carcinogenesis. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 2, 87–104.
- Steinmaus C, Moore LE, Shipp M, et al. (2007). Genetic polymorphism in MTHFR 677 and 1298, GSTM1 and T1 and metabolism of arsenic. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 159–170.

- Sugimura T, Ushijima T (2000). Genetic and epigenetic alterations in carcinogenesis. *Mutat Res* 462, 235–246.
- Sunderman FW Jr (1984). Recent advances in metal carcinogenesis. *Am Clin Lab Sci* 14, 93–122.
- Swenberg JA, Short B, Borghoff S, et al. (1989). The comparative pathobiology of  $\alpha 2\mu$ -globulin nephropathy. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 97, 35–46.
- Trosko JE, Chang CC (1988). Chemical and oncogene modulation of gap junctional intercellular communication. In: Langenbach R, et al., eds. *Tumor Promoters: Biological Approaches for Mechanistic Studies and Assay Systems*. New York, NY: Raven Press.
- U.S. ISGC (1986). Chemical carcinogens: A review of the science and its associated principles. U.S. Interagency Staff on Carcinogens. *Environ Health Persp* 67, 201–282.
- Vallyathan V, Green F, Ducatman B, et al. (1998). Roles of epidemiology, pathology, molecular biology, and biomarkers in the investigation of occupational lung cancer. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 91–116.
- WHO (1969). Principles for the Testing and Evaluation of Drugs for Carcinogenicity. WHO Tech Rep Ser 426.
- Weinberg RA (1989). Oncogenes, antioncogenes, and the molecular bases of multistep carcinogenesis. *Cancer Res* 49, 3713–3721.
- Weisburger JH, Williams GM (1993) Chemical carcinogenesis. In: Amdur MO, Doull J, Klaassen CD, eds. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 127–200.
- Zhu Y-J, Li C-P, Tang W-Y, et al. (2007). Single nucleotide polymorphism of the JWA gene is associated with risk of leukemia: A case-control study in a Chinese population. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 895–900.

## FURTHER READING

- WHO (1993). *Biomarkers and Risk Assessment: Concepts and Principles*. Environ Health Criteria 155. Geneva: World Health Organization.

## Appendix 1 Biomarkers of Carcinogenesis/Human Cancers

---

### *Biomarkers of exposure and initiation*

Initiation is associated with covalent binding of electrophilic carcinogens or their reactive metabolites to DNA. The carcinogen–DNA adduct can be demonstrated and quantified to indicate exposure and effect of the carcinogen. This procedure has been applied to situations wherein human exposure to a particular carcinogen is suspected, for example, in the determination of exposure to aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> and its relationship to hepatocellular carcinoma (Qian et al., 1994).

### *Biomarker of promotion*

Promotion has been most extensively studied in skin carcinogenesis. A variety of biochemical changes have been noted in initiated as well as normal cells on treatment with promoters, the most active of which is TPA (12-*o*-tetradecanoyl phorbol-13-acetate). The changes include accumulation of plasminogen activator and increased prostaglandin synthesis. Growth factors, protein kinase C, TPA- and dioxin-responsive elements in genes, interaction of promoters with oncogenes, and/or suppressor genes are being studied to determine their role as markers of preneoplasia in the liver.

### *Tumor markers*

$\alpha$ -Fetoprotein (AFP) is a product of fetal liver and hepatocarcinoma. AFP had therefore been used to screen large populations for hepatocellular carcinomas, allowing early detection and treatment. However, it has been shown to be nonspecific. Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) is a sensitive marker and can be used to detect cancers of male and female sex organs at a subclinical phase. Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) is found in patients with carcinoma of the colon and rectum. PSA (prostate-specific antigen) has been shown to be a useful biomarker of tumor and other lesions of the prostate. CA 125 is useful in diagnosing and monitoring treatment of ovarian cancer. Telomerase is a ribonucleoprotein enzyme that adds TTAGGG repeats onto telomeres to compensate for shortening and instability of desmosomes. Telomerase is detected in most cancers and immortal cell lines. Oncogene expression, tumor suppressor gene inactivation, formation of DNA and protein adducts, and endogenous production of paraneoplastic hormones by the tumor are all potential useful tools for determination by which specific agents interact with cells to produce tumors.

### *Biomarkers of susceptibility*

Individuals with certain genetic disposition may be more susceptible to carcinogenesis. For example, those with xeroderma pigmentosa are prone to skin cancer. Polymorphism of x-oxidation has been linked to susceptibility to colon cancer (Kadlubar et al., 1992) and polymorphism in glutathione S-transferase to increased lung cancer (Seidegard et al., 1990). In the case of arsenic-induced carcinogenesis, polymorphism in the genes encoding the enzymes involved in methylation of arsenic can lead to increased frequency of skin cancer (Steinmaus et al., 2007). A single nucleotide polymorphism in the JWA gene was found to be associated with a higher frequency of leukemia in the Chinese population (Zhu et al., 2007). Genetic polymorphisms in various metabolic enzymes was attributed to result in a higher frequency of benzene-induced carcinogenesis in China (Gu et al., 2007).

---

## Appendix 2 Probable Carcinogenic Chemicals

An IARC Working Group (IARC, 1987) concluded that the following are probably carcinogenic to humans:

Acrylonitrile	Ethylene dibromide
Adriamycin	Ethylene oxide
Androgenic (anabolic) steroids	<i>N</i> -Ethyl- <i>N</i> -nitrosourea
Anthraquinone dyes	Fluorospar
Asbestos	Formaldehyde
Benz[ <i>a</i> ]anthracene	5-Methoxypsoralen
Benzidine-based dyes	4,4'-Methylene bis(2-chloroaniline) (MOCA)
Benzo[ <i>a</i> ]pyrene	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N'</i> -nitro- <i>N</i> -nitrosoguanidine (MNNG)
Beryllium and beryllium compounds	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N</i> -nitrosourea
Bis(chloromethyl) ether	Nickel
Bischloroethyl nitrosourea (BCNU)	Nitrogen mustard
1-(2-Chloroethyl)-3-cyclohexyl-1-nitrosourea (CCNU)	<i>N</i> -Nitrosodiethylamine
Chromate	Nitrosodimethylamine
Cisplatin	Phenacetin
Creosotes	Polychlorinated biphenyls
Dibenz[ <i>a,h</i> ]anthracene	Procarbazine hydrochloride
Diesel exhaust particles	Propylene oxide
Diethyl sulfate	Radon and daughters
Dimethylcarbamoyl chloride	Silica, crystalline
Dimethyl sulfate	Styrene oxide
Epichlorohydrin	Tris(1-aziridinyl)phosphine sulfide (Thiotepa)

Some 200 other chemicals have been recognized by IARC as possible human carcinogens.



# Mutagenesis

## CONTENTS

Introduction	124
Health Hazards	124
Categories of Mutagenesis and Their Tests	125
Gene Mutation	126
Microbial Tests In Vitro	128
Prokaryotic Microorganisms	128
Eukaryotic Microorganisms	128
Microbial Tests In Vivo (Host-Mediated Assay)	129
Insects	129
Mammalian Cells in Culture	129
Gene Mutation Tests in Mice	130
The Mouse Spot Test	130
The Specific Locus Test	130
Chromosomal Effects	131
Insects	131
Cytogenetic Studies with Mammalian Cells	131
In Vitro Tests	131
In Vivo Tests	132
Sister Chromatid Exchange (SCE)	132
Dominant Lethal Test in Rodents	133
Heritable Translocation Test in Mice	133
DNA Repair and Recombination	133
Bacteria	133
Yeasts	134
Mammalian Cells/UDS	134

Other Tests	134
In Vitro Transformation of Mammalian Cells	134
Nuclear Enlargement Test	134
Evaluation	135
Selection of Test Systems	135
Significance of Results	136
Relation Between Mutagenicity and Carcinogenicity	136
Heritable Effects	136
References	137

## INTRODUCTION

Mutagenesis can occur as a result of interaction between mutagenic agents and the genetic materials of organisms. Although spontaneous mutations and natural selection are the major means of evolution, a number of toxicants, in recent decades, have been found to be mutagenic to a variety of organisms.

### Health Hazards

The hereditary effects of human exposure to these mutagenic substances cannot be ascertained at present. However, some spontaneous abortions, stillbirths, and heritable diseases have been shown to be related to changes in DNA molecules and to chromosomal aberrations. There are approximately 1000 dominant gene mutations responsible for various illnesses, including the hereditary neoplasms such as bilateral retinoblastoma, and about the same number of recessive gene disorders such as sickle-cell anemia, cystic fibrosis, and Tay-Sachs disease. In addition, abnormal chromosomal numbers are associated with such diseases as Down's syndrome, Klinefelter's syndrome, and Edward's syndrome. These have been estimated to occur with an incidence of 0.5% among the live births in the United States. The true effects of any additional mutagen in the environment can only be manifested after a lapse of several generations. The seriousness of this matter therefore warrants the extensive investigations in the various fields of mutagenesis.

A number of human diseases are the result of defects of the DNA repair systems. For example, patients with xeroderma pigmentosa are deficient in excision repair in the skin; they are susceptible to ultraviolet light and many chemical carcinogens and thus are prone to developing skin tumors. Those with ataxia telangiectasia have such deficiencies in the lymphoid system and are susceptible to X-rays and the carcinogen methyl nitro-nitrosoguanidine. Fanconi's anemia is associated with defective DNA repair in the blood and skeleton. The afflicted persons are susceptible to mitomycin C and psoralens.

On the other hand, tests for mutagenicity in recent years have become more widely used because of their value as a rapid screening for carcinogenicity



**Table 1** Examples of Chromosomal Abnormalities Associated with Human Cancers

Neoplasm	Abnormality of chromosome
Chronic myelogenous leukemia	Translocation of chromosomes 9 and 22
Acute monocytic leukemia	Loss of long arm of chromosome 11
Small cell lung cancer	Loss of short arm of chromosome 6
Myeloproliferative diseases	Extra chromosome 1
Retinoblastoma	Deletion of chromosome 13

(see Chap. 7). This development stems mainly from the fact that most mutagens have been found to be carcinogens. Furthermore, these tests, with a variety of endpoints, are useful in the elaboration of the mode of action of carcinogens. It is also worth noting that various gene mutation and chromosomal abnormalities have been detected in human tumors. Some examples are listed in Table 1. For a more extensive review on this topic, see Rabbitts' review (1994).

### Categories of Mutagenesis and Their Tests

It is well known that DNA, consisting of nucleotide bases, plays a key role in genetics. First, it transmits the genetic information from one generation of cells to the next generation through self-replication. This is done by the separation of the double strands of the DNA molecule and the synthesis of new daughter strands. Second, the genetic information coded in the DNA molecule is expressed through the transcription of a complementary RNA strand from one strand of DNA, which serves as a template, and the subsequent translation of the information from the RNA to the amino acids in proteins. Every set of three nucleotide bases, a codon, specifies an amino acid. Derangement of the bases therefore alters the amino acid content of the protein synthesized.

In earlier studies, the mutagenic activity was demonstrated mainly in fruit flies and onion root tips because of the simpler techniques involved. More recently, many new test systems have been developed. They range in complexity from microorganisms to intact mammals. The use of such widely different organisms is based on the fact that all double-stranded DNA share the same biochemical characteristics, which are listed in Table 2.

At present, there are more than 100 test systems. A number of exemplary tests are outlined in this chapter under four major categories, namely, gene mutation, chromosomal effects, DNA repair and recombination, and others, which are designed to confirm carcinogenicity. Because of the brevity of their description, at least one reference is cited for each test. Additional references and more details are given elsewhere on these and other tests (EPA, 1994; OECD, 1987; Hoffmann, 1996).

**Table 2** Basic Biochemical Characteristics of all Double-Stranded DNA

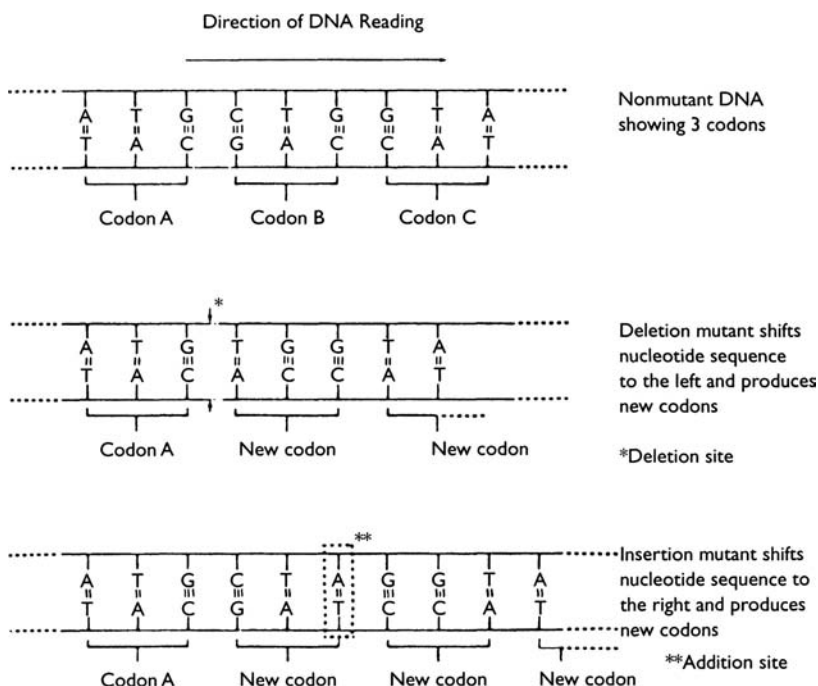
- 
- 1 DNA consists of two different purines (guanine, adenine) and two different pyrimidines (thymine and cytosine).
  - 2 A nucleotide pair consists of one purine and one pyrimidine [adenine/thymine (A–T) or guanine/cytosine (G–C)].
  - 3 Nucleotide pairs are connected into a double helix molecule by sugar-phosphate backbone linkages and hydrogen bonding.
  - 4 The A–T base pair is held by two hydrogen bonds, while the G–C is held by three.
  - 5 The distance between each base pair in a molecule is 3.4 Å, producing 10 nucleotide pairs per turn of the DNA helix.
  - 6 The number of adenine molecules must equal the number of thymine molecules in a DNA molecule. The same relationship exists for guanine and cytosine molecules. However, the ratio of A–T to G–C base pairs may vary in DNA from species to species.
  - 7 The two strands of the double helix are complementary and antiparallel with respect to the polarity of the two sugar-phosphate backbones, one strand being 3′-5′ and the other being 5′-3′ with respect to the terminal OH group on the ribose sugar.
  - 8 DNA replicates by a semiconservative method in which the two strands separate and each is used as a template for the synthesis of a new complementary strand.
  - 9 The rate of DNA nucleotide polymerization during replication is approximately 600 nucleotides per second. The helix must unwind to form templates at a rate of 3600 rpm to accommodate this replication rate.
  - 10 The DNA content of cells is variable ( $1.8 \times 10^9$  Da for *Escherichia coli* to  $1.9 \times 10^{11}$  Da for human cells).
- 

Source: From Brusick (1987).

It is worth noting that gene mutation may be detected in all organisms including bacteria. On the other hand, effects related to chromosomes (aberration, aneuploidy, and DNA repair) can only be detected in higher organisms, that is, those with chromosomes.

## GENE MUTATION

Gene mutations involve additions or deletions of base pairs or substitution of a wrong base pair in the DNA molecules. Substitutions consist of transitions and transversions. The former involve the replacement of a purine (adenine, guanine) by another or a pyrimidine (cytosine, thymine) by another. With transversion, a purine is replaced by a pyrimidine, or vice versa. When the number of base pairs added or deleted is not a multiple of three, the amino acid sequence of the protein coded distal to the addition or deletion will be altered. This phenomenon is called frame-shift mutation and is likely to affect the biologic property of the protein.



**Figure 1** Frame-shift mutation resulting from deletion or insertion of a nucleotide base. A series of new codons is formed distal to the deletion or insertion, and hence new amino acids in the protein synthesized. *Source:* From Brusick (1987).

Figure 1 clearly illustrates the effects of a deletion and an addition of a nucleotide base.

In addition, a mutagenic chemical, or a part of it, may be incorporated into the DNA molecule. For example, a number of electrophilic compounds react with DNA forming covalent addition products, known as “DNA adducts.” Thus acetyaminofluorene (AAF) binds specifically to the carbon at the 8th position of guanine. For a partial list of such chemicals, see discussions on procarcinogens in “Categories of Carcinogens” in chapter 7. Alkylating agents, such as ethylnitrosourea and diethyl sulfate, donate an alkyl group to DNA.

These various changes in the DNA molecule may cause the substitution of a new amino acid in the subsequently coded protein molecule or result in a different sequence of amino acids in the protein synthesized. Furthermore, a protein synthesis termination codon may be formed, giving rise to a shortened protein. While the first type of effect may or may not result in a modification of the biologic property of the protein molecule, the latter two types almost invariably do.

## Microbial Tests In Vitro

These involve prokaryotic and eukaryotic microorganisms.

### Prokaryotic Microorganisms

Such microorganisms consist of various strains of bacteria. For the detection of point mutations, the commonly used bacteria are *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Escherichia coli*. Most bacterial systems are intended to detect reverse mutation. For example, the Ames test (Ames, 1971) measures the reversion of histidine-dependent mutants of *S. typhimurium* to the histidine-independent wild type. The mutants are incubated in a medium that contains insufficient histidine to permit visible growth. If the toxicant added to the culture medium is capable of inducing reverse mutation, then the bacteria can become histidine-independent and grow appreciably in the histidine-deficient medium. It is customary to use several strains because of their specificity. Their mutation to histidine independency results from either frame-shift or base-pair substitution; different mutagens may affect one strain but not the other.

A number of strains of *S. typhimurium* have been rendered more sensitive to the effects of mutagens through alterations in the permeability of their cell walls (deficient in lipopolysaccharide) and in their DNA excision repair capabilities (through a specific deletion in the DNA molecule) and through the bearing of an ampicillin-resistance factor (Ames et al., 1975; McCann et al., 1975). These various strains (e.g., TA 98, 100, 1537) may be susceptible to different mutagens.

Since many mutagens are inactive before bioactivation, the test can be carried out with a bioactivating system included in the in vitro procedure. The bioactivating system usually consists of the microsomal fraction (containing the mixed-function oxidase system) of the liver of the rat or other animals, although the human liver is also used for special purposes. The activity of the microsomal enzyme is usually enhanced by pretreating the animal with an inducing agent, such as 3-methylcholanthrene, phenobarbital, or polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB). Appropriate cofactors are also added to the mixture prior to incubation.

Strains of *E. coli* that are tryptophan-dependent are also used to detect reverse mutation. Mutagenic changes will result in tryptophan-independent strain (Ames et al., 1975).

### Eukaryotic Microorganisms

Certain strains of *Saccharomyces*, *Schizosaccharomyces*, *Neurospora*, and *Aspergillus* have been developed to detect mainly reverse mutations and, to a limited extent, forward mutations. Like the bacterial systems, these systems in general also include bioactivating enzymes and cofactors. For example, a type of mutant of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* requires adenine and produces red-pigmented colonies, whereas the wild-type microorganisms are adenine-independent and produce white colonies. Thus the reverse mutation can be determined by the prevalence of white colonies (Brusick and Mayer, 1973).

### Microbial Tests In Vivo (Host-Mediated Assay)

In this type of test, the microorganisms are injected into the peritoneal cavity of the host mammal (usually the mouse). They can also be injected into the circulatory system or the testes. The toxicant is injected into the host, usually prior to the introduction of the microorganisms. After a few hours elapse, the host is sacrificed. The microorganisms are then collected and examined for manifestations of mutation. These assays have the advantage of incorporating the biotransformation of the toxicant in the host mammal, but at the same time have the drawback that the microorganisms can only be kept in the host for a relatively short time. Apart from microorganisms, cells from multicellular animals can also be used in the host-mediated assay (Gabridge and Legator, 1969). Despite its theoretical advantage, the procedure has been found to be insensitive to certain types of carcinogens and hence is unsuitable as a routine screening procedure (Simmons et al., 1979).

A modified procedure involves pretreatment of the host with a toxicant, collecting the urine from the host, and injecting the urine, which may contain a high concentration of the metabolite(s) of the toxicant, back into the host. This modified procedure demonstrates positive mutagenicity with 2-acetylaminofluorene, which yields negative results with the regular host-mediated assay (Durstun and Ames, 1974).

### Insects

The fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster* is the most commonly used insect. It is well-characterized genetically. It has the advantage over microorganisms in that it metabolizes toxicants in a manner that is similar to mammals. Furthermore, it is superior to mammals in two respects, namely, its generation time is only 12 to 14 days, and it can be tested in sufficient numbers at much lower cost.

The sex-linked recessive lethal test measures the lethal effect on the F<sub>2</sub> males after exposing the males of the parental generation. It is the preferred procedure because the X chromosome represents about 20% of the total genome, and it is capable of screening for point mutation and short deletions at about 800 loci on the X chromosome (Lee et al., 1983).

### Mammalian Cells in Culture

The commonly used systems include cells from mouse lymphoma, human lymphoblasts, and cells from the lung, ovary, and other tissues of Chinese hamsters. These cells usually maintain a near-diploid chromosome number, grow actively, and have high cloning efficiency. Both forward and reverse mutations can occur, and the mutants respond selectively to nutritional, biochemical, serologic, and drug-resistant growth manipulations. For example, cells from mouse lymphoma, which are heterozygous at the thymidine kinase locus (TK+/-), may undergo forward mutation, for example, via the action of a mutagen, and become TK-/- . Both genotype TK+/- and TK-/- can grow in a normal medium, but TK-/-

can also grow in a medium containing 5-bromo-2'-deoxyuridine (BrdU). The mutagenicity of a toxicant can thus be determined by comparing the growth of the lymphoma cells in the presence and absence of the toxicant both in a medium containing BrdU and in a normal medium (DeMarini et al., 1989).

In Chinese hamsters, as in humans, the use of preformed hypoxanthine and guanine is controlled by an X-linked gene. Mutant cells at these loci are deficient in the enzyme hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyl transferase and can be identified by their resistance to toxic purine analogs, such as 8-azaguanine or 6-thioguanine, that kill the cells that utilize these analogs (DeMarini et al., 1989).

These cell lines are generally deficient in metabolizing enzymes. Therefore, such enzyme systems are often added (*microsome-mediated*). Alternatively, these cells can be cocultivated with other cells that possess greater ability to biotransform toxicants. Such a *cell-mediated* system involves the use of freshly isolated hepatocytes as a feeder system (Williams, 1979). It offers an additional advantage of having capabilities to conjugate as well as to degrade toxicants.

## Gene Mutation Tests in Mice

### The Mouse Spot Test

This test is designed to detect gene mutation in somatic cells. Basically it involves treating pregnant mice whose embryos are heterozygous at specific coat color loci and examining the newborn for any mosaic patches in the fur. Such patches indicate the formation of clones of mutant cells that are responsible for the color of the fur. This test is relatively inexpensive and takes only a few weeks to complete. Although it may yield false-positive results, it has not yet yielded false-negative results. The spot test is therefore a useful prescreen for heritable germinal mutations in mammals (Russell, 1978).

### The Specific Locus Test

The specific locus test was developed for determining the mutagenicity of ionizing radiation in the germ cells. This procedure was later adapted to assess the mutagenicity of chemicals (Searle, 1975). It has the advantage of directly detecting in intact mammals the mutagenic effects of toxicants in the germ cells, but it usually requires a very large number of animals.

It involves exposing nonmutant mice to the chemical and subsequently mating them to a multiple-recessive stock. Mutant offspring have altered phenotypes expressed in hair color, hair structure, eye color, ear length, and other traits. Some mutants are mosaic rather than whole animal. Mutation can also be detected by the rejection or acceptance of skin grafts made between first-generation offspring. It can be further characterized immunogenetically (Russell and Shelby, 1985).

## CHROMOSOMAL EFFECTS

The effect of a toxicant on chromosomes may be large enough to be visible microscopically, and manifest as structural aberrations or as changes in number. The former, *aberrations*, include deletions, duplications, and translocations. The latter, *aneuploidy*, involve a decrease or increase in the number of the chromosomes. Some of the effects are heritable.

The mode of action underlying these effects may involve molecular cross-linkage, which may cause an arrest of the synthesis of DNA, thereby leaving a gap in the chromosome. An unsuccessful repair of the DNA damage may also be responsible. Nondisjunction (failure of a pair of chromosomes to separate during mitotic division) can lead to mosaicism. A nondisjunction during gametogenesis (meiotic nondisjunction) gives rise to daughter cells that contain either one extra chromosome or one less than normal. The former is known as *trisomy* and the latter *monosomy*.

A number of test systems have been developed to determine the chromosomal effects. The following are the major systems:

### Insects

*Drosophila melanogaster* has the advantage in that the chromosomes of some of its cells are superior in size and morphology. In addition, the chromosomal effects can be readily confirmed genetically, such as the sex-linked recessive lethality. The chromosomal effects include loss of X and Y chromosomes and translocations of fragments between second and third chromosomes.

Effects on the sex chromosome can also be detected by phenotypic changes, such as body color, and color and shape of the eye (National Research Council, 1983).

### Cytogenetic Studies with Mammalian Cells

#### In Vitro Tests

For cytogenetic tests, the commonly used cells are derived from Chinese hamster ovaries and human lymphocytes. These cells are cultured in suitable media. They are then exposed to different concentrations of the test chemical in the presence or absence of a bioactivator system (usually the microsomal fraction of the rat liver homogenate). The test generally includes two positive control mutagens, namely, ethylmethane sulfonate, which is direct-acting, and dimethylnitrosamine, which requires bioactivation. After an appropriate incubation period, the cell division is arrested by the addition of colchicine. The cells are then mounted, stained, and scored (Preston et al., 1981).

An example of scoring of *aberrations* is shown below: chromatid gap, chromatid break, chromosome gap, chromatid deletion, fragment, acentric fragment, translocation, triradial, quadriradial, pulverized chromosome, pulverized chromosomes, pulverized cells, ring chromosome, dicentric chromosome, minute

chromosome, greater than 10 aberrations, polyploid, and hyperploid (Brusick, 1987).

### In Vivo Tests

Mammalian cells used in the in vivo study of chromosomal effects include germ cells and somatic tissues. The chemical to be tested is administered to intact animals, such as rodents and humans. The somatic tissues commonly used are bone marrow and peripheral lymphocytes. A classic protocol using bone marrow from mice, rats, or hamsters has been provided by the Ad Hoc Committee of the Environmental Mutagen Society and the Institute for Medical Research (1972). The scoring is the same as in the in vitro test.

The *micronucleus* test is a somewhat simpler in vivo procedure. It involves the use of polychromatic erythrocyte stem cells of CD-1 mice. Six hours after two treatments with the test chemical, given 24 hours apart, the animals are killed and the bone marrow is collected from femurs of mice undergone the two treatments. An increase in micronucleated cells over the controls (about 0.5%) is considered positive (Schmid, 1976). Many other types of cells may also be used. These micronuclei represent fragments of chromosome and chromatid resulting from spindle/centromere dysfunction.

For tests on *germ cells*, the male animal is usually used. In order to allow cells of different stages of spermatogenesis to be exposed, the chemical is given daily for five days and the animals sacrificed one, three, and five weeks following the last dose. The sperm is collected surgically from the caudae epididymides. After mounting and staining, the incidence of abnormal spermheads is determined, and it is compared with the negative and positive controls (Wyrobek and Bruce, 1975).

### Sister Chromatid Exchange (SCE)

This test measures a reciprocal exchange of DNA between two sister chromatids of a duplicating chromosome. The exchange takes place because of a breakage and reunion of DNA during its replication. The test can be done with mouse lymphoma cells, Chinese hamster ovary cells, and human lymphocytes. It may also be done in vivo by collecting cells from treated animals. The procedure involves labeling of cells with 5-BrdU (5-bromo-deoxyuridine), and after two cycles of replication, the cells are stained with a fluorescent-plus-Giemsa technique. The frequency of sister chromatid exchanges per cell and per chromosome is scored and compared. The exchange is visible because, in one chromatid, the semiconservative replication of DNA results in a substitution of BrdU in *one* polynucleotide strand, and in the other chromatid the BrdU is substituted in *both* polynucleotide strands (Wolff, 1977).

Although the mechanism underlying SCE is not fully understood, it shows that a chemical has attacked the chromosomes or impaired their replication. The test has the advantage of being simple to perform. Furthermore, its endpoint is



often observed at concentrations much lower than those required with other tests (NRC, 1983).

### **Dominant Lethal Test in Rodents**

This test is designed to demonstrate toxic effects on germ cells in the intact male animal, usually the mouse or rat. The effects can manifest in the mated females as dead implantations and/or preimplantation losses (the difference between the number of corpora lutea and the number of implantations). These effects are generally due to chromosomal damages, which lead to developmental errors that are fatal to the zygote. However, other cytotoxic effects can also cause early fetal death (see also Chap. 18).

### **Heritable Translocation Test in Mice**

This test is intended to detect the heritability of chromosomal damages. The damages, consisting of reciprocal translocation in the germ line cells of the treated male mice, are transmitted to the offspring. By mating the male  $F_1$  progeny with untreated female mice, the chromosomal effects are revealed by a reduction of viable fetuses. The presence of these reciprocal translocations can be verified by the presence of translocation figures among the double tetrads at meiosis (Adler, 1980).

## **DNA REPAIR AND RECOMBINATION**

These biologic processes are not mutations per se, but they occur after DNA damage. These phenomena therefore indicate existence of DNA damages, which are caused essentially by mutagens. There are three main types of DNA damages that can be repaired: missing, incorrect, or altered bases; interstrand cross-links; and strand breaks.

### **Bacteria**

Among *E. coli* there are those with normal DNA polymerase I enzyme, which is capable of repairing DNA damage, and those deficient in this enzyme. Mutagens induce DNA damage and thereby impair the growth of the *E. coli* that is deficient in the repair enzyme, whereas the growth of those with this enzyme is not affected. The DNA repair-efficient strain is included to rule out the effect of cytotoxicity (Rosenkranz et al., 1976).

Similarly, there are also recombination efficient and deficient strains of *Bacillus subtilis*. Damage to DNA is repaired in the former strain through recombination but not in the latter. Mutagens will thus inhibit the growth of the latter but not the former.

## Yeasts

Various eukaryotic microorganisms, such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, have been used to test the mutagenicity of chemicals by the induced mitotic crossing-over and mitotic gene conversion. These effects on DNA result in the growth of colonies with different colors (Zimmermann et al., 1984).

## Mammalian Cells/UDS

*Unscheduled DNA synthesis* (UDS) is an indication of DNA repair. It can be detected in human cells in culture. The synthesis is determined by the amount of radioactive thymidine incorporated per unit weight of DNA over the control value. This is done both in the presence and absence of an added activator system (Stich and Laishes, 1973). Such synthesis can also be determined in primary rat liver cells. The extent of DNA synthesis is determined using an autoradiographic method. Since these cells have sufficient metabolic activity, there is no need to add an activator system (Williams, 1979).

Because of their greater relevance to genetic risk, germ cells have also been used in UDS tests: male mice are treated with a suspected mutagen, and [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine ([<sup>3</sup>H]-dT) is injected intratesticularly. Any incorporation of [<sup>3</sup>H]-dT into the DNA of meiotic and postmeiotic germ cells indicates the production of repairable damage to the DNA (Russell and Shelby, 1985).

## OTHER TESTS

As noted in chapter 7, a number of related mutagenesis tests are used to determine carcinogenicity.

## In Vitro Transformation of Mammalian Cells

Cells from the BALB/3T3 mouse are commonly used in this test. Others include Syrian hamster embryo cells, mouse 10T1/2 cells, and human cells. Normally these cells will grow in the culture medium to form a monolayer. Those treated with a carcinogen, however, will reproduce without being attached to a solid surface and grow over the monolayer. The appearance of such multilayered colonies indicates malignant transformation. This endpoint can be confirmed by injecting these cells into syngeneic animals. In general, malignant tumors will develop if the cells have undergone transformation (Kakunaga, 1973). Therefore, in general, positive results from this test are especially significant.

## Nuclear Enlargement Test

HeLa cells are grown in culture medium and treated with different concentrations of the chemical on test. After an appropriate duration, the cells are harvested and counted. They are then stripped of their cytoplasmic material and the size of the

nucleus is determined with a particle counter. An increase in the nuclear size indicates carcinogenicity of the chemical (Finch et al., 1980).

## EVALUATION

### Selection of Test Systems

Since mutagens affect the genetic material in different ways, they may yield negative results in one test but positive in others. To rule out false-negatives (and false-positives), it is advisable to conduct several tests, preferably of different categories. OECD (1987) recommended a series of tests for screening, confirmation, and risk assessment (Table 3).

The Committee on Chemical Environmental Mutagens of the National Research Council recommended a mutagen assessment program (National Research Council, 1983). It suggests that the mutagenesis tests be placed in three tiers. Tier I consists of (1) the *Salmonella*/microsome gene-mutation test, (2) a mammalian cell gene-mutation test, and (3) a mammalian cell chromosomal breakage test. If all tests are negative, the chemical is considered a presumed mammalian nonmutagen. If two of these tests are positive, it is classified as a presumed mammalian mutagen. If only one is positive, then the Tier II test (*Drosophila* sex-linked

**Table 3** Utility and Application of Assays

---

A. Assays that may be used for mutagen and carcinogen screening
<i>Salmonella typhimurium</i> reverse mutation assay
<i>Escherichia coli</i> reverse mutation assay
Gene mutation in mammalian cells in culture
Gene mutation in <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>
In vitro cytogenetics assay
Unscheduled DNA synthesis in vitro
In vitro sister chromatid exchange assay
Mitotic recombination in <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>
In vivo cytogenetics assay
Micronucleus test
<i>Drosophila</i> sex-linked recessive lethal test
B. Assays that confirm in vitro activity
In vivo cytogenetics assay
Micronucleus test
Mouse spot test
<i>Drosophila</i> sex-linked recessive lethal test
C. Assays that assess effects on germ cells and that are applicable for estimating genetic risk
Dominant lethal assay
Heritable translocation assay
Mammalian germ cell cytogenetic assay

---

Source: From OECD (1987).

lethal-mutation) is conducted. For further screening of the most crucial chemicals, supplemental tests are done. A specific-locus test is recommended for chemicals with a potential mutagenicity in mammalian germ cells, and a dominant lethal test should be done for those having chromosomal effects [see also WHO (1990)].

Many chemicals have been tested for genotoxicity (mutagenicity, carcinogenicity, and developmental toxicity) using a multiplicity of tests. To facilitate the task of a “weight-of-evidence” analysis of the genotoxicity of the chemicals and an analysis of the merit of the tests used in generating the data, a method has been proposed by the International Commission for Protection Against Environmental Mutagens and Carcinogens (ICPEMC, 1992).

## Significance of Results

### Relation Between Mutagenicity and Carcinogenicity

A number of investigators have shown the relation between carcinogens and mutagens. For example, McCann et al. (1975) reported in their study of 300 substances for mutagenicity in the *Salmonella*/microsome test. The results were compared with the reported carcinogenicity or noncarcinogenicity of these substances. The authors demonstrated a high correlation between these toxic effects: 90% (156/175) of carcinogens are mutagenic in the test. Few noncarcinogens showed any degree of mutagenicity.

More recently, Mason et al. (1990) compiled information on the correlation between carcinogenicity in rodents and mutagenicity as determined by *S. tybimurium*. The correlations varied between 55% and 93%.

It is of interest to note that many recent studies demonstrate that certain human leukemias, lymphomas, and solid tumors are associated with specific chromosomal alterations, some of which are listed in Table 1. Furthermore, gene mutations and chromosomal damages can convert proto-oncogenes to active oncogenes (Bishop, 1991; Barrett, 1993). For further discussions on the effects of such conversion, see the section on “Mode of Action” of carcinogenesis in chapter 7.

### Heritable Effects

At present there is no direct correlation between laboratory tests for heritable mutations induced by chemical toxicants and human experience. Nevertheless, if a substance has been shown to be mutagenic in a variety of test systems including heritable mutations in intact mammals, it must be considered as a mutagen in humans unless there is convincing evidence to the contrary. Fortunately, for many chemicals, such as food additives, pesticides, cosmetics, and most drugs, where human exposure can be avoided, any incidence of mutagenicity will be sufficient to warrant suspension of their use (see Flamm, 1977). For environmental pollutants and occupational toxicants that are mutagenic, all efforts should be made to reduce human exposure to them.

As mentioned above, the study of mutagenesis is a new discipline. The rapidly accumulating knowledge in this field will, in all probability, improve the interpretation of the significance of the mutagenicity testing results.

## REFERENCES

- Ad Hoc Committee of the Environmental Mutagen Society and the Institute of Medical Research (1972). Chromosome methodologies in mutagen testing. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 22, 269–275.
- Adler ID (1980). New approaches to mutagenicity studies in animals for carcinogenic and mutagenic agents. I. Modification of heritable translocation test. *Teratogen Carcinogen Mutagen* 1, 75–86.
- Ames BN (1971). The detection of chemical mutagens with enteric bacteria. In: Hollander A, ed. *Chemical Mutagens: Principles and Methods for Their Detection*, vol. 1. New York, NY: Plenum Press, 267–282.
- Ames BN, McCann J, Yamasaki E (1975). Methods for detecting carcinogens and mutagens with the Salmonella/mammalian-microsome mutagenicity test. *Mutat Res* 31, 347–364.
- Barrett JC (1993). Mechanisms of multistep carcinogenesis and carcinogen risk assessment. *Environ Health Persp* 100, 9–20.
- Bishop JM (1991). Molecular themes in oncogenesis. *Cell* 64, 235–248.
- Brusick DJ, Mayer VW (1973). New developments in mutagenicity screening techniques with yeast. *Environ Health Persp* 6, 83–96.
- Brusick DJ (1987). *Principles of Genetic Toxicology*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Plenum Press.
- DeMarini DM, Brockman HE, deSerres FJ, et al. (1989). Specific-locus induced in eukaryotes (especially mammalian cells) by radiation and chemicals: A perspective. *Mutat Res* 220, 11–29.
- Durston WE, Ames BN (1974). Simple method for the detection of mutagens in urine: Studies with the carcinogen 2-acetylaminofluorene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci (USA)* 71, 737–741.
- EPA (1994). *Health Effects Test Guidelines, Title 40, Part 798*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- Finch RA, Evans IM, Bosmann HB (1980). Chemical carcinogen in vitro testing: A method for sizing cell nuclei in the nuclear enlargement assay. *Toxicology* 15, 145–154.
- Flamm WG (Chairman, DHEW Working Group on Mutagenicity Testing) (1977). Approaches to determining the mutagenic properties of chemicals: Risk to future generations. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol* 1, 301–352.
- Gabridge MG, Legator MS (1969). A host-mediated microbial assay for the detection of mutagenic compounds. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 130, 831–834.
- Hoffmann GR (1996). Genetic toxicology. In: Klaassen CD, ed. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- ICPEMC (1992). A method for combining and comparing short-term genotoxicity test data. The basic system. *Mutat Res* 266, 7–25.
- Kakunaga T (1973). A quantitative system for assay of malignant transformation by chemical carcinogens using a clone derived from BALB/3T3. *Int J Cancer* 12, 463–473.

- Lee WR, Abrahamson S, Valencia R, et al. (1983). The sex-linked recessive lethal test for mutagenesis in *Drosophila melanogaster*: A report of the U.S. EPA Gene-Tox Program. *Mutat Res* 123, 183–279.
- Mason JM, Langenbach R, Sheldby MD, et al. (1990). Ability of short term tests to predict carcinogenesis in rodents. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 30, 149–268.
- McCann J, Choi E, Yamasaki E, et al. (1975). Detection of carcinogens as mutagens in the Salmonella/microsome tests assay of 300 chemicals. *Proc Natl Acad Sci (USA)* 72, 5135–5139.
- National Research Council (NRC) (1983). Identifying and Estimating the Genetic Impact of Chemical Mutagens. A Report of the Committee on Chemical Environmental Mutagens, National Research Council. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
- OECD (Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development) (1987). OECD Guidelines for Testing Chemicals. Washington, D.C.: OECD Publications and Information Center.
- Preston RJ, Au W, Bender MA, et al. (1981). Mammalian in vivo and in vitro cytogenetic assays: A report of the U.S. EPA Gene-Tox Program. *Mutat Res* 87, 143–188.
- Rabbitts TH (1994). Translocations in human cancer. *Nature* 372, 143–149.
- Rosenkranz HS, Gutter G, Spek WJ (1976). Mutagenicity and DNA-modifying activity: A comparison of two microbial assays. *Mutat Res* 41, 61–70.
- Russell LB (1978). Somatic cells as indicators of germinal mutations in the mouse. *Environ Health Persp* 24, 113–116.
- Russell LB, Shelby MD (1985). Tests for heritable genetic damage and for evidence of gonadal exposure in mammals. *Mutat Res* 154, 69–84.
- Schmid W (1976). The micronucleus test. *Mutat Res* 31, 9–15.
- Searle AG (1975). The specific locus test in the mouse. *Mutat Res* 31, 277–290.
- Simmons VF, Rozenkranz HS, Zeiger E, et al. (1979). Mutagenic activity of chemical carcinogens and related compounds in the intraperitoneal host-mediated assay. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 62, 911–918.
- Stich HF, Laishes BA (1973). DNA repair and chemical carcinogens. *Pathobiol Annu* 3, 341–376.
- WHO (1990). Summary Report on the Evaluation of Short-term Tests for Carcinogenesis. WHO Environ Health Criteria 109.
- Williams GM (1979). The status of in vitro test systems utilizing DNA damage and repair for the screening of chemical carcinogens. *J Assoc Anal Chem* 63, 857–863.
- Wolff S (1977). Sister chromatid exchange. *Annu Rev Genet* 11, 183–201.
- Wyrobek AJ, Bruce WR (1975). Chemical induction of sperm abnormalities in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci (USA)* 72, 4425–4429.
- Zimmermann FK, von Borstel RC, von Halle ES, et al. (1984). Testing of chemicals for genetic activity with *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: A report of the U.S. EPA Gene-Tox Program. *Mutat Res* 133, 199–244.

---

# 9

---

## Developmental Toxicology

### CONTENTS

Introduction	140
Historical Background	140
Embryology	140
Predifferentiation Stage	141
Embryonic Stage	141
Fetal Stage	142
Teratogens (Developmental Toxicants) and Their Effects	142
Mode of Action	143
Interference with Nucleic Acids	144
Deficiency of Energy Supply and Osmolarity	144
Inhibition of Enzymes	144
Oxidative Stress	144
Others	144
Teratogens of Special Interest	145
Testing Procedures	146
Animals	146
Administration of the Chemical	146
Observations	146
Evaluation of Teratogenic Effects	147
Categories and Relative Significance	147
Extrapolation to Humans	148
References	148
Appendix 1 Teratogens in Animal Models	150

## INTRODUCTION

### Historical Background

Congenital malformations have been observed for centuries without knowing their etiology. It was only early last century that a variety of malformations were reported among the offspring of mothers who had been exposed to radiation, nutritional deficiencies, or certain viral infections. A connection was not suspected to exist between congenital malformation and chemicals because there was a tendency among toxicologists to assume that the natural protective mechanisms, such as detoxication, elimination, and placental barrier, were sufficient to shield the embryo from maternal exposure to chemicals. On the other hand, it was not unexpected that the natural protective mechanisms were ineffective against ionizing radiation, viruses, and nutritional deficiencies.

A new era in teratology was initiated as a result of the clinical use of thalidomide, a sedative-hypnotic. This drug, first introduced in the late 1950s in Germany, was found to be relatively nontoxic in experimental animals and in humans. It was used, among other indications, for the relief of morning sickness during pregnancy. In 1960, a few cases of phocomelia were reported. In the following year, there were many more cases. Phocomelia is a very rare type of congenital malformation, with shortening or absence of limbs. The causative agent in these cases was soon traced to the ingestion of thalidomide by the mothers, mainly between the third and eighth week of pregnancy. The use of the drug was promptly prohibited. In spite of that action, more than 10,000 such malformed babies were born in a number of countries (Lenz and Knapp, 1962). The profound, tragic effect on the malformed individuals and the traumatic impact on the families and society were so great that all feasible steps were instituted in an attempt to prevent the occurrence of such a man-made teratogenesis. One of these steps was to subject numerous drugs, food additives, pesticides, environmental contaminants, and other chemicals to various types of testing to determine their potential teratogenicity. An approach to evaluate reproductive and developmental toxicity was compiled by the National Academy of Sciences (Mitchell et al., 2004).

Some toxic effects on the fetus are not observable at birth. They may manifest as delayed developmental toxicity. An outstanding example is diethylstilbestrol (DES). The offspring of mothers who had taken this drug to prevent premature birth showed adverse effects in their sex organs only many years later. To embrace such delayed effects, the science “teratology” is now more commonly referred to as “developmental toxicology.”

### Embryology

After fertilization, the ovum undergoes a precise sequence of cell proliferation, differentiation, migration, and organogenesis. The embryo then passes through a set of metamorphoses and a period of fetal development before birth.

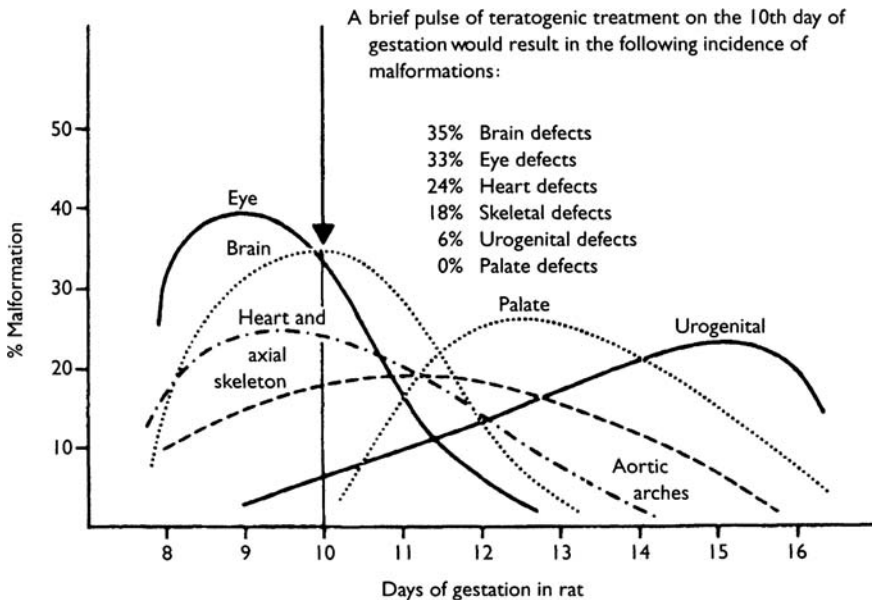


Predifferentiation Stage

During this stage the embryo is not susceptible to teratogenic agents. These agents either cause death of the embryo by killing all or most of the cells or have no apparent effect on the embryo. Even when some mildly harmful effects have been produced, the surviving cells can compensate and form a normal embryo. This resistant stage varies from five to nine days depending on the species.

Embryonic Stage

This is the period when cells undergo intensive differentiation, mobilization, and organization. It is during this period that most of the organogenesis takes place. As a result, the embryo is most susceptible to the effects of teratogens. This period generally ends some time from the 10th to the 14th day in rodents and in the 14th week of the gestation period in humans. Furthermore, not all organs are susceptible at the same time of the pregnancy. Figure 1 shows that the rat embryo is most susceptible between days 8 and 12 for most organs, but the palate and urogenital organs are more susceptible at a later stage.



**Figure 1** Expected incidences of malformation of different organs and systems the susceptibilities of which vary according to the days of gestation. A brief exposure to a teratogen on the 10th day of gestation is expected to induce a variety of malformations, with their incidences shown here. *Source:* Reprinted from *Teratology: Principles and Techniques* by J. G. Wilson; by permission of the University of Chicago Press.

**Table 1** Relationship Between Developmental Stage and Fetal Outcome

Development stage	Target system	Observed effect
Spermatozoa	Whole body	Decreased birth weight Neonatal mortality
Oocyte	Whole organism	Cell death congenital anomalies
Placenta	Cardiovascular	Interference with active transport Alterations in maternal-fetal circulation
	Metabolism	Changes in biosynthesis of nutrients Changes in biotransformation of xenobiotics
Embryo	Whole organism	Intrauterine growth retardation Congenital anomalies
Fetus	Whole body	Growth retardation
	Reproductive and kidney	Genitourinary abnormalities
Neonate	Bone	Skeletal anomalies
	CNS	Neurobehavioral abnormalities Withdrawal symptoms Altered mental ability
	Reproductive	Altered fertility
	Respiratory	Respiratory depression
	Musculature	Hypotonia
	Whole organism	Neonatal death

Sources: From Lock and Kacew (1988), Kacew and Lock (1990), and Kacew (1995).

### Fetal Stage

This stage is characterized by growth and functional maturation. Teratogens are thus unlikely to produce morphologic defects during this stage, but they may induce functional abnormalities. Whereas morphologic defects are in general readily detected at birth or shortly thereafter, functional abnormalities, such as CNS deficiencies, may not be diagnosed for some time after birth.

The effects of developmental toxicants may precede the fertilization as well as after the delivery. A summary of the relationship between the stage of exposure and the effects on development is summarized in Table 1.

## TERATOGENS (DEVELOPMENTAL TOXICANTS) AND THEIR EFFECTS

Many chemical and physical agents may affect the conceptus. The effect may result in one or more of the following manifestations: death and/or various types of malformations. In addition, growth retardation, functional disorders, and certain other effects are observed shortly or much later after birth. They are generally referred to as developmental toxicity (Appendix 1).

A variety of agents are known to be teratogenic in humans. These include radiation, certain infections, nutritional imbalance, and certain drugs, metals and chemicals. The more important agents and their effects are outlined below. Additional information may be found in Shepard (1992), Beckman et al. (1997) and Golub et al. (1998).

*Radiation* for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes may cause embryonic death, leukemia, microcephaly, and skeletal and genital anomalies.

*Infections* that can cause congenital anomalies include German measles, herpes simplex, syphilis, and toxoplasmosis. A variety of congenital anomalies have been reported, for example, microcephaly, glaucoma, cataract, and hemolytic anemia.

*Metabolic imbalance* such as folic acid deficiency, diabetes, phenylketonuria may cause spina bifida, anencephaly, mental retardation, etc.

*Drugs and other chemicals* that are known for their developmental toxicity are listed below with their major effects:

Acetazolamide: supernumerary ribs

Actinomycin D: supernumerary ribs

Alcohol: microcephaly, mental retardation

Androgens: masculinization of female offsprings

Arsenic: neural tube defects, renal and gonadal agenesis, eye defects

Cocaine: fetal loss, microcephaly, neurobehavioral abnormalities

Diethylstilbestrol (DES):

1. At birth: clitoromegaly in female newborns (Bongiovanni et al., 1959)
2. Years later: adenocarcinoma of the vagina and cervix of the female offspring (Poskanzer and Herbst, 1977); abnormal structural and functional disorders of the genital organs of male offspring (Bibbo et al., 1977)

Dinoseb: supernumerary ribs

Diphenylhydantoin: microcephaly, mental retardation, cleft plate

2-Methoxyethanol: supernumerary ribs

Methyl mercury: cerebral palsy, microcephaly, blindness, cerebellar hypoplasia

Organophosphate pesticides: congenital anomalies, ear anomalies, club foot (Weselak et al., 2007)

Phthalates: testicular damage

Retinoids (including vitamin A): malformations of the face, limbs, CNS, heart, and skeletal system

Thalidomide: phocomelia (short or absent limbs)

Valproic acid: spina bifida, supernumerary ribs

## MODE OF ACTION

A variety of chemicals have been shown to be teratogenic in humans and/or animals. In view of the great diversity of the properties of these agents, it is not surprising that many different mechanisms are involved in their teratogenic effects.

### **Interference with Nucleic Acids**

Many agents interfere with nucleic acid replication, transcription, or RNA translation. Their effects may result in cell death or somatic mutation in the embryo. Structural or functional defects may occur where enough cells are so affected. Ionizing radiation and genotoxic carcinogens are likely to act through this mechanism. Although some chemicals, such as carbon tetrachloride and nitrosamines, also yield metabolites that react with nucleic acids, their reactive metabolites are too unstable to reach the embryo. Therefore, these toxicants are carcinogenic but not potent teratogens.

### **Deficiency of Energy Supply and Osmolarity**

Certain teratogens can affect the energy supply for the metabolism of the organism by restricting the availability of substrates either directly (e.g., dietary deficiencies) or through the presence of analogs or antagonists of vitamins, essential amino acids, and others such as 6-amino-nicotinamide, which also interfere with glycolysis. In addition, hypoxia and agents inducing hypoxia (CO, CO<sub>2</sub>) can be teratogenic by depriving the metabolic process of the required oxygen and probably also by the production of osmolar imbalances. These can induce edema and hematomas, which in turn can cause mechanical distortion and tissue ischemia.

### **Inhibition of Enzymes**

Inhibitors of enzymes, such as 5-fluorouracil, can induce malformation through interference with differentiation or growth, by inhibiting thymidylate synthetase. 6-Aminonicotinamide, which inhibits glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, is also a potent teratogen.

### **Oxidative Stress**

Teratogens such as phenytoin undergo bioactivation and induce lipid peroxidation, protein oxidation, and protein degradation in both maternal and embryonic tissues. These biochemical changes may be responsible for the teratogenesis (Liu and Wells, 1995).

### **Others**

It should be noted that the mode of action of many teratogens is as yet unknown. Furthermore, a potential teratogen may or may not exert teratogenic effects depending on such factors as bioactivating mechanism, stability of the reactive metabolites, ability to cross the placental barrier, and detoxifying capability of the embryonic tissues. These and other factors are listed in Table 2.

**Table 2** Factors Associated with Ability of Chemicals to Reach Target Fetus Site

Physicochemical properties	The ability of chemicals to reach the fetus are dependent on water solubility, lipid solubility, and molecular weight
Pharmacokinetics	Fetus effects observed are dependent on chemical concentration in maternal circulation in fetal blood supply, placental and fetal chemicals metabolism, and changing volume distribution and elimination (fetal renal function)
Chemical structure	Two chemicals of similar structure will cross the placenta, yet only the one with a specific structural form will produce an effect
Duration of exposure	A single administration of a high dose can produce damage to the same extent as chronic, low-dose treatment
Implantation site	Improper implantation can result in malformation
Mechanical	Deformations in structures of uterine tissue affect circulation to placenta and fetus
Nutrition	Nutritional deficiency in the mother can influence placental transfer of essential nutrients to fetus. Excess nutrients can also cause adverse fetal effects
Physiological status	The absence of maternal hormones can alter the ability of fetus to cope with chemicals
Developmental state	Teratogenic agents act selectively on developing cells
Infection (disease)	Change in maternal body temperature can prolong half-life of drugs, predisposing the fetus to enhanced toxicity
Genetic	Inborn errors of metabolism can predispose a fetus to enhanced toxicity
Drug interactions	The presence of more than one drug and/or chemical can increase susceptibility of the fetus
Environment	Various factors in outdoor or indoor environment can modify toxicokinetics and thereby affect placental transfer
Multifactorial (gene–environment interactions)	Various factors in environment in specific, susceptible population can modify toxicokinetics and placental transfer

Sources: From Lock and Kacew (1988), Kacew and Lock (1990), and Kacew (1995, 1997).

## TERATOGENS OF SPECIAL INTEREST

*Thalidomide*, as noted earlier, is otherwise a relatively safe drug but induced an episode of unprecedented tragic congenital malformation. This episode broadened the scope of teratology. Unfortunately, after some 25 years of intensive study, the mechanism underlying its teratogenicity remains to be confirmed. The proposed mechanisms include interference with folic acid or glutamic acid metabolism, depurination of DNA, and acylation of polyamines. In addition to these

biochemical investigations, a number of target tissues have been studied without definitive answer. These are limb mesenchyme tissue, mesonephric-limb tissue, and the developing neural crest tissue (Manson and Wise, 1993). A detailed account of the 24 different approaches that have been explored is provided by Stephens (1988).

*Diethylstilbestrol* (DES) was used in the 1940s to 1970s to prevent threatened abortion. Unfortunately, a few of the young adult female offspring (usually at age 19–22 years) of these mothers developed adenocarcinoma of the vagina and cervix; more of them developed other disorders of the vagina and cervix (Poskanzer and Herbst, 1977). In addition, abnormal structural and functional disorders of the genital organs were observed in some male offspring (Bibbo et al., 1977).

## TESTING PROCEDURES

### Animals

Rats, rabbits, mice, and hamsters are the commonly used animals, because of their ready availability, easy handling, larger litter size, and short gestational period. The use of nonhuman primates has also been suggested because of their phylogenetic proximity to humans. There are advantages and disadvantages of various species of animals for use in teratology. On balance, it would appear that rabbits and nonhuman primates offer more advantages.

### Administration of the Chemical

At least three dosage levels are used. The higher dosage should include some maternal (and/or fetal) toxicity, such as reduction in body weight. The lowest dosage should induce no observable ill effect. One or more doses should be appropriately interspersed between the two extremes. Two control groups are included. One of these is given the vehicle or physiologic saline, and the other receives a substance of known teratogenic activity. These groups will provide information on the incidence of spontaneous malformations and the sensitivity of the specific lot of animals under the existing experimental conditions. In addition to these contemporary controls, data from historical controls are also useful. The test substances should be administered by the route that simulates the human exposure situations. The timing of administering the chemical is important. For routine teratologic studies, it is customary to administer the chemical during the entire period of organogenesis when the embryo is most susceptible.

### Observations

The pregnant animals are examined daily for gross signs of maternal toxicity which may adversely affect the fetus. Fetuses are usually surgically removed from the mother about one day prior to the expected delivery to avoid cannibalism and permit counting of resorption sites and dead fetuses. The following observations

are to be made and recorded: number of corpora lutea, implantations, resorptions, dead fetuses, and live fetuses. Other observations include gender of each live fetus, weight of each live fetus, length (crown-rump) of each live fetus, and abnormalities of each fetus (Chernoff and Rogers, 2004).

Detailed examinations are performed to determine the different types of abnormalities. Each fetus is examined for external defects. In addition, about two-thirds of the fetuses are examined for skeletal abnormalities after staining with alizarin red. The remaining one-third of the fetuses are examined for visceral defects after fixation in Bouin's fluid and sectioned with a razor blade.

*Delayed effects* of toxicants are generally observed on the fetal central nervous, genitourinary or respiratory system. In testing toxicants suspected of having such potentials, a sufficient number of pregnant females are allowed to deliver their pups. These pups are nursed either by their biologic mothers or by foster mothers. In the latter case, the potential effects of postnatal exposure are eliminated.

Neuromotor and behavioral tests may be used to detect CNS effects. In evaluating two known teratogens, Goldey et al. (1994) measured motor activity, acoustic startle, T-maze delayed alternation, and measurement of total and regional brain weight as well as glial fibrillary acidic protein. Male rats exposed to TCDD (2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin) in utero and lactationally may exhibit altered androgenic status, including reduced sperm count and testosterone levels (Mably et al. (1992). You et al. (1998) observed impaired male sexual development in rats exposed in utero and lactationally to p,p'-DDE (p,p'-dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene). Gestational exposure to phthalates resulted in abnormal fetal development of the male reproductive system.

More detailed information may be found in EPA (1994).

## EVALUATION OF TERATOGENIC EFFECTS

### Categories and Relative Significance

*Resorption* is a manifestation of death of the conceptus and is determined by the difference in the number of corpora lutea and implantations.

*Fetal Toxicity* may manifest as reduced body weight on the nonviable fetus. This type of data is often useful as corroborating evidence in assessing the teratogenicity of the toxicant in question.

*Malformations* may involve external and/or internal structures. Minor abnormalities, or deviations, generally do not affect the survival of the fetus. Examples are supernumary ribs and decreased or abnormal sternal ossification.

Major malformations, such as spina bifida or hydrocephalus, are incompatible with survival, growth, and fertility.

Minor anomalies are of doubtful significance. Examples are curly tail, straight legs, malrotated limbs and paws, wrist-drop, protruding tongue, enlarged atria and/or ventricles, abnormal pelvic development, and translucent skin.

## Extrapolation to Humans

The results obtained in teratogenesis studies in animals cannot be readily extrapolated to humans. However, the value of animal teratogenicity studies to the assessment of human health hazards was shown by Frankos (1985). Analyzing the FDA data, he noted that 37 of the 38 known human teratogens were positive in at least one laboratory animal test species, and that 130 of the 165 chemicals showing no teratologic findings were negative in at least one laboratory animal test species. In view of the above, it is prudent to carry out appropriate animal tests on all chemicals to which women of childbearing age may be exposed. If positive results are obtained with a substance, especially when this is so in more than one species of animal, exposure of women of childbearing age to this substance should be avoided, if possible.

## REFERENCES

- Beckman DA, Fawcett LB, Brent RL (1997). Developmental toxicity. In: Massaro EJ, ed. *Handbook of Human Toxicology*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1022–1029.
- Bibbo M, Gill W, Azizi F, et al. (1977). Follow-up study of male and female offspring of DES-exposed mothers. *Obstet Gynaecol* 49, 1–8.
- Bongiovanni AM, DiGeorge AM, Grumbach MM (1959). Masculinization of the female infant associated with estrogenic therapy alone during gestation: Four cases. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 19, 1004–1011.
- Chernoff N, Rogers JM (2004). Supernumerary ribs in developmental toxicity bioassays and in human populations: Incidence and biological significance. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7, 437–449.
- EPA (1994). *Health Effects Test Guidelines/Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40, Part 789*. Washington, D.C.: Environmental Protection Agency.
- Frankos VH (1985). FDA perspectives on the use of teratology data for human risk assessment. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 5, 615–625.
- Goldey ES, O'Callaghan JP, Stanton ME, et al. (1994). Developmental neurotoxicity: Evaluation of testing procedures with methylalcomethanol and methylmercury. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 23, 447–464.
- Golub MS, Macintosh MS, Baumrind N (1998). Developmental and reproductive toxicity of inorganic arsenic: Animal studies and human concerns. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 199–241.
- Kacew S (1995). Neonatal toxicology. In: Ballantyne GB, Marrs T, Turner P, eds. *General and Applied Toxicology*. London, UK: Macmillan.
- Kacew S (1997). General principles in pediatric pharmacology and toxicology. In: Kacew S Lambert GH, eds. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology of Human Development*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor and Francis.
- Kacew S, Lock S (1990). Developmental aspects of pediatric pharmacology and toxicology. In: Kacew S, ed. *Drug Toxicity and Metabolism in Pediatrics*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Lenz W, Knapp K (1962). Thalidomide embryopathy. *Arch Environ Health* 5, 100–105.
- Liu L, Wells PG (1995). Potential molecular targets mediating chemical teratogenesis: In vitro peroxidase-catalyzed phenytoin metabolism and oxidative damage to proteins



- and lipids in marine maternal hepatic microsomes and embryonic 9000g supernatant. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 34, 71–80.
- Lock S, Kacew S (1988). General principles in pediatric pharmacology and toxicology. In: Kacew S, Lock S, eds. *Toxicologic and Pharmacologic Principles in Pediatrics*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere Publishing.
- Mably TA, Moore RW, Peterson RE (1992). In utero and lactational exposure of male rats to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin: 1. Effects on androgenic status. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 114, 97–107.
- Manson JM, Wise LD (1993). Teratogens. In: Amdur MO, Doull J, Klaassen CD, eds. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 226–254.
- Mitchell AE, Bakshi KS, Kimmel CA (2004). Evaluating chemical and other agent exposures for reproductive and developmental toxicity. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 67, 1159–1314.
- Poskanzer D, Herbst A (1977). Epidemiology of vaginal adenosis and adenocarcinoma associated with exposure to stilbestrol in utero. *Cancer* 39, 1892–1895.
- Shepard TH (1992). *Catalog of Teratogenic Agents*, 7th edn. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Stephens TD (1988). Proposed mechanisms of action in thalidomide embryopathy. *Teratology* 38, 229–239.
- Weselak M, Arbuckle TE, Foster W (2007). Pesticide exposure and developmental outcomes: The epidemiological evidence. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 41–80.
- You L, Casanova M, Archibeque-Engle S, et al. (1998). Impaired male sexual development in perinatal Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans hooded rats exposed in utero and lactationally to *p,p'*-DDE. *Toxicol Sci* 45, 162–173.

**Appendix 1** Teratogens in Animal Models

---

1. Physical agents: hypothermia and hyperthermia, hypoxia, radiation.
  2. Agents producing hypoxia: carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide.
  3. Infections: rubella viruses, syphilis.
  4. Dietary deficiency or excess: vitamins A, D, and E; ascorbic acid; nicotinamide; trace metals (Zn, Mn, Mg, Co).
  5. Vitamin antagonists: antifolic drugs, 6-aminonicotinamide.
  6. Hormone deficiency or excess: cortisone, hydrocortisone, thyroxine, vasopressin, insulin, androgens, estrogens.
  7. Natural toxins: aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub>, ochratoxin A, ergotamine, nicotine.
  8. Heavy metals: arsenic, methyl mercury, phenylmercuric acetate, lead, thallium, strontium, selenium.
  9. Solvents: benzene, carbon tetrachloride, 1,1-dichloroethane, dimethyl sulfoxide, propylene glycol, xylene.
  10. Insecticides, herbicides, fungicides.
  11. Azo dyes: trypan blue, Evans blue, Niagara blue.
  12. Antibiotics: dactinomycin, penicillin, streptomycin, tetracyclines.
  13. Sulfonamides: sulfanilamide, hypoglycemic sulfonamides.
  14. Drugs and chemicals: caffeine, carbutamide, chlorcyclizine, chlorpromazine and derivatives, diphenylhydantoin, hydroxyurea, imipramine, meclizine, nitrosamines, phthalates, pilocarpine, quinine, rauwolfia, thalidomide, triparanol, veratrum alkaloids, vinca alkaloids.
-

## Lactation

### CONTENTS

General Remarks	151
Benefits of Breast-Feeding	153
Immune System	153
Cancer	153
Avoidance of Food Allergies	153
Psychological Bonding	154
Biomarkers of Exposure	154
Toxicants	155
Silicone	156
Mercury	156
Lead	157
Halogenated Hydrocarbons	158
Ethanol (alcohol)	159
Solvents	159
References	160

### GENERAL REMARKS

Following birth, the fetal stage develops into the neonate or infant. Exposure to drugs and environmental agents can either be direct through inhalation, ingestion, etc., or indirectly via the mother's milk. The importance and necessity of breast milk in the developing neonate have been clearly shown (Kacew, 1994; Berlin and Kacew, 1997). Table 1 lists some of the disease conditions where the frequency of occurrences of these disorders was clearly diminished in breast-fed infants. Breast-feeding has distinct advantages nutritionally, immunologically, and psychologically, and despite the presence of environmental toxins, should be

**Table 1** Adverse Infant Conditions  
Protected by Breast-Feeding

---

Infant mortality
Sudden infant death syndrome
Respiratory tract disease
Food allergies
Atopic dermatitis
Otitis media
Asthma
Immune system disorders
Lymphomas
Celiac disease
Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
Inflammatory bowel disease
Crohn's disease
HIV-related mortality
Cholera
Giardia lamblia diarrhea
Rotavirus diarrhea
Shigellosis
Bacteremia and meningitis
Chronic liver disease

---

*Sources:* From Kacew (1994, 2000).

encouraged. At present, it should be stressed that human milk remains the best nutrient source for the healthy term infant (Redel and Shulman, 1994). This is clearly seen in the emphasis on promotion of breast-feeding by both professionals and laypersons. The incidence of breast-feeding in North America has varied over the years from 25% (1970) to 56% (1981), and most recent studies show that about 54% of women discharged from hospital to home are breast-feeding (Berlin, 1989; Lawrence, 1989; Buttar, 1994). The resurgence in the number of women breast-feeding will increase even further as the educational awareness of benefits of lactation is promoted amongst men of expectant mothers. Wilson et al. (1986) estimated that a figure of 70% of breast-feeding mothers in the United States was equivalent to approximately 2.5 million women. Even at 50%, in 1994, there were 4 million new mothers in the United States, so more than 2 million infants went home receiving breast milk. A health goal established by a workshop sponsored by Human Health Services was that, by the year 2000, 75% of newborns would be breast-fed and 50% would still be breast-fed by six months of age. The breast-feeding mother is subjected to exposure from environmental contaminants, and these pollutants may be present in human milk. In the majority of cases, it is still more beneficial to breast-feed despite the presence of such contaminants.

## **BENEFITS OF BREAST-FEEDING**

Breast-feeding confers to the infant certain benefits, which are summarized in Table 1 and discussed in the following sections.

### **Immune System**

The beneficial effects of breast-feeding against immune system disorders are well established (Davis et al., 1988; Mayer et al., 1988; Kramer, 1988). The finding that lead interferes with the immune system indicates that the presence of this metal in milk may not confer protection in lead-exposed mothers. It should also be noted that in the presence of environmental toxicants and a condition of malnourishment, the immune system is further compromised as there is an increased sensitivity to viral infection. The transmission of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) during breast-feeding from infected mothers to suckling infants is well documented (Oxtoby, 1988). Based on this knowledge the question arises as to the advantages of bottle-feeding in HIV-infected mothers. In an extensive study, Lederman (1992) demonstrated that exclusive breast-feeding even in situations where mothers were HIV-infected, there was a decrease in the estimated infant mortality rate, especially in population areas where HIV prevalence was low. Although lactation does not protect against HIV transmission, breast-feeding is clearly beneficial in reducing infant mortality. In a population where HIV infection is exceedingly high, bottle-feeding is preferable. Bearing this in mind the benefits of breast-feeding substantially outweigh HIV transmission, as one must consider infant mortality. Clearly, breast-feeding protects against infant mortality regardless of cause and this physiologic process should not be discontinued.

### **Cancer**

The beneficial effects of protecting breast-fed infants against lymphoidal hypertrophy and lymphomas have been documented (Davis et al., 1988). This protective antineoplastic effect was found to extend to the mother where lactation for prolonged periods was correlated with a reduction in breast cancer (McTiernan and Thomas, 1986). Although Kvale and Heuch (1988) failed to demonstrate any association in a large cohort study, in the more extensive and recent finding of Newcomb et al. (1994), a positive inverse correlation between lactation and risk of breast cancer was noted in premenopausal women. However, no reduction in the risk of breast cancer was found in postmenopausal women with a history of lactation. Regardless of the fact that breast cancer occurs in less than one quarter of all cases reported and that lactation provides a slight protective effect, it was concluded that any factor which reduces the incidence of breast cancer should be encouraged.

### **Avoidance of Food Allergies**

In the case of food allergies or atopic dermatitis, it is generally accepted that breast-feeding delays the development of these disorders (Lucas et al., 1990). Although

Kramer (1988) suggested that breast-feeding provided protection against allergic diseases, these manifestations occurred in exclusively breast-fed infants. However, it should be noted that the incidence of food allergies decreased dramatically in exclusive breast-fed infants. In recent studies the maternal diet was found to be a critical factor in the development of allergic manifestations in lactating infants. Ingestion of a maternal hypoallergenic diet devoid of cow's milk, eggs, and fish during lactation decreased the cumulative incidence and current prevalence of atopic dermatitis during the first six months of age with continuation to the age of four (Chandra et al., 1989; Sigurs et al., 1992). Breast-feeding per se is effective in protecting against allergic disorders provided the offending stimulus is not ingested by the mother for transmission to the infant via the milk.

### **Psychological Bonding**

Breast-feeding is known to create a special psychological bond between infant and mother that ultimately leads to a socially healthier child. In addition, lactation enhances maternal postpartum recovery and body weight returns to prepartum levels more rapidly. The physiological process of breast-feeding plays a critical role in human growth and development. The use of bottles to feed nursing infants with milk formula in developing countries was found to enhance morbidity and mortality. In affluent nations, inadequate knowledge on growth patterns between breast-fed and bottle-fed infants resulted in inappropriate counseling against lactation. In an extensive study, Dewey et al. (1992) demonstrated that the growth pattern was equivalent between breast-fed and formula-fed infants from birth to the first three months. However, breast-fed infants gained significantly less weight from 3 to 12 months without any deleterious effects on nutrition, morbidity, motor activity level, or behavioral development. It is evident that breast-fed infants are leaner and do not display a faltering growth pattern; women should be encouraged to continue the lactational process beyond three months. With the knowledge that growth in breast-fed infants is generally less than formula-fed, growth per se as an index of toxicity in the first year of life is not appropriate.

Maternal nutrient intake is an important factor in the growth pattern of the infant. If a deficiency of zinc exists, there may be a delay in infant growth. Thus, in conditions of adequate maternal zinc concentrations, lactation should be encouraged despite a decreased infant growth pattern. A maternal diet deficient in essential nutrients such as iron or calcium results in a greater bioavailability of mammary lead, with consequent developmental delay.

### **BIOMARKERS OF EXPOSURE**

It is clear that chemicals are present in milk and that these agents may affect the suckling infant. However, limited data are available to determine whether the presence of the chemical is sufficient to exert an adverse effect. Diehl-Jones and Bols (2000) using dioxin established criteria or biomarkers of exposure. In essence

alterations in certain milk constituents provided evidence for a dioxin-like effect. Examples of biomarkers in milk include lysozyme, cathepsin, vitamins A to K, cytokines interleukin 1, or tumor necrosis factor as well as hormones including estrogen, thyroxine, or prolactin. The determination of these biomarkers could then be used to ascertain the degree of exposure. The cellular modifications that one would measure are cytochrome P-450 induction, DNA adducts, apoptosis, and chemokinesis. This could prove crucial as in terms of therapeutic intervention following an exposure.

## TOXICANTS

The nursing mother can serve as a source of neonatal exposure to drugs or chemicals (Wang and Needham, 2007). No matter whether the agent is an OTC (over-the-counter) medication or prescribed by a physician, most drugs are detectable in breast milk. The presence of a drug in maternal milk may be construed as a potential hazard to the infant even though only 1% to 2% of total intake is likely to be found there. Hence the primary consideration in maternal drug therapy is the risk to the nursing infant rather than the mere presence of xenobiotic in the milk. Based on the numerous advantages of breast-feeding, the benefit of this physiological process in the majority of cases far exceeds the potential risk. Although it may be inadvertent, the suckling infant also derives environmental chemicals from the mother. These chemicals are excreted in breast milk and pose a serious potential hazard to the infant (Berlin et al., 2002; Table 2). Unlike drug therapy, which can be voluntarily terminated, environmental exposure may be chronic and, consequently, more toxic. In addition, both environmental chemicals and drugs present in milk can enter the infant to exert a synergistic adverse effect. Some of these are discussed in the following sections:

**Table 2** Toxicants Identified in Human Breast Milk and Adverse Infant Effects

Chemical	Effect
Silicone	Esophageal dysfunction
Hexachlorobenzene	Porphyria cutanea tarda
Polychlorinated biphenyls	Abnormal skin pigmentation, bone defects, growth retardation, hypotonia
Perchloroethylene	Obstructive jaundice
Methyl mercury	Developmental delay, abnormal muscle tone, mental retardation, decrease suckling response
Lead	Poor mental performance, central nervous system toxicosis
Nicotine	Decreased weight gain
Cadmium	Lower birth weight

Sources: From Kacew (1994), Berlin and Kacew (1997).

## Silicone

Silicone is a polymeric substance, which is inert and is unlikely to produce a toxic manifestation. Based on these properties the use of silicone for breast implantation was considered ideal; however, retrospective studies revealed an increased incidence of rheumatologic disorders, in particular, scleroderma and arthritis. Levin and Ilowite (1994) reported that in infants of breast-fed mothers with silicone implants, there was a decreased lower sphincter pressure and abnormal esophageal wave propagation. Clearly the inert material silicone was associated with infant esophageal disease as a result of lactational exposure. It has been suggested that leakage from the implant produces immunologic substances that lead to scleroderma development. Normally human milk contains immunological components, which provide protection against diseases. In the presence of silicone the breast milk would contain components that may immunologically compromise the infant not only with esophageal dysfunction but also with increased susceptibility to other immune-related diseases.

## Mercury

Lactational exposure of human infants to metals is a concern and raises the issue of risk versus benefit in the maintenance of the breast-feeding process. Mercury levels in milk are usually low ( $<1$  ng/mL), but in environmental disasters as in Minamata, Japan, the levels reached 50 ng/mL. Numerous studies exist on the effects of either prenatal or during both pregnancy and postnatal exposure to metals on developing infants, but few reports are available on the consequences of the presence of metals exclusively in breast milk on children. Bearing in mind the consequences of methyl mercury poisoning, especially in Minamata, Japan, consideration should be given to the contribution of lactational exposure to the observed neuronal disturbances where nursing mothers ingesting mercury-contaminated fish resulted in severe neurological disorders in human infants (Matsumoto et al., 1965). Takeuchi (1968) clearly demonstrated the effects of epidemic methyl mercury exposure on fetal and newborn development. Industrial release of methyl mercury into Minamata Bay followed by accumulation in edible fish and ingestion by lactating females resulted in the transfer of metal to the suckling human infant. Similarly, Amin-Zaki et al. (1974) demonstrated that ingestion of homemade bread prepared from wheat treated with the fungicide methyl mercury by lactating mothers produced a significant rise in human infant metal levels. In fish-eating populations in Canada, maternal ingestion of mercury-contaminated food during pregnancy and lactation resulted in abnormal muscle tone and reflexes in boys but not in girls (McKeown-Eyssen et al., 1983). In a New Zealand study, Kjellstrom et al. (1989) reported developmental retardation in four-year-old children of mothers eating mercury-contaminated fish during pregnancy and lactation. Although emphasis was placed on the consequences of prenatal exposure in the Canadian and New Zealand studies, the contribution of milk mercury to toxic outcome was neglected. It



should be noted that in some patients with Minamata disease, the neurological symptoms developed not at the time of exposure but years later. Further, the reported number of cases where children born in a mercury-contaminated area in Japan were healthy yet developed neuropathy in childhood. The contribution of breast milk mercury to late-onset Minamata disease remains to be resolved. Mammary transfer of methyl mercury to suckling infants has been reported to produce neurological lesions. This finding clearly indicates a positive correlation between exposure to high concentrations of metal in mammary tissue and toxicity in suckling infants.

Although the precise contribution of mammary-derived methyl mercury to the observed adverse effects on neurologic and behavioral changes in suckling pups is not known, it was found that postnatal exposure directly to newborns of this metal produced ocular defects. In contrast, there was a lack of an ocular effect in fetuses of prenatal exposed dams, suggesting that lactation methyl mercury may in part contribute to the observed toxicity. It is well known that methyl mercury is secreted more readily in the maternal colostrum, the period at which eye defects were reported, and crosses into the suckling infant. Mercury itself decreases the suckling response in human infants. Because milk contains essential nutrients for neurological and behavioral development, it is conceivable that less suckling and feeding would contribute to the mercury-induced nervous disorders as there is less nutritional supply and this is associated with delayed growth processes.

## Lead

In a number of studies conducted in the United States and Europe, the content of lead in human milk ranged from 5 to 68 ng/mL (Rabinowitz et al., 1985). Levels in Boston averaged 1.7 ng/mL in 1979. Dillon (1974) found lead levels of approximately 26 ng/mL in seven different U.S. cities. In Mexico City, milk lead levels reached 45 ng/mL (Berlin and Kacew, 1997; Berlin et al., 2002). It is not surprising that upon examination of the source of infant lead intoxication, breast milk contained far less lead than either formula or environmental sources such as ceramic-leachable kitchenware, paint chips, etc. (Rabinowitz et al., 1985). There is evidence to suggest a correlation between poor mental performance as evidenced by the Bayley Infants Assessment Test and increased lead level (Needleman et al., 1983). These findings prompted Newman (1993) to recommend the promotion of breast-feeding, as human milk was a less suitable transmission vehicle for lead contamination compared to formula feeding. Further it should be stressed that the best source for daily nutrition amongst infants is human milk.

Although the contribution of exclusive mammary lead exposure to the observed central nervous system (CNS) toxic consequences remains undefined, there is evidence to suggest that the presence of lactational metal results in newborn toxicity. Direct application of topical lead ointment on the breast was reported to produce CNS toxicosis in the human infant (Dillon, 1974). The presence of lead in mammary tissue alters the nutritional value of milk as reflected by decreases in

the essential elements copper, zinc, and iron, which are required for mammalian metabolism and CNS function. The absorption of calcium, iron, and vitamin D is affected by lead. In conditions of diets deficient in essential elements, lead absorption and toxicity is enhanced in infants. As breast milk is a source of lead for suckling infants, it is conceivable that during iron-deficiency anemia or calcium-deficient dietary intake in mothers, the bioavailability of milk lead would be increased, resulting in greater toxicity. Evidence suggested that lead exposure may interfere with maternal metabolic pathways resulting in decreased utilization of nutrients in the diet, and thus an absence of nutritional components present in milk. This altered milk composition would consequently adversely affect newborn development.

### Halogenated Hydrocarbons

Chemical exposure via accidents and hazardous waste sites has resulted in toxicant accumulation in breast milk. The human maternal ingestion of a fungicide, hexachlorobenzene-treated wheat resulted in chemical accumulation in breast milk. Suckling infants subsequently developed symptoms of a disease, pembe yara, and a condition of prophyria cutanea tarda (Peters et al., 1982). Exposure to organophosphate pesticides such as chlorpyrifos, malathion, etc., is worthy of mention, as these compounds have been identified in breast milk (Berlin and Kacew, 1997). Ingestion of chlorpyrifos by a three-year-old infant resulted in delayed polyneuropathy with transient bilateral vocal paralysis (Aiuto et al., 1993). Although lactation per se was not involved in this specific case, the importance lies in the fact that the manifestations of exposure did not occur until one to three weeks later. One should be aware that the consequences of lactational exposure to toxicants can also be delayed. This is supported by the findings where a mother was exposed to 2,4-diphenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D) spray during pregnancy and lactation. Examination of the infant at 5 and 24 months of age revealed multiple malformations and severe mental retardation. Although the mammary tissue content of 2,4-D was not determined, prolonged maternal exposure with consequent transmission to the infant was suggested to result in the observed toxicity. The fact that lactational-derived organophosphate pesticides alter suckling infant metabolism and that toxicity may be delayed suggests that breast-feeding in severe exposure conditions should be minimized.

Ingestion of polychlorinated biphenyl-contaminated rice oil by nursing mothers was attributed to produce low birth weight human infants, growth retardation, abnormal skin pigmentation as well as bone and tooth defects (Yamaguchi et al., 1971). In extensive studies in North Carolina, Rogan et al. (1986) measured the levels of polychlorinated biphenyls in human milk and found an associated hypotonicity and hyporeflexia in nursing infants. Organochlorine pesticides including, DDT, aldrin, and dieldrin have been identified in human milk (Berlin and Kacew, 1997; Wang and Needham, 2007). However, it is surprising that manifestations of toxicity in suckling infants following maternal organochlorine

exposure have not been reported. This should not be deemed that the presence of organochlorine contaminants in breast milk lacks an effect on the infant, as these environmental toxicants induce mammary carcinoma and may act as cocarcinogens. It is well known that suckling infants of cigarette smoking mothers are more prone to respiratory irritation and infections. However, cigarette smoking in the presence of atmospheric pollutants exerted an additive toxic effect on the mother. Conceivably, the presence of organochlorine compounds and nicotine in breast milk would increase infant toxicity with the hydrocarbons acting as cocarcinogens. Hence in susceptible suckling infants these compounds may precipitate autoimmune diseases, lymphomas, etc.

#### Ethanol (alcohol)

Alcohol ingestion during pregnancy is known to result in congenital anomalies termed “fetal alcohol syndrome” (FES). FES is characterized by mental deficiency, microcephaly, irritability, and poor muscle coordination in the affected subjects. This syndrome is associated with alcoholic women who drank heavily and chronically during pregnancy. Although the contribution of alcohol during lactation to FES has not been established, it is known that the severity of manifestations in infants is correlated with the amount consumed. Hence alcohol in breast milk could worsen adverse infant development that was initiated during pregnancy. There are some studies inferring that alcohol exposure during lactation may increase the susceptibility of the infant to develop cancer (Infante-Rivard and El-Zein, 2007).

#### Solvents

The aromatic hydrocarbon toluene is utilized as a solvent or thinner in numerous industrial products including paints, glue, and resins. The lipophilic property of toluene is of interest in light of the physicochemical properties of breast tissue. Hersh et al. (1985) demonstrated that in infants of approximately four years of age, maternal exposure to toluene throughout pregnancy via glue sniffing produced embryopathy, mental deficiency, and postnatal growth delay. There is no doubt that in utero exposure to toluene was manifested in teratogenesis. However, as there was evidence of postnatal growth deficiency and that toluene has a high affinity for fat, it is also possible that these infants were exposed to this solvent via the mother’s milk. This is supported by the finding that obstructive jaundice developed in lactating infants of mothers exposed to the dry-cleaning solvent, perchloroethylene (Bagnell and Ellenberg, 1977). It is well established that exposure to the organic solvents during pregnancy results in toxemia and anemia. Unfortunately, infants born to these mothers were not followed during lactation. However, as these environmental chemicals accumulate in breast milk and produce metabolic maternal alterations, it is conceivable that solvents may alter infant development. The release of organic solvents from breast milk fat needs to be considered amongst solvent abusers in light of adverse consequent effects reported in children (Schreiber, 1997).

## REFERENCES

- Aiuto LA, Pavlakis SG, Boxer RA (1993). Life-threatening organophosphate-induced delayed polyneuropathy in a child after accidental chlorpyrifos. *J Pediatr* 122, 658–660.
- Amin-Zaki L, Elhassini S, Majeed MA, et al. (1974). Studies of infants postnatally exposed to methylmercury. *J Pediatr* 85, 81–84.
- Bagnell PC, Ellenberg HA (1977). Obstructive jaundice due to a chlorinated hydrocarbon in breast milk. *Can Med Assoc J* 117, 1047–1048.
- Berlin CM Jr, Kacew S, Lawrence R, et al. (2002). Criteria for chemical selection for programs on human milk surveillance and research for environmental chemicals. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 65, 1839–1851.
- Berlin CM Jr (1989). Drugs and chemicals: Exposure of the nursing mother. *Pediatr Clin North Am* 36, 1089–1097.
- Berlin CM Jr, Kacew S (1997). Environmental contamination human milk. In: Kacew S, Lambert GH, eds. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology of Human Development*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Buttar HS (1994). Neonatal risks of drugs excreted in breast milk. *Can Pharm J* 127, 14–19.
- Chandra RK, Puri S, Hamed A (1989). Influence of maternal diet during lactation and use of formula feeds on development of atopic eczema in high risk infants. *Br Med J* 299, 228–230.
- Davis MK, Savitz DA, Graubard BI (1988). Infant feeding and childhood cancer. *Lancet* 2, 365–368.
- Dewey KG, Heining MJ, Nommsen LA, et al. (1992). Growth of breast-fed and formula-fed infants from 0 to 18 months: the DARLING study. *Pediatrics* 89, 1035–1041.
- Diehl-Jones WL, Bols NC (2000). Use of response biomarkers in milk for assessing exposure to environmental contaminants: The case for dioxin-like compounds. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 79–107.
- Dillon HK (1974). Lead concentration in human milk. *Am J Dis Child* 128, 491–492.
- Hersh JH, Podruch PE, Rogers G, et al. (1985). Toluene embryopathy. *J Pediatr* 106, 922–927.
- Infante-Rivard C, El-Zein M (2007). Parental alcohol consumption and childhood cancers: A review. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 101–129.
- Kacew S (1994). Current issues in lactation: Advantages, environment, silicone. *Biomed Environ Sci* 7, 307–319.
- Kacew S (2000). Neonatal toxicology. In: Ballantyne B, Marrs T, Syversen T, eds. *General and Applied Toxicology*. New York, NY: Macmillan.
- Kjellstrom T, Kennedy P, Wallis S, et al. (1989). Physical and mental development of children with prenatal exposure to mercury from fish. Stage 2. Interviews and psychological tests at age 6, Solna, National Swedish Environmental Board, 112 (Report no. 3642).
- Kramer MS (1988). Does breast feeding help protect against atopic disease? Biology, methodology and a golden jubilee of controversy. *J Pediatr* 112, 181–190.
- Kvale G, Heuch I (1988). Lactation and cancer risk: Is there a relation specific to breast cancer? *J Epidemiol Community Health* 42, 30–37.
- Lawrence RA (1989). Breastfeeding and medical disease. *Med Clin North Am* 73, 583–603.
- Lederman SA (1992). Estimating infant mortality from human immunodeficiency virus and other causes in breast-feeding and bottle-feeding populations. *Pediatrics* 89, 290–296.

- Levine JJ, Ilowitz NT (1994). Scleroderma like esophageal disease in children breast-fed by mothers with silicone breast implants. *J Am Med Assoc* 271, 213–216.
- Lucas A, Brooke OG, Morley R, et al. (1990). Early diet of preterm infants and development of allergic or atopic disease: Randomized prospective study. *Br Med J* 300, 837–840.
- Matsumoto M, Koya G, Takeuchi T (1965). Fetal Minamata Disease. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 24, 563–574.
- Mayer EJ, Hamman RF, Gay EC, et al. (1988). Reduced risk of IDDM among breast-fed children. *Diabetes* 37, 1625–1632.
- McKeown-Eyssen GE, Ruedy J, Neims A (1983). Methyl mercury exposure in Northern Quebec. II. Neurological finding in children. *Am J Epidemiol* 118, 470–479.
- McTiernan A, Thomas DB (1986). Evidence for a protective effect of lactation on risk of breast cancer in young women: Results from a case-control study. *Am J Epidemiol* 124, 353–358.
- Needleman H, Bellinger D, Leviton A, et al. (1983). Umbilical cord blood lead levels and neuropsychological performance at 12 months of age. *Pediatr Res* 17, 179A.
- Newcomb PA, Storer BF, Longnecker MP, et al. (1994). Lactation and reduced risk of premenopausal breast cancer. *New Engl J Med* 330, 81–87.
- Newman J (1993). Would breast-feeding decrease risks of lead intoxication? *Pediatrics* 90, 131.
- Oxtoby MJ (1988). Human immunodeficiency virus and other viruses in human milk: Placing the issues in broader perspective. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 7, 825–835.
- Peters HA, Gocmen A, Gripps DJ, et al. (1982). Epidemiology of hexachlorobenzene-induced porphyria in Turkey. *Arch Neurol* 39, 744–749.
- Rabinowitz M, Leviton A, Needleman H (1985). Lead in milk and infant blood: A dose-response mode. *Arch Environ Health* 40, 283–286.
- Redel CA, Shulman RG (1994). Controversies in the composition of infant formulas. *Pediatr Clin N A* 41, 909–924.
- Rogan WJ, Gladen BC, McKinney JD, et al. (1986). Neonatal effects of transplacental exposure to PCBs and DDE. *J Pediatr* 109, 335–341.
- Schreiber JS (1997). Transport of organic chemicals to breast milk: Tetra-chloroethene case study. In: Kacew S, Lambert GH, eds. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology of Human Development*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Sigurs N, Hattevig G, Kjellman B (1992). Maternal avoidance of eggs, cow's milk and fish during lactation: Effect on allergic manifestation, skin-prick test, specific IgE antibodies in children at age 4 years. *Pediatrics* 89, 735–739.
- Takeuchi T (1968). Pathology of Minamata Disease. In: Kutsune M, ed. *Minamata Disease*. Japan: Kunamoto University.
- Wang RY, Needham LL (2007). Environmental chemicals: From the environment to food, to breast, to the infant. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 597–609.
- Wilson JT, Hinson JL, Brown RD, et al. (1986). A comprehensive assessment of drugs and chemical toxins excreted in breast milk. In: Hamosh M, Goldman AD, eds. *Human Lactation*, vol. 2. New York, NY: Plenum Publishing Corporation.
- Yamaguchi A, Yoshimura T, Kuratsune M (1971). A survey of pregnant women having consumed rice oil contaminated with chlorobiphenyls and their babies. *Fukuoka Acta Med* 62, 117–122.



# **Part III**

---

## **Target Organs and Systems**





## Toxicology of the Immune System

### CONTENTS

General Considerations	165
Components of the System	166
T Cells	166
B Cells	167
Other Types of Cells	167
Soluble Mediators	168
Immunotoxicants	169
Major Immunotoxicants	169
Effects on Immune Functions	170
Hypersensitivity and Allergy	170
Autoimmunity	171
Immunosuppression and Immunodeficiencies	172
Immunotoxicities	172
Immunocompetence Tests in Intact Animals	172
Cell-Mediated Immunity	172
Humoral Immunity	173
Macrophage and Bone Marrow	174
Others	174
References	174
Further Reading	175

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The function of the immune system is to protect the host against foreign organisms (virus, bacteria, fungus), “foreign cells” (neoplasm), and other foreign substances. Its importance is evidenced by the seriousness of immunodeficiency:

patients with this disorder are prone to be affected by infection and tumors. Immunodeficiency can be congenital or acquired; the latter is also known as AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome).

The immune system is composed of several types of organs, cells, and noncellular components. The functions of the individual components are in general interrelated. Thus, upon encountering a foreign substance, a cascade of reactions usually appears between different types of cellular and humoral components. These reactions involve the recognition, memory, and response to the foreign substance, and are designed for its elimination or control.

A variety of toxicants are known to suppress immune function. This effect will lead to lowered host resistance to bacterial and viral infections, and to parasitic infestation, as well as lowered control of neoplasm. In addition, certain toxicants may provoke exaggerated immune reactions leading to local or systemic reactions. Furthermore, it may even result in “autoimmune reactions.”

This chapter briefly describes the components of the immune system and their functions and major immunotoxicants.

## **COMPONENTS OF THE SYSTEM**

The immune system consists of a network of organs including the bone marrow, thymus, spleen, and lymph nodes. From these organs, various lymphocytes and other cells with different immune functions are derived.

Some of the components are involved in specific immune responses, and others in nonspecific responses. Both types of cells are derived from the pluripotent cells in the bone marrow. From these cells are generated the lymphoid stem cells. Some of these cells are processed through the thymus and become T cells (T lymphocytes); others go through the “bursal equivalent” tissues (including bone marrow, lymph nodes, lymphoid tissues in the gut such as appendix, cecum, and Peyer’s patches) to become B cells (B lymphocytes). Still others are released from the bone marrow without further processing. These are known as natural killer (NK) cells. Unlike the T cells and B cells, NK cells are also involved in nonspecific defense against neoplasms, and certain other foreign substances (Table 1).

Other pluripotent stem cells give rise to myeloid stem cells, from which are derived monocytes, mast cells, and polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells. Monocytes then become macrophages, which are involved in specific (acquired) and nonspecific (innate) immune reactions. In addition, there are three types of PMN cells, namely, neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils. These cells are involved in nonspecific defense mechanisms.

### **T Cells**

As noted above, the T cells, after passing through the thymus, enter the blood and constitute 70% of the circulating lymphocytes. Some settle in thymus-dependent areas of the spleen and lymph nodes. On contact with antigens processed by

**Table 1** The Cells and Primary Soluble Mediators: Innate Vs. Acquired Immunity

Characteristic	Innate immunity	Acquired immunity
Cells involved	Polymorphonuclear cells (PMN)	T cells
		B cells
	Monocyte/macrophage	Macrophages
Primary soluble mediators	NK cells	NK cells
	Complement	Antibody
	Lysozyme	Cytokines
	Acute phase proteins	
	Interferon $\alpha/\beta$	
	Cytokines	

Source: From Burns et al. (1996).

antigen-presenting cells (APC; such as macrophages and B cells), the T cells undergo proliferation and differentiation. Some of these cells become “activated” and are responsible for mediating cellular immunity. Others become T memory cells, which can be activated by combining with antigens; still others by becoming *helper* cells. Once activated, helper T cells will proliferate and secrete lymphokines. The lymphokines will cause the B cells to become plasma cells.

The activated T cells react either directly with cell-membrane-associated antigens or by releasing various soluble factors known as lymphokines. There are a large number of lymphokines (see the section Other Types of Cells).

**B Cells**

Other stem cells undergo changes in certain tissues as noted above to become B cells (B lymphocytes). They enter the blood to constitute 30% of the lymphocytes. The primary immune response is initiated by the contact of antigen with B cells, which then differentiate and proliferate. Some of these become *memory* cells, which retain the surface immunoglobulin receptors, whereas others become *plasma* cells. The latter type of cells bear on cell surface IgM and IgD immunoglobulins. Exposure of the memory cells to the same antigen at a later time results in the secondary immune response.

**Other Types of Cells**

*Other lymphocytes* lack the characteristic surface markers of the T cells and the B cells, but they participate in the nonspecific immune system functions. These are the null cells. Some of these, the *natural killer* (NK) cells, have spontaneous (without prior sensitization) cytolytic activity against other cells, especially leukemia and carcinoma cells.

*Macrophages* are also derived from the stem-cell pool in the bone marrow. After their release, they appear in the bloodstream as monocytes and in the tissues

as histiocytes. On contact with a foreign body, they engulf the foreign body and become activated macrophages. These cells are rich in cytoplasmic hydrolytic enzymes. Most bacterial cells are readily digested by these enzymes. Macrophages can also be activated to become APC.

*Langerhans cells*, located in the skin, are also derived from bone marrow and act as APC. They serve to process dermal antigens and initiate contact allergy and rejection of skin graft.

Among the *polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells*, neutrophil PMN exert phagocytic activity. The eosinophils possess cytotoxic function, and basophils (which become mast cells in tissues) release histamine and other substances, thereby initiating local reactions to a foreign substance inducing immediate hypersensitivity.

### Soluble Mediators

*Immunoglobins (Ig family)* are proteins produced by plasma cells (derived from B cells). They have specific antibody activities. Their specificity is determined by the amino acid sequence and the tertiary surface configuration. There are five major types of immunoglobins. Their characteristics and functions are outlined in Table 2.

*Interleukins (IL)* (cytokines) are proteins produced by activated T cells (lymphokines) or monocytes/macrophages (monokines) in response to antigenic or mitogenic stimulation. They promote the proliferation of T cells, B cells, and hematopoietic stem cells.

*The complement system* consists of more than 30 plasma and body fluid proteins. These proteins complement a variety of immune functions, such as adherence of antibody-coated bacteria to macrophages, modulation of immune response, and lysis of cells. Immunotoxicants can activate or inhibit the complements. Macrophages and certain lymphocytes are capable of synthesizing certain

**Table 2** Characteristics of Immunoglobulins

Class	Mol. wt.	Mean survival, $t_{1/2}$ (days)	Mean serum conc. (mg/dL)	Major function
IgG	150,000	20	720–1500	Most prevalent; major antibody for toxins, viruses, and bacteria
IgA	170,000	6	90–325	In secretions from mucosa; for early antibacterial and antiviral defense
IgM	900,000	10	45–150	Major antibody after exposure to most antigens
IgD	180,000	3	3	Present on B cell surface, function as an antigen receptor
IgE	200,000	2	0.03	Fixed on mast cells, responsible for immediate type hypersensitivity

important cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor (Ruddle, 1994), and growth factors; the latter play a central role in the fibrotic lung lesions in humans exposed to asbestos and silica (see Chap. 12).

## IMMUNOTOXICANTS

### Major Immunotoxicants

A variety of substances have been found to affect the immune system. They may be placed in five categories as follows:

1. Medicinal products: among these, the antineoplastic drugs cyclophosphamide, nitrogen mustards, 6-mercaptopurine, azathioprine, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, actinomycin, doxorubicin, and diazepam are more frequently implicated. A number of other drugs that induced autoimmune reactions are listed in Table 3.
2. Heavy metals, organometals: beryllium, nickel, chromium, lead, gold, methyl mercury, platinum, organic tin compounds, sodium arsenite and arsenate, and arsenic trioxide.
3. Pesticides: pyrethroids, chlordane, DDT, dieldrin, methylparathion, carbofuran, maneb, hexachlorobenzene (HCB), carbaryl, 2,4-D, paraquat, and diquat.
4. Halogenated hydrocarbons: TCDD, PCB, polybrominated biphenyls (PBB), trichloroethylene, chloroform, pentachlorophenol, perfluorooctanoic acid (PFOA), and perfluorooctanesulfonate (PFOS).
5. Miscellaneous compounds: aflatoxins, benzo[*a*]pyrene, methylcholanthrene, diethylstilbestrol, 2-methoxyethanol, benzene, corticosteroids, deoxynivalenol, TPA, ochratoxin, penicillin, sulfites, substilisin, formaldehyde, and toluene diisocyanates.

The effects of toxicants on the immune system are complex; some suppress the cell-mediated immunity, others the humoral immunity, and still others may even stimulate certain immune functions (Table 4).

**Table 3** Examples of Drugs That Induce Autoimmune Syndromes

Autoimmune syndrome	Examples of drugs
Hepatitis	Erythromycin, floxacilin, halothane, methyl dopa
Hemolytic anemia	Amoxicillin, nomifensine, probenecid, tolbutamide
Lupus erythematosus	Hydralazine, procainamide
Nephritis	Captopril
Neutropenia	Methyl dopa, penicillamine
Oculo-cutaneous syndrome	Practolol
Thrombocytopenia	Acetaminophen, quinine

Sources: From Pohl et al. (1988) and Behan et al. (1976).

**Table 4** Effects of In Vivo Exposure to Chemicals on Immune Functions and Host Resistance

Parameters	DES	BaP	TPA
Resistance to [A8] <i>Listeria</i> [A7] challenge	D	NE	I
Resistance to tumor challenge	D	NE	D
<i>Trichinella</i> expulsion	D	D	NE
Thymus weight	D	NE	D
Delayed hypersensitivity	D	NE	NE
Lymphocyte responses <sup>a</sup>	D	D <sup>b</sup>	D
T-cell quantification	D	–	D
Spontaneous lymphocyte cytotoxicity	NE	NE	D
Antibody plaque response	D	D	D
Immunoglobulins, M, G, and A levels	NE	NE	D
Macrophage phagocytosis	I	NE	I
Macrophage cytotaxis	I	NE	I
RES clearance time	I	NE	I
Bone marrow cellularity <sup>c</sup>	D	D	NE

<sup>a</sup>Lymphocyte responses to phytohemagglutinin, concanavalin A, lipopolysaccharide, and mixed lymphocyte culture.

<sup>b</sup>Decreased, except the response to mixed lymphocyte culture.

<sup>c</sup>Colony-forming units multipotent cells and granulocyte/macrophage progenitors.

*Abbreviations:* DES, diethylstilbestrol; BaP benzo[*a*]pyrene; TPA, 12-*o*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-*o*-acetate; D, decreased; I, increased; NE, no effect; –, not tested.

*Source:* From Dean et al. (1982).

## Effects on Immune Functions

The function of the immune system is, as noted above, to protect the host against foreign organisms (viruses, bacteria, etc.), “foreign” cells (tumors), and other foreign substances. When the system functions properly, the foreign agents are eliminated promptly and efficiently. However, with certain agents, in some individuals, the immune system may respond in adverse manners. These may manifest as (1) immunosuppression and immunodeficiency, (2) hypersensitivity and allergy, and (3) autoimmunity. These are outlined below.

### Hypersensitivity and Allergy

There are four types of such reactions. With Type I, the reactions are immediate (usually within 15 minutes), resulting from a second or subsequent exposure to an antigen. The first exposure to that antigen induces the production of IgE antibodies. Subsequent exposure to the same antigen triggers the release of existing histamine, heparin, serotonin, prostaglandins, chemokines, etc. These substances induce a variety of clinical manifestations, such as asthma, rhinitis, urticaria, and anaphylaxis. Allergenic agents are diverse in nature. Notable

examples are metals (nickel, beryllium, platinum compounds), therapeutic agents (penicillin), food additives (sulfites, MSG, tartrazine, benzoates), food (chocolate, peanuts), pesticides (pyrethrum), and industrial chemicals such as toluene diisocyanate (TDI).

Type II and Type III hypersensitivity reactions are less common. Type II is characterized by cytolysis through IgG and/or IgM. The targets are usually erythrocytes, leucocytes, platelets, and their progenitors. The result of the cytolysis is hemolytic anemia, leucopenia, or thrombocytopenia. The offending agents include gold salts, chlorpromazine, phenytoin, sulfonamides, and TDI. Type III, also known as Arthus reactions, are mediated mainly by IgG. The antigen–antibody complexes are deposited in the vascular endothelium. Depending on the site, the damaged blood vessels may produce lupus erythematosus (e.g., procainamide) and glomerular nephritis (e.g., gold).

Type IV is a delayed hypersensitivity reaction. The latent period is usually between 12 and 48 hours. The reaction is mediated by T cells (rather than antibodies) and characterized by perivascular infiltration of monocytes, lymphocytes, and lymphoblasts (resulting from local transformation of lymphocytes). Clinically, this is seen with contact dermatitis and granulomatous reactions. A commonly encountered hypersensitivity inducer is nickel, which also induces immediate immune reaction. Others include beryllium, chromium, formaldehyde, thimerosal (a mercurial compound widely used as a vaccine), and TDI.

### Autoimmunity

With autoimmune diseases, the immune system produces antibodies to endogenous antigens, thus damaging normal tissues. Hemolytic anemia is an example of such disorders with phagocytosis of antibody-sensitized erythrocytes leading to hemolysis and anemia. Certain chemicals and metals have been reported to induce such diseases. For example, the pesticide dieldrin was found to produce hemolytic anemia. Exposure to gold and mercury has been associated with a type of glomerular nephritis that is considered an autoimmune disease (Dean et al., 1982). Trichloroethene, an industrial solvent, was shown to induce an autoimmune disorder resembling systemic lupus erythematosus (Wang et al., 2007).

In addition, a number of drugs are known to exert toxicity through their effects on the cellular or humoral immunity, inducing autoimmune diseases. Clinically these conditions manifest as hepatitis, nephritis, hemolytic anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, etc. (see also Chaps. 12–15). Table 3 is a compilation of such drugs.

The mode of action of these drugs appears to be mediated through covalent binding of the drug or its metabolite to tissue macromolecules. The target specificity may be related to differences in tissue distribution of the conjugates. In general, the incidence of these side effects is low. The low incidence might be due to complex genetic makeup, which determines the levels of activating and detoxicating enzymes (Pohl et al., 1988; Park and Kiteringham, 1990).

### Immunosuppression and Immunodeficiencies

Many immunotoxicants suppress immune functions (Bondy and Pestka, 2000). An extensively studied immunotoxicant is TCDD (2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin). Its effect on the immune system is one of the most sensitive targets for toxicity. It suppresses all the specific immune functions tested, while sparing the nonspecific functions, such as the NK-cell activity and macrophage functions. Its immunotoxicity is apparently mediated through binding to the *Ah* receptors on lymphoid cells (Luster et al., 1989).

Other immunosuppressants have more restricted activities. For example, antineoplastic drugs such as cyclosporin adversely affect B cells; T cells that have undergone antigenic differentiation may also be affected. Metals such as lead and mercury impair both humoral and cell-mediated host resistance (Luebke et al. 2006). In addition, gold may also induce glomerular nephritis through an autoimmune mechanism resulting in deposits in the glomeruli. Nickel may suppress immune functions through a variety of mechanisms; however, its major clinical effect is hypersensitivity. Organochlorine pesticides impair immune functions mainly in neonatal animals (Loose, 1982). Carbaryl depresses antibody response and phagocytosis by granulocytes. Corticosteroids depress immune functions as well as inflammatory responses.

### IMMUNOTOXICITIES

As noted above, the immune system is composed of a variety of cellular and humoral components and has numerous activities. An immunotoxicant can affect any one or more of these components and activities.

#### Immunocompetence Tests in Intact Animals

These tests are designed to study the effects of chemicals on host resistance/susceptibility to bacterial, viral, and parasitic diseases as well as to bacterial endotoxins and tumor cells. In general, mice are used because of the large number of animals required.

The test chemical is given to the animals by an appropriate route, preferably mimicking the human exposure. Usually three dose groups and a control group are included in the test. The duration of the dosing is generally 14 or 90 days. After this pretreatment, the animals are given a suitable quantity of the challenging agent. The quantity of the agent is selected on the basis that 10% to 20% of the mortality or morbidity is induced in the control animals. Increased mortality or morbidity indicates decreased host resistance. A list of various infectious agents has been compiled by Bradley and Morahan (1982).

#### Cell-Mediated Immunity

This can be studied in intact animals or with cells *in vitro*. In the intact animals, usually mice, the commonly used procedure is to determine the *delayed*



*hypersensitivity* response to a specific antigen. The antigen, such as sheep erythrocytes or keyhole limpet hemocyanin, is injected into a footpad or an ear of the animal. Four days later, a challenging dose of the antigen is given at the sensitized site. The extent of the swelling or the amount of localized radioactivity from a radiolabeled substance, such as  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled human serum albumin or tritiated thymidine, is measured (Luster et al., 1982; Munson et al., 1982; Sanders et al., 1982).

In vitro tests are conducted on cells collected from animals pretreated with the test chemical. Such tests include lymphocyte proliferation and lymphocyte subpopulation. The *lymphocyte proliferation* assay is done by culturing, in the presence of mitogens, lymphocytes collected from the spleen of pretreated animals. Mitogens such as phytohemagglutinin and concanavalin A are capable of inducing proliferation of normal T lymphocytes, whereas lipopolysaccharides, such as the cell membrane of gram-negative bacteria, affect B lymphocytes. Immunosuppressive agents inhibit lymphocyte proliferation. The extent of proliferation can be determined by the incorporation of tritiated thymidine into DNA (Luster et al., 1982).

Lymphocytes, as noted above, consist of T cells, B cells, and null cells, and the T-cell population is composed of T-memory, T-helper, and T-killer cells. Techniques for their enumeration include the use of immunofluorescence, rosette formation, histochemistry, cell electrophoresis, cytolysis, and fluorescence-activated cell sorting (Norbury, 1982).

## Humoral Immunity

A commonly used procedure, the plaque assay, involves quantitative determination of plaque-forming cells (PFC) of the IgM class: four days after the mouse has been sensitized to an antigen (e.g., sheep erythrocytes), the spleen is removed and a cell suspension is made. A quantity of the antigen, along with a suitable complement, is added to the suspension. The mixture is then spread on a slide and the number of plaques is counted. This represents the primary humoral immune response. To determine the secondary immune response, the mouse is given on day 10 a second dose of the antigen. On day 15 the spleen is removed and the above procedure is repeated with an additional step of incubation with rabbit anti-mouse IgG to develop the IgG-producing plaques. Reduced plaques indicate immunosuppression (Spyker-Cranmer et al., 1982). Instead of sheep erythrocytes, which are T-dependent antigens, lipopolysaccharides, which are T-independent antigens, may be used.

The levels of various immunoglobulins (IgG, IgM, IgA) in the serum may be directly measured. The techniques for their measurement have been reviewed by Davis and Ho (1976). The number of B cells in the spleen also provides information on the status of humoral immunity (Dean et al., 1982). The procedures and advantages of the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) in testing chemicals for immunotoxicity have been elaborated by Vos et al. (1982).

## Macrophage and Bone Marrow

The functions of macrophages can be tested in a number of ways: (1) the number of resident peritoneal cells, (2) phagocytosis, (3) lysosomal enzymes, (4) cytostasis of tumor target cells, and (5) reticuloendothelial system uptake of  $^{132}\text{I}$ -triolein. Parameters of bone marrow activity include (1) cellularity, (2) colony-forming units of pluripotent cells, (3) colony-forming units of granulocyte/macrophage progenitors, and (4) iron incorporation in the bone marrow and spleen (Dean et al., 1982).

## Others

A variety of pathotoxicologic data are also useful indicators of immune function—(1) hematology profile: erythrocyte count, leukocyte count, differential cell count; (2) serum proteins: albumin, globulin, albumin/globulin ratio; (3) weights: body, spleen, thymus, and adrenals; and (4) histology: thymus, adrenal, lung, kidney, heart, spleen, and cellularity of spleen and bone marrow. For example, thymic atrophy appears to be a very sensitive indicator of immunotoxicity. A paucity of lymphoid follicles and germinal centers in the spleen is indicative of B-cell deficiency, whereas T-cell deficiency is characterized by lymphoid hypoplasia in the paracortical areas (Dean et al., 1982).

## REFERENCES

- Behan PO, Behan WMH, Zacharias FJ, et al. (1976). Immunological abnormalities in patients who had the oculomucocutaneous syndrome associated with prochlorperazine therapy. *Lancet* ii, 984–987.
- Bondy GS, Pestka JJ. (2000) Immunomodulation by fungal toxins. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 109–143.
- Bradley SG, Morahan PS (1982). Approaches to assessing host resistance. *Environ Health Persp* 43, 65–71.
- Burns LA, Meade BJ, Munson AE (1996). Toxic responses of the immune system. In: Klaassen CD, ed. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 335–402.
- Davis NC, Ho M (1976). Quantitation of immunoglobulins. In: Rose NR, Friedman H, eds. *Manual of Clinical Immunology*. Washington, D.C.: American Society of Microbiology.
- Dean JH, Luster MI, Boorman GA, et al. (1982). Procedure available to examine the immunotoxicity of chemicals and drugs. *Pharmacol Rev* 34, 137–148.
- Loose LD (1982). Macrophage induction of T-suppressor cells in pesticide-exposed and protozoan-infected mice. *Environ Health Persp* 43, 89–97.
- Luster MI, Ackermann MF, Germolec DR, et al. (1989). Perturbations of the immune system by xenobiotics. *Environ Health Persp* 81, 157–162.
- Luster MI, Dean JH, Boorman GA (1982). Cell-mediated immunity and its application in toxicology. *Environ Health Persp* 43, 31–36.
- Luebke RW, Chen DH, Dietert R, et al. (2006). The comparative immunotoxicity of five selected compounds following developmental or adult exposure. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 9, 1–26.

- Munson AE, Sanders VM, Douglas KA, et al. (1982). In vivo assessment of immunotoxicity. *Environ Health Persp* 43, 41–52.
- Norbury KC (1982). Immunotoxicology in the pharmaceutical industry. *Environ Health Persp* 43, 53–59.
- Park BK, Kiteringham N (1990). Drug–protein conjugation and its immunological consequences. *Drug Metab Rev* 22, 87–144.
- Pohl LR, Satoh H, Christ DD, et al. (1988). The immunologic and metabolic basis of drug hypersensitivities. *Annu Rev Pharmacol* 28, 367–387.
- Ruddle NH (1994). Tumor necrosis factor (TNF $\alpha$ ) and lymphotoxin (TNF $\beta$ ). *Curr Opin Immunol* 4, 327–332.
- Sanders VM, Tucker AN, White, Jr. KL, et al. (1982). Humoral and cell-mediated immune status in mice exposed to trichloroethylene in the drinking water. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 62, 358–368.
- Spyker-Cranmer JM, Barnett JB, Avery DL, et al. (1982). Immunoteratology of chlordane: Cell-mediated and humoral immune responses in adult mice exposed in utero. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 62, 402–408.
- Vos JG, Krajnac EI, Beekhof P (1982). Use of the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) in immunotoxicity testing. *Environ Health Persp* 43, 115–121.
- Wang G, Ansari GAS, Khan MF (2007). Involvement of lipid peroxidation-derived aldehyde–protein adducts in autoimmunity mediated by trichloroethene. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 1977–1985.

## **FURTHER READING**

- Descates J (1999). *An Introduction to Immunotoxicology*. Philadelphia, PA: Taylor & Francis.
- WHO (1996). *Principles and methods for assessing direct immunotoxicity associated with exposure to chemicals*. *Environ Health Criteria* 180. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.



# Respiratory System Inhalation Toxicology

## CONTENTS

Introduction	177
Structure	178
Functions	178
Defense Mechanisms	178
Toxicants and Their Effects	178
Systemic Effects	179
Pulmonary Effects	179
Local Irritation	179
Cellular Damage and Edema	179
Fibrosis (Pneumoconiosis)	180
Allergic Response	181
Lung Cancer	181
Effects on Upper Respiratory Tract	182
Effects After Other Routes of Exposure	182
References	183
Appendix 1 Site of Action and Pulmonary Disease Produced by Selected Occupationally Inhaled Toxicants	184
Appendix 2 Mechanisms Underlying the Oxidative Stress Induced by Cigarette Smoke	186

## INTRODUCTION

With industrialization, the respiratory system of humans is increasingly exposed to airborne toxicants. Human health effects and a number of testing procedures are briefly described in this chapter.

## Structure

The respiratory tract is a complex system, both in structure and function. It consists of the nasopharynx, the tracheal and bronchial tract, and the pulmonary acini, which are composed of respiratory bronchioles, alveolar ducts, and alveoli. The nasopharynx serves to remove large particles from the inhaled air, add moisture, and moderate the temperature. The tracheal and bronchial tract serves as the conducting airway to the alveoli.

## Functions

The pulmonary acini are the sites where oxygen and carbon dioxide are exchanged between the blood and the air, and are the main sites of absorption of toxicants that exist in the form of gases and vapors. The alveoli are lined with epithelial cells, especially those of type I. These cells have a very thin cytoplasm (0.1–0.2  $\mu\text{m}$ ), but each covers a relatively large surface (2290  $\mu\text{m}^2$ ). The cuboidal (63  $\mu\text{m}^2$ ) type II cells can undergo mitosis and, in time, mature to type I cells. In addition, there are endothelial cells, macrophages, and fibroblasts.

Apart from its vital function in the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide, the respiratory system also regulates the blood concentrations of angiotensin, biogenic amines, and prostaglandins. Furthermore, it can excrete toxicants that have been absorbed from the lungs or via other routes. Although liver is the primary site, pulmonary tissue possesses cytochrome P-450 (CYP-450) enzymes involved in xenobiotic detoxication.

## Defense Mechanisms

The trachea and bronchi are lined with ciliated epithelium and covered with a thin layer of mucus secreted by certain cells in the epithelial lining. This lining, with the cilia and mucus, can move particles deposited on the surface up to the mouth. The particle-containing mucus can then be eliminated from the respiratory tract by spitting or swallowing.

The respiratory tract has various CYP-450 enzyme systems, which may detoxify certain toxicants. However, many toxicants may be activated by these enzyme systems. They are concentrated in the Clara cells and, to a lesser extent, in the type II cells (Dormans and Van Bree, 1995). The Clara cells are located at the boundary where alveolar ducts branch from bronchioles.

Apart from clearance and detoxication, the respiratory tract also possesses mechanisms to phagocytize and engulf toxicants, notably solid particles. The main effector is the macrophage. Similar to the enzyme systems, the macrophage may also aggravate the toxic effects (Brain, 1992).

## TOXICANTS AND THEIR EFFECTS

Many toxicants are known to adversely affect the respiratory system in humans and animals. Those that pose serious occupational hazards are listed in Appendix 1.

Inhalable toxicants exist in the form of gases, vapors, liquid droplets, and solid particulate matters. Gases and vapors are readily absorbed. The droplets and particulate matters may also be absorbed. However, they vary in size, and their sizes have marked effects on the extent of absorption. In general, large particles ( $>10\ \mu\text{m}$ ) do not enter the respiratory tract. Very small particles ( $<0.01\ \mu\text{m}$ ) are likely to be exhaled. The optimal size of particle for retention is between 1 and  $3\ \mu\text{m}$  (see also Chap. 2).

A toxicant may exert systemic effects after its absorption from the respiratory tract and distribution to other tissues, or it may induce local effects on the respiratory tract, or both. A toxicant may also affect the respiratory tract after exposure from other routes.

### Systemic Effects

Many chemicals can be absorbed from the inspired air. After absorption, they are carried by the circulating blood to various parts of the body and exert their effects, such as general anesthesia.

Toxic gases can be absorbed from various parts of the respiratory tract including the nasopharynx. The main site of absorption, however, is the alveoli, and the principle mechanism of absorption is simple diffusion. In addition, liquid aerosols and solid particulate matter can also be absorbed via different mechanisms. Further details regarding the uptake of toxicants are given in Chapter 2.

### Pulmonary Effects

A variety of pulmonary effects have been observed. These are briefly described under five categories. Additional details and references have been provided by Gordon and Amdur (1994).

#### Local Irritation

Ammonia and chlorine are classic examples of irritant gases. They produce bronchial constriction and edema, which result in dyspnea, but chronic effects are rare. Arsenicals induce irritation on acute exposure; after prolonged exposure they might induce development of lung cancer. Similarly, chronic exposure to cigarette smoke results in irritation in lung airways and ultimately in lung cancer. Residing in highly industrialized cities or in the vicinity of traffic has been shown to produce lung dysfunction and subsequently development of diseases such as asthma. Dust generated during storms was reported to produce lung irritation and increase the frequency of hospital visits with patients complaining of respiratory distress.

#### Cellular Damage and Edema

Toxic *gases*, such as ozone and oxides of nitrogen, produce cellular damage, perhaps through generation of reactive oxygen species followed by peroxidation of cellular membranes. Edema ensues as a result of the increased permeability

through the damaged membrane. The edematous fluid, however, accumulates in the airway instead of in the interstitial space, as is the case with other tissues. Such effects are also observed after inhalation of toxicants that exist in small particles, such as diesel exhaust, nickel carbonyl, and certain beryllium and boron compounds.

Cellular damage usually affects type I cells in the alveoli. Death of these cells leads to proliferation of type II cells, which then flatten and become type I cells. However, more extensive damage will result in the exudation of fibrin-rich protein, neutrophils, and debris into the alveoli. These eventually become fibrous tissue.

Certain organic *solvents*, such as perchloroethylene and xylene, are rapidly absorbed after inhalation and distributed to various parts of the body including the liver, which is the major site of biotransformation. Part of the solvent reenters the lung through circulation and may form reactive metabolites, leading to covalent binding with macromolecules there. This process in turn produces pulmonary cellular damage and edema. It is also noteworthy that the lung serves as a conduit for chemicals into the circulation followed by activation in other tissues and development of diseases in different organs. An example is benzene that enters via the lung, forms reactive intermediates in the liver, and these intermediates react with bone macromolecules subsequently resulting in leukemia.

*Ipomeanol* is a toxin produced by the mold *Fusarium solani*, grown on sweet potatoes. This toxin is interesting in that it produces necrosis of one type of cell only, namely, the Clara cells. These cells bioactivate the toxin to a reactive metabolite that binds to the macromolecules and produces cellular necrosis. This is followed by edema, congestion, and hemorrhage in the lungs. Death may ensue (Timbrell, 1991).

Glucans are polyglucose compounds that are constituents of fungi and bacteria that produce inflammatory lung diseases characterized by hypersensitivity and pneumonitis (Schuyler et al., 1998). Monocrotaline, a pyrrolizidine alkaloid, was reported to produce lung injury and pulmonary hypertension. In fact, monocrotaline is used as a model to study causes of pulmonary hypertension in humans (Schultze and Roth, 1998).

#### Fibrosis (Pneumoconiosis)

Pulmonary fibrosis is a serious, debilitating disease. *Silicosis*, with a history that goes back for thousands of years, is produced by crystalline forms of silica (silicon dioxide). Of the crystalline forms, quartz is the most stable. On heating, such as in volcanic eruption and mining, quartz may become tridymite or cristobalite. Both of these forms are more fibrogenic than quartz. The toxic effect stems from the rupture of the lysosomal membrane in a macrophage. The released lysosomal enzymes digest the macrophage, and this process, in turn, releases the silica from the lysed macrophage. This is a continuous process that is repeated. It was suggested that the damaged macrophage releases factors that stimulate the fibroblasts and the formation of collagen (Brain, 1980). Other cells, such as fibroblasts and epithelial



cells, in response to macrophage inflammatory proteins, may also play a role in the fibrotic changes (Driscoll et al., 1993). Kuhn et al. (1995) suggest that cytokine is involved in the fibrosis and its increase precedes deterioration of pulmonary function, hence may serve as a biomarker for initiating intervention in exposed workers.

Another major cause of pulmonary fibrosis is *asbestos*. Asbestos refers to a large number of fibrous hydrated silicates of magnesium, calcium, and others. In addition, some of these mineral fibers, such as the blue asbestos (crocidolites), produce bronchogenic carcinoma and mesothelioma. The white variety (chrysotile) appears to have no effect on the incidence of mesothelioma. The potency of asbestos seems related to the chemical and physical properties. Fibers of 5  $\mu\text{m}$  in length and 0.3  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter appear to be most potent. Various types of man-made refractory ceramic fibers have been used in place of asbestos. In the rat, they also induce fibrosis and carcinoma, but appear to be less carcinogenic than asbestos (Mast et al., 1995).

Other fibrogenic substances include coal dust, kaolin, talc, aluminum, beryllium, and carbides of tungsten, titanium, and tantalum (Appendix 1).

*Emphysema* is also a debilitating disease. It may be induced by cigarette smoking or exposure to aluminum, cadmium oxide, or oxides of nitrogen, ozone, and others. It was suggested that the elastic fibers surrounding and supporting the alveoli and bronchi may be damaged by the elastase released from polymorphonuclear (PMN) granulocytes under certain conditions (Spitznagel et al., 1980).

### Allergic Response

This type of response is usually induced by pollens, spores of molds, bacterial contaminants, cotton dust, and so forth. Detergents containing enzymes derived from *Bacillus subtilis* were reported to produce asthma among workers. A common chemical used in plastic industry, toluene diisocyanate (TDI), as other isocyanates, also produces hypersensitivity reactions. It is probable that this reactive chemical binds with proteins in the blood or lungs to form antigen, which stimulates antibody formation. The major response is bronchoconstriction triggered by the reaction between the antigens and circulating or fixed antibodies (Karol and Jin, 1991). Long-term exposure may result in other pulmonary effects such as chronic bronchitis and fibrosis.

### Lung Cancer

Cigarette smoke contains a number of carcinogens, cocarcinogens, and irritants (Hoffmann and Hoffmann, 1997). These substances initiate and promote carcinogenesis. Furthermore, many other substances may induce oxidative stress, thereby adversely affecting health (Appendix 2). Some details of this topic have been outlined by Halliwell and Cross (1994). It is well established that cigarette smoking is the leading cause of lung cancer in many countries and that it greatly increases the incidence of lung cancers among asbestos workers (Chap. 5). Other causes of lung cancer include arsenic, chromates, nickel, uranium, and coke oven emissions.

Asbestos has been well known for its carcinogenicity in the respiratory tract in humans and animals. Man-made refractory ceramic fibers appear to be carcinogenic also, but only at maximum tolerated doses. Much investigation is in progress to determine their health hazards, if any, in humans. One important approach is to assess their persistence, which is a determinant of their toxicity (Bignon et al., 1994).

### Effects on Upper Respiratory Tract

Large airborne particles in the inhaled air are mainly deposited in the nasal passages. They may produce hyperemia, squamous- or transitional-cell metaplasia, hyperplasia, ulceration, and, in certain cases, carcinoma. For example, nickel subsulfide, nickel oxide, and nickel usually exist in large particles during their production and mining; therefore, their effects are mainly on the nasal passage (NAS, 1975). Inhalation of diesel exhaust particles was found to produce immediate nasal hyperresponsiveness, antioxidant responses, marked epithelial inflammation, and specific humoral responses (Nikasinovic et al., 2004). The larynx is also a site of chemical carcinogenesis, for example, with asbestos and chromium. Inhalation of gases and vapors such as sulfur dioxide and toluene may produce irritation of trachea and bronchi. Other toxic effects include deciliation, goblet-cell hyperplasia, and squamous metaplasia.

### Effects After Other Routes of Exposure

*Paraquat*, a herbicide, produces lung damage not only after exposure by inhalation but also after ingestion (Clark et al., 1966). Its storage in the lungs and its inherent toxicity are apparently the reasons for its pulmonary effects after noninhalation routes. In contrast, a closely related herbicide, diquat, although also toxic to cultured lung cells, is not toxic to the lungs either after inhalation or after ingestion. It is interesting that diquat is not retained by the lungs.

A number of drugs are known to induce pulmonary fibrosis in humans. These include bleomycin, busulfan, cyclophosphamide, gold salts, melphalan, methotrexate, and mitomycin. In these cases, there is an increase in interstitial collagen and in the number of type II cells. Methotrexate and streptomycin were found to induce pulmonary eosinophilia. Phenylbutazone and oxyphenylbutazone may produce pulmonary edema.

In addition, a number of amphiphilic drugs, such as chlorphentermine, chloroquine, and triparanol, are known to interact with the phospholipids in certain cells to form myeloid bodies and pulmonary foam cells in humans and animals. These bodies and cells were suggested to lead to alterations in cell activities and later to impairment of respiratory functions (Hruban, 1984). However, there is no evidence that drug-induced pulmonary phospholipidosis results in any functional changes in lung activity. It would seem that this is a morphological alteration but not a functional disturbance.

## REFERENCES

- Bignon J, Saracci R, Touray JC (1994). Biopersistence of respirable synthetic fibers and minerals. *Environ Health Persp* 102(suppl 5).
- Brain JD (1980). Macrophage damage in relation to the pathogenesis of lung diseases. *Environ Health Persp* 35, 21–28.
- Brain JD (1992). Mechanisms, measurement and significance of lung macrophage function. *Environ Health Persp* 97, 5–10.
- Clark DG, McElligott TF, Hurst EW (1966). The toxicity of paraquat. *Br J Ind Med* 23, 126–132.
- Dormans JAMA, Van Bree L (1995). Function and response of type II cells to inhaled toxicants. *Inhal Toxicol* 7, 319–342.
- Driscoll KE, Hassenbein DG, Carter J, et al. (1993). Macrophage inflammatory proteins 1 and 2: Expression by rat alveolar macrophages, fibroblasts, and epithelial cells and in rat lung after minimal dust exposure. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 8, 311–318.
- Gordon T, Amdur MO (1994). Responses of the respiratory system to toxic agents. In: Amdur MO, Doull J, Klaassen CD, eds. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology: The Basic Science of Poisons*, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 443–462.
- Halliwell B, Cross CE (1994). Oxygen-derived species: Their relation to human disease and environmental stress. *Environ Health Persp* 102(suppl 10), 5–12.
- Hoffmann D, Hoffmann I (1997). The changing cigarette, 1950–1995. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 50, 307–364.
- Hruban Z (1984). Pulmonary and generalized lysosomal storage induced by amphiphilic drugs. *Environ Health Persp* 55, 53–76.
- Karol MH, Jin R (1991). Mechanism of immunotoxicity to isocyanates. *Chem Res Toxicol* 4, 503–509.
- Kuhn DC, Stauffer JL, Gaydos LJ, et al. (1995). Inflammatory and fibrotic mediator release by alveoli macrophages from coal miners. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 45, 9–21.
- Mast RW, McConnell EE, Anderson R, et al. (1995). Studies on the chronic toxicity (inhalation) of four types of refractory ceramic fiber in male Fischer 344 rats. *Inhal Toxicol* 7, 425–467.
- National Academy of Sciences (NAS) (1975). *Nickel*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.
- Nikasinovic L, Momas I, Just J (2004). A review of experimental studies on diesel exhaust particles and nasal epithelium alterations. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7(2), 81–104.
- Schultze AE, Roth RA (1998). Chronic pulmonary hypertension-The monocrotaline model and involvement of the hemostatic system. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 271–346.
- Schuyler M, Gott K, Cherne A (1998). Effect of glucan on murine lungs. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 53, 493–505.
- Spitznagel JK, Moderzakowski MC, Pryzwansky KB, et al. (1980) Neutral proteases of human polymorphonuclear granulocytes: Putative mediators of pulmonary damage. *Environ Health Persp* 35, 29–38.
- Timbrell JA (1991). *Principles of Biochemical Toxicology*. London, U.K.: Taylor & Francis.

**Appendix 1** Site of Action and Pulmonary Disease Produced by Selected  
Occupationally Inhaled Toxicants

Toxicant	Common name of disease	Acute effect	Chronic effect
Aluminum dust	Aluminosis	Cough, shortness of breath	Interstitial fibrosis
Aluminum abrasives	Shaver's disease, corundum smelter's lung, bauxite lung	Alveolar edema	Fibrotic thickening of alveolar walls, interstitial fibrosis, and emphysema
Ammonia		Immediate upper and lower respiratory tract irritation, edema	Chronic bronchitis
Arsenic		Bronchitis	Lung cancer, bronchitis, laryngitis
Asbestos	Asbestosis		Pulmonary fibrosis, pleural calcification, lung cancer, pleural mesothelioma
Beryllium	Berylliosis	Edema, pneumonia	Pulmonary fibrosis, progressive dyspnea, interstitial granulomatosis, cor pulmonale
Cadmium oxide		Cough, pneumonia	Emphysema, cor pulmonale
Carbides of tungsten, titanium, tantalum	Hard metal disease	Hyperplasia and metaplasia of bronchial epithelium	Fibrosis, peribronchial and perivascular fibrosis
Chlorine		Cough, hemoptysis, dyspnea, tracheo-bronchitis, broncho-pneumonia	
Chromium (VI)		Nasal irritation, bronchitis	Lung tumors and cancers
Coal dust Coke oven emissions	Pneumoconiosis		Pulmonary fibrosis Tracheobronchial cancers
Cotton dust	Byssinosis	Tightness in chest, wheezing, dyspnea	Reduced pulmonary function, chronic bronchitis

(Continued)

## Appendix 1 (Continued)

Toxicant	Common name of disease	Acute effect	Chronic effect
Hydrogen fluoride		Respiratory irritation, hemorrhagic pulmonary edema	
Iron oxides	Siderotic lung disease Silver finisher's lung  Hematite miner's lung Arc welder's lung	Cough	Subpleural and perivascular aggregations of macrophages Diffuse fibrosis-like pneumoconiosis Bronchitis
Isocyanates		Cough, dyspnea	Asthma, reduced pulmonary function
Kaolin	Kaolinosis		Pulmonary fibrosis
Nickel		Pulmonary edema, delayed by 2 days (NiCO)	Squamous-cell carcinoma of nasal cavity and lung
Oxides of nitrogen		Pulmonary congestion and edema	Emphysema
Ozone		Pulmonary edema	Emphysema
Phosgene		Edema	Bronchitis
Perchloroethylene		Pulmonary edema	
Silica	Silicosis, pneumoconiosis		Pulmonary fibrosis
Sulfur dioxide		Bronchoconstriction, cough, tightness in chest	
Talc	Talcosis		Pulmonary fibrosis
Tin	Stanosis		Widespread mottling of X-ray without clinical signs
Vanadium		Upper airway irritation and mucus production	Chronic bronchitis

Source: From Gordon and Amdur (1994).

## Appendix 2 Mechanisms Underlying the Oxidative Stress Induced by Cigarette Smoke

---

1. Smoke contains many free radicals, especially peroxy radicals that might attack biological molecules and deplete antioxidants, such as vitamin C and  $\alpha$ -tocopherol.
  2. Smoke contains oxides of nitrogen, including the unpleasant nitrogen dioxide ( $\text{NO}_2^-$ ).
  3. The tar phase of smoke contains hydroquinones. These are lipid-soluble and can redox-cycle to form  $\text{O}_2^-$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . They can enter cells and may even reach the nucleus to cause oxidative DNA damage. Some hydroquinones may release iron from the iron-storage protein ferritin in lung cells and respiratory tract lining fluids.
  4. Smoking may irritate lung macrophages, activating them to make  $\text{O}_2^-$ .\*
  5. Smokers' lungs contain more neutrophils than the lungs of nonsmokers, and smoke might activate these cells to make  $\text{O}_2^-$ .\*
  6. Smokers often eat poorly and drink more alcohol than nonsmokers and have a low intake of nutrient antioxidants.
- 

Source: Halliwell and Cross (1994).

\*The effects of cigarette smoke on phagocytes are dose-related. Low levels may stimulate them, but high levels may poison them and so depress their activity.

## Toxicology of the Liver

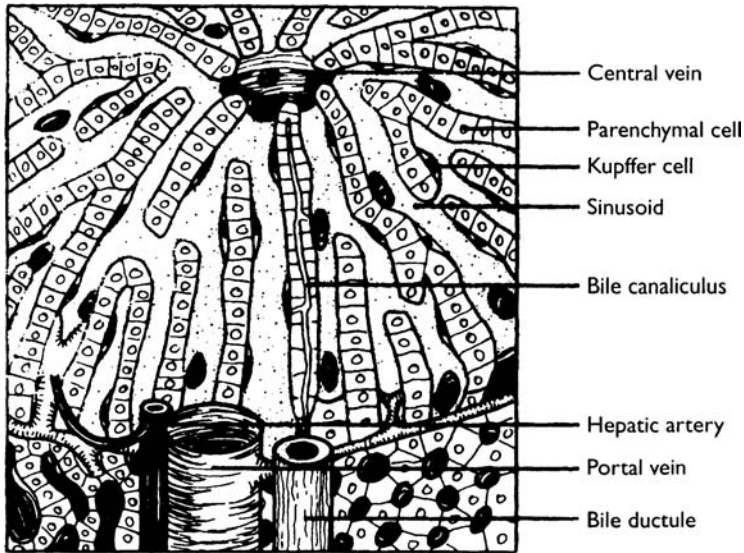
### CONTENTS

General Considerations	187
Types of Liver Injury	189
Fatty Liver (Steatosis)	189
Liver Necrosis	190
Cholestasis	191
Cirrhosis	191
Viral-Like Hepatitis	192
Carcinogenesis	192
Hepatotoxicants	193
Clinical Biochemical Tests	193
Other Tests	194
References	194
Appendix 1 Examples of Hepatotoxic Agents and Associated Liver Injury	197

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The liver is the largest and metabolically the most complex organ in the body. It is involved in the metabolism of nutrients as well as most drugs and toxicants. The latter type of substances can usually be detoxified, but many of them can be bioactivated and become more toxic.

Hepatocytes (hepatic parenchymal cells) comprise the bulk of the organ. They are responsible for the liver's central role in metabolism. These cells lie between the blood-filled sinusoids and the biliary passages. Kupffer cells line the hepatic sinusoids and constitute an important part of the reticuloendothelial



**Figure 1** Schematic structure of the liver indicating the relationship between parenchymal cells and vascular and ductal systems. *Source:* Klaassen and Watkins (1984).

system of the body. The blood is supplied through the portal vein and hepatic artery, and it is drained through the central veins and then the hepatic vein into the vena cava. The biliary passages begin as tiny bile canaliculi formed by adjacent parenchymal cells. The canaliculi coalesce into ductules, interlobular bile ducts, and larger hepatic ducts (Fig. 1). The main hepatic duct joins the cystic duct from the gallbladder to form the common bile duct, which drains into the duodenum.

The toxicology of liver is complicated by the variety of liver injuries and by the different mechanisms through which the injuries are induced. The types of injury, the underlying mechanisms, and the morphologic and biochemical changes are described and discussed.

The liver is often the target organ for a number of reasons. Most toxicants enter the body via the gastrointestinal tract, and after absorption they are carried by the hepatic portal vein to the liver. The liver has a high concentration of binding sites. It also has a high concentration of xenobiotic-metabolizing enzymes (mainly cytochrome P-450), which render most toxicants less toxic and more water-soluble, and thus more readily excretable. But in some cases the toxicants are activated to be capable of inducing lesions (see also Chap. 3). The fact that hepatic lesions are often centrilobular has been attributed to the higher concentration of cytochrome P-450 there. In addition, the relatively lower concentration of glutathione there, compared to that in other parts of the liver, may also play a role (Smith et al., 1979).



**Table 1** Effects of Toxicants on Subcellular Organelles in Liver Cells

Organelle	Effect	Examples of toxicants
Plasma membrane	Enzyme leakage	Acetaminophen, carbon tetrachloride, phalloidin
Nucleus	Neoplasia	Aflatoxin, beryllium, cycasin, dimethyl-nitrosamine, tannic acid
Mitochondria	Swelling	Carbon tetrachloride, cycasin, dimethyl-nitrosamine, diquat, ethionine, phosphorus
Lysosomes	Accumulation	Beryllium, carbon tetrachloride, ethionine, phosphorus
Peroxisomes	Proliferation	Clofibrate, trichloroethylene, high-fat diet
Endoplasmic reticulum	Degranulation; proliferation	Carbon tetrachloride, dimethyl-nitrosamine, ethionine, phosphorus
Cytoskeleton	Derangement	Cytochalasin B, phalloidin
Bile canaliculi	Dilatation	Lithocholate, taurocholate

Sources: From de la Iglesia et al. (1982), Stott (1988), and Plaa (1993).

## TYPES OF LIVER INJURY

Toxicants can induce a variety of toxic effects on different organelles in the cells in liver (as shown in Table 1), exhibiting different types of liver injury as described below. These liver injuries are mediated through a number of biochemical reactions, such as lipid peroxidation, covalent binding, inhibition of protein synthesis, disturbance of biliary production and/or flow, immunologic reaction, and perturbation of calcium homeostasis.

### Fatty Liver (Steatosis)

A fatty liver is one that contains more than 5% lipid by weight. The presence of an excess stainable fat in such liver is demonstrable histochemically. The lesion can be acute, such as that induced by ethionine, phosphorus, or tetracycline. Ethanol and methotrexate may produce either acute or chronic lesions. Some toxicants, such as tetracycline, produce many small fat droplets in a cell, whereas others, such as ethanol, induce large fat droplets, which displace the nucleus.

Although lipid accumulation in the liver is the common endpoint of these toxicants, the underlying mechanisms are varied. One of the mechanisms is an increased synthesis of triglyceride and the other lipid moieties. However, the most common mechanism is the impairment of the release of hepatic triglyceride to the plasma. Since hepatic triglyceride is secreted only when it is combined

with lipoprotein [forming very low density lipoprotein (VLDL)], accumulation of hepatic lipid can occur as a result of a number of mechanisms:

1. inhibition of the synthesis of the protein moiety of lipoprotein;
2. reduced conjugation of triglyceride with lipoproteins; and
3. loss of potassium from hepatocytes, resulting in an interference of transfer of the VLDL across the cell membrane (Plaa, 1993).

### Liver Necrosis

Liver necrosis involves the death of hepatocytes. The necrosis can be focal (central, mid-zonal, peripheral) or massive. It is usually an acute injury. A number of chemicals have been demonstrated or reported to produce liver necrosis. It is a serious toxic manifestation but is not necessarily critical because of the remarkable regenerating capacity of the liver.

Cell death occurs along with rupture of the plasma membrane. No ultra-structural changes of the membrane per se have been detected prior to its rupture. There are, however, a number of changes that precede cell death. Early morphologic changes include cytoplasmic edema, dilatation of endoplasmic reticulum, and disaggregation of polysomes. There is an accumulation of triglycerides as fat droplets in the cells. Late changes are progressive swelling of mitochondria with cristae disruption, cytoplasmic swelling, dissolution of organelles and nucleus, and rupture of plasma membrane (Bridges et al., 1983). Cyanobacterial blooms are known to produce a variety of toxins including microcystins, which subsequently attack the liver. Microcystins were reported to produce severe deformations such as plasma membrane bleb formation and loss of microvilli. In addition, microcystins produce severe hypoglycemia attributed to failure of hepatic gluconeogenesis (Zurawell et al., 2005).

The biochemical changes are complex, and various hepatotoxicants apparently act through different mechanisms. Carbon tetrachloride ( $\text{CCl}_4$ ) has been shown to act primarily through its reactive metabolite, the trichloromethyl radical  $\bullet\text{CCl}_3$  (Recknagel and Glende, 1973), which covalently binds with proteins and unsaturated lipids and induces lipid peroxidation. Subcellular membranes are rich in such lipids and are therefore susceptible (Table 1). Recknagel et al. (1982), however, suggested that microsomal lipid peroxidation might lead to a depression of microsomal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pump resulting in an early disturbance of liver cell  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  homeostasis, which might then induce cell death. In addition, Shah et al. (1979) suggested that the toxicity of  $\text{CCl}_4$  might be mediated through another metabolite, namely, phosgene. It is noteworthy that other drugs may act in a synergistic fashion. Chan et al. (2005) demonstrated that ketamine, an anesthetic, when administered to animals being given  $\text{CCl}_4$  as a model drug to study liver function shows that hepatotoxicity was more severe and occurred earlier (a synergistic response).

A number of chemically related compounds, such as chloroform, tetrachloroethane, and carbon tetrabromide, as well as phosphorus, appear to act in similar ways. Acetaminophen also induces liver necrosis but apparently not through

lipid peroxidation (Kamiyama et al., 1993). At low doses, its reactive metabolite conjugates with sulfate and glutathione. With increasing doses, the level of glutathione reduces, and the covalent binding of the chemical to the proteins rises, as shown in Figure 2 of chapter 3. Bromobenzene is also bioactivated in the liver. Its 3,4-epoxide covalently binds to proteins and lipids and produces necrosis (see also Chap. 3). Other examples include isoniazid and iproniazid, both of which undergo bioactivation and form metabolites that bind with macromolecules and produce necrosis (Mitchell et al., 1976).

Disturbance of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  homeostasis may also play an important role through an activation of molecular oxygen resulting in an oxidative stress, as discussed in chapter 4 (Thomas and Reed, 1989).

Other biochemical changes include depletion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), shifts of the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  balance between hepatocytes and blood, depletion of glutathione, damage to cytochrome P-450, and loss of NAD and NADP (Kulkarni and Hodgson, 1980).

### **Cholestasis**

This type of liver damage, usually acute, is less common than fatty liver and necrosis, and it is more difficult to induce in animals with the possible exception of the steroids. The cholestatic agents appear to act through several mechanisms. For example, ANIT ( $\alpha$ -naphthylisocyanate) can induce cholestasis, hyperbilirubinemia, and inhibition of microsomal mixed-function oxygenases. Reduction of biliary excretory activity of the canalicular membrane appears to be the predominant mechanism for cholestasis. Furthermore, ANIT seems to alter ductular cell permeability. Bailie et al. (1994) showed that platelets seem to contribute to ANIT-induced liver injury.

A number of anabolic and contraceptive steroids as well as taurocholate, chlorpromazine, and erythromycin lactobionate have been found to cause cholestasis and hyperbilirubinemia associated with canalicular bile plugs. Ethinyl estradiol and chlorpromazine seem to impair the permeability of the biliary tract, thus reducing bile salt-independent bile flow (Plaa and Priestly (1976); Plaa (1993).

### **Cirrhosis**

Cirrhosis is characterized by the presence of septae of collagen distributed throughout most of the liver. Separated by these fibrous sheaths, clusters of hepatocytes appear as nodules.

The pathogenesis is not fully understood, but in a majority of cases, cirrhosis seems to originate from single-cell necrosis associated with a deficiency in the repair mechanism. This condition then leads to fibroblastic activity and scar formation. Inadequate blood flow in the liver may be a contributing factor.

Several chemical carcinogens and long-term administration of  $\text{CCl}_4$  can induce cirrhosis in animals. The most important cause of human cirrhosis is chronic ingestion of alcoholic beverages. The mechanism is not fully understood,

but ethanol may damage mitochondria and increase local production of reactive oxygen species. These may lead to steatosis, necrosis, and cirrhosis. This pathologic condition can be induced in animals only with ethanol in combination with diets deficient in choline, proteins, methionine, vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, and folic acid. Because this type of nutritional deficiency is common in alcoholism, Hartroft (1975) suggested the nutritional deficiency as the primary cause. Lieber and DiCarli (1976) were able to induce cirrhosis in baboons with ethanol alone and claimed, therefore, that alcohol has direct hepatotoxicity.

### **Viral-Like Hepatitis**

A clinical syndrome indistinguishable from viral hepatitis has been known to be associated with various drugs. In general, they have the following characteristics (Plaa, 1993):

1. such liver injuries are not demonstrable in animals;
2. the effects in humans do not seem to be related to the dose;
3. the latent period varies greatly;
4. the toxicity is manifest in only a few susceptible individuals;
5. the histologic picture is more variable;
6. the patients usually show other signs of hypersensitivity and sometimes respond to a challenge dose; and
7. fever, rash, and eosinophilia are present in many cases.

The clinical picture may vary from patient to patient. For example, among those with halothane-induced hepatotoxicity, 50% of the patients had signs of typical immunologic reaction: fever, eosinophilia, prior exposure to this anesthetic. Others did not exhibit these signs, and the livers of fatal cases showed lesions similar to those induced by CCl<sub>4</sub> (Lewis and Zimmerman, 1989).

Halothane may induce a mild hepatotoxicity, which is reproducible in animals. In addition, it may act through an immune-mediated mechanism to produce the viral-like liver toxicity, which is more severe and delayed in onset (Hubbard et al., 1988).

### **Carcinogenesis**

Hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma are the most common types of primary malignant neoplasms of the liver. Others include angiosarcoma, glandular carcinoma, trabecular carcinoma, and undifferentiated liver cell carcinoma. The significance of adenoma, focal basophilic hyperplasia, and hyperplastic nodule is as yet uncertain, whereas bile duct hyperplasia is likely to be a physiologic response to toxic exposure (Newberne, 1982).

As discussed in chapter 7, a large number of toxicants are known to induce liver cancers in animals. However, the carcinogenicity of these chemicals in humans with respect to liver has not been well established (Wogan, 1976).

Dieldrin induces hepatocarcinogenesis via a nongenotoxic mechanism only in the mouse and not in the rat (Kamendulis et al., 2001). Although the precise mechanisms are not known, fumonisin B in addition to producing hepatotoxicity also induces hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma (Li et al., 2000). On the other hand, the role of vinyl chloride in inducing angiosarcoma in humans is beyond doubt.

## HEPATOTOXICANTS

Some of the liver injuries described above, namely, steatosis, necrosis, cirrhosis, and neoplasia have a number of common features. (1) These injuries are relatively easily produced in experimental animals. (2) Many toxicants can induce several types of such injuries. For example, steatosis, necrosis, and cirrhosis can result from exposure to  $\text{CCl}_4$  (and related chemicals such as chloroform), aflatoxins, and phosphorus. Aflatoxins and dioxins induce necrosis, cirrhosis, and neoplasm. Steatosis and cirrhosis are seen after exposure to ethanol, and bromobenzene is known to induce necrosis and cirrhosis. Recently, chloroform was shown to produce liver cell death by depletion of glutathione and an oxidative phase characterized by mitochondrial permeability transition and protein nitration (Burke et al., 2007).

Cholestasis is induced mainly by certain bile salts,  $\alpha$ -naphthylisocyanate, certain anabolic and contraceptive steroids, manganese, and a number of drugs. Some of these drugs and other substances are also known to induce viral-like hepatitis. For example, *p*-aminosalicylic acid, chlorpromazine, erythromycin, and phenytoin (diphenylhydantoin) appear to produce viral-like hepatitis through a type of hypersensitivity reaction. On the other hand, iproniazid, isoniazid, and hydrazine derivatives induce this effect perhaps through a metabolic abnormality.

Examples of the various types of hepatotoxicants are listed in Appendix 1.

## CLINICAL BIOCHEMICAL TESTS

A number of serum enzymes have been used as indicators of hepatic injuries. These enzymes are released to the blood from the cytosol and subcellular organelles. The serum level of alanine aminotransferase (ALT) is increased in reliable correlation with the severity of hepatic necrosis. It is therefore the choice test in liver necrosis. In addition, ornithine carbamoyl transferase (OCT) and sorbitol dehydrogenase (SDH) are more sensitive, but less specific, than ALT. They are therefore often used in conjunction with ALT when testing new toxicants. The enzyme levels in blood are often used as biomarkers among humans exposed to hepatotoxicants.

In cholestatic lesions, both ALT and alkaline phosphatase (AP) are greatly elevated. On the other hand, serum cholinesterase may be reduced in certain cases of liver diseases. For additional details, see Plaa and Charbonneau (1994).

## Other Tests

The liver is involved in the metabolism of carbohydrate, fat, and protein as well as in the formation of prothrombin and the excretion of bilirubin and certain foreign chemicals. It is also the major site of biotransformation of toxicants. Tests have thus been devised to determine these hepatic functions.

For example, bilirubin is excreted by the liver, hence its level in the blood is an index of liver function, but it is relatively insensitive. The rate of excretion of BSP is a more sensitive indicator of liver damage. Clinically, the prolongation of prothrombin time, after excluding vitamin K deficiency, has been used in detecting acute hepatic lesions. A chemical may either potentiate or inhibit the pharmacologic and toxicologic actions of another by stimulating the hepatic microsomal enzymes (see Chap. 5). Measurements of barbiturate-induced sleeping time and the duration of zoxazolamine-induced paralysis have been used as indications of hepatic effects.

In addition, a number of biochemical tests can be performed on the liver tissue itself:

1. level of triglycerides;
2. activity of glucose 6-phosphatase;
3. level of microsomal conjugated dienes, resulting from peroxidation of microsomal lipids;
4. covalent binding of reactive metabolites to tissue macromolecules;
5. arylation or alkylation of purine and pyrimidine components of DNA and RNA (carcinogenicity); and
6. arylation or alkylation of other macromolecules (necrosis?).

Because of the importance of lipid peroxidation in liver lesions, the extent of this reaction is often determined by using thiobarbituric acid (TBA). It combines with malonaldehyde, a degradation product of the lipid, to form a colored complex, which can be measured quantitatively.

## REFERENCES

- Bailie MB, Pearson JM, Lappin PB, et al. (1994). Platelets and  $\alpha$ -naphthylisothiocyanate-induced liver injury. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 129, 207–213.
- Bass NM (1996). Toxic and drug induced liver disease. In: Bennett JC, Plumm F, eds. *Cecil's Textbook of Medicine*. Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders, 772–776.
- Bridges JW, Benford DJ, Hubbard SA (1983). Mechanisms of toxic injury. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 407, 42–63.
- Burke AS, Redeker K, Kurten RC, et al. (2007). Mechanisms of chloroform-induced hepatotoxicity: Oxidative stress and mitochondrial permeability transition in freshly isolated mouse hepatocytes. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 1936–1945.
- Chan W-H, Sun W-Z, Ueng T-H (2005). Induction of rat hepatic cytochrome P450 by ketamine and its toxicological implications. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 68, 1581–1597.

- de la Iglesia F, Sturgess JM, Feuer G (1982). New approaches for assessment of hepatotoxicity by means of quantitative functional–morphological interrelationship. In: Plaa GL, Hewitt WR, eds. *Toxicology of the Liver*. New York, NY: Raven Press.
- Deng DJ, Yang SM, Li T, et al. (1999). Confirmation of *N*-(nitrosomethyl)urea as a nitrosourea derived by nitrosation of fish sauce. *Biomed Environ Sci* 12, 54–61.
- Hartroft WS (1975). On the etiology of alcoholic liver cirrhosis. In: Khanna JM, Israel Y, Kalant H, eds. *Alcoholic Liver Pathology*. Toronto, Canada: Addiction Research Foundation.
- Hubbard AK, Gandolfi AJ, Brown RR (1988). Immunological basis of anesthetic-induced hepatotoxicity. *Anesthesiology* 69, 814–817.
- Kamendulis LM, Kolaja KL, Stevenson DE, et al. (2001). Comparative effects of dieldrin on hepatic ploidy, cell proliferation, and apoptosis. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 62, 127–141.
- Kamiyama T, Sato C, Liu J, et al. (1993). Role of peroxidation in acetaminophen-induced hepatotoxicity: Comparison with carbon tetrachloride. *Toxicol Lett* 66, 7–12.
- Klaassen CD, Watkins JB (1984). Mechanisms of bile formation, hepatic uptake and biliary excretion. *Pharmacol Rev* 36, 1–67.
- Kulkarni AP, Hodgson E (1980). Hepatotoxicity. In: Hodgson E, Guthrie FE, eds. *Introduction to Biochemical Toxicology*. New York, NY: Elsevier.
- Levi PE (1987). Types of liver injury. In: Hodgson E, Levi PE, eds. *A Textbook of Modern Toxicology*. New York, NY: Elsevier.
- Lewis JH, Zimmerman HJ (1989). Drug-induced liver disease. *Med Clin North Am* 73, 775–792.
- Li W, Riley RT, Voss KA, et al. (2000). Role of proliferation in the toxicity of fumonisin B: Enhanced hepatotoxic response in the partially hepatectomized rat. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 60, 441–457.
- Lieber CS, DiCarli LM (1976). Animal models of ethanol dependence of liver injury in rats and baboons. *Fed Proc* 35, 1232–1236.
- Mitchell JR, Snodgrass WR, Gillette JR (1976). The role of biotransformation in chemical-induced liver injury. *Environ Health Persp* 15, 27–38.
- Newberne PM (1982). Assessment of the hepatocarcinogenic potential of chemicals: Response of the liver. In: Plaa GL, Hewitt WR, eds., *Toxicology of the Liver*. New York, NY: Raven Press.
- Plaa GL (1976). Quantitative aspects in the assessment of liver injury. *Environ Health Persp* 15, 39–46.
- Plaa GL (1993). Toxic responses of the liver. In: Amdur MO, Doull J, Klaassen CD, eds. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 334–353.
- Plaa GL, Charbonneau M (1994). Detection and evaluation of chemically induced liver injury. In: Hayes AW, ed. *Principles and Methods of Toxicology*. New York, NY: Raven Press, 839–870.
- Recknagel RO, Glende EA Jr (1973). Carbon tetrachloride hepatotoxicity: An example of lethal cleavage. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 2, 263–297.
- Recknagel RO, Glende EA, Waller RL, et al. (1982). Lipid peroxidation: Biochemistry, measurement, and significance in liver cell injury. In: Plaa GL, Hewitt WR, eds. *Toxicology of the Liver*. New York, NY: Raven Press.
- Shah H, Martman SP, Weinhouse S (1979). Formation of carbonyl chloride in carbon tetrachloride metabolism by rat liver in vitro. *Cancer Res* 39, 3942–3947.

- Smith ML, Loveridge N, Wills ED, et al. (1979). The distribution of glutathione in rat liver lobule. *Biochem J* 182, 103–108.
- Stott WT (1988). Chemically induced proliferation of peroxisomes: Implications for risk assessment. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 8, 125–159.
- Thomas CE, Reed DJ (1989). Current status of calcium in hepatocellular injury. *Hepatology* 10, 375–384.
- Wogan CN (1976). The induction of liver cell cancer by chemicals. In: Cameron HM, Linsell DA, Warwick GP, eds. *Liver Cell Cancer*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier.
- Zurawell RW, Chen H, Burke JM, et al. (2005). Hepatotoxic cyanobacteria: A review of the biological importance of microcystins in freshwater environments. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 8, 1–37.



## Appendix 1 Examples of Hepatotoxic Agents and Associated Liver Injury

---

### *Necrosis and fatty liver*

Acetaminophen*	Ethanol†
Aflatoxin	Ethionine†
Allyl alcohol*	Fumonisin B
	Furosemide*
Azaserine	Galactosamine
Beryllium*	Phosphorus
Bromobenzene*	Puromycin†
Carbon disulfide	Pyrrolizidine alkaloids
Carbon tetrachloride	Tannic acid*
Chloroform	Tetrachloroethane
Corticosteroid	Tetracycline†
Cycloheximide†	Thioacetamide*
Dichlorobenzene	Trichloroethylene
Dimethylnitrosamine	Valproic acid†
Diquat	
<i>Cholestasis (drug-induced)</i>	
<i>p</i> -Aminosalicylic acid‡	Mestranol
Amitriptyline	Methandrolone
Carbamazepine‡	Methimazole
Carbarsone	Oxyphenisatin‡
Chlorpromazine‡	Perphenazine
Chlorthiazide	Phenindione‡
Diazepam	Promazine
Erythromycin estolate‡	Steroids, androgenic, and anabolic
Estradiol	Sulfanilamide
Ethacrynic acid‡	Thiabendazole
Imipramine‡	Thioridazine
Mepazine	
<i>Viral-like hepatitis (drug-induced)</i>	
Colchicine	Methoxyflurane
Halothane	α-Methyldopa
Imipramine	Papaverine
Indomethacin	Phenylbutazone
Iproniazid	Phenytoin
Isoniazid	Sulfonamides
6-Mercaptopurine	Zoxazolamine
<i>Carcinogenesis (in experimental animals)</i>	
Acetylaminofluorene	Polychlorinated biphenyls
Aflatoxin B <sub>1</sub> **	Pyrrolizidine alkaloids
Cycasin	Safrole
Dialkyl nitrosamines	Urethane
N(Nitrosomethyl)urea**	Vinyl chloride**

\*Primary effect is necrosis.

†Primary effect is fatty liver.

‡Also induces viral-like hepatitis.

\*\*In humans also.

Sources: From Levi (1987), Plaa (1993), Bass (1996), Deng et al. (1999).



## Toxicology of the Kidney

### CONTENTS

Introduction	200
The Structure	200
The Production of Urine	200
Tubular Resorption and Secretion	202
Nonexcretory Functions	202
Nephrotoxics: Mechanism and Site of Action	202
Glomeruli	204
Proximal Tubules	204
Other Sites	205
Testing Procedure	205
Urinalysis	206
Proteinuria	206
Glycosuria	206
Urine Volume and Osmolarity	206
Acidifying Capacity	206
Enzymes	206
Blood Analysis	207
Blood Urea Nitrogen (BUN)	207
Creatinine	207
Special Tests	207
Glomerular Filtration Rate (GFR)	207
Renal Clearance	207
PSP Excretion Test	207
Nature of Toxicity	208
References	208
Further Reading	209

## INTRODUCTION

As noted in chapter 2, urine is the principal route by which most toxicants are excreted. As a result, the kidney has a high volume of blood flow, concentrates toxicants in the filtrate, transports toxicants across the tubular cells, and bioactivates or detoxifies certain toxicants. It is therefore a major target organ for adverse effects. To facilitate discussions on these effects, the renal structure and functions are briefly reviewed.

### The Structure

The predominant structures in the kidney are the nephrons, numbering approximately  $1.3 \times 10^6$ . Each nephron consists of a glomerulus and a series of tubules (Fig. 1). The glomerulus is supplied with a high-pressure capillary system that produces an ultrafiltrate from the plasma. The filtrate collected in the Bowman's capsule flows through the proximal convoluted tubule, the loop of Henle, and the distal convoluted tubule, and then drains through a collecting tubule into the renal pelvis for excretion as urine.

The proximal tubule is divided into three sections ( $S_1$ ,  $S_2$ , and  $S_3$ ).  $S_1$  and  $S_3$  consist of major portions of the convoluted tubule and the straight portion, respectively.  $S_2$  consists of the end of the convoluted portion and the beginning of the straight portion.

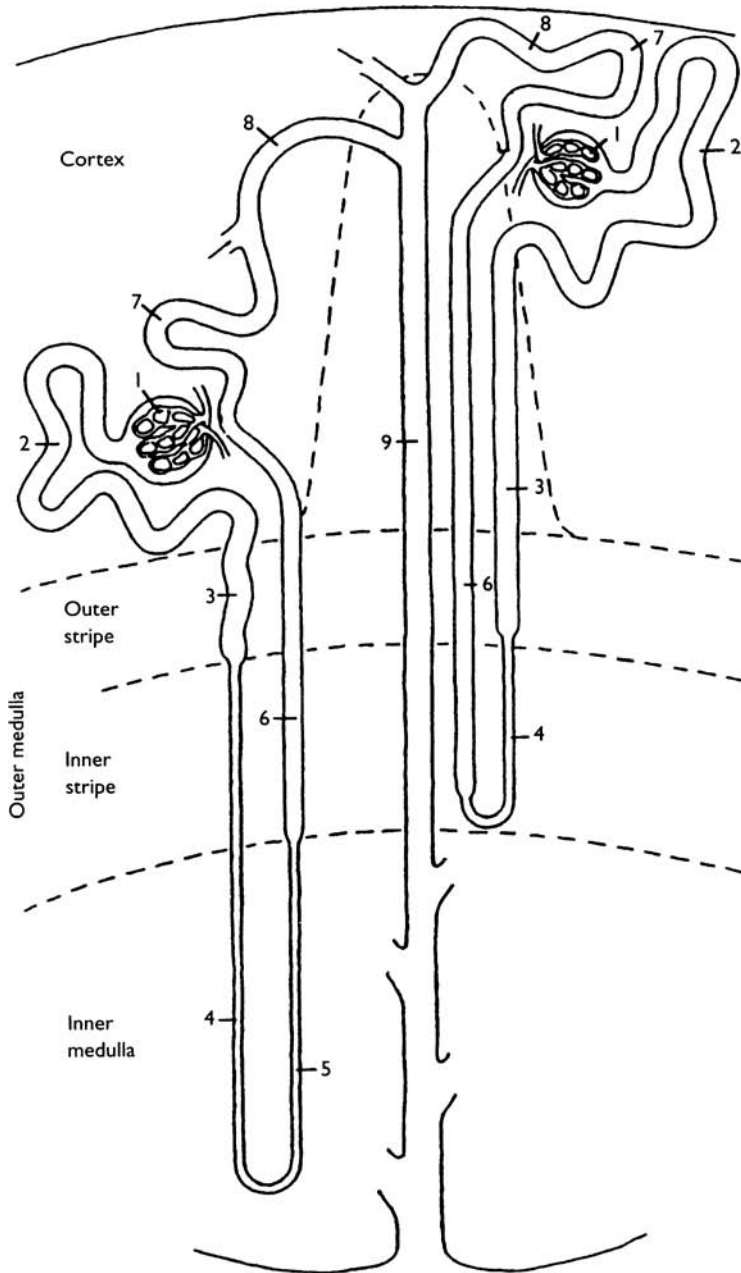
The major function of the kidney is to eliminate wastes resulting from normal metabolism and to excrete xenobiotics and their metabolites. These functions occur through the production of urine, a process that also contributes to the maintenance of the homeostatic status of the body. In addition, it has several nonexcretory functions.

### The Production of Urine

The production of urine is a complex process. It begins with filtration in the glomeruli. In humans, approximately 180 L of filtrate is formed per day. Since only 500 to 2500 mL of urine is excreted, some 99% of the filtered water is reabsorbed.

The reabsorption of water, through diffusion, takes place first at the proximal tubules, where  $\text{Na}^+$  is actively reabsorbed. Further diffusion of water takes place at the descending limb of the loop of Henle to the hyperosmolar interstitium. The hyperosmolarity is produced by the active reabsorption of  $\text{Cl}^-$  (along with  $\text{Na}^+$ ) at the ascending limb of the loop. The spatial arrangement of the loops and the vasa recta provides an effective countercurrent multiplier mechanism.

Additional water is removed from the filtrate in the distal and the collecting tubules, as  $\text{Na}^+$  is actively reabsorbed. The extent of the removal of water from these tubules depends on the activity of antidiuretic hormone (ADH). ADH reduces the urine volume by increasing the permeability of these structures to water.



**Figure 1** Schematic presentation of a cortical (short-looped) and a juxtamedullary (long-looped) nephron together with the collecting system. 1, glomerulus with Bowman's capsule; 2, proximal tubule (*convoluted portion*); 3, proximal tubule (*straight portion*); 4, descending thin limb (loop of Henle); 5, ascending limb (loop of Henle); 6, thick ascending limb; 7, distal convoluted tubule; 8, connecting tubule; 9, collecting tubule. *Source:* From Kriz and Bankir (1988).

### Tubular Resorption and Secretion

As the glomerular capillaries have large pores (70 nm), substances with molecular weights under 60,000 are filtered into Bowman's capsules. Some of the filtered substances such as glucose and amino acids, which are vital to the body, are reabsorbed by the tubules. On the other hand, ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ), a metabolic waste of amino acids, diffuses through the cells to the filtrate, where it reacts with  $\text{H}^+$  to form  $\text{NH}_4^+$ , which is nondiffusible, hence excreted.

To facilitate the passive reabsorption of water and to maintain homeostasis, various electrolytes in the glomerular filtrate are reabsorbed nearly completely or to a great extent. The reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  at the distal and collecting tubules is regulated by mineralocorticoids, that of phosphorus by parathyroid hormone, and that of bicarbonate ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ) by the acid-base balance. In addition,  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{H}^+$  are secreted by the tubules.

### Nonexcretory Functions

The kidney possesses other functions such as the regulation of blood pressure and volume. This is mediated through the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. Renin, a proteolytic enzyme, is formed in the cells of the juxtaglomerular apparatus and catalyzes the conversion of a plasma angiotensin prohormone to angiotensin I. The latter, a decapeptide, is converted in the lung to angiotensin II by an enzyme that removes a dipeptide from the C-terminal end.

A renal erythropoietic factor (REF) also acts on a plasma protein to form erythropoietin, which increases the production of normoblasts and the synthesis of hemoglobin. Renal prostaglandins are produced in the interstitial cells in the medulla and appear to have the capability of regulating renal blood flow and the excretion of  $\text{Na}^+$  and urine. The kidney is also involved in the conversion of the relatively inactive 25-hydroxy-vitamin  $\text{D}_3$  to the active 1,25-dihydroxy-vitamin  $\text{D}_3$ .

### NEPHROTOXICANTS: MECHANISM AND SITE OF ACTION

The major groups of nephrotoxicants are heavy metals, antibiotics, analgesics, and certain halogenated hydrocarbons (Table 1). All parts of the nephron are potentially subject to the detrimental effects of toxicants. However, most toxicants preferentially affect specific parts of the kidney. The mechanisms of action of nephrotoxicants include interaction with receptors, inhibition of oxidative phosphorylation, disturbance of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  homeostasis, and adverse effects in plasma and subcellular membranes. Certain chemicals may affect one area predominantly, but the entire nephron is subject to damage. Analgesics induce a nephropathy with functionally a decrease in renal volume, but histologically there is thickening of the basement membrane of the loop of Henle, isolated necrosis of interstitial

**Table 1** Nephrotoxicants

Toxicants	Site of action
<b>Heavy metals</b>	
Cadmium	Proximal tubules
Chromium	Proximal tubules
Gold	Glomeruli
Lead	Proximal tubules and blood vessels
Mercury, inorganic	Proximal tubules and glomeruli
<b>Antibiotics</b>	
Aminoglycosides	Glomeruli and proximal tubules
Amphotericin-B	Glomerular blood vessels and distal tubules
Cephaloridine	Proximal tubules
Puromycin	Glomeruli
Tetracycline	Interstitial tissues in medulla
<b>Halogenated hydrocarbons</b>	
Bromobenzene	Proximal tubules
Carbon tetrachloride	Proximal tubules
Chloroform	Proximal tubules
Decalin	Proximal tubules
Hexachlorobutadiene	Pars recta
Hydroquinone	Proximal tubules
<b>Analgesics/anesthetics</b>	
Acetaminophen	Various parts of nephron and blood vessels
Methoxyflurane	Various parts of nephron
<b>Antineoplastics</b>	
Cisplatin	Pars recta and other parts of nephron
<b>Immunosuppressants</b>	
Cyclosporin	Blood vessels and interstitial tissue
<b>Miscellaneous</b>	
Glycol	Tubular blockade
Sulfapyridine	Tubular blockade

and papillary tubular cells followed by fibrosis and cortical interstitial nephritis (Schnellmann, 1998). High-molecular-weight organic compounds such as humic or fulvic acid, which occur naturally in lignite beds, induce a nephropathy that resembles Balkan endemic nephropathy. This is an irreversible disease and results in end-stage renal failure (Bunnell et al., 2007). The *n*-arylsuccinimides produce a chronic interstitial nephritis characterized by polyuric renal failure (Rankin, 2004). Details of these are provided in a review article (Commandeur and Vermeulen, 1990). In general, males are more susceptible to chemical-induced nephrotoxicity. This is especially true among geriatric patients (Kacew et al., 1995).

## Glomeruli

The antibiotic puromycin can increase the permeability of the glomerulus to proteins such as albumin. This has been attributed to an alteration in the electrical charge of glomerular basement membrane (Brenner et al., 1977). On the other hand, the aminoglycoside antibiotics, such as gentamicin and kanamycin, decrease the glomerular filtration, in addition to their effects on renal tubules (Humes and O'Connor, 1988). Certain toxicants, for example, gold, mercury, and penicillamine, may induce membranous glomerulonephritis by the deposition of antigen-antibody conjugates in the glomerular basement membrane. Deoxynivalenol, a microtoxin commonly found in cereal-based foods, produces deposition of immunoglobulin A in the kidney, which resembles human glomerulonephritis nephropathy (Pestka and Smolinski, 2005).

## Proximal Tubules

Because of their active absorptive and secretory activities, the proximal tubules often have higher concentrations of toxicants. Furthermore, proximal tubules have higher levels of cytochrome P-450 to detoxify or activate toxicants and are thus often the site of adverse effects. Heavy metals, such as mercury, chromium, cadmium, and lead, can alter the functions of the tubules, characterized by glycosuria, aminoaciduria, and polyuria. However, one needs to be cautious with respect to concentration or dose in terms of exposure. Diamond et al. (2003) clearly showed that exposure to cadmium produced renal toxicity as evidenced by proteinuria, but the source of cadmium inducing this effect was not derived from the diet. After higher doses, they cause tubular cell death, elevated blood urea nitrogen (BUN), and anuria. The straight portion (*pars recta*) of the proximal tubules appears more susceptible than the convoluted portion to the toxicity of mercury (Phillips et al., 1977). The nephrotoxicity may result from a combination of direct cellular toxicity and ischemia secondary to vasoconstriction. Additional information on renal toxicity of metals is given in chapter 21.

As noted above, certain antibiotics affect the glomerular filtration. In addition, many antibiotics are also secreted by the proximal tubules and can induce alterations in the tubular functions. Various aminoglycoside antibiotics (streptomycin, neomycin, kanamycin, gentamicin, and amphotericin-B) have been reported to affect the proximal tubules. These drugs alter membrane phospholipid compositions, permeability,  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$ -ATPase activity, adenylate cyclase activity, and transport of  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  (Kaloyanides, 1984; Mingeot-Leclercq et al., 1995). Cephaloridine, unlike the antibiotics named above, is not secreted from the proximal tubules but is accumulated in these cells, thereby producing damage.

Halogenated hydrocarbons such as carbon tetrachloride and chloroform are mainly hepatotoxic, but in certain animal species they may also exert toxic effects on the kidney, especially on the proximal tubules, as reflected in functional



changes. At higher doses, however, morphologic changes may be produced in other parts of the nephron. Hexachlorobutadiene damages mainly the pars recta of the proximal tubules, resulting in decreased urinary concentrating ability. Bromobenzene as hexachlorobutadiene is also nephrotoxic, acting on the proximal tubules, while the former is bioactivated in the liver, the latter is bioactivated in the kidney, via a renal enzyme (C-S lyase) after biotransformation in the liver (Hook et al., 1982).

### Other Sites

Tetracycline, especially outdated products, may affect the renal medulla and induce interstitial nephritis. Amphotericin-B induces renal toxicity in a majority of the patients, affecting various renal structures.

Methoxyflurane, an anesthetic, is known to be nephrotoxic in humans and certain animals, producing *high-output* renal failure. This chemical was shown to be biotransformed to inorganic fluoride and oxalate. Experimental data suggest that the F<sup>-</sup> acts on several parts of the nephron to reduce the reabsorption of water. First, it interferes with the capability of the proximal tubules to reabsorb water. Second, methoxyflurane inhibits the enzymes involved in the transport of ions at the ascending limb of the loop of Henle, thus reducing the interstitial osmolarity, thereby decreasing water reabsorption. This chemical also damages the collecting tubules, rendering them insensitive to ADH (Mazze, 1976).

Analgesic mixtures containing aspirin and phenacetin, a derivative of acetaminophen, produce chronic renal failure, with adverse effects located predominantly in the medulla, that is, loop of Henle, vasa recta, interstitial cells, and collecting tubules (Schnellmann, 1998). The effects might be a result of vasoconstriction of the vasa recta (the blood vessels surrounding the loop of Henle) due to an inhibition of the synthesis of vasodilator prostaglandin (Nanra, 1974). Cisplatin affects many parts of the tubules in patients taking this chemotherapeutic agent (Tanaka et al., 1986). Cyclosporin produces acute thrombotic microangiopathy and chronic nephropathy with interstitial fibrosis (Racusen and Solez, 1988).

Other types of toxicity include renal carcinogenicity of DMN (dimethylnitrosamine), and tubular blockade induced by the metabolites of sulfapyridine (acetylsulfapyridine) and glycols (oxalic acid). Penicillins and sulfonamides were reported to produce inflammatory interstitial nephritis in humans. An immunologic mechanism was suggested as responsible for this toxicity (Appel and Neu, 1977). High concentrations of calcium may lead to calcification in the kidney and subsequent renal failure (Hwang et al., 2003).

### TESTING PROCEDURE

Functional and morphologic examinations of the kidney are routinely carried out as an integral part of short-term and long-term toxicity studies. The types of examinations involved are described in chapter 6 and are further elaborated here.

In studies designed specifically for nephrotoxicity, dogs, rabbits, and rats are the commonly used animals. Examinations of kidney functions may be done in a number of ways.

## Urinalysis

### Proteinuria

Because of the size of their molecules, only a very small amount of proteins of low molecular weight pass through the glomerular filter. The low-molecular-weight proteins are readily reabsorbed by the proximal tubules. The occurrence of large amounts of such protein in the urine is thus an indication of a loss of tubular reabsorptive function, as in cadmium poisoning (Diamond et al., 2003). On the other hand, excretion of high-molecular-weight protein indicates a loss of integrity of glomeruli. It is to be noted that normal rat urine may contain some protein. A critical comparison of the treated animals with the controls is therefore important.

### Glycosuria

Glucose in the glomerular filtrate is completely reabsorbed in the tubules, provided the amount of glucose to be reabsorbed does not exceed the *transport maximum* ( $T_m$ ). Glycosuria in the absence of hyperglycemia thus indicates tubular dysfunction.

### Urine Volume and Osmolarity

These two values are usually inversely related and are useful indicators of renal function in a *concentration test*, wherein water is withheld from the animal, and also in a *dilution test*, wherein a large amount of water is given to the animal. The osmolarity can be estimated from the specific gravity, but the freezing point of urine provides a more accurate measurement. A toxicant may produce high-output renal failure as noted above. On the other hand, it may cause oliguria or even anuria, resulting from tubular injury, with concomitant interstitial edema and intraluminal sediment or debris, which blocks urine flow.

### Acidifying Capacity

This can be assessed from urine pH, titratable acids, and  $\text{NH}_4^+$ . This capacity is reduced when there is distal tubular dysfunction.

### Enzymes

Enzymes such as maltase and acid phosphatase in urine may indicate destruction of proximal tubules. Urine alkaline phosphatase, on the other hand, may be renal or hepatic in origin. Plummer (1981) suggested that the urinary enzymes not only are useful indicators of renal damage but also indicate the subcellular site of origin. For example, alkaline phosphatase is located in endoplasmic reticulum, glutamate

dehydrogenase in mitochondria, and lactate dehydrogenase in cytoplasm. In general, urinary enzymes are more useful measures in acute nephrotoxic conditions.

## Blood Analysis

### Blood Urea Nitrogen (BUN)

Blood urea nitrogen is derived from normal metabolism of protein and is excreted in the urine. Elevated BUN usually indicates glomerular damage. However, its level can also be affected by poor nutrition and hepatotoxicity, which are common effects of many toxicants.

### Creatinine

Creatinine is a metabolite of creatine and is excreted completely in the urine via glomerular filtration. An elevation of its level in the blood is thus an indication of impaired kidney function. Furthermore, data on its level in blood and its amounts in urine can be used to estimate the glomerular filtration rate. One drawback with this procedure is the fact that some creatinine is secreted by the tubules.

## Special Tests

### Glomerular Filtration Rate (GFR)

The glomerular filtration rate can be more accurately determined by the clearance of inulin, a polysaccharide. It is diffused into the glomerular filtrate and is neither reabsorbed nor secreted by the tubules. Reduced GFR indicates impairment of glomerular filtration.

### Renal Clearance

This is the volume of plasma that is completely cleared of a substance in a unit of time. The renal clearance of *p*-aminohippuric acid (PAH) exceeds that of inulin because it is not only filtered through the glomeruli but also secreted by the tubules. A reduction of PAH elimination without a concomitant decrease of GFR indicates tubular dysfunction. PAH is nearly completely (up to 90%) removed from the blood in one passage. The rate of its clearance is therefore useful in determining the effective renal plasma flow (ERPF). The renal blood flow can also be determined by the use of radiolabeled microspheres or an electromagnetic flow meter.

### PSP Excretion Test

The rate of excretion of phenolsulfonphthalein (PSP) is related to renal blood flow. It is, therefore, often used in the assessment of renal function. However, a reduced secretion rate can also result from cardiovascular diseases.

## NATURE OF TOXICITY

The kidney has a remarkable compensatory capability. Even after appreciable changes in renal functions and morphology, the kidney may compensate and regain normal functions. Therefore, it is important to perform tests at repeated and appropriate time intervals.

Nephrotoxicants can exert adverse effects on various parts of the kidney, resulting in alterations of different functions. A variety of tests should therefore be performed. The most sensitive and reliable tests appear to vary depending on the nature of the nephrotoxicants as well as the experimental conditions (e.g., animal species, duration of exposure). Kluwe (1981) concluded from his studies that *in vitro* accumulation of organic ions (e.g., PAH, TEA), urinary concentrating ability, and kidney weight were the most sensitive and consistent indicators of nephrotoxicity. Standard urinalysis, serum analyses, qualitative enzymuria, and histopathologic changes were less sensitive and less consistent. It was observed that urine osmolarity was the most sensitive indicator of the nephrotoxicity of a platinum complex, whereas GFR and ERPF were affected only later and at higher doses.

In assessing the renal effects of a toxicant, extrarenal factors that might affect the blood volume or blood pressure should be taken into account, since they may indirectly impair renal functions. Furthermore, kidney diseases, such as those associated with aging, may be prevalent and should also be considered.

## REFERENCES

- Appel GB, Neu HC (1977). The nephrotoxicity of antimicrobial agents (parts 1 and 2). *N Engl J Med* 296, 663–670, 722–728.
- Brenner BM, Bohrer MP, Baglis C, et al. (1977). Determinants of glomerular permselectivity: Insights derived from observations *in vivo*. *Kidney Int* 12, 229–257.
- Bunnell JE, Tatu CA, Lerch HE, et al. (2007). Evaluating nephrotoxicity of high-molecular weight organic compounds in drinking water from lignite aquifers. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 2089–2091.
- Commandeur JNM, Vermeulen NPE (1990). Molecular and biochemical mechanisms of chemically induced nephrotoxicity: A review. *Chem Res Toxicol* 3, 171–194.
- Diamond GL, Thayer WC, Choudhury H (2003). Pharmacokinetics/pharmacodynamics (PK/PD) modeling of risks of kidney toxicity from exposure to cadmium: Estimates of dietary risks in the US population. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 66, 2141–2164.
- Hook JB, Rose MS, Lock EA (1982). The nephrotoxicity of hexachloro-1:3-butadiene in the rat: Studies of organic anion and cation transport in renal slices and the effects of monooxygenase inducers. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 65, 373–382.
- Humes HD, O'Connor RP (1988). Aminoglycoside nephrotoxicity. In: Shrier RW, Gottschalk CW, eds. *Diseases of the Kidney*, 4th ed., vol. 2. Boston, MA: Little, Brown.
- Kacew S, Ruben Z, McConnell RF (1995). Strain as a determinant factor in the differential responsiveness of rats to chemicals. *Toxicol Pathol* 23, 701–714.

- Hwang S-J, Lai Y-H, Chiu H-F, et al. (2003). Association of death from renal failure with calcium levels in drinking water. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 66, 2327–2335.
- Kaloyanides GJ (1984). Aminoglycoside-induced functional and biochemical defects in the renal cortex. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 4, 930–943.
- Kluwe WM (1981). Renal function tests as indicators of kidney injury in subacute toxicity studies. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 57, 414–424.
- Kriz W, Bankir L (1988). A standard nomenclature for structures of the kidney. *Am J Physiol* 254, F1–F8.
- Mazze RI (1976). Methoxyflurane nephropathy. *Environ Health Perspect* 15, 111–120.
- Mingeot-Leclercq MP, Brasseur R, Schank A (1995). Molecular parameters involved in aminoglycoside nephrotoxicity. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 44, 263–300.
- Nanra RS (1974). Pathology, etiology and pathogenesis of analgesic nephropathy. *Aust NZ J Med* 4, 602–603.
- Pestka JJ, Smolinski AT (2005). Deoxynivalenol: Toxicology and potential effects on humans. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 8, 39–69.
- Phillips R, Yamaguchi M, Cote MG, et al. (1977). Assessment of mercuric chloride-induced nephrotoxicity by *p*-aminohippuric acid uptake and the activity of four gluconeogenic enzymes in rat renal cortex. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 41, 407–422.
- Plummer DT (1981). Urinary enzyme in drug toxicity. In: Gorrod JW, ed. *Testing for Toxicity*. London, U.K.: Taylor & Francis.
- Racusen LC, Solez K (1988). Cyclosporine nephrotoxicity. *Int Rev Expo Pathol* 30, 107–157.
- Rankin GO (2004). Nephrotoxicity induced by C- and N-arylsuccinimides. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7, 399–416.
- Schnellmann RG (1998). Analgesic nephropathy in rodents. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 81–90.
- Tanaka H, Ishikawa E, Teshima S, et al. (1986). Histopathological study of human cisplatin nephrotoxicity. *Toxicol Pathol* 14, 247–257.

## FURTHER READING

- WHO (1991). Principles and methods for the assessment of nephrotoxicity associated with exposure to chemicals. *Environ Health Criteria* 119.



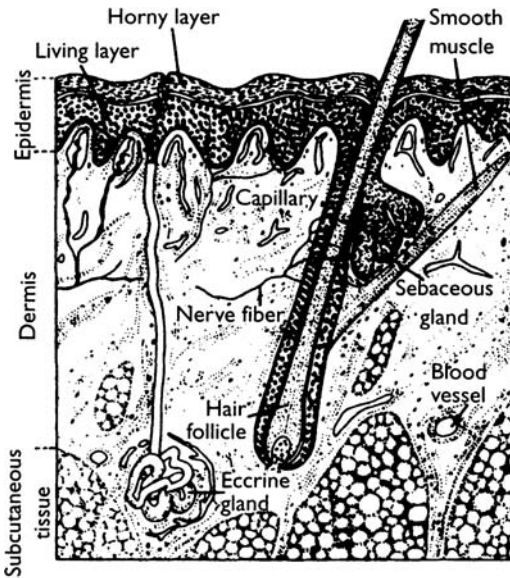
## Toxicology of the Skin

### CONTENTS

General Considerations	211
Types of Toxic Effects and Dermatotoxicants	213
Primary Irritation	213
Sensitization Reaction	213
Phototoxicity and Photoallergy	214
Contact Urticaria/Urticarial Reactions	215
Cutaneous Cancer	216
Effects on Epidermal Adnexa	216
Hair	216
Sebaceous Glands	216
Sweat Glands	217
Testing Procedures	217
Primary Irritation	217
Sensitization Reaction	217
Phototoxicity and Photoallergy	218
Contact Urticaria	218
Cutaneous Cancer	218
References	219
Appendix 1 Primary Irritation	220

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The body of humans, as well as that of other animals, is almost entirely covered by skin. As a result, it is exposed to a variety of chemicals such as cosmetics, household products, topical medication, and industrial pollutants, especially in



**Figure 1** Cross section of the skin showing the two major layers of epidermis and dermis, and the various structures in the dermis. *Source:* From Montagna (1965).

certain workplaces. Dermal exposure to chemicals can result in various types of lesions. Furthermore, skin lesions may follow systemic exposure to chemicals.

The skin consists of the epidermis and the dermis, which rests over the subcutaneous tissue (Fig. 1). The epidermis is relatively thin, averaging 0.1 to 0.2 mm in thickness, whereas the dermis is about 2 mm thick. These two layers are separated by a basement membrane.

The living layer of epidermis in turn consists of a basal cell layer (stratum germinativum), which provides the other layers with new cells. These new cells become prickle cells (stratum spinosum) and, later, the granular cells (stratum granulosum). The nuclei in these cells disintegrate and dissolve. In addition, these cells produce keratohydrin, which later becomes keratin in the outermost stratum corneum, the horny layer. This layer is gradually shed. This development process takes about four weeks. The epidermis also contains melanocytes, which produce pigments; the Langerhans cells, which act as macrophages; and lymphocytes. The latter two types of cells are involved in immune responses. The epidermis thus forms an important protective cover of the body.

The dermis is mainly composed of collagen and elastin, which are important structures for the support of the skin. In this layer, there are several types of cells, the most abundant being the fibroblasts, which are involved in the biosynthesis of the fibrous proteins and ground substances such as hyaluronic acid, chondroitin sulfates, and mucopolysaccharides. The other types of cells include



fat cells, macrophages, histiocytes, and mast cells. Underneath the dermis is the subcutaneous tissue.

There are, in addition, a number of other structures, such as the hair follicles, sweat glands (the exocrine glands), sebaceous glands, small blood vessels, and neural elements.

The possibility of systemic toxicity following dermal exposure to toxicants is discussed in Chapter 2. In addition, dermal reactions may appear following systemic administration of toxicants. The toxicities of pesticides, industrial chemicals, metals, and industrial chemicals from dermal exposure are discussed in Chapters 20, 21, and 24.

## TYPES OF TOXIC EFFECTS AND DERMATOTOXICANTS

A variety of effects can result from dermal exposure to toxicants. Most of the effects involve the skin itself, but some of them affect its appendages—hair, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands.

### Primary Irritation

Irritation is a reaction of the skin to chemicals such as strong alkalis, acids, solvents, and detergents. Irritation ranges in severity from hyperemia, edema, and vesiculation to ulceration (corrosion). Primary irritations occur at the site of contact and, in general, on the first contact. Irritation is thus different from sensitization.

### Sensitization Reaction

The skin may show little or no reaction on the first contact with a chemical. However, a reaction or a more severe reaction occurs after a subsequent exposure to the chemical. The induction period ranges from a few days to years. A subsequent exposure to the specific toxicant will elicit a reaction after a delay of 12 to 48 hours. It is therefore known as “delayed hypersensitivity.” A complex immune mechanism is involved in this reaction. Briefly, the toxicant, upon entering the skin, becomes bonded to the surface of certain cells (the APC), which will process it for reaction with T lymphocytes. After such reaction, the sensitized T lymphocytes may release a variety of substances upon reexposure to the same toxicant and result in hyperemia and edema (see also Chaps. 4 and 11).

A variety of chemicals, including topical medicaments, can induce sensitization reactions. Table 1 lists a number of them. They show positive response in human patch test with a frequency of 5% to 11% (Nethercott et al., 1994).

Toluene diisocyanate (TDI), as noted in Chapter 12, is an allergenic, producing asthma and other effects in the respiratory tract. In addition, it may induce skin sensitization after inhalation (Ebino et al., 2001).

**Table 1** Selected Dermal Sensitizers

Antibiotics	Neomycin
Hair dye ingredient	<i>p</i> -Phenylenediamine
Local anesthetics	Benzocaine
Metals	Nickel and nickel salts, beryllium, chromium salts, organomercurials (thimerosol)
Pesticides	Captan, ethylenediamine
Poisonous plants	Poison ivy, poison oak

### Phototoxicity and Photoallergy

These two types of skin reaction are similar in that both are light-induced and may follow either systemic administration or topical application of the offending chemical. However, photoallergy involves immune reactions, whereas phototoxicity does not. This and other differences have been summarized by Harber and Baer (1972) (Table 2).

Phototoxicity is more common than photoallergy. The commonly reported phototoxic chemicals in humans, according to Harber et al. (1987), are aminobenzoic acid derivatives, anthraquinone dyes, chlorpromazine, chlorothiazides, phenothiazines, sulfanilamide, and coal tar derivatives (e.g., anthracene, pyridine,

**Table 2** Comparison of Phototoxic and Photoallergic Reactions

Reaction	Phototoxic	Photoallergic
Reaction possible on first exposure	Yes	No
Incubation period necessary after first exposure	No	Yes
Chemical alteration of photosensitizer	No	Yes
Covalent binding with carrier	No	Yes
Clinical changes	Usually like sunburn	Varied morphology
Flares at distant previously involved sites possible	No	Yes
Persistent light reaction can develop	No	Yes
Cross-reactions to structurally related agents	Infrequent	Frequent
Concentration of drug necessary for reaction	High	Low
Incidence	Usually relatively high	Usually very low
Passive transfer	No	Possible
Lymphocyte stimulation test	No	Possible
Macrophage migration inhibition test	No	Possible

Source: From Harber and Baer (1972).

**Table 3** Examples of Phototoxic Photoallergic Chemicals

Chemicals	Phototoxicity	Photoallergy
Aminobenzoic acid derivatives	+	+
Chlorpromazine	+	+
Chlorothiazide	+	+
Methoxypsoralens	+	–
Psoralens	+	–
Sulfonamides	+	+
Tetracyclines	+	–
Coal tar derivatives	+	–
Nonsteroidal anti inflammatory drugs	+	–

acridine, and phenanthrene). The skin reaction consists of a delayed erythema, followed by hyperpigmentation and desquamation.

The commonly reported photoallergic chemicals include aminobenzoic acids, chlorpromazine, chlorpropamide, 2,2-thiobis(4-chlorophenol) (Fenticlor), halogenated salicylanilides, promethazine, sulfanilamide, and thiazides (Harber et al., 1987) (Table 3). Many compounds are therefore both phototoxic and photoallergic. Clinically, photoallergy usually manifests as delayed papules and eczema, but it may also appear as immediate urticarial reaction. Histologically, it is characterized by a dense perivascular round cell infiltrate in the dermis. The delayed reactions are Type IV T-cell-mediated immune response, whereas the immediate reaction is probably antibody-mediated (Chap. 11).

The most biologically active rays that produce erythema and pigmentation are in the shorter ultraviolet range, that is, wavelengths below 320 nm. The sunlight ranges from 290 nm upward, but the UV rays emitted by artificial light sources may be shorter. However, the longer UV rays (320–400 nm) *per se* are less erythrogenic, but are responsible for both phototoxic and photoallergic reactions to chemicals (see Testing Procedures, page 217).

### Contact Urticaria/Urticarial Reactions

These skin reactions, in the form of urticaria or eczema, appear within minutes to an hour after contact with the offending substance. Hence they are different from the sensitization reaction described above. The mechanism may be nonimmunologic, such as the case with aspirin and methyl nicotinate. In other cases, for example, latex rubber and penicillin, an immunologic mechanism is involved. However, unlike the sensitization reaction described above, an antibody (IgE), rather than T cell, is involved. In both immunologic and nonimmunologic cases, the dermal reactions are elicited by vasoactive substances, for example, histamine along with prostaglandins, leukotrienes, and kinins. A great variety of substances have been reported to induce these reactions, including metals (copper, platinum), medicaments (antibiotics, local anesthetics), and biogenic polymers released from

arthropods (jellyfish). Amin et al. (1995) have provided extensive lists of agents that induce immunologic and nonimmunologic immediate contact reactions. Urticarial actions may also follow ingested or parenterally administered agents.

### Cutaneous Cancer

It has been known for over two centuries that soots produce skin cancer (Chap. 7). More recent studies confirm that soots and related substances, such as coal tars, creosote oils, shale oils, and cutting oil, induce cancers of the skin and other sites in animals and humans. In addition, arsenic and certain arsenic compounds have been reported to be associated with skin cancer in humans (Chap. 21).

A number of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzo[*a*]pyrene) and heterocyclic compounds (e.g., benz[*c*]acridine) are known to induce skin cancer after topical applications on animals (IARC, 1973). UV radiation is an important cause of skin cancer in humans, and a number of chemicals influence the effect of UV light and vice versa (Forbes, 1995; Brozyna and Chwirut, 2006).

### Effects on Epidermal Adnexa

#### Hair

Loss of hair may result from various antimetabolic agents used in cancer chemotherapy. These agents affect the anagen phase of hair growth. The affected hair starts to shed after about two weeks of therapy, but hair growth resumes about two months after the suspension of therapy.

A number of other medications are known to cause hair loss by converting hair follicles in anagen phase to telogen phase. In such cases, hair shedding generally starts 24 months after therapy. The medications involved in this type of hair loss include oral contraceptives, anticoagulants, propranolol, and triparanol.

#### Sebaceous Glands

These glands secrete lipid through expulsion of their lipid-laden cells and are therefore known as *holocrine*. Their activity is hormone-dependent. For example, androgens stimulate and estrogens inhibit the excretion. Adrenocortical steroids and thyroid hormones also have some stimulatory activity. Acne may be formed as a result of proliferation of the follicular epithelium of the sebaceous gland. Topically applied substances such as greases and oils, and systemically administered substances such as iodides and bromides, may increase the formation of acnes.

A number of chlorinated aromatic hydrocarbons produce various skin lesions, including *chloracne*, which is characterized by small straw-colored cysts and comedones and in which the sebaceous gland is replaced by a keratinous cyst. The severity of chloracne varies, but it has been noted among occupational workers. However, it was more notable in the outbreaks in Japan among individuals

after their consumption of a batch of rice oil contaminated with polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) (WHO, 1976), and in Seveso, Italy, among residents near a factory that accidentally released a large amount of TCDD (2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin) (Pocchiari, 1980).

### Sweat Glands

Sweating serves useful physiologic functions such as regulation of body temperature. Blockage of the sweat ducts, a disorder known as miliaria, may occur after topical application of 95% phenol and chloroform (Shelley and Horvath, 1950).

## TESTING PROCEDURES

### Primary Irritation

This effect is in general measured by a patch test on the skin of rabbits (Draize, 1959). A small amount (0.5 g or 0.5 mL) of the chemical to be tested is introduced under a 1-sq-in gauze pad that is placed over a shaved part of the skin. The pad is suitably fastened over the animal for 24 hours. At the end of this period, the pad is removed and the skin reaction is graded according to the extent of (1) erythema and eschar formation, and (2) edema formation. The skin reaction is read again at the end of 72 hours. The same test is done on other rabbits, except that the skin has been abraded. The 24- and 72-hour readings from both groups are added to obtain the *primary irritation index*. The test procedure, grading of skin reaction, and interpretation of the grading are given in Appendix 1.

There are a number of modified skin irritation tests based on the Draize procedure. The modifications involve the animal species and the number of animals used, amount of test material applied, repetitive applications, and types of examinations.

### Sensitization Reaction

The procedure described by Draize (1959) calls for the use of guinea pigs that are given the chemical by 10 repeated intradermal injections on one flank and a challenging dose on the other flank after a 10- to 14-day resting period. A greater reaction after the challenging dose, in comparison with that after the sensitizing doses, indicates sensitization.

The *Draize test* is generally considered insufficiently sensitive to identify allergic potential. Magnusson and Kligman (1969) therefore recommended the use of the *maximization test* in which the guinea pigs are given intradermally on day 0 the test substance with and without Freund's complete adjuvant. On day 7, the substance is applied at the same site occlusively. Two weeks later, the test substance is applied topically over the pretreated areas in these animals. Different concentrations of the agent are used in the challenge. Recently, OECD (1992) has

adopted this and the Buehler test which requires the application of the chemical under closed patches.

*Human experience* is obtained either in patch tests or in a controlled population. In the latter case, the substance is widely distributed to the target population for use as directed. Their skin reactions are examined and evaluated. A patch test usually involves 100 males and 100 females, covering a wide age range. The test material (0.5 mL or 0.5 g) is applied by patch to an area on the arm or back. The skin reaction is examined on the following day after the removal of the patch.

### **Phototoxicity and Photoallergy**

Phototoxicity appears to be more readily demonstrable in the hairless mouse, the rabbit, and the guinea pig. The substance to be tested may be administered topically or by a systemic route. The reaction of the skin to nonerythrogenic light (wavelength greater than 320 nm) is then determined. Significant erythema, compared to controls, indicates phototoxicity.

For the detection of photoallergy, albino guinea pigs are especially useful. The procedure involves, in principle, an induction of photosensitization by repeatedly applying a small amount of the chemical on a shaved and depilated area of the skin and exposing that area to appropriate UV rays. After a three-week interval, the guinea pigs are exposed to the chemical and the UV rays to elicit photoallergy.

### **Contact Urticaria**

A number of animal models have been proposed based on the procedure devised by Jacobs (1940). These generally involve a patch test on the flank and nipples of guinea pigs. Recently, a test using guinea pig ears has been found satisfactory in screening human contact with urticarigenic substances (Lahti and Maibach, 1984).

The open patch test can be applied to human volunteers or to patients suspected of being susceptible to the chemical. In the latter case, all necessary resuscitation equipment and qualified personnel should be available to respond to anaphylactoid reaction.

Any immunologic involvement can be demonstrated by the passive transfer test in which 0.1 mL fresh serum from the patient is injected intradermally into the forearm of a volunteer and challenged 24 hours later by applying the suspect chemical to the injection site.

### **Cutaneous Cancer**

The procedure involves topical application of the substance on a shaved area of the skin. The substance per se, if a liquid, is applied directly. Otherwise, it is dissolved

or suspended in a suitable vehicle. The skin painting is usually done once a week or more frequently. The commonly used animal is the mouse. It is advisable to include a vehicle control group as well as a positive control group, which is treated with a known skin carcinogen such as benzo[*a*]pyrene.

## REFERENCES

- Amin S, Lahti A, Maibach HI (1995). Immediate contact reactions: Contact urticaria and the contact urticaria syndrome. In: Marzulli FN, Maibach HI, eds. *Dermatotoxicology*, 5th ed. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Brozyna A, Chwirot BW (2006). Porcine skin as a model system for studies of ultraviolet effects in human skin. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 69, 1155–1165.
- Draize JH (1959). Dermal toxicity. In: Editorial Committee of the Association of Food and Drug Officials of the United States, eds. *Appraisal of the Safety of Chemicals in Foods, Drugs and Cosmetics*.
- Ebino K, Ueda H, Kawakatsu H, et al. (2001). Isolated airway exposure to toluene diisocyanate results skin sensitization. *Toxicol Lett* 121, 79–85.
- Forbes PD (1995). Carcinogenesis and photocarcinogenesis test methods. In: Marzulli FN, Maibach HI, eds. *Dermatotoxicology*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Harber LC, Baer RL (1972). Pathogenic mechanisms of drug-induced photosensitivity. *J Invest Dermatol* 58, 327–342.
- Harber LS, Shalita AR, Armstrong RB (1987). Immunologically mediated contact photosensitivity in guinea pigs. In: Marzulli FN, Maibach HI, eds. *Dermatotoxicology*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere, 413–430.
- IARC (1973). Certain polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and heterocyclic compounds. IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of the Chemical to Man, vol. 3. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- Jacobs JL (1940). Immediate generalized skin reactions in hypersensitive guinea pigs. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 43, 641–643.
- Lahti A, Maibach HI (1984). An animal model for nonimmunologic contact urticaria. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 76, 219–224.
- Magnusson B, Kligman AM (1969). The identification of contact allergens by animal assay. The guinea pig maximization test. *J Invest Dermatol* 52, 268–276.
- Montagna W (1965). The skin. *Sci Am* (Feb.), 60.
- Nethercott JR, Holness DL, Adams RM, et al. (1994). Multivariate analysis of the effect of selected factors on the elicitation of patch test response to 28 common environmental contactants in North America. *Am J Contact Dermatitis* 5, 13–18.
- OECD (1992). *OECD Guidelines for Testing Chemicals*. Paris: Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.
- Pocchiari F (1980). Accidental release of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin (TCDD) at Seveso, Italy. *Ecotoxicol Environ Saf* 4, 282.
- Shelley WB, Horvath PN (1950). Experimental miliaria in man. II. Production of sweat retention anhidrosis and miliaria crystallina by various kinds of injury. *J Invest Dermatol* 1, 9–20.
- WHO (1976). *Polychlorinated biphenyls and terphenyls*. Environmental Health Criteria, 2nd ed. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.

## APPENDIX 1 PRIMARY IRRITATION

Primary irritation of the skin is measured by a patch-test technique on the abraded and intact skin of the albino rabbit clipped free of hair. A minimum of six subjects is used per preparation tested. The method consists of introducing under a 1-in patch 0.5 mL (in case of liquids) or 0.5 g (in cases of solids and semisolids) of the test substance. It is also desirable in the case of solids to attempt solubilizing in an appropriate solvent and to apply the solution as for liquids. The animals are immobilized in an animal holder with patches secured in place by adhesive tape. The entire trunk of the animal is then wrapped with rubberized cloth for the entire 24-hour period of exposure. This latter procedure aids in maintaining the test patches in position, and, in addition, retards the evaporation of volatile substances. After the 24 hours of exposure, the patches are removed and the resulting reactions are evaluated on the basis of scores in Table A1. Readings are also made after 72 hours, and the final score represents an average of 24- and 72-hour readings. An equal number of exposures are made on areas of skin, which have been previously abraded. The abrasions are minor incisions through the stratum corneum, but not sufficiently deep to disturb the derma (i.e., not sufficiently deep to produce bleeding).

The total erythema and edema scores are added in both the 24- and 72-hour readings, and the averages of the scores for intact and abraded skin are combined;

**Table A1** Evaluation of Skin Reactions

Erythema and eschar formation	
No erythema	0
Very slight erythema (barely perceptible)	1
Well-defined erythema	2
Moderate-to-severe erythema	3
Severe erythema (beet redness) to slight eschar formation (injuries in depth)	4
Total possible erythema score	4
Edema formation	
No edema	0
Very slight edema (barely perceptible)	1
Slight edema (edges of area well defined by definite raising)	2
Moderate edema (raised approximately 1 mm)	3
Severe edema (raised more than 1 mm and extending beyond area of exposure)	4
Total possible edema score	4

Source: From Draize (1959).



this combined average is referred to as the primary irritation index. It is useful for placing compounds in general groups with reference to irritant properties.

Compounds producing combined averages (primary irritation indexes) of 2 or less are only mildly irritating; whereas those with indexes from 2 to 5 are moderate irritants, and those with scores above 6 are considered severe irritants.



# 16

## Toxicology of the Eye

### CONTENTS

General Considerations	223
Toxicants and Site of Their Effects	224
Cornea	224
Iris, Aqueous Humor, and Ciliary Body	226
Lens	226
Retina	227
Optic Nerve	228
Testing Procedures	228
Gross Examination	229
Instrumental Examinations	230
Ophthalmoscopy	230
Visual Perimetry	230
Other Procedures	230
Histologic and Biochemical Examinations	230
In Vitro Tests	230
Evaluation	231
References	231
Appendix 1   Cataractogenic Chemicals	232
Appendix 2   Grading of Eye Irritation	233

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Although the eyes are relatively small, they are important to one's well-being and they are complex in structure.

The eye is a spherical body that is covered mainly by three coats of tissues: the sclera, choroids, and retina. These coats mainly consist of, respectively, fibrous

tissues; pigments and blood vessels; and nerve fibers, cells, and special receptors. They are nontransparent. However, light is admitted through the front of the eye, where the three coats are replaced by a number of tissues, notably the cornea and the lens [Fig. 1(A)].

The cornea is a continuum of the sclera. It consists of a relatively thick stroma and is covered, in front, by an epithelium, consisting of several layers of cells and Bowman's membranes, and, behind, by Descemet's membrane and an endothelium. The cornea and the front portion of the sclera as well as the inside of the eyelids are covered by a thin layer of conjunctiva.

The lens consists of transparent fibers enclosed in the lens capsule. It is suspended by the ciliary zonule to the ciliary body and its curvature is adjustable by the contraction and relaxation of the ciliary muscle.

The space between the lens and the cornea is filled with the aqueous humor. Also in this space and immediately in front of the lens is the iris. It is rich in blood vessels and heavily pigmented. The iris has a central opening, the pupil. Filling the space between the lens and retina is the vitreous humor.

The retina is the ocular structure that responds to light stimuli. It consists of several layers [Fig. 1(B)]. The outermost is a pigmented epithelium. Next to it are the retinal rods and cones, which are the light-responsive neural structures. They are connected via the bipolar cells to the ganglion cells. The axons from the latter cells converge and exit from the eye at the optic papilla as the optic nerve.

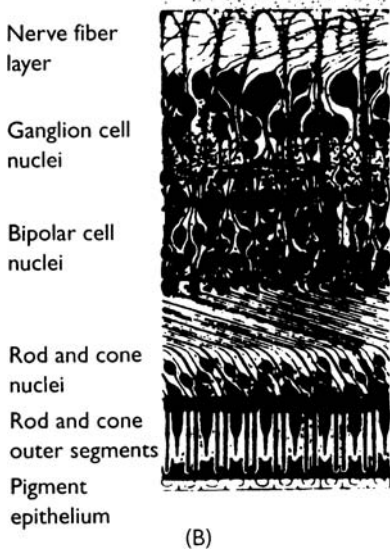
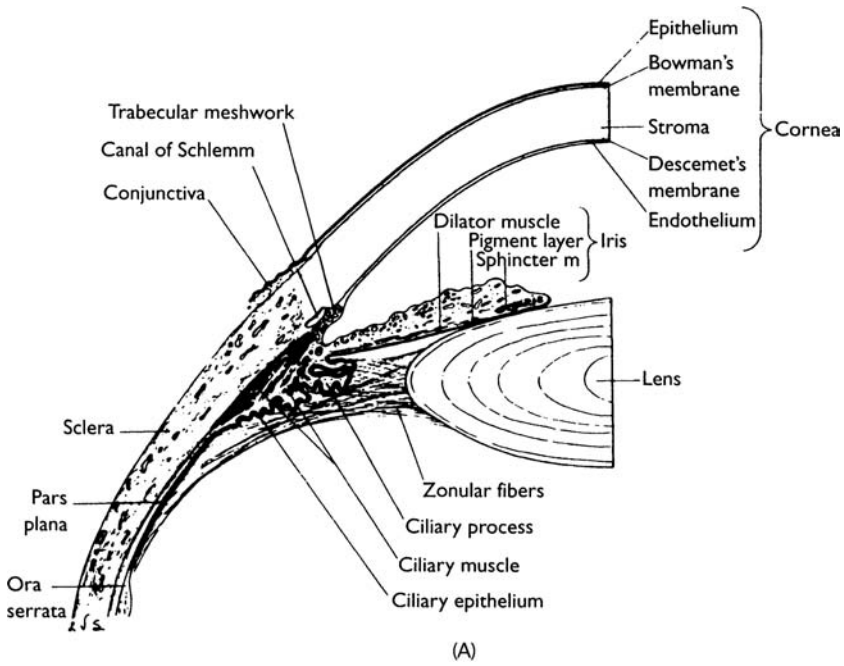
Because of their diverse physiologic nature and spatial relations, these various ocular structures may exhibit a variety of effects as a result of exposure to toxicants.

## TOXICANTS AND SITE OF THEIR EFFECTS

### Cornea

The cornea is a delicate structure and is subject to toxic effects of chemicals, mainly from external exposure. Chemicals that affect the cornea include acids and alkalies, detergents, organic solvents, and smog. Acids and alkalies can readily damage the cornea. The extent of damage ranges from minor, superficial destruction of the tissue, which heals completely, to opacity of the cornea or even perforation. Acid burns are related to the low pH as well as the affinity of the anion for the corneal tissue. The effects of alkalies usually have slower onset than those caused by acids and are essentially pH-dependent. However, ammonium ion, which is present in many household products, penetrates the cornea more readily and can thereby affect the iris (Potts, 1996).

Detergents are useful household and industrial products. In general, the nonionic detergents are less damaging than the ionic agents, and the cationics are more damaging than the anionics (Draize and Kelley, 1952). Organic solvents, such as acetone, hexane, and toluene, may enter the eye as a result of industrial



**Figure 1** (A) Cross section of the anterior chamber angle and surrounding structures. *Source:* From Vaughan and Asbury (1983). (B) Cross section of the retina. *Source:* From Polyak (1940).

or laboratory accidents. These substances can dissolve fat and damage the corneal epithelial cells.

Smog is a mixture of industrial smoke and fog. However, it now refers more often to the photochemical reaction products of automobile exhaust (see Chap. 23). These products accumulate under certain meteorologic conditions. They affect mainly the respiratory tract, but even at low concentrations they irritate the corneal sensory nerve endings and cause reflex lacrimation.

Other chemicals can affect the cornea following *systemic administration*. These include quinacrine, chloroquine, and chlorpromazine. Potts (1996) reviewed the corneal effects of these drugs and other chemicals. They affect the cornea via tears and/or after passing through the blood–aqueous barrier. However, they affect humans only rarely and only after large doses.

### **Iris, Aqueous Humor, and Ciliary Body**

Because of its proximity to the cornea, the iris is susceptible to physical trauma and chemical irritation. The effects of such irritation consist of leakage of serum proteins and fibrin as well as leukocytes from the blood vessels. These may be followed by fibroblast metaplasia. Severe damages to the iris cause liberation of melanin granules from the posterior epithelium of the iris.

The iris is innervated by sympathetic nerves (for the dilator muscles) and parasympathetic nerves (for the constrictor muscles). Therefore, the pupil can be dilated by chemicals that are sympathomimetic or parasympatholytic, and it can be constricted by parasympathomimetic and sympatholytic chemicals. Furthermore, the size of the pupil can be altered via the central nervous system by chemicals such as morphine and general anesthetics.

The aqueous humor is secreted by the epithelium of the ciliary body into the posterior chamber. It flows through the pupil into the anterior chamber and drains through the canal of Schlemm at the angle of the anterior chamber. Inflammatory changes of the iris can block the drainage of the fluid through the canal of Schlemm and raise the intraocular pressure, thereby inducing glaucoma. Atropine and other mydriatics may also precipitate glaucoma by dilating the pupil, thus blocking the drainage. Corticosteroids, applied topically or systemically, can also increase the intraocular pressure and cause glaucoma.

In the ciliary body is the ciliary muscle, the contraction of which allows relaxation of the ciliary zonule, which in turn allows the lens capsule to assume a more spherical form. This muscle is parasympathetically innervated; therefore, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors and parasympatholytic agents such as atropine can cause the lens to be fixed in different states of visual accommodation.

### **Lens**

A number of chemicals are known to alter the lenticular transparency, resulting in the formation of cataract. Examples are 2,4-dinitrophenol, corticosteroids, busulfan, triparanol, and thallium. Their cataractogenic property has been noted

in humans as well as in animals, such as the rabbit, rat, and young fowl. The effects generally follow systemic exposure, but with certain chemicals (e.g., corticosteroids, anticholinesterases), they may occur after topical application (Woods et al., 1967; Axelsson, 1968).

Diabetic patients are more likely to have cataracts, which can also be produced in rats and rabbits rendered diabetic with alloxan or streptozotocin (Heywood, 1982).

In addition, rats fed large amounts of galactose develop cataract (Sippel, 1966). This condition may be comparable to the cataract observed in infants with galactosemia. Such galactosemia results from a metabolic inability, inherited as an autosomal recessive trait, to convert galactose to glucose, because of the absence of the enzyme galactose-1-phosphate uridylyl transferase (Kinosita, 1965).

On the other hand, deficiencies of certain nutrients may also induce cataract. These nutrients include tryptophan, proteins, vitamin E, riboflavin, and folic acid (Gehring, 1971).

The mechanism underlying the formation of cataract is not fully understood. It is likely that it varies with the nature of the toxicant. For example, corticosteroid cataract may be mediated through an inhibition of protein synthesis in the lens (Ono, 1972). Busulfan may act through an interference of mitosis of the lenticular epithelial cells (Grimes and von Sallmann, 1966). Triparanol may interfere with the  $\text{Na}^+$  pump, resulting in an increase of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water in the lens (Harris and Gruber, 1972). The effect of dinitrophenol is likely to be mediated through the uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation (see also Chap. 4).

An extensive review of cataractogenic chemicals has been prepared by Gehring (1971). The cataratogenic chemicals are listed in Appendix 1.

Apart from cataractogenic effects, which are permanent, transient lens opacity has been noted in young beagle dogs following administration of some tranquilizers, some diuretics, and diisophenol. In addition, the transparency and refraction of the lens may also be altered by dimethyl sulfoxide and *p*-chlorophenylalanine (Heywood, 1982).

## Retina

Certain polycyclic compounds, such as chloroquine, hydroxychloroquine, and thioridazine, can induce retinopathy in humans and animals. They affect the visual acuity, dark adaptation, and retinal pigment pattern. Hyperoxia and iodate may also induce retinal changes.

Different mechanisms are involved in these retinal effects. Inhibition of protein metabolism in the pigment epithelium has been suggested as the primary toxic effect of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine, which have strong affinity for melanin (Meier-Ruge, 1972). Increased oxygen supply to the retina induces vasoconstriction, which is associated with a decrease in the supply of nutrients. The latter effect is probably responsible for the hyperoxia-induced retinal changes. Iodate apparently affects the pigment epithelium, the derangement of which results

in degeneration of the rod layer. The various reviewed modes of action has been provided by Heywood (1982). These include the early formation of membranous cytoplasmic bodies (myeloid bodies), degenerative changes in the cell body of the rods and cones, derangement of the intracytoplasmic rods, and the appearance of vacuoles around these rods in the tapetum.

Leong et al. (1987) reported that an important chemical intermediate, 4,4-methylenedianiline, a well-known hepatotoxicant, induces degeneration of the inner and outer segments of the photoreceptor cells in albino and pigmented guinea pigs. Other retinal effects include hemorrhage from rupture of blood vessels or disturbance of blood clotting mechanism and exudates, which may cause partial detachment of retina.

### Optic Nerve

As noted above, the retina contains, among other structures, the ganglion cells, the axons of which form the optic nerve. Toxicants can affect either the ganglion cells or the optic nerve. Damage to one of them often results in the degeneration of the other.

Some toxicants affect mainly the central vision. The most notable example is methanol. Others include carbon disulfide, disulfiram, ethambutol, and thallium. On the other hand, quinine, chloroquine, pentavalent arsenic, and carbon monoxide cause constriction of visual fields by damaging the structures responsible for peripheral vision. Interestingly, nitrobenzol affects both the central and peripheral vision (Harrington, 1976). While methyl mercury also causes constriction of visual field, its toxic effect is on the visual cortex instead of the optic nerve (Chap. 21).

These toxicants can also be classified according to their effects on other peripheral nerves. For example, quinine, ethambutol, and methanol generally do not affect other peripheral nerves, while carbon disulfide, disulfiram, and thallium cause both optic and peripheral neuropathies. It is worthy to note that certain organic solvents can induce peripheral neuropathy but spare the visual system. These include tri-*o*-cresyl phosphate, acrylamide, *n*-hexane, and methyl *n*-butyl ketone (Grant, 1980).

Clioquinol (also known as Vioform and Entero-Vioform) was widely used for the prevention and treatment of "traveler's diarrhea." It has reportedly caused more than 10,000 cases of SMON (subacute myelo-optic neuropathy), a disease affecting the optic nerves, spinal tracts, and peripheral nerves (Potts, 1996).

### TESTING PROCEDURES

Effects on the eye can be examined after topical application of the toxicants. In addition, systemic administration can also result in ocular alterations. Several types of examinations are available.

Albino rabbits are commonly used to determine the ocular irritancy of ophthalmic medications and other chemicals that might come in contact with the



eye. Dogs and nonhuman primates (rhesus monkeys) have also been used. For studying effects of toxicants on the lens, retina, and optical nerve, many species of animals are used, such as rat, rabbit, cat, dog, monkey, and pig.

### Gross Examination

The test described by Draize and Kelley (1952) has been a standard procedure for testing ocular irritancy. It specifies the use of nine rabbits. Into one eye of each rabbit is instilled 0.1 mL of the test material. In three of the nine rabbits, the test material is washed with 20 mL of lukewarm water two seconds after the instillation, and in three others, the washing is done with a four-second delay. In the three remaining rabbits, the material is left in the eye. The ocular reactions are read with the unaided eye or with the aid of a slit-lamp at 24, 48, and 72 hours and at four and seven days after treatment. The reactions on the conjunctiva (redness, chemosis, and discharge), cornea (the degree and extent of opacity), and iris (congestion, swelling, and circumcorneal injection) are scored according to a specified scale. A series of colored pictures, originally provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in 1965 as a guide for grading eye irritation, are available from the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, Washington, D.C. Samples were reproduced in Hackett and McDonald (1995).

Several modified versions of the Draize and Kelley test have been proposed. Griffith et al. (1980) reported on their results of assessing eye irritancy of a large number of substances. The irritancy ranged from nil to corrosive. The authors recommend that the following points should be taken into account in conducting eye irritation tests:

1. A 0.01-mL dose, or its weight equivalent for solids and powders, should be applied directly to the central corneal surface of at least six eyes without subsequent rinsing or manipulation of the eyelids.
2. Evaluation of the irritancy should be based on the median duration for the eyes to return to normal, instead of using a scoring system based on the type and extent of the effects.

The latest U.S. federal agency regulation (CPSC, 1988) requires the use of six albino rabbits for each test substance. For test liquids, 0.1 mL of the test material is used, and for solids and pastes, 100 mg of the test material is used. The test material is instilled into one eye of each rabbit without washing. Ocular examinations are done after 24, 48, and 72 hours. A rabbit is considered as having positive reaction if the eye shows, on any examination, ulceration or opacity of the cornea, inflammation of the iris, or swelling of the conjunctiva with partial eversion of the eyelids.

Another variation of the Draize procedure calls for the use of three rabbits whose eyes are examined at 1, 24, 48, and 72 hours. However, only one albino rabbit should be used first, if marked effects are expected. Furthermore, if it is

thought that the substance could cause unreasonable pain, a local anesthetic should be used. The grading of the eye irritation is shown in Appendix 2 (OECD, 1987).

### **Instrumental Examinations**

#### Ophthalmoscopy

The ophthalmoscope is used in assessing effects of toxicants on various parts of the retina. The examination is generally intended to discover the existence of edema, hyperemia or pallor, atrophy of the optic disk, pigmentation, or the state of the blood vessels. Changes in the vitreous humor, lens, aqueous humor, iris, and cornea can also be revealed.

#### Visual Perimetry

Effect on the visual field can be readily determined in humans, but not in laboratory animals, except the nonhuman primates. Merigan (1979) described a procedure using macaque monkeys to demonstrate the loss of peripheral vision resulting from exposure to methyl mercury.

#### Other Procedures

Visual acuity and color vision are sensitive and useful indicators of effects on the visual system in humans. Procedures involving instrumentation, such as electro-oculography, and visual-evoked responses are also useful and can be incorporated in animal experimentation (Grant, 1980).

### **Histologic and Biochemical Examinations**

Light microscopy can usually pinpoint the site of action of toxicants, electron microscopy can demonstrate ultrastructural changes, and biochemical studies can reveal the mechanism of toxic effects. For example, with light microscopy, chloroquine has been observed to cause a thickening of the pigment epithelium, followed by migration of the pigment to the outer nuclear layer, and finally total atrophy of the photoreceptors (Meier-Ruge, 1968). Electron microscopy showed mitochondrial swelling and disorganization of the endoplasmic reticulum in the photoreceptor inner segment (Solze and McConnell, 1970). Biochemical studies revealed inhibition of many enzymatic reactions, especially those related to protein metabolism of the pigment epithelium.

#### In Vitro Tests

Because of humane concerns about the use of animals in eye irritation tests, a number of in vitro tests have been developed. They involve the use of cells from isolated cornea and chorioallantoic membrane and measuring their uptake of dyes, such as neutral red, as an indicator of toxicity. Other proposed procedures include isolated rabbit eye and isolated chicken eye (Green, 1998). However, these tests apparently require much refinement and extensive validation.

## EVALUATION

Eye irritation tests are widely used to assess the ocular irritancy of chemicals. In general, the albino rabbit is the animal of choice. Some intralaboratory and interlaboratory variations in the scores were noted in a collaborative study (Marzulli and Ruggles, 1973). Nevertheless, periodic collaborative studies tend to improve the reliability of the scores. The various modifications made on the Draize test also tend to reduce the variability of the results.

A large number of animal experimentations and clinical studies indicate that there is a fair correlation between humans and animals in their reactions to toxicants with respect to cataract formation and retinopathy (Grant, 1980; Potts, 1996).

## REFERENCES

- Axelsson U (1968). Glaucoma, miotic therapy and cataract. III. Visual loss due to lens changes in glaucoma eyes treated with paraoxon (Mintacol), echothiophate or pilocarpine. *Acta Ophthalmol* 46, 831.
- CPSC (1988). Consumer product safety commission. Test for eye irritants. Code of federal regulations, Title 16. Federal Hazardous Substances Act Regulation, Part 1500.42.
- Draize JH, Kelley EA (1952). Toxicity to eye mucosa of certain cosmetic preparations containing surface-active agents. *Proc Sci Sect Toilet Goods Assoc* 17, 1–4.
- Gehring PJ (1971). The cataractogenic activity of chemical agents. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 1, 93–118.
- Grant WM (1980). The peripheral visual system as a target. In: Spencer BS, Schaumburg HH, eds. *Experimental and Clinical Neurotoxicology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins.
- Green S (1998). Update on agency initiatives in alternative methods. In: Margulli FN, Maribach HI, eds. *Dermatology Methods: The Laboratory Worker's Vade Mecum*. Philadelphia, PA: Taylor & Francis, 377–382.
- Griffith JF, Nixon GA, Bruce RD, et al. (1980). Dose–response studies with chemical irritants in the albino rabbit eye as a basis for selecting optimum testing conditions for predicting hazard to the human eye. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 55, 501–513.
- Grimes P, Von Sallmann L (1966). Interference with cell proliferation and induction of polyploidy in rat lens epithelium during prolonged Myleran treatment. *Exp Cell Res* 62, 265–273.
- Hackett RB, McDonald TO (1995). Assessing ocular irritation. In: Marzulli FN, Maibach HI, eds. *Dermatotoxicology*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Harrington DO (1976). *The Visual Fields*. St. Louis, MI: Mosby.
- Harris JE, Gruber L (1972). Reversal of triparanol-induced cataracts in the rat. II. Exchange of <sup>22</sup>Na, <sup>42</sup>K, <sup>86</sup>Rb in cataractous and clearing lenses. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 11, 608–616.
- Heywood R (1982). Histopathological and laboratory assessment of visual dysfunction. *Environ Health Perspect* 44, 35–45.
- Kinosita JH (1965). Cataracts in galactosemia. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 4, 786–799.
- Leong BKJ, Lund JE, Groehn JA, et al. (1987). Retinopathy from inhaling 4,4'-methylenedianiline aerosols. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 9, 645–658.
- Marzulli FN, Ruggles DI (1973). Rabbit eye irritation test: Collaborative study. *J Am Assoc Anal Chem* 56, 905–914.

- Meier-Ruge M (1968). The pathophysiological morphology of the pigment epithelium and its importance for retinal structure and function. *Med Prob Ophthalmol* 8, 32–48.
- Meier-Ruge W (1972). Drug-induced retinopathy. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 1, 325–360.
- Merigan WH (1979). Effects of toxicants on visual systems. *Neurobehav Toxicol* 1(suppl. 1), 1522.
- OECD (1987). *OECD Guidelines for Testing of Chemicals*. Paris: Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.
- Ono S (1972). Presence of corticol-binding protein in the lens. *Ophthalmic Res* 3, 233–240.
- Polyak S (1940). *The Retina*. Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press.
- Potts AM (1996). Toxic responses of the eye. In: Klaassen CD, ed. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- Sippel TO (1966). Changes in water, protein and glutathione contents of the lens in the course of galactose cataract development in rats. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 5, 568–575.
- Solze DA, McConnell DG (1970). Ultrastructural changes in the rat photoreceptor inner segment during experimental chloroquine retinopathy. *Ophthal Res* 1, 140–148.
- Vaughan D, Ashbury T (1983). *General Ophthalmology*, 10th ed. Los Altos, CA: Lange Medical Publications.
- Woods DC, Contaxis I, Sweet D, et al. (1967). Response of rabbits to corticosteroids. I. Influence on growth, intraocular pressure and lens transparency. *Am J Ophthalmol* 63, 841–849.

## Appendix 1 Cataractogenic Chemicals

---

Sugars (glucose, galactose, xylose)	Tyrosine
Streptozotocin	2,4-Dinitrophenol (DNP) and related compounds
Corticosteroids	
Naphthalene	Alkylating agents
Mimosine (leucenol)	Anticholinesterases
Methoxsalen	Chlorpromazine
Methionine sulfoximine	Triparanol
Polyribinosinic acid	Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO)
polyribocytidylic acid	2,4,6-Trinitrotoluene (TNT)
Quietidine (1,4-bis(phenylisopropyl)-piperazine-2HCl)	Sympathomimetic drugs and morphine-like drugs
<i>N</i> -Phenyl- $\beta$ -hydrazinopropionitriles and related compounds	2,6-Dichloro-4-nitroaniline
	Iodoacetic acid
4 [3(7-Chloro-5,11-dihydrodibenz [b,e][1,4]-oxyazepin-5-YL)propyl]-1-piperazineethanol dichloride	Mephenytoin
	Diquat
	Oral contraceptives
	Sulfaethoxypyridazine
	Thallium
	Paradichlorobenzene
	Heptachlor
	Desferal
	Thioacetamide

---

## Appendix 2 Grading of Eye Irritation

---

### *Cornea*

No ulceration or opacity	0
Scattered or diffuse areas of opacity (other than slight dulling of normal lustre), details of iris clearly visible	1
Easily discernible translucent area, details of iris slightly obscured	2
Nacrous area, no details of iris visible, size of pupil barely discernible	3
Opaque cornea, iris not discernible through the opacity	4

### *Iris*

Normal	0
Markedly deepened rugae, congestion, swelling, moderate circumcorneal hyperemia, or injection, any of these or combination of any thereof, iris still reacting to light (sluggish reaction is positive)	1
No reaction to light, hemorrhage, gross destruction (any or all of these)	2

### *Conjunctiva redness (refers to palpebral and bulbar conjunctiva, cornea, and iris)*

Blood vessels normal	0
Some blood vessels definitely hyperemic (injected)	1
Diffuse, crimson color, individual vessels not easily discernible	2
Diffuse beefy red	3

### *Chemosis: lids and/or nictating membranes*

No swelling	0
Any swelling above normal (includes nictating membranes)	1
Obvious swelling with partial eversion of lids	2
Swelling with lids about half closed	3
Swelling with lids more than half closed	4

---

Source: From OECD (1987).



## Toxicology of the Nervous System

### CONTENTS

Introduction	236
Central and Peripheral Nervous Systems	236
Cells and Appendages	236
Neurotransmitters	237
Blood–Brain and Blood–Nerve Barriers	237
Blood–Brain Barrier (BBB)	237
Blood–Nerve Barrier (BNB)	238
Neurotoxic Effects and Neurotoxicants	238
Neuronopathy	238
Axonopathy	240
Proximal Axonopathy	240
Distal Axonopathy	241
Interference with Impulse Conduction	242
Interference with Synaptic Transmission	242
Glial Cells and Myelin	243
Myelinating Cells	243
Myelin Sheath	243
Blood Vessels and Edema	244
Extracellular Edema	244
Cellular Edema	244
Testing Procedures	244
Functional Observational Battery (FOB)	244
Neurologic Examinations	245
Morphologic Examinations	245
Electrophysiologic Examinations	246
Peripheral Nerves	246
Electromyography	246

Behavioral Studies: Testing Procedures	246
Simple Tests	247
More Involved Tests	247
Procedures to Enhance Sensitivity	247
Animals	247
Evaluation	248
References	249
Appendix 1 Select Neurotoxicants Described in the Text	251

## INTRODUCTION

As a vital part of the body, the nervous system is shielded from toxicants in the blood by a unique protective mechanism, namely, the blood–brain and blood–nerve barriers. Nonetheless, it is susceptible to a variety of toxicants. For example, methyl mercury affects mainly the nervous system, although its concentration in the brain is comparable to that in most other tissues, and in fact it is much lower than that in the liver and kidneys.

The greater susceptibility may be attributed partly to the fact that neurons have a high metabolic rate, with little capacity for anaerobic metabolism. Furthermore, being electrically excitable, neurons tend to lose cell membrane integrity more readily. The great length of the axons is another reason why the nervous system is especially susceptible to toxic effects, because the cell body must supply its axon structurally and metabolically.

To facilitate the description of the various types of toxic effects and the procedures for their testing, the various parts of the nervous system are described.

### Central and Peripheral Nervous Systems

The nervous system consists of two major parts: the central nervous system (CNS) and the peripheral nervous system (PNS). The CNS is made up of the brain and the spinal cord, and the PNS includes the cranial and spinal nerves, which are either motor or sensory. The neurons of the sensory spinal nerves are located in the ganglia in the dorsal roots. In addition, the PNS also includes the sympathetic nerve system, which arises from neurons in the thoracic and lumbar region of the spinal cord, and the parasympathetic system, which stems from nerve fibers leaving the CNS via the cranial nerves and the sacral spinal roots.

### Cells and Appendages

The principal cells in the nervous system are neurons, composed of perikarya, along with their dendrites and axons. These structures are responsible for the conduction of nerve impulses. The main supporting structure consists of various types of glial cells. Apart from a lack of conductivity, the glial cells differ from neurons in that the former, as most other types of cells, do reproduce, whereas the latter do not.



In the CNS the glial cells include astrocytes, oligodendrocytes (oligodendroglia), and microglia. Astrocytes help to maintain a proper microenvironment around the neurons and support the blood–brain barrier (BBB). Oligodendroglia surrounds the axons in the CNS with a lipid-rich material, the myelin sheath, which provides electrical insulation. Microglia are basically macrophages that are located in the CNS. In the PNS the Schwann cells provide the myelin sheath, which wraps around the axon. The myelin sheath is interrupted by the nodes of Ranvier.

### **Neurotransmitters**

Neurons are connected, via their axons, to other neurons at their dendrites or to the receptors in the glands or muscles. At nerve terminals, on excitation by an action potential, chemical neurotransmitters are released. The most common transmitters are acetylcholine and norepinephrine. However, there are several amine neurotransmitters in addition to norepinephrine, that is, dopamine, serotonin, and histamine. Furthermore, the following amino acids also act as neurotransmitters: 7-aminobutyric acid (GABA), glycine, glutamate, and aspartate. These transmitters are small molecules and act rapidly. They are synthesized in the presynaptic terminals. These neurotransmitters are presynthesized, stored in synaptic vesicles, and released upon excitation. Nitric oxide (NO), a recently discovered neurotransmitter, is different from the others in that, as a labile free radical, it is not presynthesized for storage in synaptic vesicles. It is synthesized, on demand, from l-arginine by NO synthase (Zhang and Snyder, 1995).

In addition to these small molecule neurotransmitters, a large number of neuropeptides are slow-acting neurotransmitters/modulators. Some are released by the pituitary gland: ACTH,  $\beta$ -endorphin, growth hormone, thyrotropin, oxytocin, and vasopressin. A number of peptide transmitters act on gut and brain, for example, leucine enkephalin and methionine enkephalin.

### **Blood–Brain and Blood–Nerve Barriers**

These barriers protect the nervous system from certain neurotoxicants. Differences in neurotoxicity sometimes can be explained on the basis of these barriers.

#### Blood–Brain Barrier (BBB)

The endothelium in the brain is impermeable to substances of medium molecular weight, such as horseradish peroxidase (mol. wt.: 40,000; diameter: 5–6 nm), because the adjacent cells are tightly joined. Further, these cells have few micropinocytotic vesicles, which in capillaries of other tissues serve as an important transport mechanism across endothelial cells. However, highly lipid-soluble substances and the nonionized fraction of a chemical are more permeable across the BBB. It is, therefore, similar to intact cell membranes in permeability.

The BBB is absent where the cells produce hormones or act as hormonal or chemoreceptors. Glutamate and a number of related compounds were shown

to affect areas in the brain not protected by the BBB, such as the arcuate nucleus of the hypothalamus and the *area postrema* in various laboratory animals. These effects, while not observed in humans, are of interest because they may be used as tools in the study of such clinical conditions as Huntington's disease, drug-induced Parkinsonism, tardive dyskinesia, and sulfur amino acidopathies.

The BBB is effective in excluding many neurotoxicants, such as diphtheria, staphylococcus, and tetanus toxins. This is also true with doxorubicin, which affects the dorsal root ganglia but not the CNS. Mercury chloride has a small molecule but is hydrophilic and exists mainly in ionic form. Its concentration in the brain is minimal and so are its CNS effects. On the other hand, methyl mercury is lipophilic and thus readily crosses the BBB, thereby damaging the brain.

#### Blood–Nerve Barrier (BNB)

Peripheral nerves are covered by two connective tissue sheaths, the perineurium and epineurium, and interlaced with the endoneurium. The BNB is provided by the blood vessels in the endoneurium and supplemented by the lamellated cells of the perineural sheath. The BNB is not as effective as the BBB; therefore, the dorsal root ganglia are generally more susceptible than the neurons in the CNS to neurotoxicants. For example, doxorubicin affects neurons in the dorsal root ganglia but not those in the brain.

### NEUROTOXIC EFFECTS AND NEUROTOXICANTS

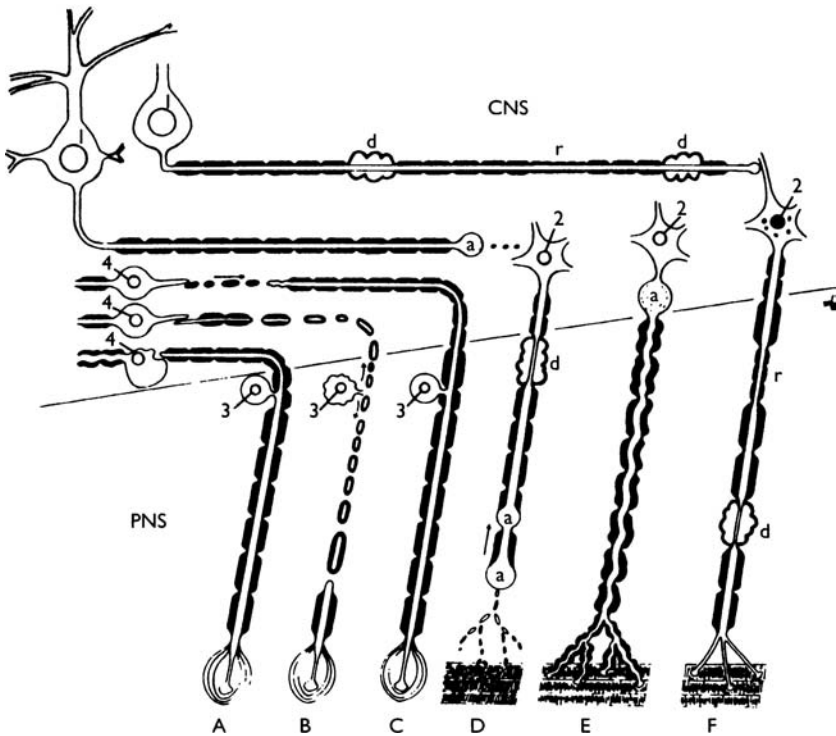
The effects may be classified according to the site of action. These include the neurons, the axons, the glial cells, and the vascular system. A toxicant, however, may affect more than one site. The following is a brief description of certain neurotoxic effects, along with the putative mode of action, grouped according to the site of action.

Figure 1 depicts damages to neurons, axons, and myelin sheath. *Neuronopathy* is represented by the damage to a second-order sensory neuron (4), which innervates corpuscle A, and a neuron in the dorsal root ganglion (3), which innervates corpuscle B. *Axonopathy* is represented by the damaged central axonal process of a sensory neuron, which innervates corpuscle C, and the axons of the lower motor neurons (2), which innervates muscle fibers D and E. *Myelinopathy* is shown along the axons of upper (1) and lower (2) motor neurons which innervates muscle fiber F.

Some neurotoxicants that induce these and other damages are described below.

#### Neuronopathy

Neurons, being dependent mainly on glucose as an energy source, are susceptible to anoxic and hypoglycemic conditions. A number of chemicals are well known for their anoxic effects in the brain. Barbiturates induce anoxia in



**Figure 1** Cellular target sites of some neurotoxic chemicals illustrated by upper (1) and lower (2) motor neurons, dorsal root ganglion cells (3), and second-order sensory neurons (4) in the gracile nucleus of the medulla oblongata. The central nervous system (CNS) is represented above the sloping horizontal line and the peripheral nervous system (PNS) below. The peripheral receptors on fibers A–C are pacinian corpuscles. Fibers D–F innervate extrafusal muscle fibers: a, axonal degeneration; d, demyelination; r, remyelination of ventral root, and medulla oblongata. *Source:* Adapted from Spencer et al. (1980).

the brain, especially in hippocampus and cerebellum. Permanent CNS damage even after barbiturate coma, however, is rare, possibly because of the reduced cell metabolism. On the other hand, prolonged exposure to carbon monoxide may induce permanent effects in the brain, arising from the development of a diffuse sclerosis of the white matter (leukoencephalopathy). Cyanide and azide inhibit cytochrome oxidase, thereby producing cytotoxic anoxia. Contamination of food products with tricresyl phosphate was shown to produce a delayed neuropathy related to inhibition of “neuropathy target esterase” whereby there is damage to spinal nerves, the spinal cord, brain, and other tissues (Craig and Barth, 1999). This type of neuropathy also occurs following exposure to organophosphorous insecticides (Pope, 1999; see below).

The cell body of neurons may be affected directly by toxicants. Methyl mercury first produces focal loss of ribosomes and then disintegration and disappearance of the Nissl substances, especially in the small cells. These are followed by nuclear and perinuclear changes and finally by the loss of the entire neuron including its axon (Jacobs et al., 1977). The herbicide paraquat produces destruction of dopaminergic neurons via oxidative stress (Yang and Tiffany-Castiglioni, 2008). The paraquat-induced neuronal effects resemble the manifestations in Parkinson's disease. Doxorubicin (Adriamycin) affects neurons by intercalating with DNA, leading to a breakdown of the helical structures (Cho et al., 1980). This derangement inhibits the synthesis of RNA and neuronal protein. Since this drug does not cross the BBB, it can affect the neurons in the dorsal root ganglia [Fig. 1(B)] and autonomic ganglia, but not those in the CNS. On the other hand, methyl mercury does penetrate the BBB and thus damages the neurons in the CNS as well as those in the dorsal root ganglia.

Organotins are used as pesticides and as plasticizers. Upon entering the nervous system, they accumulate in the Golgi-like structures in the cell body. The cells then undergo swelling and necrosis (Bouldin et al., 1981).

Aluminum also penetrates the BBB and induces encephalopathy with neurofibrillar degeneration in cat and rabbit (DeBoni et al., 1976). Recent reviews conclude that the use of aluminum cooking utensils and the use of various aluminum-containing food additives are safe (Soni et al., 2001; Krewski et al., 2007).

Glutamate and related chemicals, in very large doses, are known to affect areas of the CNS devoid of BBB (see section blood-brain barrier, page 237) and are considered as having neuroexcitatory and neurotoxic effects. The dendrites are the primary site of action. The perikarya are then affected, but the axons are spared [Fig. 1(A)]. The toxicity may be mediated through NO (Dawson et al., 1991). Kainic acid is derived from a particular seaweed and it has been used in ascariasis; it is similar to glutamate but much more potent (Olney et al., 1974).

Alcohol in pregnant women may induce in their offspring abnormalities in the nervous system including abnormal neuronal migration and abnormal development of dendritic spines (Abel et al., 1983).

### **Axonopathy**

Some axons are very long (up to 1 m), and the elements in the axons, such as neurofibrils, are synthesized not locally but in the cell body, and are transported along the axon. The axon may therefore be attacked either directly by toxicants or indirectly through damages to the cell body. Lesions may occur either in the proximal or in the distal sections of axons.

#### Proximal Axonopathy

$\beta,\beta$ -Iminodipropionitrile (IDPN) produces typical lesions of this type. IDPN has therefore been used as a model to study motor neuron diseases such as

amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. The primary effect of IDPN is the impairment of slow axonal transport of neurofilaments, probably through aberrant phosphorylation of neurofilaments (Gold and Austin, 1991), while their synthesis is continued in the cell body. The accumulation of neurofilaments in the proximal axon causes it to enlarge and the distal axon to atrophy [Fig. 1(E)]. The enlarged proximal axon in turn elicits local proliferation of the subpial astrocytic processes and extension of the processes filled with glial filaments along the proximal ventral root. The proximal swelling also stimulates splitting of myelin at the intraperiod line, formation of intramyelinic vacuoles, and ultimate demyelination. The Schwann cells in the demyelinated segment divide and remyelinate, and the repeated demyelination and remyelination give rise to "onion-bulb" formation (Griffin and Price, 1980).

### Distal Axonopathy

Axons contain three types of neurofibrillary structures, namely, neurotubules, neurofilaments, and microfilaments. In addition, they contain mitochondria and smooth endoplasmic reticulum. These structures are especially susceptible to a variety of neurotoxicants. For example, thallium induces mitochondrial swelling and degeneration, and certain organophosphates and organic solvents cause derangement of the neurofibrillary structures, resulting in distal axonopathy.

An important type of distal axonopathy is produced by certain organophosphorus compounds such as TOCP (tri-*o*-cresyl phosphate), EPN, and leptophos. These compounds, besides inhibiting acetylcholinesterase, produce *delayed neuropathy*, which manifests mainly as paralysis of muscles. It affects especially long and large nerve fibers, hence the hindlimbs are paralyzed before the forelimbs. TOCP has induced delayed neuropathy in 10,000 humans (see Appendix 2 of Chap. 1). Although a number of other animals may also be affected, especially after repeated exposures, this toxicity is readily reproduced in hens, usually with a delay of 8 to 10 days after exposure. Because of the severity of delayed neurotoxicity, new organophosphorus chemicals are routinely tested for this potential hazard. OECD (1984) and EPA (1994) have published guidelines for such tests both after a single dose and after repeated administrations, using domestic hens. The condition is unrelated to acetylcholinesterase inhibition because such potent inhibitors as malathion, parathion, and carbaryl do not possess this toxic property. It is apparently associated with phosphorylation of the enzyme neuropathy target esterase (NTE; formerly known as neurotoxic esterase) (Abou-Donia, 1981; Johnson, 1990; Pope, 1999).

A different type of distal axonopathy is known to be produced by hexacarbons such as *n*-hexane and methyl *n*-butyl ketone. These solvents produced toxic polyneuropathy among industrial workers, as has acrylamide (Exon 2006). Both produce marked neurofilament proliferation in axons, probably as a result of altered phosphorylation of certain proteins (Berti-Mattera et al., 1990). However, giant axonal swellings are common with hexacarbons [Fig. 1(D)], but are rare with acrylamide. Furthermore, sensory nerves are involved early with acrylamide but late with hexacarbons, which affect certain motor nerves first. Vincristine may

produce accumulation of neurofibrils in the perikarya and axons. Vincristine disrupts the axonal neurotubules and neurofilaments, and blocks axoplasmic transport of these ultrastructures.

Clioquinol, a popular remedy and preventive for “travelers’ diarrhea” in the 1960s and 1970s, induced disorders of the nervous system known as subacute myelo-optic neuropathy (SMON) in thousands of individuals (Appendix 2 of Chap. 1). In humans and experimental animals, this compound produces central axonal degeneration of the dorsal root ganglion [Fig. 1(C)], as well as optic nerves (Worden et al., 1978).

Distal axonopathy has also been hypothesized as resulting from impairment of glycolytic enzyme activities in the axon (Spencer et al., 1979). These enzymes are responsible for the transport of neurofilaments, which are synthesized in the perikaryon and transported along the axon. Impairment of the activities of these enzymes would thus first affect the distal portion of the axon as well as the large, long nerve fibers, which have a greater energy demand on the perikarya. A second hypothesis postulates that the neurofilaments are directly affected by toxicants such as hexacarbons and acrylamide (Savolainen, 1977). Neurofilaments exposed to the toxicant for the longest period, namely, those located distally in long fibers, would be affected first.

#### Interference with Impulse Conduction

A number of toxicants act mainly on nerve membranes. These membranes normally maintain a negative resting potential. When stimulated, an action potential is generated. The resting and action potentials result from differences in the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations across the membrane, and their concentrations are maintained by the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. Tetrodotoxin, the toxic principle of puffer fish, has been shown to block the action potential by blocking the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. Saxitoxin, the toxic principle produced by the dinoflagellate *Gonyaulax* and taken up by the clam *Saxidomas giganteus*, also acts by blocking the sodium channels. Consumption of improperly cleaned puffer fish or contaminated clam can cause death by respiratory failure. DDT and pyrethroids are markedly different in chemical structure. However, their effects on the nervous systems are similar. They prolong the opening of the sodium channel, thereby initiating repetitive activity at the synapses and neuromuscular junctions (Narahashi, 1992).

#### Interference with Synaptic Transmission

Botulinum toxin, the most potent biologic toxin, is produced by *Clostridium botulinum*. Botulinum toxin produces paralysis of muscles by impairing the release of acetylcholine from motor nerve endings. Black widow spider venom, on the other hand, produces an excessive release of acetylcholine and results in cramps and paralysis.

Tetanoplasmin, from the microbe *Clostridium tetani*, causes tetanus through its effect on the CNS. Tetanoplasmin blocks release of the inhibitory amino acid transmitters GABA and glycine, thereby producing spastic paralysis. The

molecular weight of this proteinaceous dimer is about 150,000, therefore too large to cross the BBB. However, it reaches the CNS by retrograde axonal transport (Schield et al., 1977).

Certain neurotoxins (e.g., anatoxin-S) may be produced by cyanobacteria in eutrophied lakes and ponds (Chap. 23). These toxins interfere with transmission of impulses from nerve terminals to muscles, thereby causing muscle paralysis (Carmicheal, 1994).

Acrylamide produces neurotoxicity by interfering with kinesin-related motor proteins in neurofilaments that are involved in fast antegrade transport of nerve signals between axons. Inhibition of these motor proteins and transaxonal transport of nerve growth factors results in impaired molecular transport from the cell body to distal axon, leading to death of the nerve body. This is manifested as hindlimb splay, ataxia, and skeletal muscle weakness (Exon, 2006).

## Glial Cells and Myelin

### Myelinating Cells

Demyelination can result from injuries to myelinating cells (oligodendrocytes and Schwann cells). Neurotoxins of this type include lead, which affects Schwann cells possibly by interfering with their  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport. Hypocholesterolemic agents such as triparanol, as expected, disrupt myelin sheath because of the high (70%) lipid content of myelin. However, they produce ultrastructural changes in oligodendrocytes before demyelination occurs. Diphtheria toxin demyelinate possibly by affecting both the myelin and the myelinating cells. Triethyltin, ethidium bromide, and actinomycin are other examples of demyelinating toxins that act on the myelinating cells. The pesticide rotenone produces degeneration of the ganglion cell layer resulting in a neurodegenerative disorder associated with destruction of the mitochondria (Zhang et al., 2006). This phenomenon is found in Leber's optic neuropathy and Parkinson's disease.

### Myelin Sheath

Demyelination can also result from effects on the myelin sheath. This type of effect generally involves a disruption of the membrane structure. Other modes of action include (1) inhibition of carbonic anhydrase or other enzymes involved in ion and water transport, (2) inhibition of enzymes involved in oxidative phosphorylation, and (3) chelation of metals. Neurotoxicants that act directly on the myelin sheath include triethyltin, lysolecithin, isoniazid, cyanate, hexachlorophene, and lead. Acetyl ethyl tetramethyl tetralin (AETT) also causes myelinopathy through a complex mechanism [Fig. 1(F)].

Lead has been known for centuries as a neurotoxicant. Lead affects various parts of the nervous system, including myelin sheath. The PNS is affected before the CNS. In addition, lead affects motor nerves before the sensory, resulting in "wrist-drop" and "foot-drop." Its effects on the blood vessels are discussed below.

## **Blood Vessels and Edema**

The permeability of the vascular system in the CNS and PNS may be increased by higher blood pressure or lower plasma osmolarity. It may also result from exposure to certain toxins. The greater permeability generally leads to an accumulation of fluids in the extracellular space. In addition, a number of neurotoxicants are known to induce cellular edema.

### Extracellular Edema

Lead can damage the endothelial cells and cause extravasation of plasma in the brain, especially in the white matter, which has a greater compliance than the gray matter. That suckling rats are more susceptible to lead has been attributed to the immaturity of the vascular system (Press, 1977). Lead has similar effects on the endoneurium, leading to increased endoneural fluid pressure and demyelination. Organic lead, such as tetraethyl lead, more readily penetrates the barriers and is therefore more toxic in this respect.

Mercury compounds can damage the endothelial cells and increase their permeability. Organic arsenicals produce edema and focal hemorrhages in the brain. Tellurium produces edema in the endoneurium. Chronic alcoholism is associated with endoneural edema.

Endoneural edema can also result from intramyelinic edema in hexachlorophene intoxication. Endoneural edema may also be associated with Wallerian degeneration due to mechanical injury.

### Cellular Edema

Various parts of neurons may become edematous following exposure to toxicants. For example, 6-aminonicotinamide affects the perikaryon, cyanide and carbon monoxide affect the axon, and ouabain and methylsulfoxime affect the presynaptic nerve endings.

Edema of astrocytes and oligodendrocytes may be produced by 6-aminonicotinamide. Ouabain can also affect astrocytes. Edema of Schwann cells may be induced by lead, which, as noted above, may also produce extracellular edema.

Triethyltin and isoniazid also produce edema of the myelin sheaths in the CNS. Hexachlorophene induces edema of the myelin sheaths both in the white matter of the brain and in the peripheral nerves.

## **TESTING PROCEDURES**

### **Functional Observational Battery (FOB)**

A battery of observations has been devised to assess the neurotoxic effects (EPA, 1994; Kallman and Fowler, 1994). These are done in intact animals, usually rats or mice, and can be incorporated in other tests (Chap. 6). These animals are



exposed to the toxicant at two or three doses by an appropriate route. The duration of treatment and observation period vary from days to months according to the nature of the toxicant. The animals are observed for the following abnormalities:

- (a) Unusual body position, activity level, gait, etc.
- (b) Unusual behavior such as compulsive biting, self-mutilation, circling, and walking backwards.
- (c) The presence of convulsions, tremors, lacrimation, red-colored tears, salivation, diarrhea, vocalization, etc.
- (d) Changes in sensory and motor functions (for details, see the following sections).

### Neurologic Examinations

These examinations often provide an indication of the site of neurotoxicity. Most of these examinations can be performed in humans as well as in animals. The exceptions relate to the determination of *mental state* and many *sensory functions*, which can be more readily assessed in humans.

*Cranial nerves* I through XII have different functions, and their tests therefore vary. For example, tests of the acoustic and optic nerves involve the evaluation of responses to sound and light stimuli.

*Motor examination* includes inspection of muscles for weakness, atrophy, and fasciculation, which indicate dysfunction of the lower motor neuron, that is, the anterior horn cells, motor roots, and peripheral nerves. Spasticity is a sign of dysfunction of the upper motor neurons in the brain and their axons down to the spinal cord. Resting tremor is often associated with lesions in the basal ganglia or cerebellum. Intention tremor occurs during voluntary movement and is a manifestation of cerebellar disease.

*Reflex examination* includes deep tendon reflexes, the functioning of which involves the intrafusal receptors, dorsal root ganglia, anterior horn cells and their axons, neuromuscular junction, and muscle. Damages to any of these structures will cause these reflexes to be absent or hypoactive. On the other hand, when there is upper motor neuron dysfunction, these reflexes will be exaggerated. The Babinski reflex is the most important superficial cutaneous reflex. Abnormal response is an indication of corticospinal dysfunction.

*Gait* abnormalities may also aid in locating the site of toxicity. For example, lower motor neuron disease causes high-stepping gait. A scissoring, or stiff, gait indicates upper motor neuron lesion. Cerebellar dysfunction results in an ataxic or reeling gait.

### Morphologic Examinations

Neurotoxicants may act on the CNS, the PNS, or both. They may induce lesions in the neuronal perikaryon or its axon, either proximally or distally, the myelinating cells or the myelin sheath itself, the astrocytes, or the endothelial cells.

Morphologic examinations are therefore important in establishing the precise site of toxic lesions on an anatomic level. Examinations on cellular and ultrastructural levels often facilitate the differential diagnosis of the neuropathy.

Some of the commonly used techniques, along with a list of references, have been provided by Spencer et al. (1980). It is worth noting, however, that damages to endothelial cells can be demonstrated not only by signs of edema (fewer cells and nerve fiber per unit area) but also by increases in the pressure of the intracranial and endoneural fluids as well as by the penetration of tracer substances, such as horseradish peroxidase, through the endothelium.

## Electrophysiologic Examinations

### Peripheral Nerves

A frequently used examination involves the measurement of *motor nerve* conduction velocity. This can be done on intact animals subjected to short-term or chronic exposure to neurotoxicants or on exposed nerves after local application of the toxicants. *Sensory nerve* conduction velocity and action potentials have also been measured in the study of neurotoxicity.

### Electromyography

This procedure calls for the examination of the electrical activities of a muscle, at rest and when contracted, recorded with the aid of a needle electrode inserted into the muscle. Neurotoxicities may manifest as (1) abnormal insertional activity, (2) occurrence of spontaneous electrical activity of a resting muscle, and (3) interference pattern of electrical activity of motor units during voluntary muscle contraction (Goodgold and Eberstein, 1977).

## BEHAVIORAL STUDIES: TESTING PROCEDURES

There is a large body of information on behavioral toxicology, resulting from a widespread feeling that behavior is a subtle and sensitive indicator of toxicity. However, this view has been questioned, for example, by Norton (1980), who stated: "Scientific data supporting this view are not only scanty but the available evidence often flatly contradicts this assumption." In the hope that improved testing procedures would increase the sensitivity and utility of this approach in neurotoxicology, this branch of neurotoxicology will undoubtedly grow. A few highlights of this subject are presented below.

The tests involve two types of responses: (1) unconditioned responses, which are either emitted (spontaneous) or elicited (reflex), and (2) conditioned responses, which may be considered as either "classic conditioning" (Pavlov) or operant conditioning (Skinner). The extent of training of the experimental animals required and the neurobehavioral function to be assessed are also useful criteria for the classification of the tests.

**Table 1** Examples of Primary Level Neurobehavioral Tests for Rats or Mice

Neurobehavioral function	Behavioral test
Sensory	
Visual, olfactory, somatosensory, auditory	Localization
Pain	Tail flick
Orientation in space	Negative geotaxis
Motor	
Spontaneous activity	Activity in Automex
Muscular weakness	Forelimb grip; hindlimb extensor
Fatigability	Swim endurance
Tremor	Frequency of occurrence
Cognitive–associative	
Learning and retention	One-way avoidance; step-through passive avoidance
Affective–emotional	
Responsiveness	Startle to air puff; emergence in a novel environment
Physiologic–consummatory	
Thermoregulation	Body weight; food and water ingestion; core temperature

Source: From Tilson et al. (1980).

EPA (1994) has provided some guidelines on schedule-controlled operant behavior.

**Simple Tests**

Tilson et al. (1980) listed tests that require little or no prior training of the experimental animals (rats and mice) (Table 1).

**More Involved Tests**

The tests listed in Table 2 require extended or special training, frequent evaluation, and/or manipulation of motivational factors.

**Procedures to Enhance Sensitivity**

Because of the large functional reserve of the brain, focal damages may not result in any overt brain dysfunction. Such damages, however, may be demonstrated clinically with the use of *provocative* tests. These involve administering sodium amobarbital, raising body temperature, or lowering blood pH with the intravenous infusion of ammonium chloride (Lehrer, 1974).

**Animals**

Apart from rats and mice, other animals such as pigeons, cats, dogs, and monkeys are also commonly used, with testing procedures similar to those listed above.

**Table 2** Examples of Secondary Level Neurobehavioral Tests for Rats or Mice

Neurobehavioral function	Behavioral test
Sensory	
Visual, auditory, olfactory	Operant psychophysics
Gustatory	Taste discrimination
Somatosensory	T-maze discrimination
Orientation in space	T-maze discrimination
Pain	Operant titration
Motor	
Spontaneous activity	Diurnal cyclicality; patterning
Muscular strength	Operant response force
Tremor	Spectral analysis
Cognitive–associative	
Learning and retention	Autoshaping; temporal discriminating; repeated acquisition
Affective–emotional	
CNS excitability	Brain self-stimulation; aversion thresholds
Physiologic–consummatory	
Thermoregulation	Diurnal patterning; cyclicality; preference

Source: From Tilson et al. (1980).

## EVALUATION

In view of the wide range of toxic effects on the nervous system, as outlined above, there is clearly a need for a battery of tests for the evaluation of neurotoxicants. It is also worth noting that the choice of animal species is critical in eliciting certain types of toxicity, such as delayed neurotoxicity. Furthermore, the nature of the toxicity on the nervous system, as on other organs, can vary according to the duration of exposure. For example, *n*-hexane and TOCP produce, after acute exposure, narcosis, but they induce axonopathy after repeated exposures.

The significance of a neurotoxic effect depends on its reversibility. In general, irreversible effects are more serious than reversible ones. The site of the effect also plays an important role. There are areas in the nervous system more critical to physiologic function than others. In addition, focal damages in areas with abundant functional reserve are likely to be less serious.

The behavioral effects are especially susceptible to endogenous and environmental variations. For example, Norton (1980) reported data to indicate a large variability of results both between animals of the same species and within the same animal at different times. It is therefore important to adhere to proper experimental procedures, such as sufficiently large number of animals, rigorously controlled experimental environment, and statistical analysis of results.

## REFERENCES

- Abel EJ, Jacobson S, Sherwin BJ (1983). In utero ethanol exposure: Functional and structural brain damage. *Neurobehav Toxicol Teratol* 5, 139–146.
- Abou-Donia MB (1981). Organophosphorus ester-induced delayed neurotoxicity. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 21, 511–548.
- Berti-Mattera LN, Eichberg J, Schrama L, et al. (1990). Acrylamide administration alters protein phosphorylation and phospholipid metabolism in rat sciatic nerve. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 103, 502–511.
- Bouldin TW, Gaines ND, Bagvell CR, et al. (1981). Pathogenesis of trimethyltin neuronal toxicity. *Am J Pathol* 104, 237–249.
- Carmichael WW (1994). The toxins of cyanobacteria. *Sci Am* 270, 78–86.
- Cho ES, Spencer PS, Jortner BS (1980). Doxorubicin. In: Spencer PS, Schaumberg HH, eds. *Experimental and Clinical Neurotoxicology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 440–455.
- Craig PH, Barth ML (1999). Evaluation of the hazards of industrial exposure to tricresyl phosphate: A review and interpretation of the literature. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 2, 281–300.
- Dawson VL, Dawson TM, London ED, et al. (1991). Nitric oxide mediates glutamate neurotoxicity in primary cortical culture. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 88, 6368–6371.
- DeBoni U, Otrros A, Scott JW, et al. (1976). Neurofibrillary degeneration induced by systemic aluminum. *Acta Neuropathol* 35, 285–294.
- EPA (1994). *Health Effects Testing Guidelines*. Code Federal Regulations, Title 40, Part 798.
- Exon JH (2006). A review of the toxicology of acrylamide. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 9, 397–412.
- Gold GB, Austin DR (1991). Regulation of aberrant neurofilament phosphorylation in neuronal perikarya. *Brain Res* 563, 151–162.
- Goodgold J, Eberstein A (1977). *Electrodiagnosis of Neuromuscular Diseases*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins.
- Griffin JW, Price DL (1980). Proximal axonopathies induced by toxic chemicals. In: Spencer PS, and Schaumberg HH, eds. *Experimental and Clinical Neurotoxicology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 161–178.
- Jacobs JM, Carmichael N, Cavanagh JB (1977). Ultrastructural studies in the nervous system of rabbits poisoned with methyl mercury. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 39, 249–261.
- Johnson MK (1990). Contemporary issues in toxicology. Organophosphates and delayed neuropathy—Is NTE alive and well? *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 103, 385–399.
- Kallman MJ, Fowler SC (1994). Assessment of chemically induced alterations in motor functions. In: Chang LW, ed. *Principles of Neurotoxicology*. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker, 373–396.
- Krewski D, Yokel RA, Nieboer E, et al. (2007). Human health risk assessment for aluminium, aluminium oxide, and aluminium hydroxide. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10(suppl. 1), 1–269.
- Lehrer GM (1974). Measurement of minimal brain dysfunction. In: Xintaras C, Johnson BL, de Groot I, eds. *Behavior Toxicology*. Washington, DC: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.

- Narahashi T (1992). Nerve membrane Na<sup>+</sup> channels as targets of insecticides. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 13, 236–241.
- Norton S (1980). Behavioral toxicology: A critical appraisal. In: Witschi HR, ed. *The Scientific Basis of Toxicity Assessment*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier/North Holland, 91–107.
- OECD (1984). Delayed neurotoxicity of organophosphorus substances. In: *Guidelines for Testing Chemicals*. Paris, France: Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.
- Olney JW, Rhee V, Ho OL (1974). Kainic acid: A powerful neurotoxic analogue of glutamate. *Brain Res* 77, 507–512.
- Pope CN (1999). Organophosphorous pesticides: Do they all have the same mechanism of toxicity? *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 2, 161–181.
- Press MF (1977). Lead encephalopathy in neonatal Long-Evans rats: Morphologic studies. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 36, 169–193.
- Savolainen J (1977). Some aspects of the mechanism by which industrial solvents produce neurotoxic effects. *Chem Biol Interact* 18, 1–10.
- Schild LK, Griffin JW, Drachman DB, et al. (1977). Retrograde axonal transport: A direct method for measurement of rate. *Neurology* 27, 393.
- Soni MG, White SM, Flamm WG, et al. (2001). Safety evaluation of dietary aluminum. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 33, 66–79.
- Spencer PS, Bischoff MC, Schaumberg HH (1980). Neuropathological methods for the detection of neurotoxic disease. In: Spencer PS, Schaumberg HH, eds. *Experimental and Clinical Neurotoxicology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 743–757.
- Spencer PS, Sabri MI, Schaumberg HH, et al. (1979). Does a defect in energy metabolism in the nerve fiber cause axonal degeneration in polyneuropathies? *Ann Neurol* 5, 501–507.
- Tilson HA, Cabe PA, Burne TA (1980). Behavioral procedures for the assessment of neurotoxicity. In: Spencer PC, Schaumberg HH, eds. *Experimental and Clinical Neurotoxicology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 758–766.
- Worden AN, Heywood R, Prentice DE, et al. (1978). Clioquinol toxicity in the dog. *Toxicology* 9, 227.
- Yang W, Tiffany-Castiglioni E (2008). Paraquat-induced apoptosis in human neuroblastoma SH-SY5Y cells: Involvement of p53 and mitochondria. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 71, 289–299.
- Zhang J, Snyder SH (1995). Nitric oxide in the nervous system. *Am Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 35, 213–233.
- Zhang X, Jones D, Gonzalez-Lima F (2006). Neurodegeneration produced by rotenone in the mouse retina: A potential model to investigate environmental pesticide contributions to neurodegenerative diseases. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 69, 1681–1697.

**Appendix 1** Select Neurotoxicants Described in the Text

---

Acrylamide-A	<i>n</i> -Hexane-A
Actinomycin-M	IDPN-A
AETT-M	Kainic acid-N
Alcohol-N, T	Lead-MS
Alanosine-N	Leptophos-A
Aluminum-N	Lysolecithin-M
6-Aminonicotinamide-BV	Methyl <i>n</i> -butyl ketone-A
Anatoxin-C	Methyl mercury-N, BV
Arsenic-BV	Nicotine-C
Azide-N	Organotin-N
Barbiturate-N	Organic solvents-A
Botulinum toxin-C	Pyrethroids-C
Carbon monoxide-N	Saxitoxin-C
Clioquinol-A	Tellurium-BV, M
Cyanide-N, BV	Tetanoplasmin-C
DDT-C	Tetrodotoxin-C
Diphtheria toxin-M	Thallium-A
Doxorubicin-N	Triethyltin-M, BV
EPN-A	Triparanol-M
Ethidium bromide-M	TOCP-A
Glutamate-N	Vincristine-A
Hexachlorophene-M, BV	

---

*Abbreviations:* A, axonopathy; N, neuropathy; M, myelinopathy; C, conduction and transmission; T, teratogenicity; BV, blood vessel and edema; MS: multiple sites.





## Reproductive and Cardiovascular Systems

### CONTENTS

Reproductive System	254
Introduction	254
Reproductive Process and Organs	254
Other Cells and Organs	254
Pharmacokinetics	256
Toxicants and Their Effects	256
Male Reproductive System	256
Female Reproductive System	257
Routine Testing: Multigeneration	
Reproduction Studies	258
Animals and Doses	258
Observations and Examinations	258
Evaluation	259
Other Tests	259
Cardiovascular System	260
General Considerations	260
Toxic Effects on the Heart	261
Cardiomyopathy	261
Interference with Nucleic Acid Synthesis	262
Arrhythmias	262
Myocardial Depression	262
Miscellaneous	262
Toxic Effects on Blood Vessels	263
Increased Capillary Permeability	263
Endothelial Damage	263
Vasoconstriction and Vasodilatation	263

Others	263
Degenerative Changes	263
Fibrosis	264
Hypersensitivity Reaction	264
Tumors	264
Testing Procedures	264
Normal Animals	264
Animals with Pathologic Conditions	265
Isolated Heart	265
Evaluation	265
References	265

## REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

### Introduction

#### Reproductive Process and Organs

The reproductive process starts with gametogenesis. In the female animal, oogenesis involves the formation of primary oocytes from the primordial germ cells (oogonia) through mitosis. This development takes place during the fetal period and ceases at birth. Primary oocytes divide by meiosis to form secondary oocytes just before they are ovulated.

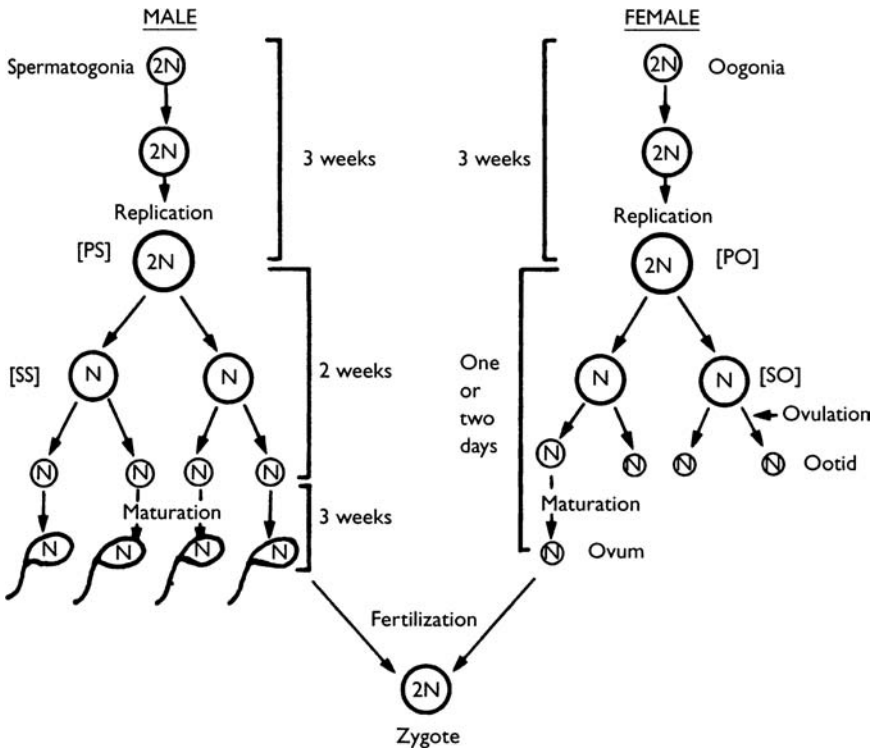
On the other hand, spermatogenesis starts with gonocytes during the fetal period, and these cells are transformed to spermatogonia after birth. Spermatogonia remain dormant until puberty, when proliferative activity begins again. Some of the spermatogonia multiply to form additional spermatogonia while others mature to spermatozoa. There are three intermediate stages. Spermatogonia divide by mitosis to form primary spermatocytes, which divide by meiosis to form secondary spermatocytes. These in turn divide to form spermatids. Finally spermatids become spermatozoa by metamorphosis. The entire process is continuous, and the time required for spermatogonia to become spermatozoa is about 60 days (Fig. 1).

Fertilization requires not only functional ovum and spermatozoa but also effective delivery of the sperm and proper milieu. The conceptus, the fertilized ovum, is then implanted in the uterus and develops through embryonic and fetal stages. At the end of the gestational period, parturition takes place. The pups are suckled until weaning. They then grow and mature to start the reproductive process again, thus completing a reproductive cycle.

### Other Cells and Organs

While gametocytes are the essential elements of the reproductive process, other cells and organs also play important roles.

In the male reproductive system, spermatogenesis takes place in the seminiferous tubules in the testis. In these tubules are the Sertoli cells, which extend



**Figure 1** Gametogenesis and fertilization. *Abbreviations:* 2N, diploid; N, haploid; PS, primary spermatocyte; SS, secondary spermatocyte; PO, primary oocyte; SO, secondary oocyte. *Source:* From Brusick (1987).

from the basement membrane to the lumen of the seminiferous tubules and contain androgen-binding proteins (ABP). The ABP facilitate the movement of androgen to the spermatocytes for their development.

In addition, there are the Leydig cells, which are located in the interstitial tissue surrounding the seminiferous tubules. These cells are the main sites of synthesis of testosterone, which is essential not only for the development of the reproductive system but also for its proper functioning.

After leaving the testis, spermatozoa are stored in the epididymis to undergo changes in order to gain fertility capacity and for later delivery to the female reproductive system. In addition, the accessory organs prostate and seminal vesicle provide special nutrients and proper milieu for the sperm. These organs respond to the effect of testosterone, and hence their weights are indicators of the blood level of this hormone.

In the female reproductive system, the ova can be affected while they are in the ovaries. However, it is more often that the fertilized ova are affected either directly or indirectly through damages to the uterus.

## Pharmacokinetics

Throughout the reproductive cycle, toxicants can act directly on the reproductive system or the conceptus, or indirectly via certain endocrine organs. Before chemicals act directly, they must reach the target organs in sufficiently high concentration. This concentration may be higher or lower than that in the blood. For example, with DDT, the concentration is almost 80-fold higher in the ovary than that in the plasma. A number of other substances were also shown to penetrate the oocyte, oviduct, uterine fluid, and blastocyst (Fabro, 1978).

Unlike the ovaries, the testis is protected by the blood–testis barrier (BTB) (Lee and Dixon, 1978). The BTB is a complex of a multicellular system composed of capillary endothelial cells, myoid cells, and membranes surrounding the seminiferous tubules and the tightly joined Sertoli cells in the tubules. This barrier, however, is less effective than the blood–brain barrier. The penetration rate of chemicals into the testis is governed by their molecular weights, their partition coefficients, and their ionic characteristics.

Testis contains both activating and detoxicating enzyme systems. These two enzyme systems, as noted in Chapter 3, are capable of, respectively, increasing and decreasing the toxicities of chemicals. Furthermore, there is an efficient DNA repair mechanism in the premeiotic spermatogenic cells, but there is none in spermatids or in spermatozoa; mutations can therefore be induced by genotoxic substances on these cells.

## TOXICANTS AND THEIR EFFECTS

The reproductive functions may be affected by toxicants through their effects on the reproductive system of either gender. In the male, the formation, development, storage, and delivery of spermatozoa may be adversely affected. The oocytes, in the females, are also susceptible to certain toxicants. In addition, the implantation of the fertilized ova as well as the growth and development of the conceptus may be affected. In both genders, some of the toxic effects are mediated through hormonal or nervous system activities.

### Male Reproductive System

Many chemicals adversely affect spermatogenesis and produce testicular atrophy. These include food colors (e.g., Oil Yellow AB and Oil Yellow OB) (Allmark et al., 1955), pesticides (e.g., DBCP), plastics (phthalates), metals (e.g., arsenic, tin, lead, and cadmium), and organic solvents. A variety of other chemicals affect the testis, such as steroid hormones, alkylating agents, cyclohexylamine, and hexachlorophene.

In addition to reduced sperm count resulting from adverse effects on spermatogenesis, a toxicant may render spermatozoa defective, less mobile, or even dead. For example, both methylmethane sulfonate (MMS) and busulfan produce

lethal mutations, but MMS affects spermatids and spermatozoa whereas busulfan affects the prespermiogenic cells. These alkylating agents apparently attack the DNA of these cells with different repair mechanisms (Lee, 1983).

Spermatozoa may also be affected while being stored in epididymis. For example, the male antifertility agent  $\alpha$ -chlorohydrin inhibits the fertilizing capacity of spermatozoa. Gossypol, another such agent that was extensively tried in China (Qian and Wang, 1984), probably acts through a similar mechanism.

The testis is hormonally regulated by the hypothalamus–pituitary–testis axis: follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) is required in the initiation of spermatogenesis through the production of ABP in Sertoli cells, whereas luteinizing hormone (LH) acts on Leydig cells to synthesize testosterone. A toxicant may thus affect reproductive function via these endocrine hormones. An example is DBCP (dibromochloropropane), a fumigant used in agriculture, which induced among occupational workers azoospermia and oligospermia, along with elevated serum concentrations of LH and FSH (Miller et al., 1987).

Reproductive functions are also under the influence of the autonomic nervous system. Thus, the hypotensive drug losulazine, which acts by depleting norepinephrine, produces reversible infertility in male rats, probably through altered sexual behavior and ejaculatory disturbances (Mesfin et al., 1989). Guanethidine, another hypotensive drug, may produce or fail to induce pregnancy by interfering with seminal emission (Palmer, 1976).

Tumors may develop in the testis. For example, the herbicide linuron may induce Leydig cell tumors. The tumorigenesis is mediated through a sustained hypersecretion of LH (Cook et al., 1993). In contrast to rats, which are likely to develop Leydig cell tumors, testicular tumors are more likely to arise from germ cells in men. Cadmium has been reported to induce prostate cancer in men (Waalkes and Rehm, 1994).

## Female Reproductive System

Oocytes may be damaged by chemotherapeutic agents such as nitrogen mustard and vinblastine, and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH) such as 3-methylcholanthrene and benzo[*a*]pyrene. Prostaglandin synthetase inhibitors, for example, aspirin-like drugs, may block the release of ovulation. Oocytes before puberty are more resistant to the adverse effects of chemicals, evidently because they are dormant. Certain organochlorine pesticides such as methoxychlor, similar to estradiol, may increase the weight of the uterus (Eroschenko and Rourke, 1992).

Other reproductive functions may also be affected. Haloperidol prevents implantation. DDT and nicotine may affect the development and growth of the conceptus and thus lower the fetal weight (Fabro, 1978). Spironolactone may interfere with ovulation and implantation of the fertilized ovum; it may also retard the development of the sex organs of the offspring (Nagi and Virgo, 1982). Gossypol is also toxic in the female. It suppresses ovarian steroid hormone secretion, interrupts regular cyclicity and inhibits embryo implantation (Lin et al., 1994). There is a

relationship between the extent of cigarette smoking and the onset of menopause; menopause is an indication of oocyte depletion (Miller et al., 1987). The toxic effects that are specifically related to the production of congenital anomalies are dealt with in Chapter 9.

## **ROUTINE TESTING: MULTIGENERATION REPRODUCTION STUDIES**

### **Animals and Doses**

In general, rats are the animals of choice. A minimum of 20 females and 10 males are placed in each of three dose groups and a control group. OECD Guidelines (1995) recommend 10 animals of each gender. The doses are selected so that the high dose will produce some minimal toxic signs but will not result in a mortality greater than 10%. The low dose will not induce any observable effect.

Prior to breeding, the animals are dosed for 10 weeks prior to mating. However, because of the difference in the time required for maturation of the gametes, the males are dosed for 70 days, the period of spermatogenesis, and the females are dosed for 14 days, the length of the development of the ova. Dosing of the females is continued through the gestation and lactation periods. The test chemical should be administered by a route that most closely resembles the human exposure condition.

To determine the potential effect of the chemical on the reproductive function of the offspring ( $F_1$ ), a second generation offspring ( $F_2$ ) is bred and reared to reproductive maturity.

### **Observations and Examinations**

The adult animals are observed for the body weight, food consumption, general appearance, estrus cycle, and mating behavior. In addition, the fertility and nesting and nursing behaviors are also noted. Half of the maternal rats are killed on day 13 of gestation for examination of corpora lutea, implantations, and resorptions.

The other half of the pregnant rats is allowed to deliver their pups. The pups are examined for litter size, number of stillborn, gender distribution, and congenital anomalies. In addition, the viability and pup weight are recorded at birth, on day 4, and at weaning, and preferably also on day 12 or 14. Auditory and visual functions and behavior are also examined for subtle congenital defects.

An appropriate number of males and females are randomly selected from all generations and examined by gross necropsy and histopathology, especially with respect to the reproductive organs. In the males, weights and histopathology of the testes, epididymides, seminal vesicles, prostate, and pituitary often provide useful information on the site of action of the toxicant under test. Other indicators of the effects are the sperm count, and its motility and morphology, as well as the levels of certain hormones, especially testosterone, FSH, and TH. In the females, weights and histopathology of the vagina, uterus, oviduct, ovaries, and pituitary should be assessed along with the levels of the relevant hormones.

Additional details and references to the reproduction and fertility studies are provided in the EPA test guidelines (1994).

## Evaluation

From these data, a number of disturbances of reproductive function can be deduced from the following indices:

1. Fertility index: the percentage of matings resulting in pregnancy.
2. Gestation index: the percentage of pregnancies resulting in the birth of live litters.
3. Viability index: the percentage of live pups that survive four days or longer.
4. Lactation index: the percentage of pups alive on day 4 that survive 21 days or longer.

Other indicators of effects include (1) mating index (the percentage of estrus cycles that had matings), (2) male fertility index (the percentage of males exposed to fertile nonpregnant females that resulted in pregnancies), (3) female fertility index (the percentage of females exposed to fertile males that resulted in pregnancies), and (4) 12- or 14-day survival indices.

Multigeneration reproductive study can reveal a variety of toxic effects on the reproductive function as well as on the *conceptus*. Examples are indices of gestation, viability, and survival. However, nonspecific response (e.g., nonpregnancy) is common. It may follow unusual routes of administering the chemical, such as inhalation, topical application to the eye or nose, and parenteral administration. Excessive handling may also disturb the normal reproductive function. A number of other interfering factors are discussed by Palmer (1976).

The pathologic examination may reveal suppression of spermatogenesis, advanced rates of follicle atresia, and ovulatory or meiotic failure.

## OTHER TESTS

The effects revealed in multigeneration reproduction studies outlined above may result from paternal, maternal, or fetal exposure. Thus, additional tests are often conducted to establish the cause of the effect. A few such tests are outlined below.

*Pathological examinations* are useful in identifying a variety of toxic effects. The weight of testis is a simple but sensitive index of testicular damages. The extent and nature of such damages can often be assessed microscopically. The weights of prostate and seminal vesicle are often correlated with levels of testosterone. Similarly, gross and microscopic analysis of *semen* is useful in epidemiologic and animal studies. The sperm count and the motility, survival, and morphology of the spermatozoa often provide information on toxic effects on the testis (Eliasson, 1978). As noted above, certain toxicants affect the reproductive function through disturbances of *hormones*, especially testosterone, estrogens, FSH, and LH. Assays of their levels may indicate the mode of action of the toxicant.

The *perfused male reproductive tracts* have been shown to be useful models in studying the effects of chemicals on the secretion and accumulation of androgens (Bardin et al., 1978).

Certain *biomarkers* have been used in a variety of tests for disorders of the reproductive system. For example, DNA probes have been used to detect gene mutation and massive deletion and translocations in meiotic, and postmeiotic germ cells as well as Sertoli and Leydig cells in the testis (Hecht, 1987).

## CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

### General Considerations

The cardiovascular system is composed of two parts: the heart and the blood vessels. The heart is a vital organ in the body. Although it is not a common target organ, it can be damaged by a variety of chemicals. They act either directly on the myocardium or indirectly through the nervous system or blood vessels. A list of such chemicals, as compiled by Van Stee (1980), is reproduced in Table 1.

The heart is mainly composed of myocardial cells, each measuring about  $15 \times 80 \mu\text{m}$ . Unlike skeletal muscle cells, each of which is innervated, only some of

**Table 1** Cardiotoxic Drugs and Chemicals

Cardiomyopathy	
Allylamine	Adrenergic agonists
Furazolidone	Methysergide
Ethanol	Vasodilators
Cobalt	
Interference with nucleic acid metabolism and protein synthesis	
Antineoplastic drugs	
Electrophysiologic mechanisms	
Cardiotonic drugs	Local anesthetics
Phenytoin (diphenylhydantoin)	Emetine
Tricyclic antidepressants	Chlordimeform
Clofibrate	Contrast media
Lithium	Antimalarial drugs
Propylene glycol	Calcium antagonists
Nonspecific myocardial depression	
Lipid-soluble, organic compounds	Antimicrobial antibiotics
Myocardial depressant factor	Carbromide, carbromal
Involvement with lipid metabolism	
High cholesterol diet	Brominated vegetable oils
Rapeseed oil	
Miscellaneous	
Phenothiazines	

Source: From Van Stee (1980).



the heart muscle cells are innervated. However, these cells are joined, at their ends, to each other by the nexus. It has low resistance and thus allows rapid transmission of electrical stimulus from one cell to the next. These characteristics are essential to the programmed sequence of contraction of different parts of the heart.

The myocardium is different from skeletal muscles also in that there is less contractile material (50% vs. 80%) but much more mitochondrial material (35% vs. 2%). Mitochondria evidently play an important role in the cardiac contractility and are a common subcellular target of cardiotoxicity.

Myocardial contraction involves the liberation of energy from oxidative metabolism, conservation of the energy by adenosine triphosphate and creatine phosphate, and utilization of the energy by contractile proteins. The most vulnerable mechanisms include the utilization of energy and intracellular movement of calcium ion, which is involved in the contractility of myocardium as well as regulating enzyme activities, transduction of hormonal information, etc.

The vascular system consists of arteries, arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins. A toxicant may affect any of these vessels; the seriousness of the effect depends on the physiological role of the organ that is supplied by the affected blood vessel.

## TOXIC EFFECTS ON THE HEART

### Cardiomyopathy

The usual toxic effects of cobalt are polycythemia, goiter, and signs of gastrointestinal irritation such as vomiting and diarrhea. However, its inclusion in beer as a foam stabilizer produced a number of serious and fatal cases of cardiomyopathy. Subsequent studies showed that there is also intramitochondrial accumulation of calcium. The toxicity of cobalt on the heart was greatly enhanced by malnutrition, especially the deficiency of certain amino acids. Among the heavy beer drinkers, this condition existed because of the large caloric intake of beer. It was also noted that cobalt ions depressed oxygen uptake and interfered with cardiac energy metabolism in the tricarboxylic acid cycle, as thiamine deficiency does (Grice, 1972). As noted above,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  plays a vital role in various functions of myocardium. Cobalt may reduce the available myocardial  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  by complexing with macromolecules and may also be antagonistic to endogenous  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

Adrenergic  $\beta$ -receptor agonists, isoproterenol in particular, and vasodilating antihypertensive drugs, such as hydralazine, are capable of inducing myocardial necrosis. The former chemicals have direct adrenergic effects, whereas the antihypertensive drugs exert adrenergic effects via the induced hypotension. These effects produce an augmented transmembrane calcium influx, which in turn causes an increase in the rate and force of contraction. This, along with the concomitant hypotension, results in cardiac hypoxia. The hypoxia and the calcium deposits in the mitochondria produce disintegration of organelles and sarcolemma (Balazs et al., 1981).

### Interference with Nucleic Acid Synthesis

The anthracycline antibiotics doxorubicin and daunorubicin are effective antineoplastic drugs. However, they produce hypotension, tachycardia, and arrhythmias acutely. More prolonged administration produces degeneration and atrophy of cardiac muscle cells and interstitial edema and fibrosis. The likely mode of action is the binding of these antibiotics to mitochondrial and nuclear DNA, which in turn interferes with synthesis of RNA and protein. This effect on the heart is important because the half-life of the contractile proteins is short (12 weeks). Other possible mechanisms of action include peroxidation of membrane lipids, and hypotension resulting from release of cytokines (Van Stee, 1980).

### Arrhythmias

A number of fluorocarbons are capable of producing cardiac arrhythmias. This effect is mediated by a sensitization of the heart to epinephrine, depression of contractility, reduction of coronary blood flow, and reflex increase in sympathetic and vagal impulses to the heart following irritation of mucosa in the respiratory tract (Aviado, 1978).

Tricyclic antidepressants can also induce cardiac arrhythmias. These effects are likely the result of imbalances within the autonomic regulatory system of the heart. Propylene glycol, a common solvent, can convert ventricular tachycardia induced by deslanoside into ventricular fibrillation (Keller et al., 1992).

### Myocardial Depression

A number of lipid-soluble organic compounds, such as general anesthetics, depress cardiac contractility. The probable mechanism of action is a nonspecific expansion of various cellular membranes by the insertion of chemically indifferent molecules in the hydrophobic regions of integral proteins and membrane phospholipids.

Antibiotics, such as amphotericin B, chloramphenicol, streptomycin, and tetracycline, produce hypotension through depression of cardiac contractility. The mechanism of action appears to be related to an inhibition of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to superficial membrane sites (Keller et al., 1992).

### Miscellaneous

Rapeseed oil, a common cooking oil in many parts of the world, produces accumulation of lipid globules in heart muscles in rats. This effect was attributed to the high content of erucic acid in rapeseed oil. Brominated vegetable oils, used in adjusting the density of flavoring oils and in enhancing cloudy stability in beverages, induce biochemical and morphologic changes in cardiac myofibrils. The coloring Brown F.K. also produces severe morphologic changes in the heart muscles (Grice, 1972).

## TOXIC EFFECTS ON BLOOD VESSELS

### Increased Capillary Permeability

Lead, mercury, and several other toxicants damage endothelial cells of capillaries in the brain. This effect will result in brain edema and an impairment of the blood–brain barrier (Chap. 16). Inhalation of irritating gas induces pulmonary edema (Chap. 11).

### Endothelial Damage

Monocrotaline, a plant toxin, may produce pulmonary vascular damage. This chemical, after ingestion, is bioactivated in the liver, but sufficient amounts of the active metabolites leave the liver and produce cross-linking of DNA in the endothelial cells of the pulmonary vasculature. This effect may damage the repairing capability of the endothelial cells leading to thrombosis and progressive pulmonary hypertension (Boor et al., 1995; Schultze and Roth, 1998). Arsenic has been suggested as the cause of the *black-foot* disease, a result of peripheral endarteritis (Lin et al., 1998).

### Vasoconstriction and Vasodilatation

Ingestion of ergot alkaloids (fungal contaminants in certain foods) may produce gangrene resulting from vasoconstriction. A clinical syndrome known as “black-foot disease” is endemic in certain areas in South America and Taiwan. It has been attributed to vasoconstriction following consumption of drinking water with high levels of arsenic (Chap. 21). Exposure to pure oxygen over a prolonged period may result in blindness, especially among premature infants, evidently because of the associated vasoconstriction in the eye.

Occupational workers exposed to nitroglycerin on work days have been reported to have died suddenly of heart attack on weekends. Apparently the continued exposure to a coronary dilator has rendered the workers accustomed to a low level of coronary flow, and the sudden cessation of exposure to the coronary dilator precipitated coronary insufficiency.

The musculature of the coronary artery may be damaged by large doses of certain hypotensive drugs, such as minoxidil and hydralazine. The lesion may be a result of exaggerated pharmacodynamic changes (Boor et al., 1995).

### Others

#### Degenerative Changes

Atherosclerosis is a complex degenerative disease affecting mainly large blood vessels such as the coronary and carotid arteries. Narrowing of these arteries may result in heart attacks and strokes, respectively. While the etiology of atherosclerosis is complex, certain toxicants may aggravate the pathological condition. Carbon monoxide may increase the permeability of capillaries surrounding

these arteries and promote the degenerative process (Yang et al., 1998). Exposure to air pollutants results in increased frequency of hospital admissions for cardiovascular disease, congestive heart failure, and higher mortality (Chung et al., 2005; Dominic et al., 2005; Yang et al., 2008). CS<sub>2</sub> produces damage to the endothelium. Ramos et al. (1994) observed that certain allylamines and aromatic hydrocarbons may contribute to the development of atherosclerosis. These toxicants may act through nitric oxide and endothelin on the smooth muscle and endothelium of arteries, and induce vascular lesions, which may contribute to the development of atherosclerosis.

### **Fibrosis**

Cadmium and lead may affect blood vessels in the kidney producing renal fibrosis. The impairment of blood supply may interfere with the “nonexcretory functions” of the kidney (Chap. 14), and indirectly produce hypertension.

### **Hypersensitivity Reaction**

Gold salts, penicillin, sulfonamides, and a number of other toxicants may induce vasculitis or exacerbate preexisting polyarteritis. The condition usually affects small vessels and is associated with infiltration of eosinophils and mononuclear cells indicating involvement of the immune system.

### **Tumors**

Tumors of blood vessels may result from certain toxicants. For example, vinyl chloride was reported to produce hemangiosarcoma in the liver in humans and animals (Chap. 7), and hemangioendothelioma was shown to result from exposure to thorium dioxide.

## **TESTING PROCEDURES**

Cardiovascular toxicity can be studied in intact normal animals, in animals with specific pathologic conditions, or in isolated hearts and blood vessels.

### **Normal Animals**

Various examinations for cardiovascular toxicity can be performed on animals in conventional toxicity studies. These include blood pressure, heart rate, and electrocardiography. The rate of blood flow is a useful indicator of the functions of the cardiovascular systems, and can be measured using, among others, pulsed Doppler flowmeter (Haywood et al., 1981). The status of the arteriole, capillaries, and venules can be studied either at special site of organism (e.g., conjunctiva and retina), or through microvascular chamber which can be chronically placed on a laboratory animal (Smith et al., 1994). Functional tests, such as swimming until exhaustion, have been suggested. At necropsy, the organ weight is often

determined. Gross, light, and, in particular, electron microscopic examinations are valuable. Biochemical studies of the myocardium and of the blood are also useful.

### **Animals with Pathologic Conditions**

The hearts of rabbits fed a diet containing 2% cholesterol become atherosclerotic. These hearts are more susceptible to myocardial ischemia (Lee et al., 1978). Other models, such as infarcted myocardium, cardiomyopathic hamster, obesity, and drug interaction models, have been briefly described and referenced by Van Stee (1980).

### **Isolated Heart**

The isolated, perfused heart is a common model for studying the effects of drugs on the strength and rate of heart contractions and the rate of coronary flow. It was also used to detect the cardiac effects of toxicants. For example, Toy et al. (1976) showed that certain halogenated alkanes depressed the peak left ventricular pressure as well as the rate of increase of that pressure. The isolated atrium and cultured heart cells have also been used in the study of cardiotoxicity (Adams et al., 1978; Sperelakis, 1978).

### **Evaluation**

The cardiovascular toxicity of chemicals is not readily detected in conventional toxicity studies. For example, the toxic effects of cobalt and the anthracycline antibiotics on the heart were reproduced in animal experiments only after they were detected in humans first. Negative results therefore do not necessarily exclude potential cardiotoxicity.

To demonstrate such toxicity, specific testing procedures may be required. These procedures usually mimic the clinical conditions. For example, intermittent administration of the anthracycline antibiotics was necessary to elicit the cardiotoxicity; presumably continuous treatment caused the animals to die from other toxic effects before heart lesions developed. The toxicity of adrenergic  $\beta$ -receptor agonists is best detected in acute studies; the effects of prolonged treatment may be masked by tolerance development. The effect of cobalt on the heart is more readily revealed when the animals are on a protein- and vitamin-deficient diet (Balazs and Ferrans, 1978).

### **REFERENCES**

- Adams HR, Parker JL, Durrett LR (1978). Cardiac toxicities of antibiotics. *Environ Health Perspect* 26, 217–231.
- Allmark MG, Grice HC, Lu FC (1955). Chronic toxicity studies on food colors: Observations on the toxicity of FD&C Yellow No. 3 (Oil Yellow AB) and FD&C Yellow No. 4 (Oil Yellow OB) in rats. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 7, 591–603.

- Aviado DM (1978). Effects of fluorocarbons, chlorinated solvents, and inosine on the cardiopulmonary system. *Environ Health Perspect* 26, 207–216.
- Balazs T, Ferrans VJ (1978). Cardiac lesions induced by chemicals. *Environ Health Perspect* 26, 181–191.
- Balazs T, Ferrans VJ, El-Hage A, et al. (1981). Study of the mechanism of hydralazine-induced myocardial necrosis in the rat. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 59, 524–534.
- Bardin CW, Baker HWG, Jefferson LS, et al. (1978). Methods for perfusing male reproductive tract: Models for studying drugs and hormone metabolism. *Environ Health Perspect* 24, 51–59.
- Boor PJ, Gotlieb AI, Joseph EC, et al. (1995). Chemical-induced vasculature injury. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 132, 177–195.
- Brusick D (1987). *Principles of Genetic Toxicology*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Plenum Press.
- Chung CC, Tsai SS, Ho SC, et al. (2005). Air pollution and hospital admissions for cardiovascular disease in Taipei. *Environ Res* 98, 130–139.
- Cook JC, Mullin LS, Frame SR, et al. (1993). Investigation of a mechanism for Leydig cell tumorigenesis by linuron. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 119, 195–204.
- Dominic F, McDermott A, Daniels M, et al. (2005). Revised analysis of the national morbidity, mortality and air pollution study: Mortality among residents of 90 cities. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 68, 1071–1092.
- Eliasson R (1978). Semen analysis. *Environ Health Perspect* 24, 81–85.
- EPA (1994). *Health Effects Test Guidelines*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- Eroschenko VP, Rourke AW (1992). Stimulating influences of the technical grade methoxychlor and estradiol on protein synthesis in the uterus of the immature mouse. *J Occup Med Toxicol* 1, 307–315.
- Fabro S (1978). Penetration of chemicals into the oocyte, uterine fluid and preimplantation blastocyst. *Environ Health Persp* 24, 25–29.
- Grice HC (1972). The changing role of pathology in modern safety evaluation. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 1, 119–152.
- Haywood JR, Shaffer RA, Fink GD, et al. (1981). Regional blood flow measurements with pulsed Doppler flowmeter in conscious rat. *Am J Physiol* 241, 14273–14278.
- Hecht NB (1987). Detecting the effects of toxic agents on spermatogenesis using DNA probes. *Environ Health Perspect* 74, 31–40.
- Keller RS, Parker JL, Adams HR (1992). Cardiovascular toxicity of antibacterial antibiotics. In: Costa D, ed. *Cardiovascular Toxicology*. New York, NY: Raven Press, 165–195.
- Lee IP (1983). Adaptive biochemical repair response toward germ cell DNA damage. *Am J Ind Med* 4, 135–147.
- Lee IP, Dixon RL (1978). Factors influencing reproduction and genetic toxic effects on male gonads. *Environ Health Perspect* 24, 117–127.
- Lee RJ, Zaidi IH, Baky SH (1978). Pathophysiology of the atherosclerotic rabbit. *Environ Health Perspect* 26, 225–231.
- Lin T-H, Huang Y-L, Wang M-Y (1998). Arsenic species in drinking water, hair, fingernails and urine of patient's with blackfoot disease. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 53, 85–93.
- Lin YC, Coskun S, Sanbuissho A (1994). Effects of gossypol on in vitro bovine oocyte maturation and steroidogenesis in bovine granulosa cells. *Theriogenology* 41, 1601–1611.
- Mesfin GM, Morris DF, Seaman WJ, et al. (1989). Testicular lesions in rats treated with a sympatholytic hypotensive agent (losulazine). *J Am Coll Toxicol* 8, 525–538.

- Miller RK, Kellogg CK, Saltzman RA (1987). Reproductive and perinatal toxicology. In: Haley TJ, Berndt WO, eds. *Handbook of Toxicology*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere, 195–309.
- Nagi S, Virgo BB (1982). The effects of spironolactone on reproductive functions in female rats and mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 66, 221–228.
- OECD (1995). *OECD guidelines for testing of chemicals: Reproduction/developmental toxicity screening test*. Paris, France: Organization of Economic Development.
- Palmer AK (1976). Assessment of current test procedures. *Environ Health Perspect* 18, 97–104.
- Qian S, Wang Z (1984). Gossypol: A potential antifertility agent for males. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 24, 329–360.
- Ramos KS, Bowes RC, Ou XL, et al. (1994). Responses of vascular smooth cells to toxic insult: Cellular and molecular perspectives for environmental toxicants. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 43, 419–440.
- Schultze AE, Roth RA (1998). Monocrotaline pulmonary hypertension—The monocrotaline model and involvement of the hemostatic system. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 271–346.
- Smith TL, Koman LA, Mosberg AT (1994). Cardiovascular physiology and methods for toxicology. In: Hayes AW, ed. *Principles and Methods of Toxicology*. New York, NY: Raven Press.
- Sperelakis N (1978). Cultured heart cell reaggregate model for studying cardiac toxicology. *Environ Health Perspect* 26, 243–267.
- Toy PA, Van Stee EW, Harris AM, et al. (1976). The effects of three halogenated alkanes on excitation and contraction in the isolated, perfused rabbit heart. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 38, 7–17.
- Van Stee EW (1980). Myocardial toxicity. In: Witschi HR, ed. *The Scientific Basis of Toxicity Assessment*. New York, NY: Elsevier/North Holland.
- Waalkes MP, Rehm S (1994). Cadmium and prostate cancer. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 43, 251–269.
- Yang CY (2008). Air pollution and hospital admissions for congestive heart failure in a subtropical city: Taipei, Taiwan. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 71, 1085–1090.
- Yang W, Jennison BL, Omaye ST (1998). Cardiovascular disease hospitalization and ambient levels of carbon monoxide. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 55, 185–196.





# **Part IV**

---

## **Toxic Substances and Risk Assessment**



## Food Additives and Contaminants

### CONTENTS

Introduction	272
Legal Definition of Food Additives	272
Classification of Food Additives and Contaminants	272
Functional Groups of Direct Food Additives	272
Indirect (Unintentional) Food Additives	273
Food Contaminants	273
International Aspects	273
Toxicological Testing and Evaluation	274
Categories of Data Required	274
Extent of Testing	274
Evaluation	275
GRAS	275
Additives of Toxicological Concern	275
Carcinogenicity	275
Hypersensitivity Reactions	277
Other Adverse Effects	277
Indirect Additives and Contaminants	277
Indirect Food Additives	278
Packaging Materials	278
Animal Drug Residues in Human Food	278
Contaminants	279
Mycotoxins	279
Neurotoxins	280
Metals	281
Certain Organic Compounds	281
References	282
Appendix 1 Major Functional Groups of Direct Food Additives	285

## INTRODUCTION

With the increasing world population, there has been a growing demand for more food. Various physical means and chemical substances have been developed and utilized to increase the food supply. However, the increased efficiency of farming reduced the number of farmers. In addition, with industrialization and urbanization, more and more people lived away from the farmland. These social changes have resulted in an ever-increasing demand for processed foods that can be transported from the farm to the city and that will retain their nutritive value and organoleptic properties. These demands have been met largely by the addition of chemicals known as food additives. These chemicals serve a variety of technological functions as described in the section functional groups of direct food additives.

### Legal Definition of Food Additives

The following definition has been adopted by the Codex Alimentarius Commission, an intergovernmental agency consisting of more than 150 nations (FAO/WHO, 1994).

*Food Additive* means any substance not normally consumed as a food by itself and not normally used as a typical ingredient of the food, whether or not it has nutritive value, the intentional addition of which to food for a technological (including organoleptic) purpose in the manufacture, processing, preparation, treatment, packing, packaging, transport or holding of such food results, or may be reasonably expected to result (directly or indirectly) in it or its by-products becoming a component of or otherwise affecting the characteristics of such foods. The term does not include “contaminants” or substances added to food for maintaining or improving nutritional qualities.

The U.S. legal definition appearing in the U.S. Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, as amended in October 1976 (1979), is different from the above in several aspects. The U.S. legislation excludes color additives and those substances that are to be added to food but are defined as “generally recognized as safe (GRAS).” On the other hand, the U.S. legislation considers nutritional supplements and irradiated foods as food additives.

### Classification of Food Additives and Contaminants

#### Functional Groups of Direct Food Additives

A number of chemicals are added to food to increase its shelf life, to render it more amenable to mass production, or to enhance its consumer appeal with respect to color, flavor, texture, and convenience. These chemicals are grouped according to their technological functions. Detailed listing of various groups of food additives and their uses is given in a Codex document (FAO/WHO, 1994). The major functional groups and some examples are listed in Appendix 1.

### Indirect (Unintentional) Food Additives

The substances described above are intentionally added to foods for specific technological purposes. Consequently they are considered “direct” or “intentional” food additives. However, a number of substances may become part of the foods as a result of their use during the production, processing, or storage of the foods. These include antibiotics and anabolic agents used during the raising of farm animals, residues from food processing machinery, and migrants from packaging materials.

### Food Contaminants

These substances are present in foods as a result of environmental pollution or faulty handling of the food. In other words, they serve no useful purpose either in the final food product or in its processing. Examples are mercury in fish harvested from contaminated waters, and mycotoxins found in improperly stored nuts and grains. Thus they differ from both the direct and indirect food additives.

### International Aspects

Food, raw and processed, is commonly traded internationally. The additives and contaminants (and residues of pesticides) must be considered acceptable for the protection of the health of consumers. But the food that was considered acceptable by the exporting country might not be considered acceptable by the importing country.

In an attempt to reduce such disputes, the World Health Organization (WHO) and the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), at the request of governments, established mechanisms to provide independent toxicological evaluation. The mechanisms created were the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives and Contaminants (JECFA) and the Joint FAO/WHO Meeting of Experts on Pesticide Residues (JMPR). Members of these committees were selected from a panel of internationally known experts acting independently.

Since their inception in the early 1960s, they have been convened annually. During these meetings, they have evaluated and re-evaluated many food additives, contaminants, and pesticide residues. Acceptable daily intakes (ADIs) are allocated to those chemicals that the toxicological data so indicates. The ADIs are used by regulatory agencies in some countries.

More importantly, the ADIs are used by the Joint FAO/WHO Food Standard Program, the Codex Alimentarius Commission to establish international food standards. There are more than 150 nations that are members of the commission. Some details on the relationship among the national food regulatory agencies, national research facilities, and the Codex Alimentarius Commission are given in Chapter 25. A comprehensive review of this subject is provided in a review (Lu, 1988).

## TOXICOLOGICAL TESTING AND EVALUATION

### Categories of Data Required

Because these chemicals are added to foods to be consumed by large numbers of people, they are in general extensively tested and strictly evaluated. Furthermore, because of their low toxicity, precise LD<sub>50</sub>s are as a rule not required. The studies required by JECFA are categorized as follows:

1. Biochemical including absorption, distribution, elimination (and storage), biotransformation, and effects on enzymes and other biochemical parameters.
2. Acute toxicity.
3. Short-term toxicity.
4. Chronic toxicity.
5. Reproductive toxicity.
6. Mutagenicity.
7. Carcinogenicity.
8. Teratogenicity (developmental).
9. Clinical observations in humans.

### Extent of Testing

The JECFA considers, as a general rule, that the types of biological data listed above are required for proper evaluation of food additives. However, for certain groups of additives, depending on their chemical nature, source, and usage, much less data are required. These include:

1. components of food and closely related chemicals,
2. certain enzymes used in food processing,
3. certain food colors, and
4. certain metals (e.g., copper, iron, and zinc).

Detailed descriptions of the types of additives and the required data are given in several WHO reports (WHO, 1974, 1982a, 1986). These descriptions are summarized in a review article (Lu, 1988).

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration established a set of criteria to determine the "level of concern," (LOC) which in turn dictates the extent of testing required (FDA, 1982a). The LOC is determined by the chemical structure of the additive and concentration in food. Additives are placed in three categories according to their chemical structure: A, B, and C. Additives of low probable toxicity are assigned to category A. This category comprises nine types of chemicals, such as simple aliphatic, noncyclic hydrocarbons with no unsaturation; sugars and polysaccharides; fats, fatty acids; and endogenous inorganic salts of alkali metals (Na, K) and alkaline earth metals (Mg, Ca). Additives with functional groups of high probable toxicity are assigned to category C. Additives of intermediate or unknown probable toxicity are assigned to category B.

## Evaluation

As described in Chapter 25, toxicological evaluation of food additives follows the procedure of determining the adequacy of data, establishing an appropriate no observed effect level (NOEL), and selecting a proper safety factor to obtain the acceptable daily intake. This procedure is generally adopted by many national regulatory agencies including the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, as well as the international organizations WHO and FAO. The toxicological basis for drafting the provisions for food additives in the International Food Standards is provided by the JECFA. The interrelationship between the various national and international bodies is described in a review article (Lu, 1988).

## GRAS

As noted above, the U.S. legislation considers certain chemicals as “generally recognized as safe.” This was done originally in 1958, and that list included more than 600 direct additives with a variety of technological functions and some 2000 indirect additives. Since then, the list of direct additives has been expanded mainly by the addition of more than 1000 flavoring ingredients proposed by the Flavor and Extract Manufacturers’ Association (FEMA).

On the basis of new toxicological information, the safety of a number of substances on the list has since been questioned. The most notable was the suspected carcinogenicity of the artificial sweetener cyclamate. As a result, FDA in 1970 asked the Life Sciences Research Office of the Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology to evaluate the safety of all the substances on the GRAS list. A Select Committee on GRAS Substances was formed and issued many reports containing its conclusion and summaries of the available information on 468 substances. A detailed account of the work of the committee is given by Carr (1987).

## ADDITIVES OF TOXICOLOGICAL CONCERN

Some 600 intentional food additives are being added to a variety of our foods. The toxicity of most of these additives has been evaluated according to prevailing procedure and found to be “safe.” However, the use of some additives has been restricted, suspended, or requires label declaration because of toxicological concern.

### Carcinogenicity

For example, the safety of *saccharin* has been questioned because of its reported carcinogenicity. In fact, the first study that revealed increased bladder tumors in rats involved the dosing of the animals with a combination of saccharin and cyclamate at the ratio of 1:9. Saccharin has been found to be excreted as such and is nonmutagenic in most test systems. However, a large-scale experiment carried

out in a Canadian government laboratory showed that rats fed saccharin at 7.5% in the diet developed bladder tumors (Arnold et al., 1977). The significance of this finding is somewhat doubtful because of the excessively high dosage and because the tumors occurred mainly among the male rats of the second generation.

*Cyclamates* were considered innocuous and were used widely in foods and beverages for many years. However, doubt was cast on their safety because of the discovery that they are metabolized by intestinal flora in animals and humans to cyclohexylamine, which appears to be more toxic (Classen et al., 1968). Its use as a food additive was suspended in 1969 when it was discovered that a mixture of saccharin and cyclamate increased the incidence of bladder tumors in rats (Price et al., 1970). Subsequent studies on cyclamate showed no carcinogenicity, and the short-term mutagenicity tests yielded no consistent results. This is also true with cyclohexylamine. Summaries of the reports are included in two publications (IARC, 1980; WHO, 1982a). Its use has been restored in a number of countries, although it is still not permitted for use as an additive in the United States.

*Nitrates* and *nitrites* are useful preservatives and they impart a special color and flavor to treated meat such as ham and corned beef. However, they can form, with certain amines, a variety of nitrosamines, many of which are potent carcinogens. However, nitrates and nitrites are valuable in controlling toxin-forming microorganisms such as *Clostridium botulinum*. Furthermore, nitrites occur in the body, notably in the saliva, and it has been demonstrated that nitrosation of certain amines can occur in the stomach.

For these reasons, the use of these preservatives has not been suspended, but the amount used has been reduced. On the other hand, the preservative *diethyl pyrocarbonate* (DEPC) presents a distinctly different picture. It had been used in a variety of beverages, but its use was suspended. This decision was based on the finding that DEPC may combine with ammonium ion in beverages to form urethane, a wide-spectrum carcinogen in all animal species tested, and the fact that its use was not indispensable.

*BHA* (butylated hydroxyanisole) and *BHT* (butylated hydroxytoluene) are widely used antioxidants and have been investigated in several long-term studies without revealing any serious adverse effects. However, Ito et al. (1983) reported that BHA at very high dietary levels induced hyperplasia and tumors in the forestomach of rats. Since the tumors were only found in the forestomach, the relevance of this finding in terms of human health hazard was questioned. Additional studies using species without a forestomach were performed. The results were negative in the dog, and the increased mitotic rate in the esophagus of pigs was questionable (WHO, 1989). Olsen et al. (1983) reported an increase in the hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma. However, several other studies yielded negative results. Furthermore, other studies on these antioxidants produced cancer protective effects (Prochaska et al., 1985). In light of these conflicting results, BHA and BHT are still being used.



## Hypersensitivity Reactions

A number of food additives are known to induce hypersensitivity reactions in susceptible individuals. Because they affect only a small proportion of the general population, and because their effects are usually mild and transitory, most regulatory agencies consider label declaration as sufficient to provide warning to these individuals. The following are the more commonly known ones.

*Tartrazine*, a widely used yellow color in a variety of processed foods, has been known to induce allergic reactions, especially among those who are allergic to aspirin (Juhlin, 1980).

*Sulfur dioxide* (SO<sub>2</sub>) and related chemicals, such as bisulfites and metabisulfites, are used as preservatives in processed foods as well as salads. In the latter case, these chemicals help to preserve the freshness of the vegetables. Since it is difficult to provide warning labels, such use has been discouraged.

*Monosodium glutamate* (MSG) has been used as a flavor enhancer for many decades in China and Japan. No untoward effects have been reported. However, a "Chinese restaurant syndrome" has been reported (Schaumberg et al., 1969). It usually appears after the individual had consumed a special Chinese soup, which contains relatively large amounts of MSG. The hypersensitivity reaction consists of a burning sensation, tingling in the face and neck, tightness in the chest, etc. Because of these findings, it is now possible, in many restaurants, to order soups and other dishes specifying "no MSG." For additional details, see Kenney (1986). The fact that adverse reactions to MSG have not been observed in the Far East is evidently related to the custom of consuming the soup as the last course, that is, on a full stomach, thereby delaying the absorption of this chemical and preventing a dramatic rise in blood level.

## Other Adverse Effects

In addition to carcinogenicity and hypersensitivity reactions, the discovery of other adverse effects has prompted regulatory decisions or additional investigations. Examples are heart lesions in lab animals associated with brominated vegetable oils (BVO), a suspending agent in certain beverages, and liver lesions associated with Orange RN and Ponceau 2R, which were responsible for the suspension of their use. Other effects such as red blood cell damage (Orange RN), storage in tissues (BVO), and testicular atrophy (cyclohexylamine from cyclamate) were contributing factors to toxicological decisions on these additives (see Lu, 1979a).

## INDIRECT ADDITIVES AND CONTAMINANTS

Apart from direct food additives, there are a large number of indirect additives and some contaminants that pose toxicological problems and require different control measures. The problems are highlighted as follows.

## Indirect Food Additives

The most important of these chemicals are (1) the constituents of packaging material, which may migrate into the food that is in contact with them, and (2) animal drug residues that are commonly used in raising food-producing animals.

### Packaging Materials

A number of substances may migrate from food containers, wrappers, etc., to the food that is packaged in them. Most of the chemicals that might migrate from the conventional types of packaging materials, such as paper and wood, had been considered safe and included in FDA's GRAS list. More recently, however, the packaging items are generally made of polymeric materials. The polymers per se are generally inert, but the components, the monomers, which are present to some extent, residual reactants, intermediates, manufacturing aids, solvents, and plastic additives, as well as the products of side reaction and chemical degradation may migrate into the food that is in contact with them. Some of these chemicals have been shown to be toxic.

Vinyl chloride has been shown to be a human carcinogen at high levels of exposure, and acrylonitrile is a probable human carcinogen. Both are carcinogenic in a number of animal species (Chap. 7). Currently, bisphenol A, which was widely used in the linings of metal cans and feeding bottles, was found to be an endocrine-disrupting chemical in animals (Wilhite et al., 2008). The release of phthalates from food packaging has raised concerns due to the estrogenic effects of these compounds in animals. Administration of phthalates is known to produce testicular dysfunction in rats (Kim et al., 2004). However, there are no human data showing an abnormal reproductive function in humans, as the concentration of phthalates or bisphenol A released is exceedingly small and not environmentally realistic. Thus, because of the exceedingly low levels of exposure from migration to food, these chemicals continue to be used and provisionally approved. The difficulty one faces is that the adverse responses reported are due to the concentration, but when interpolation to risk, the concentration cannot be attained by humans.

### Animal Drug Residues in Human Food

There are essentially three types of drugs used in food-producing animals that may leave residues in human food such as meat, milk, and eggs. The drugs present not only a problem related to the parent chemicals. It is also necessary to consider their metabolites, which are produced as a result of the metabolic processes, including bioactivation, in the animals, and which may possess different toxic properties (Hayes and Borzelleca, 1982).

*Therapeutic drugs* such as the anthelmintic agents febantel, fenbendazole, and oxfendazole are generally used in individual animals for specific disease and only over short periods of times. Therefore they do not pose a widespread health concern. On the other hand, tranquilizing agents such as chlorpromazine and

propylpromazine are used shortly before slaughter, and hence leave residues in the meat. Their use is therefore not allowed (WHO, 1995).

*Antibiotics* such as benzyl penicillin and oxytetracycline are usually incorporated in the animal feeds to prevent outbreaks of bacterial diseases and to promote growth. The residue levels are generally extremely low and not expected to induce toxic effects. The antibiotics can result in resistance in humans, which is a concern.

*Anabolic agents* are growth-promoting substances and are implanted subcutaneously in a part of the animal that is usually not eaten, such as the ear. Their residue levels in the meat are low enough to be essentially devoid of general toxic effects, except carcinogenicity. A carcinogen may be effective at extremely low dose levels. Diethylstilbestrol (DES) is no longer used as a growth promoter, because of the discovery that tumors of genital organs have developed in the offspring of mothers who had taken DES during the pregnancy in large doses for medical purposes.

The anabolic agents in use may be considered either “endogenous” or “exogenous.” The former includes estradiol, progesterone, and testosterone. The latter includes porcine somatotropin and trenbolone acetate. Trenbolone was shown to be teratogenic and immunotoxic in avian species (Quinn et al., 2007) The “endogenous” anabolic agents are considered indistinguishable from the endogenous hormones and the “exogenous” hormones leave very low levels of residues. Acceptable daily intakes have been allocated to their residues (WHO, 2000a).

## CONTAMINANTS

There are three main types of food contaminants: mycotoxins, heavy metals, and synthetic chemicals. They contaminate food because of growing or harvesting from contaminated soil or water, improper handling, and accidental release from industrial sources.

### Mycotoxins

*Aflatoxins*, produced by the mold *Aspergillus flavus*, occur in nuts and grains, especially when these commodities are stored in a humid and warm climate. These toxins exist as mixtures of aflatoxins B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, G<sub>1</sub>, and G<sub>2</sub>. Among these aflatoxins, B<sub>1</sub> is the most potent carcinogen in most species of animals, especially the rat. In one experiment, rats fed a diet containing 1 ppb of aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> had hyperplastic nodules and carcinoma of the liver (Wogan et al., 1974). Aflatoxins G<sub>1</sub> and M<sub>1</sub> (a metabolite of B<sub>1</sub> and occurring in milk) are also carcinogenic but much less potent. Positive correlation was noted between aflatoxin intake and liver cancer incidence in certain regions in Africa and Thailand (IARC, 1976). Lu (2003) has provided a more extensive review on aflatoxins. As noted in Chapter 3, aflatoxin is bioactivated to aflatoxin-8,9-epoxide which may covalently bind to DNA, thus initiate carcinogenesis.

**Table 1** Source, Occurrence, and Toxicity of Certain Mycotoxins

Mycotoxin	Source	Occurrence	Toxic effects
Aflatoxins	<i>Aspergillus</i>	Nuts, grains	Cancers
Ergot	<i>Claviceps purpura</i>	Grains, especially rye	Ergotism (spasm, cramps, dry gangrene)
Fumonisin B <sub>1</sub>	<i>Fusarium</i>	Maize	Esophageal cancer
Ochratoxins	<i>Aspergillus</i> <i>Penicillium</i>	Grains	Nephropathy Cancer
Trichothecenes	<i>Fusarium trichoderma</i>	Grains	Vomiting, diarrhea, skin inflammation, multiple hemorrhage
Zearalenone	<i>Fusarium</i>	Grains	Estrogenic effects

Source: From WHO (1990, 2000b).

A number of other mycotoxins also occur in foods. Deoxynivalenol occurs commonly in cereal-based foods. Deoxynivalenol was shown to produce gastrointestinal disturbances, immune dysfunction, and anorexia (Pestka and Smolinski, 2005). Ochratoxin A is present in dairy products, chocolate, beer, coffee, wine, poultry, and pork. Ochratoxin A produces Balkan endemic nephropathy as well as cancer (Clark and Snedeker, 2006). Their characteristics are summarized in Table 1. Additional information on these and other mycotoxins may be found in two WHO publications (1990, 2000b).

### Neurotoxins

Certain toxins are found in marine animals that are used as food (Table 2). The notable ones are saxitoxin, which may be present in clams, and tetrodotoxin, which is found in puffer fish, especially in its ovaries. An important and extremely toxic substance is botulinum toxin. It is produced by the bacteria *C. botulinum* in improperly canned food. The major toxic effects of these toxins are on the nervous

**Table 2** Source, Occurrence, and Toxicity of Certain Neurotoxins

Toxins	Source	Occurrence	Toxic effects
Botulinum toxin	<i>Clostridium botulinum</i>	Improperly canned food	Impairing ACh release
Ciguatera	Blue-green algae	Large coastal fishes	Various effects on nervous and G.I. systems
Saxitoxin	<i>Gonyolax</i>	Clams	Blocking of nerve conduction
Tetrodotoxin	Uncertain	Puffer fish	Blocking of nerve conduction

system. Descriptions of these effects are provided in Chapter 17. Another toxin (ciguatoxin) is occasionally present in large coastal fishes in certain geographical areas, notably the Caribbean Sea. In addition to the nervous system, it often produces toxic effects on the G.I. system.

## Metals

The toxic properties of a number of metals are described in Chapter 20, but human exposure via food is highlighted in this section. Among the metals that have produced the most concern are mercury, lead, cadmium, and arsenic.

A number of acute and chronic poisoning episodes have resulted from improper application or consumption of alkyl *mercury* compounds used as fungicides to preserve seed grains. Others followed consumption of fish contaminated with methyl mercury. The compound can be formed via bioactivation (aided by microorganisms in the mud) of mercury discharged from factories (e.g., in Minamata and Niigata, Japan; Appendix 2 of Chap. 1). Because of the biomagnification factor along the food chain, large carnivorous fishes generally contain much higher levels of methyl mercury (WHO, 1976; Bayen et al., 2005).

*Lead* has been used as a fuel additive, in lead batteries, in paints, etc. Humans are exposed to this metal from air, water, and food. According to one analysis, daily intakes from these media amount to 15, 20, and 140  $\mu\text{g}$ , respectively (NRC Canada, 1973). One unusual source of lead intake is improperly fired ceramic food-ware, which may release large amounts of lead from the glaze and which has produced a number of poisonings. This fact has prompted the promulgation of limits in the extent of release of lead from various types of food-ware (WHO, 1979). The estimated intake of lead from ceramic ware would be in the range of 30 to 80  $\mu\text{g}/\text{day}$  if all the wares in use released this metal to the legal limit (Lu, 1979b). Among certain populations, ceramic food-ware still constitutes an important source of lead (Rojas-Lopez et al., 1994).

*Cadmium* is used as a pigment and occurs in the environment, especially through the refining of zinc ores, which contain varying concentrations of cadmium. It enters the food chain through pollution of soil and water. Itai-Itai disease in Japan has been attributed to chronic exposure to cadmium, through long-term ingestion of contaminated rice. It may also be leached from decorated ceramic food-ware.

Arsenic contamination is primarily attributed to smelting and mining industries. It enters the food chain through pollution of soil and water. Arsenic poisoning results in Blackfoot disease (peripheral vascular disorder), hyperkeratotic lesions in skin to cancer as well as liver cancer (Bernstam and Nriagu, 2000).

### Certain Organic Compounds

Among these chemicals are *organochlorine insecticides*, which had been widely used. Their use has been discontinued because of their persistence in the environment. However, they are still present in foods in trace amounts. Others include

**Table 3** Action Levels for Certain Food Contaminants

Contaminants	Commodity	Action level
Aflatoxin	Nuts	20 ppb
	Foods and feeds	20 ppb
	Milk <sup>a</sup>	0.5 ppb
Aldrin and dieldrin	Various foods	0.02–0.3 ppm
Cadmium, in leaching solution from ceramic ware	Flat ware	0.5 µg/mL
	Small hollowware	0.5 µg/mL
	Large hollowware	0.25 µg/mL
Lead, in leaching solution from ceramic ware	Flat ware	3.0 µg/mL
	Small hollowware	2.0 µg/mL
	Large hollowware	1.0 µg/mL
Mercury	Fish, shellfish, crustaceans	1.0 ppm
	Wheat	1.0 ppm
Polychlorinated biphenyls	Red meat (fat basis)	3 ppm

<sup>a</sup>Aflatoxin M1.

Source: From FDA (2000).

*polychlorinated biphenyls* (PCB), which are used in electrical capacitors and transformers, as plasticizers and heat exchangers, and in paper manufacturing. Through leakage and discharge of waste, they enter the environment. Because of their persistence and biomagnification properties, they enter the food chain. These chemicals attracted much attention because of the episode of consumption of a batch of rice oil contaminated with PCB through a leak in a heat exchanger in 1968. Thousands of consumers in Japan were affected (Appendix 2 of Chap. 1). The main sign of toxicity was chloracne, although there were many other symptoms and signs (page 13). Similarly, an inadvertent addition of *polybrominated biphenyls* (PBB) to cattle feed in Michigan resulted in the contamination of a large amount of beef and milk.

The “action levels” for these and other contaminants have been established by the U.S. FDA to control their levels in food and feed. Some of them are listed in Table 3.

## REFERENCES

- Arnold DL, Moodie CA, Stavric D, et al. (1977). Canadian saccharin study. *Science* 197, 320.
- Bayen S, Koroleva E, Lee HK, et al. (2005). Persistent organic pollutants and heavy metals in typical seafoods consumed in Singapore. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 68, 151–166.
- Bernstam L, Nriagu J (2000). Molecular aspects of arsenic stress. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 293–322.

- Carr CJ (1987). Food additives: A benefit/risk dilemma. In: Haley TJ, Berndt WO, eds. *Handbook of Toxicology*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere.
- Clark HA, Snedeker SM (2006). Ochratoxin A: Its cancer risk and potential for exposure. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 9, 265–296.
- Classen HG, Marquardt P, Spath M (1968). Sympathomimetic effects of cyclohexylamine. *Arzneimittel Forsch* 18, 590–594.
- FAO/WHO (1994). *Food Additives*. Codex Alimentarius, vol. XIV. Rome: Food Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
- FDA (1982). *Toxicological principles for the safety assessment of direct additives and color additives used in food*. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Springfield, VA: National Technical Information Service, PB 83–170696.
- FDA (2000). *Action levels for poisonous or deleterious substances in human food and animal feed*. Washington, D.C.: Food and Drug Administration.
- Hayes JR, Borzelleca JF (1982). Biodisposition of xenobiotics in animals. In: Beitz DC, Hanson R, eds. *Animal Products in Human Nutrition*. New York, NY: Academic Press, 225–259.
- IARC (1976). *Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man*, vol. 10. Some Naturally Occurring Substances. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- IARC (1980). *Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, vol. 22. Some Non-Nutritive Sweetening Agents. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- Ito N, Fukushima S, Hagiwara A, et al. (1983). Carcinogenicity of butylated hydroxyanisole in F344 rats. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 70, 343–352.
- Juhlin L (1980). Incidence of intolerance to food additives. *Int J Dermatol* 19, 548–551.
- Kenney RA (1986). The Chinese restaurant syndrome: An anecdote revisited. *Food Chem Toxicol* 24, 351–354.
- Kim HS, Kim TS, Shin JH, et al. (2004). Neonatal exposure to di(*n*-butyl)phthalate alters male reproductive tract development. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 67, 2045–2060.
- Lu FC (1979a). The safety of food additives: The dynamics of the issue. In: Deichmann WB, ed. *Toxicology and Occupational Medicine*. New York, NY: Elsevier/North Holland.
- Lu FC (1979b). *Review of Total Intake of Lead from All Sources*. WHO: HCS/CER/79.5. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Lu FC (1988). Acceptable daily intake: Inception, evolution and application. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 8, 45–60.
- Lu FC (2003). Assessment of safety/risk vs. public health: aflatoxins and hepatic carcinoma. *Environ Health and Preventive Med* 7, 235–238.
- NRC Canada (1973). *Lead in the Canadian environment*. NRCC No. 13682. Ottawa: National Research Council of Canada.
- Olsen P, Bille N, Meyer O (1983). Hepatocellular neoplasms in rats induced by butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT). *Acta Pharmacol Toxicol* 54, 433–434.
- Pestka JJ, Smolinski AT (2005). Deoxynivalenol: Toxicology and potential effects on humans. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 8, 39–69.
- Price JM, Biava CG, Oser BL, et al. (1970). Bladder tumors in rats fed cyclohexylamine or high doses of a mixture of cyclamate and saccharin. *Science* 167, 1131–1132.
- Prochaska HJ, DeLong MJ, Talalay P (1985). On the mechanisms of induction of cancer-protective enzymes: A unifying proposal. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 82, 8232–8236.

- Quinn MJ, McKernan M, Lavoie ET, et al. (2007). Immunotoxicity of trenbolone acetate in Japanese quail. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 88–93.
- Rojas-Lopez M, Santos-Burgoa C, Rios C, et al. (1994). Use of lead-glazed ceramics is the main factor associated to high lead in blood levels in two Mexican rural communities. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 42, 45–52.
- Schaumberg HH, Byck R, Gerstl R, et al. (1969). Monosodium glutamate: Its pharmacology and role in the Chinese restaurant syndrome. *Science* 163, 826.
- U.S. Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, As Amended (1979). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- WHO (1974). Toxicological Evaluation of Certain Food Additives with a Review of General Principles and of Specifications (17th Report). Tech Rep Ser 539. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1976). Mercury. Environmental Health Criteria 1. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1979). Ceramic Foodware Safety. Report of a Meeting of Experts. HCS/79.7. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1982a). Evaluation of Certain Food Additives and Contaminants (26th Report). Tech Rep Ser 683. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1986). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants (29th Report). Tech Rep Ser 733. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1989). Evaluation of Certain Food Additives and Contaminants. WHO Food Additives Series 24. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1990). Selected Mycotoxins: Ochratoxins, Trichothecene, Ergot Environ Health Criteria No. 105. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1995). Evaluation of Certain Veterinary Drug Residues in Food (38th Report). Tech Rep Ser 815. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (2000a). Toxicological Evaluation of Certain Veterinary Drug Residues in Food. Food Additives Series No. 43. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (2000b). Fumonisin B1. Environ Health Criteria No. 219. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Wilhite CC, Ball GL, McLellan CJ (2008). Derivation of a bisphenol A oral reference dose and drinking water equivalent concentration. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 11, 69–145.
- Wogan GN, Paglialunga S, Newberne PM (1974). Carcinogenic effects of low dietary levels of anatoxin B in rats. *Food Cosmet Toxicol* 12, 681–685.



**Appendix 1** Major Functional Groups of Direct Food Additives

---

1. Preservatives are added to prolong the shelf life of foods by preventing or inhibiting microbial growth. Examples are benzoic acid, propionic acid, and sorbic acid, their salts, nitrates and nitrites, and sulfur dioxide and related compounds.
  2. Antioxidants are added to oils to prevent them from becoming rancid, which is a result of oxidative changes. Some are added to fruits and vegetables to prevent enzymatic browning. The commonly used ones include butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA), butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT), various gallates, ascorbic acid and its salts, and  $\alpha$ -tocopherol.
  3. Emulsifying, stabilizing, and thickening agents are added to improve the homogeneity, stability, and “body” of a variety of food products. These include mono- and diglycerides, sucrose esters of fatty acids, lecithin, salts of various types of phosphate, modified starches, calcium gluconate, calcium citrate, agar, alginic acid and its salts, various vegetable gums, and cellulose derivatives.
  4. Colors are used to enhance visual appeal of food products. Some of these substances are derived from natural colors, such as carotene, chlorophyll, and cochineal. Others are synthetic, such as allura red, amaranth, azorubine, indigotine, and tartrazine.
  5. Flavors and flavor enhancers. The flavors constitute the largest group of food additives. However, they are used, in general, at very low levels in foods. Some are synthetic (mainly esters, aldehydes, and ketones); others are derived from natural sources (such as oleoresins, plant extracts, and essential oils). Flavor enhancers, such as monosodium glutamate, enhance the flavor of the food to which it is added.
  6. Artificial sweeteners have a strong sweet taste but have little or no caloric value. They are therefore useful for diabetics and for those who wish to enjoy the sweet taste without increasing the caloric intake. The notable ones are the cyclamates, saccharin, and aspartame.
  7. Nutrients include vitamins, minerals, and essential amino acids. As noted above, national regulations in most countries, contrary to those of the United States, do not consider these as food additives. However, a food additive used for a technological reason may incidentally have certain nutritional values. For example, riboflavin may be used as a color but is also a vitamin.
  8. Miscellaneous groups. These include (a) acidity regulators (acids and bases), which are used to adjust the pH of beverages and canned fruits and vegetables; (b) anticaking agents, which are added to salt, sugar, etc., to maintain their free-flowing property; (c) antifoaming agents, which are added to liquids to prevent foaming; (d) flour treatment agents, which are added to flour to improve its baking qualities; (e) glazing agents; (f) propellants; and (g) raising agents.
-



## Toxicity of Pesticides

### CONTENTS

Introduction	288
Value of Pesticides	288
Adverse Effects of Pesticides	288
Categories of Pesticides	289
Insecticides	289
Organophosphorus Insecticides	289
Carbamate Insecticides	290
Organochlorine Insecticides	290
Botanical and Other Insecticides	290
Herbicides	291
Fungicides	291
Rodenticides	292
Fumigants	292
Toxicological Properties	292
Toxicity on the Nervous System	292
Interactions	293
Carcinogenicity	293
Teratogenicity and Effects on Reproductive Functions	294
Other Adverse Effects	295
Bioaccumulation and Biomagnification	295
Testing, Evaluation, and Control	296
Categories of Data Required	296
LD <sub>50</sub> and Short-Term Toxicity	296
Delayed Neurotoxicity (Peripheral Axonopathy)	297
Interaction	297
Toxicological Evaluation	297
Standards	297

Tolerances	297
Dietary Intakes	297
Gulf War Syndrome	298
References	300
Appendix 1 Toxicological Findings and Evaluation on Certain Insecticides	302

## INTRODUCTION

### Value of Pesticides

Pesticides are substances that kill or control *pests*. There are various types of pests. The most common are insects. Some of them serve as vectors for diseases. The most important vector-borne diseases, malaria and onchocerciasis (“river blindness”), are transmitted to humans by mosquitoes and black flies. Both diseases are debilitating and affect millions of people in the tropical and subtropical regions. Other vector-borne diseases include filariasis, yellow fever, rickettsial pox, viral encephalitis, typhus, and bubonic plague. Insecticides have helped to control these diseases.

Insects are also detrimental to various *plants* and their products. Insecticides are therefore widely used to protect the farmer’s products. Although most of the insecticides currently in use are synthetic chemicals, a number of natural substances have been used by farmers for a long time. These substances include nicotine from tobacco, pyrethrum from flowers of a species of chrysanthemum, and various compounds of lead, copper, and arsenic.

Aside from insects, *weeds* constitute a very important nuisance to the farmer. Before the introduction of herbicides, farmers used to spend much time to remove the weeds manually, a very time-consuming and backbreaking task. Other pesticides have also been developed to control other pests such as *fungi*, *rodents*, and others. The great variety of agricultural uses and chemical categories may be seen from a recent compilation of the 230 pesticides that have been evaluated and re-evaluated by the WHO Expert Committee on Pesticide Residues since 1965 (Lu, 1995).

A number of *household pesticide* products are also available to control household nuisance pests, such as flies and mosquitoes.

### Adverse Effects of Pesticides

These may involve human health and/or the environment. The most dramatic of such effects on humans are the accidental acute poisonings. Several major outbreaks of poisoning with methyl and ethyl mercury compounds and hexachlorobenzene as fungicides and with parathion, an organophosphorus insecticide, have occurred in several parts of the world involving thousands of individuals

and hundreds of deaths. A few examples are listed in Appendix 2 of Chapter 1. Individual cases of acute poisoning have usually resulted from ingestion of large quantities of pesticides accidentally or with suicidal intent.

Occupational exposure to pesticides may involve workers engaged in the manufacturing, formulating, and application of pesticides. The pesticides enter the body generally through the respiratory tract and by dermal absorption, but small amounts may enter the gastrointestinal tract through the use of contaminated hands and utensils. This type of poisoning is more likely to happen with pesticides that are more toxic acutely. The major public health concern, however, is the ingestion of pesticide residues in foods, as this may involve large populations, especially children over long periods of time (Infante-Rivard and Weichenthal, 2007; Wigle et al., 2008).

In addition to these human health hazards, pesticides may have a serious impact on the *environment*. Apart from large-scale accidental release to the environment, only minimal levels are found in various environmental media. However, the levels are likely to be higher with pesticides that are persistent and/or have a propensity for biomagnifications. In the latter case, the concentration of a pesticide increases as it moves through the trophic chain. The organism with a high concentration may be adversely affected. For example, the bald eagle was nearly extinct, resulting from its fragile egg shells as a toxic effect of high levels of DDT bioaccumulated through the contaminated food chain of the bird. Daily intake of seafoods in Singapore were found to contain excessive amounts of DDT and heptachlor as a result of biomagnifications, and risk of cancer might be significantly higher as a consequence in this population (Bayen et al., 2005). Such environmental pollution may also affect human health by virtue of the contaminated soil and water, which then results in the production of contaminated human food and drinking water.

## CATEGORIES OF PESTICIDES

Pesticides are usually grouped according to their uses and their chemical nature. The major groups are the following.

### Insecticides

As noted above, this is the largest group of pesticides and consists of a number of different chemical subgroups.

#### Organophosphorus Insecticides

These are esters of phosphoric acid or thiophosphoric acid, represented by dichlorvos and parathion, respectively. They act by inhibiting acetylcholinesterase (AChE), resulting in an accumulation of acetylcholine (ACh) (Pope, 1999). The excess ACh induces a variety of symptoms and signs. The severity of the symptoms and signs is more or less correlated with the extent of the inhibition of

cholinesterase in blood, but the precise relationship varies depending on the compound (Clegg and van Gemert, 1999).

In addition to parathion and dichlorvos, other pesticides in this group include parathion-methyl, azinphos-methyl (Guthion), chlorfenvinphos, diazinon, dimethoate, disulfoton (Di-Syston), malathion, mevinphos, and trichlorfon (Dipterex). Their toxicities vary over a wide range (Appendix 1).

#### Carbamate Insecticides

These are esters of *N*-methylcarbamic acid. They also act by inhibiting AChE. However, their effects on the enzyme are much more readily reversible than those of the organophosphorus insecticides. Insecticides of this class include carbaryl (Sevin), aldicarb (Temik), carbofuran, methomyl, and propoxur (Baygon). In addition, with carbamates, signs of toxicity appear more promptly and, for many of them, there is a greater range from the doses that cause minor toxic effects and those that are lethal. For this reason, on an acute basis, the carbamates are considered safer than the organophosphorus insecticides. Appendix 1 of Chapter 19 also lists their toxicities.

#### Organochlorine Insecticides

These include the chlorinated ethane derivatives, the cyclodienes, and the hexachlorocyclohexanes. Some of these chemicals (e.g., DDT) were introduced in the 1940s and were widely used in agricultural and health programs. This was because of their relatively low acute toxicity and their persistence, which reduced the need for repeated applications. However, the persistence has later been recognized as a liability rather than an asset.

Both DDT and methoxychlor are chlorinated ethane derivatives, but methoxychlor is much less toxic and less persistent than DDT. The cyclodiene insecticide endrin is extremely toxic; aldrin and dieldrin somewhat less toxic; and chlordane, heptachlor, and mirex even less toxic. Lindane is the gamma isomer of hexachlorocyclohexane (HCH) that is in use. It is highly toxic but less cumulative. Consequently, lindane is used much more widely than HCH.

#### Botanical and Other Insecticides

These include nicotine from tobacco. It is extremely toxic acutely and acts on the nervous system. Pyrethrum is obtained from the flowers of *Chrysanthemum cinerariaefolium*. An enzyme inhibitor, piperonyl butoxide, is often used in combination with this insecticide as a synergist. Pyrethrum has a low toxicity in mammals but is allergenic to sensitive individuals, producing contact dermatitis and is also a neurotoxicant. The major active principles in pyrethrum are pyrethrin I and II. The former acts on the central nervous system and the latter on the peripheral nervous system. Both are synthesized and more stable than pyrethrum. Rotenone is extracted from roots of the plant *Derris elliptica*. It also has a low toxicity in mammals but is more toxic to insects and fish. Many microorganisms are known

to be pathogenic to insects. The ones being used are *Bacillus thuringiensis* and certain insect baculoviruses. They are not known to be pathogenic to humans.

## Herbicides

There are several types of herbicides. Some retard the growth of weeds by inhibiting photosynthesis, respiration, cell division or synthesis of protein or lipids. Others act as growth stimulants thereby disturbing the normal growth (Ecobichon, 1998).

Chlorophenoxy compounds are exemplified by 2,4-D (2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid) and 2,4,5-T (2,4,5-trichlorophenoxyacetic acid). They act in plants as growth hormones. Their toxicities in animals are relatively low. However, chloracne, the main toxic effect of 2,4,5-T in humans, seems attributable to the contaminant 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorobenzo-*p*-dioxin (TCDD).

Bipyridyl herbicides, such as paraquat and diquat, have been widely used. They exert their toxicity via the formation of free radicals. The toxicity of paraquat is characterized by its pulmonary effects not only after exposure via inhalation but also by the oral route, as noted in Chapter 12.

Other herbicides include dinitro-*o*-cresol (DNOC), amitrole, the carbamates propham and chloroprotham, and a number of other chemicals.

## Fungicides

Mercury compounds such as methyl and ethyl mercury are very effective fungicides and had been widely used to preserve seed grains. However, several tragic accidents, involving numerous deaths and permanent neurologic damage, occurred with their use (Appendix 2 of Chap. 1). This fact has deterred their further use.

Dicarboximides include the dimethylthiocarbamates (ferbam, thiram, and ziram) and the ethylenebisdithiocarbamates (maneb, nabam, and zineb). These compounds have relatively low acute toxicity and have hence been widely used in agriculture. However, there is concern about their carcinogenic potential.

Phthalimide derivatives such as captan and folpet have very low acute and chronic toxicity. However, captan was found to reduce body weight of pups of treated rats and folpet induced keratosis of the G.I. tract (FAO, 1990).

Substituted aromatics such as pentachlorophenol (PCP) have been widely used as wood preservatives. PCP increases metabolic rate through uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation. It has a low LD<sub>50</sub> but its technical grade is more toxic, indicating greater toxicity of its contaminants. Pentachloronitrobenzene (PCNB) has been used as a fungicide in treating soil. It is somewhat less toxic acutely than PCP, but may be carcinogenic.

Other fungicides include certain *N*-heterocyclic compounds such as benomyl and thiobendazole. These chemicals have very low toxicity and have been widely used in agriculture. Hexachlorobenzene has been used as a seed treatment agent but has caused mass poisoning (Appendix 2 of Chap. 1).

## Rodenticides

Warfarin is an anticoagulant by acting as an antimetabolite to vitamin K, thereby inhibiting the formation of prothrombin. It has been widely used because its toxicity is observed only after repeated ingestion, a circumstance unlikely to occur among children and pets.

Thioureas such as ANTU ( $\alpha$ -naphthylthiourea) are extremely toxic to rats but only moderately toxic to humans. Their main toxicity is pulmonary edema and pleural effusion.

Sodium fluoroacetate ("1080") and fluoroacetamide ("1081") are extremely toxic and their use has hence been restricted to licensed personnel. They exert toxic effect through blockage of the citric acid cycle as described in Chapter 4 under "Lethal Synthesis."

Other rodenticides include botanical products such as the alkaloid strychnine, a potent CNS stimulant, and red squill, which contain the glycosides scillaren-A and -B. These glycosides, similar to digitalis, have cardiotoxic and central emetic effects. Because of the latter effect, these substances are relatively nontoxic to most mammals but are potent poisons to rats, which do not vomit. Inorganic rodenticides include zinc phosphide, thallium sulfate, arsenic trioxide, and elemental phosphorus, acting through different mechanisms.

## Fumigants

As the name implies, this group of pesticides includes a number of gases, liquids that readily vaporize, and solids that release gases by chemical reactions. In the gaseous form, they permeate storage areas and soil to control insects, rodents, and soil nematodes. Many fumigants, such as acrylonitrile, chloropicrin, and ethylene dibromide, are reactive chemicals and are also used widely in the chemical industry; some of them will be described in Chapter 24.

## TOXICOLOGICAL PROPERTIES

### Toxicity on the Nervous System

The organochlorine (OC) insecticides stimulate the nervous system and induce paresthesia, susceptibility to stimulation, irritability, disturbed equilibrium, tremor, and convulsions. The precise mode of action is not known. However, some of these chemicals, such as aldrin, dieldrin, and lindane, induce facilitation and hyperexcitation at synaptic and neuromuscular junctions, resulting in repetitive discharge in central, sensory, and motor neurons. DDT may exert its toxic effect in the nervous system by adversely affecting the axon membrane (Doherty, 1979; Narahashi, 1980).

The organophosphate (OP) and carbamate insecticides inhibit acetylcholinesterase (Pope, 1999). Normally, the neurotransmitter acetylcholine (ACh) is released at the synapses. Once the nerve impulse is transmitted, the released



ACh is hydrolyzed to acetic acid and choline by the acetylcholinesterase (AChE) at the site. Upon exposure to OP and carbamate insecticides, AChE is inhibited, resulting in an accumulation of ACh. The accumulated ACh in the CNS will induce tremor, incoordination, convulsions (Clegg and van Gemert, 1999). In the autonomic nervous system AChE inhibition produces diarrhea, involuntary urination, bronchoconstriction, miosis, etc. Acetylcholine accumulation at the neuromuscular junction will lead to contraction of the muscles, followed by weakness, loss of reflexes, and paralysis. The inhibition of AChE induced by carbamates is readily reversible, whereas that following exposure to OP compounds is generally less readily so. In fact, certain OP compounds, such as DFP (diisopropyl fluorophosphate), produce irreversible inhibition; recovery only follows synthesis of new AChE.

Several OP compounds, including DFP, TOCP, leptophos, mipafox, and trichlorofon, cause a “delayed neurotoxicity.”

As noted above, pyrethrin I and II act on different parts of the nervous system.

### Interactions

The most notable type of interaction is the *potentiation* observed between certain organophosphorus insecticides. Frawley and coworkers (1957) reported marked potentiation of the toxicity of the EPN [*o*-ethyl-*o*-(4-nitrophenyl) phenyl phosphonothioate] and malathion. Combinations of a number of OP insecticides have since been tested. Some showed additive effects, others were less than additive, and still others were synergistic. The most pronounced potentiation (about 100-fold increase) was observed between malathion and TOCP (tri-*o*-cresyl phosphate). The mechanism of the potentiation was attributed to the inhibition of enzymes, such as carboxylesterase and amidases, which are responsible for the detoxication of certain OP compounds such as malathion and its more toxic metabolite malaoxon (Murphy, 1969).

### Carcinogenicity

The organophosphate insecticides, in general, in adults are not carcinogenic, with the exception of compounds that contain halogens such as tetrachlorvinphos. These chemicals possess the properties of organochlorine insecticides (see below). However, it is worth noting that children are a more susceptible subpopulation. There is epidemiologic evidence of increased frequency of cancer in children exposed to organophosphate insecticides (Infante-Rivard and Weichenthal, 2007; Wigle et al., 2008). The carbamate insecticides per se are not carcinogenic either. However, carbaryl was shown to form, in the presence of nitrous acid, nitrosocarbaryl, which is known to be carcinogenic. A number of other pesticides are also nitrosatable under extreme conditions, and their products are carcinogenic and mutagenic (IARC, 1983). However, because of the unrealistic conditions required for such

nitrosation to take place, the health concern arising from this type of reaction is questionable.

On the other hand, the organochlorine insecticides tested were all found to induce hepatoma in mice (IARC, 1983). The pesticide that has aroused most controversy has been DDT. It did not produce carcinogenicity in rats, hamsters, and several other mammalian species. Furthermore, epidemiological findings are essentially negative, and so are the short-term mutagenesis tests. For these reasons the WHO Expert Committee on Pesticide Residues reaffirmed in 1984 the ADI for DDT and several other organochlorine insecticides. A comprehensive review of the toxicological data and their interpretations on DDT was provided by Coulston (1985). Nevertheless, its use has been restricted or suspended in several nations based partly on this potential health hazard and partly on its ecological impact. It is worth noting that in certain underdeveloped countries DDT must be applied in order to counteract malaria development. The only pesticide on which there is some epidemiological evidence of carcinogenicity is hexachlorocyclohexane (Wang et al., 1988).

The fumigants EDB (ethylene dibromide) and DBCP (1,2-dibromo-3-chloropropane) were found to produce highly malignant squamous cell carcinoma in the stomach of rats and mice (IARC, 1977). However, their use has not been restricted or suspended, because the fumigated foods, upon aeration, contain negligible residue levels.

Amitrole (aminotriazole), a herbicide, produces thyroid tumors apparently through an indirect mechanism (Steinhoff et al., 1983). Thyroid peroxidase normally oxidizes iodine to an oxidized form, which then conjugates with tyrosine to form thyroxine. Amitrole inhibits this enzyme, thus lowering thyroxine levels. This lowered level, through a biofeedback mechanism, stimulates pituitary gland to release more thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). TSH in turn stimulates thyroid gland to become hyperplastic and eventually to form tumors. Amitrole is thus a "secondary carcinogen." Similarly, the ethylenebisdithiocarbamates fumigants (mancozeb, maneb, nabam, and zineb) were also reported to produce thyroid tumors. This action is evidently mediated through the major breakdown and metabolic product ethylenethiourea.

### **Teratogenicity and Effects on Reproductive Functions**

In the late 1960s, several articles appeared reporting a variety of teratogenic and reproductive effects of carbaryl in dogs. Summaries of these reports have been included in a monograph (WHO, 1970). A comprehensive study in rats, given carbaryl in the diet at doses of 100 mg/kg and 200 mg/kg showed no effect on various reproductive functions and no teratogenic effects. Some effects were observed in rats given carbaryl by gavage (Weil et al., 1972). The authors attributed the effects in rats to the gavage method of administering the pesticide and the effects in the dog to its routes of biotransformation of carbaryl being different from those in humans and several other species.

Other pesticides reported as having teratogenic effects include the dithiocarbamate fungicides. Such effects are likely due, at least partly, to their breakdown product ETU (WHO, 1974). In addition, abamectin, dinocap, glyphosate, and procymidone induced cleft palate, defects in the neural tube, renal defects, and hypospadias, respectively (see Lu, 1995). An extensive, comprehensive review of pesticides and developmental outcomes including fetal death, intrauterine growth retardation, preterm birth, and birth defects is provided by Weselak et al. (2007).

### Other Adverse Effects

Certain renal effects of carbaryl were reported in a group of human volunteers ingesting carbaryl at a daily dose of 0.12 mg/kg for six weeks. There was an increase in the ratio of urinary amino acid nitrogen to creatinine, compared to those taking placebo. This was interpreted as an indication of a decrease in the ability of the proximal convoluted tubules to reabsorb amino acids. This effect was not observed in individuals taking carbaryl at 0.06 mg/kg daily (Wills et al., 1968).

Paraquat produces pulmonary edema, hemorrhage, and fibrosis (Smith and Heath, 1976) following either inhalation or ingestion, but the closely related herbicide diquat does not (see also Chap. 12). However, both chemicals are toxic to cultured lung cells. Since paraquat is retained in the lung whereas diquat is not, it is evident that the difference between those two herbicides in their pulmonary toxicity is related to the special affinity of paraquat for certain pulmonary cells (type II cells).

*Hypersensitivity* reactions to pyrethrum have been reported. The most common form is contact dermatitis (Vial et al., 1996). This type of reaction is not serious in the general population but may have serious consequences in immunocompromised individuals with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, lupus erythematosus, or rheumatoid arthritis. Asthma has also been reported. Anaphylactic reactions are rare (Hayes, 1982).

Organochlorine insecticides, such as DDT, chlordecone, and mirex, are hepatotoxic, inducing liver enlargement and centrolobular necrosis. They are also inducers of microsomal monooxygenases, thereby affecting the toxicity of other chemicals.

A number of organophosphorus, carbamate, and organochlorine insecticides, the dithiocarbamate fungicides, and herbicides alter various immune functions (Vial et al., 1996). For example, malathion, methylparathion, carbaryl, DDT, paraquat, and diquat have been shown to depress antibody formation, impair leukocyte phagocytosis, and reduce the germinal centers in spleen, thymus, and lymph nodes (Koller, 1979; Street, 1981).

### Bioaccumulation and Biomagnification

These properties per se do not necessarily represent adverse biological effects. They are generally associated with substances that are lipophilic and resistant to

breakdown. The organochlorine pesticides in general are more persistent in the environment and tend to be stored in the fat depot. However, the bioaccumulation is more marked with some chemicals than others. For example, DDT is stored in the body fat for a much longer time than methoxychlor. The half-lives of these insecticides in rats are 6 to 12 months and 12 weeks, respectively.

Their persistence in the environment may create ecological problems. DDT and related chemicals in the environment enhance the metabolism of estrogens in birds. In the egg-laying and nestling cycle of certain birds, this disturbance of hormones adversely affects reproduction and survival of the young (Peakall, 1970). There is evidence that the estrogenic actions of DDT are responsible for the development of breast cancer and disorders of male reproductive functions (Roy et al., 1997).

Biomagnification is the result of bioaccumulation in the organism alone or in conjunction with persistence in the environment. For example, DDT is lipophilic, and thus occurs in the fat portion of body fluids including milk. While a mother's daily intake of DDT may be 0.5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$ , daily DDT intake of her breastfed baby's might be 11.2  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$ . This magnification results from the fact that DDT is stored in the human body at 10- to 20-fold chronic daily intake level and the baby consumes essentially only the milk. Furthermore, the caloric intake per kilogram body weight is higher in babies compared to that in adults. The significance of the much greater intake of DDT by babies is not clear, because of the relatively short duration of this greater level of intake and the remarkable insensitivity of the young versus the adult (Lu et al., 1965).

The biomagnification is even more marked in carnivorous animals. DDT and methyl mercury can accumulate through a series of plankton, small fish, large fish, and birds, and result in a magnification of the concentration amounting to several hundred-fold (Woodwell, 1967). The decision to suspend the use of DDT was partly based on its adverse ecological impact, as noted above.

## TESTING, EVALUATION, AND CONTROL

### Categories of Data Required

Various categories of data are required in the evaluation of pesticides. The basic data required are essentially the same as those listed for food additives (see Chap. 18). However, a number of specific toxicological problems have been encountered with pesticides as outlined in the preceding section. The additional studies for certain pesticides include the following.

#### LD<sub>50</sub> and Short-Term Toxicity

Because of the greater acute toxicity of most pesticides, the LD<sub>50</sub> is usually determined more precisely. Furthermore, in view of the fact that certain occupational workers, such as manufacturers, formulators, and applicators, may be exposed through the skin and respiratory tract, the dermal LD<sub>50</sub> and the LC<sub>50</sub> by inhalation

are generally required. As occupational workers are likely to be exposed for some length of time, the toxicity of repeated exposure through dermal and inhalation is generally ascertained (see Chaps. 12 and 15).

#### Delayed Neurotoxicity (Peripheral Axonopathy)

This type of toxicity has been observed with a number of organophosphorus insecticides. The appropriate test is performed on new chemicals of this group to exclude this potential hazard (see Chap. 17).

#### Interaction

Marked interaction exists between certain pairs of organophosphorus insecticides. The potential health hazard is assessed using LD<sub>50</sub>s of the individual chemicals alone and in combination.

### **Toxicological Evaluation**

The assessment of an acceptable daily intake (ADI) involves assessing the database for completeness and relevance, determining a no-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL) in terms of mg/kg body weight, and selecting an appropriate safety factor to extrapolate to an ADI for humans, also in terms of mg/kg body weight. A list of the ADIs of the 230 pesticides that have been evaluated and re-evaluated by the WHO Expert Committee on Pesticide Residues since 1965, along with the NOAELs, safety factors, and critical effects is included in a review article (Lu, 1995).

While all pesticides are toxic, they vary in the nature and magnitude of toxicity. Certain pesticides have an inherent potential for specific toxic effects. The presence of such properties must be assessed by conducting appropriate tests, before determining a NOAEL. The size of the safety factor will depend on a number of factors, as discussed in Chapter 24.

### **Standards**

#### Tolerances

To protect the health of the consumer, standards are formulated. The standards, in the form of “tolerances” (also known as “maximum residue limits”), are established. The standards provide maximum permitted levels in each food commodity in which the pesticide may leave residues following its use. A pesticide may be used during any one or more stages of the preplanting, growth, harvesting, handling, and storage of the food crop.

#### Dietary Intakes

Several procedures are used to ensure that the total intake of each pesticide from its residues in all food commodities does not exceed its ADI. One procedure involves chemical analysis of the residue levels in food represented in the “total diet” and

the calculation of the "dietary intake" of each pesticide by adding the products of the residue levels and the per capita consumption of each of these foods. The latest survey by the U.S. FDA shows that the dietary intakes of all the pesticides analyzed were considerably lower than the corresponding ADIs (FDA, 1987).

The other procedure, which is much simpler, involves calculating the "potential daily intake" and comparing it with the corresponding ADI. The former figure is obtained by adding the products of the tolerance levels in each of the foods and the per capita consumption of these foods. Evidently the potential daily intake represents an overestimation. First, a pesticide is not necessarily used in all the food commodities in which there are tolerances. Furthermore, in a vast majority of the cases, the actual residue levels are much lower than the tolerances. Nevertheless, this procedure offers distinct advantages. Apart from a few industrialized countries, figures for dietary intakes of pesticides are not available; for them the potential daily intakes provide a ready yardstick for assessing the health hazards to the consumer posed by the dietary intake of pesticides. The overestimation may also compensate for differences in dietary habits in different parts of the world and for variations in the levels of pesticide residues in certain foods. According to actual analysis, the residue levels may, although infrequently, exceed the tolerances (see also Chap. 25).

Apart from assessing the potential hazard of pesticides, the dietary intake figures, obtained by analysis or calculation, are also used in assessing, and possibly in recommending modification of the agricultural use of these chemicals. Where the residue levels appear too high, they may be lowered, for example, by a reduction of the rate of application or by an increase of the interval between the last application and harvesting of the food crop.

## GULF WAR SYNDROME

Between August 1990 and April 1991 there were over 750,000 military personnel from the United States, Canada, and the United Kingdom that participated in the air, sea, and ground war in the Persian Gulf region. During this war, service personnel were concurrently exposed to certain biological, chemical, and psychological environments. In particular amongst some veterans there was an increased frequency of chronic symptoms including headache, loss of memory, fatigue, muscle and joint pain, ataxia, skin rash, respiratory difficulties, and gastrointestinal disturbances. Potential exposure was to fumes and smoke from the following: military operations, oil well fires, diesel exhaust, toxic paints, pesticides, fire sand, depleted uranium, chemoprophylactic agents, and multiple immunizations. The variety of symptoms reported by veterans make it unlikely that a single etiologic cause was responsible for producing the Gulf War illnesses.

It was suggested by the news media that chemical interactions among pyridostigmine bromide (PB), permethrin, and *N,N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET) might contribute to Gulf War illnesses. This reported mixture served to protect the military personnel against insect-borne diseases. Furthermore, PB protected against potential nerve gas attack. However, heavy use of DEET by 1% to 5%

of the Persian Gulf War veterans (7000–35,000 persons) may be related to the unexpected increase in the number of complaints of some of the veterans, which included fatigue, joint pain, ataxia, and rash (Institute of Medicine, 1995). Other complaints reported by “heavy users” of DEET were stumbling, weakness, and muscle cramps. The fact that these complaints occurred with excess frequency within this subpopulation can be deemed that exposure to contaminants in the Persian Gulf was responsible for this illness.

*Pyridostigmine bromide* (PB) is a quaternary ammonium carbamate that has been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as a treatment for myasthenia gravis and the reversal of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents. PB was used in the Gulf War at a dose of one 30 mg tablet every 8 hours (90 mg/day). PB was taken for about two weeks at the start of the air war in mid-January and again at the start of the ground war in mid-February. The majority of service members in the theater of operations took some PB during these periods. Toxicity from an overdose of PB results from the accumulation of acetylcholine at nicotinic and muscarinic acetylcholine receptors in the peripheral nervous system (PNS). The resultant effect is exaggerated cholinergic response such as muscle fasciculations, cramps, weakness, muscle twitching, respiratory difficulty, tremor, gastrointestinal tract disturbances, and paralysis (Abou-Donia et al., 1996). Finally, death occurs from asphyxia. It should be clearly noted that a therapeutic oral dose of PB for myasthenia gravis is 200 to 1400 mg/day but that much less dose was taken in the Persian Gulf.

*Permethrin*, a third-generation synthetic pyrethroid, has been approved for use as an insecticide by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). This compound has also been used to impregnate army battle-dress uniforms (BDUs) in the field. Formulations for application include a 0.5% aerosol and a 40% solution applied either with a 2-gal compressed air sprayer or via a passive absorption method in a plastic bag (for uniform impregnation). The impregnation method available to soldiers prior to and during the Gulf War was the aerosol spray can method. The aerosol spray cans received only limited distribution within the war theater (less than 5% of deployed units had distributional access) (McCain et al., 1997). Permethrin modifies sodium channels to open longer during a depolarizing pulse, evoking repetitive after-discharges by a single stimulus. This repetitive nerve action is associated with hyperactivity, tremors, ataxia, convulsions, and eventually paralysis.

*DEET* is an aromatic amide used as a personal insect repellent against mosquitoes, biting flies, and ticks, among other insects. It has been used since 1946 by the U.S. Army and since 1957 by the general population. Approximately 30% of the U.S. population uses DEET as a lotion, stick, or spray at concentrations between 10% and 100% active ingredient. DEET is an EPA-approved insect repellent that is widely used commercially. Several formulations using various concentrations of DEET are available. It is the active ingredient in products such as Deep Woods Off and Cutter Insect Repellent. Formulations prepared for the U.S. Army include 75% DEET in ethanol, 33% extended duration formulation, and 19% in stick. Entomologists assigned in the Persian Gulf during the conflict indicated a very

low usage of personal repellents, including DEET, even at times and in areas where mosquitoes were present and biting. The cool seasonal climatic conditions that prevailed at the time of the war (January and February 1991) resulted in the near absence of biting insects. Extensive and repeated topical applications of DEET resulted in human poisoning including two deaths (de Garbino and Laborde, 1983; Roland et al., 1985). Symptoms of poisoning are characterized by tremors, restlessness, slurred speech, seizures, impaired cognitive functions, and coma (Institute of Medicine, 1995). The exact mechanism underlying DEET toxicity is unknown. Pathological findings, following DEET administration, indicate that this compound is a demyelinating agent that produces spongiform myelinopathy, primarily of the cerebellar roof nuclei.

In light of the established safety of PB, it was surprising that approximately half of all military personnel seen in health-care facilities during the Gulf War complained of PB side effects consistent with muscarinic stimulation (Institute of Medicine, 1995). One of the conclusions reached by the Committee to Review the Health Consequences of Service during the Persian Gulf War was that “studies are needed to resolve uncertainties about whether PB, DEET, and permethrin exert additive effects” (Institute of Medicine, 1995). The Committee also recommended for immediate action: that “appropriate laboratory animal studies of interactions between DEET, PB, and permethrin should be conducted.” Regardless of the need for further studies, it is clear that contaminant mixture exposure produced a Gulf War syndrome in humans.

## REFERENCES

- Abou-Donia MB, Wilmarth KR, Jensen KF, et al. (1996). Neurotoxicity resulting from coexposure to pyridostigmine bromide, DEET, and permethrin: Implications of Gulf War chemical exposures. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 48, 35–56.
- Bayen S, Koroleva E, Lee HK, et al. (2005). Persistent organic pollutants and heavy metals in typical seafoods consumed in Singapore. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 68, 151–166.
- Clegg DJ, Van Gemert M (1999). Expert panel report of human studies on chlorpyrifos and/or other organophosphate exposures. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 2, 257–279.
- Coulston F (1985). Reconsideration of the dilemma of DDT for the establishment of an acceptable daily intake. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 5, 332–383.
- de Garbino JP, Laborde A (1983). Toxicity of an insect repellent: *N,N*-diethyltoluamide. *Vet Human Toxicol* 25, 422–423.
- Doherty JD (1979). Insecticides affecting ion transport. *Pharmacol Ther* 7, 123–151.
- Ecobichon DJ (1998). Toxic effects of pesticides. In: Klaassen CD, ed. Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, Inc.
- FAO (1990). Pesticide Residues in Food—1990. Report of the FAO and WHO Groups of Experts on Pesticide Residues. FAO Plant Production and Protection Paper No. 102. Rome: Food and Agricultural Organization of the United States.
- FDA (1987). Residues in Foods, 1987. Washington, D.C.: Food and Drug Administration.



- Frawley JP, Fuyat HN, Hagen EC, et al. (1957). Marked potentiation in mammalian toxicity from simultaneous administration of two anticholinesterase compounds. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 121, 96–106.
- Hayes WJ Jr (1982). *Pesticides Studied in Man*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins.
- IARC (1977). *Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man*, vol. 15. Some Fumigants, the Herbicides 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T, Chlorinated Dibenzodioxins and Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research in Cancer.
- IARC (1983). *Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man*, vol. 30. Miscellaneous Pesticides. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research in Cancer.
- Infante-Rivard C, Weichenthal S (2007). Pesticides and childhood cancer: An update of Zahm and Ward's 1998 review. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 81–99.
- Institute of Medicine (1995). *Health Consequences of Service During the Persian Gulf War: Initial Findings and Recommendations for Immediate Action*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
- Koller LD (1979). Effects of environmental contaminants on the immune system. *Adv Vet Sci Com Med* 23, 267–295.
- Lu FC (1995). A review of the acceptable daily intakes of pesticides assessed by WHO. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 21, 352–364.
- Lu FC, Jessup DC, Lavallée A (1965). Toxicity of pesticides to young versus adult rats. *Food Cosmet Toxicol* 5, 591–596.
- McCain WC, Lee R, Johnson MS, et al. (1997). Acute oral toxicity study of pyridostigmine bromide, permethrin, and DEET in the laboratory rat. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 50, 113–124.
- Murphy SD (1969). Mechanisms of pesticide interactions in vertebrates. *Residue Rev* 25, 201–221.
- Narahashi T (1980). Nerve membrane as a target of environmental toxicants. In: Spencer P, Schaumburg HH, eds. *Neurotoxicology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins.
- Peakall DB (1970). Pesticides and the reproduction of birds. *Sci Am* 222, 72–78.
- Pope CN (1999). Organophosphorus pesticides: Do they all have the same mechanism of toxicity? *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 2, 161–181.
- Roland EH, Jan JE, Rigg JM (1985). Toxic encephalopathy in a child after brief exposure to insect repellents. *Can Med Assoc J* 132, 155–156.
- Roy D, Palangat M, Chen C-W, et al. (1997). Biochemical and molecular changes at the cellular level in response to exposure to environmental estrogen-like chemicals. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 50, 1–29.
- Smith P, Heath D (1976). Paraquat. *CRC Crit Rev Toxicol* 4, 411–445.
- Steinhoff D, Weber H, Mohr U, et al. (1983). Evaluation of amitrole (aminotriazole) for potential carcinogenicity in orally dosed rats, mice and golden hamster. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 69, 161–169.
- Street JC (1981). Pesticides and the immune system. In: Sharma RP, ed. *Immunologic Considerations in Toxicology*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Vial T, Nicolas B, Descotes J (1996). Clinical immunotoxicity of pesticides. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 48, 215–229.
- Wang XQ, Gas PY, Lin YZ, et al. (1988). Studies on hexachlorocyclohexane and DDT contents in human cerumen and their relationship to cancer mortality. *Biomed Environ Sci* 1, 138–151.

- Weil CS, Woodside MD, Carpenter CP, et al. (1972). Current status of tests of carbaryl for reproductive and teratogenic effects. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 21, 390–404.
- Weselak M, Arbuckle TE, Foster W (2007). Pesticide exposures and developmental outcomes: The epidemiological evidence. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 41–80.
- Wigle DT, Arbuckle TE, Turner MC, et al. (2008). Epidemiologic evidence of relationships between reproductive and child health outcomes and environmental chemical contaminants. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 11, 373–517.
- Wills JH, Jameson E, Coulston F (1968). Effects of oral doses of carbaryl on man. *Clin Toxicol* 1, 265–271.
- Woodwell GM (1967). Toxic substances and ecological cycles. *Sci Am* 216, 24.
- World Health Organization (1970). *Pesticide Residues in Food*. WHO Tech Rep Ser 458. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO.
- World Health Organization (1974). *Pesticide Residues in Food*. Report of the 1973 Joint FAO/WHO Meeting. Tech Rep Ser 545. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO.

### Appendix 1 Toxicological Findings and Evaluation on Certain Insecticides

Pesticides	LD <sub>50</sub> (mg/kg)	NOAEL (mg/kg)			ADI (mg/kg)
		Rat	Dog	Human	
Azinphosmethyl	13	0.45	0.74	0.3	0.005
Chlorfenvinphos	15	0.05	0.05		0.002
Diazinon	108	0.02	0.02	0.025	0.002
Dichlorvos	80			0.04	0.004
Dimethoate	215	0.4		0.2	0.02
Disulfoton	6.8	0.06	0.03	0.01	0.0003
Malathion	1375	5.0		0.2	0.02
Mevinphos	6.1	0.02	0.025	0.014	0.0015
Parathion	13			0.05	0.005
Parathion-methyl	14	0.1	0.375	0.3	0.02
Trichlorfon	630	2.5	1.25		0.01
Aldicarb	0.8	0.125	0.25	0.025	0.003
Carbaryl	850	10		0.06	0.01
Propoxur	83	12.5	50		0.02
DDT	113	0.05			0.01
Aldrin/dieldrin	40	0.025	0.025		0.0001
Chlordane	335	0.25	0.05		0.0005
Endrin	18	0.05	0.025		0.002
Heptacholor	100	0.25	0.025		0.0001
Lindane	88	1.25	1.75		0.008
Methoxychlor	6000	10			0.1

Sources: LD<sub>50</sub>s from Gaines, other data from various WHO reports, summarized in Lu (1995).

## Toxicity of Metals

### CONTENTS

Introduction	304
Occurrence	304
Uses and Human Exposure	304
Certain Common Features	305
Site of Action	305
Enzymes	305
Subcellular Organelles	306
Factors Affecting Toxicity	307
Levels and Duration of Exposure	307
Chemical Form	307
Metal-Protein Complexes	307
Host Factors	307
Biological Indicators/Biomarkers	308
Common Toxic Effects	309
Carcinogenicity	309
Immune Function	309
Nervous System	309
Kidney	309
Respiratory System	310
Metals of Major Toxicological Concern	310
Mercury	311
General Considerations	311
Toxicity	311
Lead	313
General Considerations	313
Toxicity	313
Other Effects	314

Cadmium	315
General Considerations	315
Toxicity	315
Other Metals	316
Arsenic	316
Beryllium	316
Chromium	317
Nickel	317
Risk/Benefit Considerations	317
Toxic Metals	318
Essential Metals	318
Metals Used in Medicine	320
Therapeutic Agents	320
Other Uses	321
References	321

## INTRODUCTION

Metals are a unique class of toxicants. They occur and persist in nature, but their chemical form may be changed because of physicochemical, biological, or anthropogenic activities. Their toxicity may be drastically altered as they assume different chemical forms. Most of them have some value to humans because of their uses in industry, agriculture, or medicine. Some are essential elements, required in various biochemical/physiological functions. On the other hand, they may pose health hazards to the public because of their presence in food, water, or air, and to workers engaged in mining, smelting, and a variety of industrial activities.

### Occurrence

Most of the metals and “metalloids” occur in nature, dispersed in rocks, ores, soil, water, and air. However, their distribution is grossly uneven. In general, their levels are relatively low in soil, water, and air. These levels may be increased by such geological activities as degassing, which releases, for example, 25,000 to 125,000 tons of mercury a year. Anthropogenic activities such as mining of mercury contribute about 10,000 tons a year. It must be noted that anthropogenic activities may be more significant in relation to human exposure because they increase the levels of the metals at the site of the human activities.

### Uses and Human Exposure

In ancient times, certain metals such as copper, iron, and tin were used to make utensils, machinery, and weapons. Mining and smelting were undertaken to supply such demands. These activities increased their environmental levels. In addition,

as the ores often contain other metals, such as lead and arsenic, the levels of these “contaminants” were also increased.

In later years, a greater variety of metals has found uses in industry, agriculture, and medicine. For example, mercury is used extensively in the chloralkali industry as the cathode in the electrolysis of salt in water to produce chlorine and sodium hydroxide, both of which are important raw materials in the chemical industry. Lead is used in storage batteries and the cable industry. However, the use of various lead compounds as insecticides, fuel additives, and pigments in paints has gradually been discontinued.

More recently, the aerospace industry and medicodental profession require materials that have strength, resistance to corrosion, and nonirritant properties. Alloys of titanium and other metals are becoming even more important.

These human activities have increased the extent of exposure not only to occupational workers but also to the consumers of these products. In addition, the toxicity of a metal may be significantly altered by changes of its chemical form. For example, inorganic mercury compounds are toxic primarily to the kidney, whereas methyl mercury is a CNS toxicant.

## CERTAIN COMMON FEATURES

Metals have a wide range of toxicity. Some, such as lead and mercury, are very toxic; others are almost nontoxic, such as titanium. They also possess a variety of toxic properties. Nevertheless, there are a number of toxicological features that are shared to some extent by many metals.

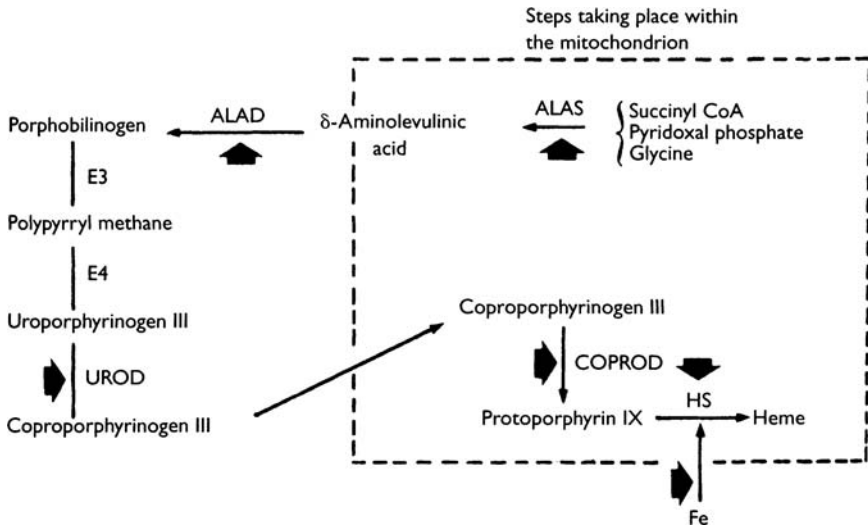
### Site of Action

#### Enzymes

A major action of toxic metals is the inhibition of enzymes. This action usually occurs as a result of the interaction between the metal and the SH group of the enzyme. An enzyme may also be inhibited by a toxic metal through displacement of an essential metal cofactor of the enzyme. For example, lead may displace zinc in the zinc-dependent enzyme  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid hydratase (ALAD).

Another mechanism by which metals interfere with the functions of enzymes is by inhibiting their synthesis. For example, nickel and platinum inhibit the  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid synthetase (ALAS), thereby interfere with the synthesis of heme, which is an important component of hemoglobin and cytochrome (Maines and Kappas, 1977). The enzymes can be protected from toxic metals by the administration of “chelating agents,” such as dimercaprol (BAL), that form stable bonds with the metals.

Enzymes differ in their susceptibility to metals. Figure 1 depicts the synthesis of heme and the various enzymes involved, most of which may be inhibited by lead. However, they differ in susceptibility. Inhibition of ALAD occurs at a blood lead level (BI-Pb) of 10  $\mu\text{g}/\text{dL}$  or lower. As a result, ALA will not be processed



**Figure 1** Schematic diagram representing the reactions involved in heme synthesis. Large arrows indicate steps that are inhibited by Pb. For further explanation, see section on lead, page 313. *Abbreviations:* ALAS,  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid synthetase; ALAD,  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid dehydratase; UROD, uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase; COPROD, coproporphyrinogen oxidase; and HS, heme synthetase. *Source:* From Jaworski (1978).

to become porphobilinogen and thus will be spilled over into urine at a BI-Pb of 40  $\mu\text{g/dL}$ , and anemia will only occur at a BI-Pb of about 50  $\mu\text{g/dL}$  (WHO, 1977).

### Subcellular Organelles

In general, the adverse effects of metals result from reactions between them and intracellular components. For a metal to exert its toxic effect on a cell, it must enter the cell. The entry across the membrane is facilitated if it is lipophilic such as methyl mercury. When it is bound to a protein, it is absorbed by endocytosis. Passive diffusion is another form of entry of metals such as lead.

After their entry into the cell, metals may affect different organelles. For example, the endoplasmic reticulum contains a variety of enzymes. These microsomal enzymes are inhibited by many metals, such as cadmium, cobalt, methyl mercury, and tin. Toxic metals also disrupt the structure of the endoplasmic reticulum. The lysosomes are another site of action of metals such as cadmium (as conjugate of metallothionein). Cadmium is accumulated in the lysosomes of renal proximal tubular cells. In the lysosomes, the cadmium complex degrades and releases cadmium. The cadmium ion inhibits the proteolytic enzymes in the lysosomes and produces cell injury. The mitochondria, because of their high metabolic activity and rapid membrane transport, are also a common target of metals. The respiratory enzymes in these organelles are readily inhibited by metals. A number

of metals enter the nucleus and may form inclusion bodies. For example, chronic exposure to lead induces inclusion bodies in the nuclei of renal proximal tubular cells. Lead also stimulates DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis. The lead-induced renal adenocarcinoma has been attributed to this mechanism (Goering et al., 1987).

It is therefore evident that the subcellular organelles either enhance or impede the movement of metals across these biological membranes, thereby affecting their toxicity. In addition, certain proteins in cytosol, lysosomes, and nuclei may bind with toxic metals, such as Cd, Pb, and Hg, thereby reducing their availability for adverse effects on sensitive organelles and metabolic sites (Fowler et al., 1984).

### **Factors Affecting Toxicity**

#### Levels and Duration of Exposure

As with other toxicants, the toxic effects of metals are related to the level and duration of exposure. In general, the higher the levels and the longer the duration, the greater the toxic effects. However, apart from these quantitative differences, changes in the level and duration of exposure may alter the nature of the toxic effects. For example, ingestion of a single, large dose of cadmium induces gastrointestinal (G.I.) disturbances. Repeated intakes of smaller amounts of cadmium result in renal dysfunction.

#### Chemical Form

A notable example is mercury. Its inorganic compounds are essentially renal toxicants, while methyl mercury and ethyl mercury compounds are more toxic to the nervous system. The latter type of mercury compounds is lipophilic and thus readily cross the blood–brain barrier. Similarly, tetraethyl lead readily enters the myelin sheath and affects the nervous system. Organic compounds of metals are generally excreted in the bile, while their inorganic compounds are excreted in the urine. Furthermore, the former are biodegradable and the latter are not (Furst, 1987).

#### Metal–Protein Complexes

Perhaps as protective mechanisms, various metal–protein complexes are formed in the body. For example, the complexes formed with lead, bismuth, and mercury–selenium are microscopically visible as “inclusion bodies” in the affected cells. Iron may combine with protein to form ferritin, which is water soluble, or hemosiderin, which is not. Cadmium and several other metals (e.g., zinc) combine with metallothionein, a low-molecular-weight protein. The cadmium complex is less toxic than  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$ . However, in the renal tubule cells, the cadmium–metallothionein is broken down by the cysteine protease in lysosomes to release  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$  and causes toxic effects (Squibb and Fowler, 1984; Min et al., 1992).

#### Host Factors

As with most other toxicants, young and old animals are in general more susceptible to metals than that of young adults (Luebke et al., 2006a, 2006b). Young

children appear to be especially susceptible to lead because of the generally greater sensitivity and the greater extent of G.I. absorption. Furthermore, they have, on a unit body weight basis, a greater intake of food, which is the main source of lead.

Dietary factors such as deficiencies of protein and vitamins C and D enhance the toxicity of lead and cadmium. Certain metals, such as lead and mercury, cross the placenta, thus affecting the fetus. There is evidence that prenatally exposed children are affected more severely than that of their mothers: it was found in a study that the median dose that produced ataxia in the mothers was  $2.7 \pm 0.18$  mg/kg, whereas that in the prenatally exposed children was  $1.23 \pm 0.87$  (Clarkson, 1981). It is worth noting that metals such as lead, cadmium, and mercury bind to albumin and casein, which are then transported to the breast milk and then transferred to the lactating infant. The consequences of milk metal exposure remains unknown but accounts for higher levels seen in these infants (Berlin et al., 2002; Wang and Needham, 2007). As age is a factor in metal-induced toxicity, the lactational component can be significant especially for mercury and neuronal effects.

### Biological Indicators/Biomarkers

Exposure to metals can usually be quantitatively assessed. Some of the indicators reveal the extent and the approximate time of exposure. Others are early signs of biological effects.

The presence and level of the metal in blood and urine are often used as indicators of recent exposure. As the metal compounds are distributed, stored, or excreted, the levels in blood and urine generally diminish.

Many metals are accumulated in hair and nails. Their levels generally bear a relationship with those in blood at the time when the hair and nails are formed. Therefore hair, which grows at a relatively constant rate, has been used to determine the level of exposure at various times in the past. In the case of blackfoot disease, the ingestion of arsenic was correlated to the levels of metal in hair and fingernails and thus reflected a useful biomarker of exposure (Lin et al., 1998). For example, this procedure has been used extensively to ascertain the intake of methyl mercury among the inhabitants in the areas where methyl mercury poisoning was reported. Using different approaches, a fairly reliable conversion factor has been established. Thus the level of methyl mercury in hair is about 250 times of that in blood, and their relation to the daily intake, after a steady state is reached, is as follows:  $0.2 \mu\text{g/g}$  in blood =  $50 \mu\text{g/g}$  in hair =  $3 \mu\text{g/kg}$  body weight per day (WHO, 1976).

Such biological indicators are also useful in assessing the average blood level of selenium of inhabitants. In areas where there was selenosis it was  $3.2 \text{ mg/L}$ ; where there was Se deficiency syndrome, it was  $0.021 \text{ mg/L}$ ; and in an area where there was neither overexposure nor deficiency, it was  $0.095 \text{ mg/L}$  (WHO, 1987).

Minimal inhibition of  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic acid dehydrase by lead represents a special type of "indicator of exposure" in that this biological effect does not seem to indicate an adverse effect.



## COMMON TOXIC EFFECTS

### Carcinogenicity

A number of metals were shown to be carcinogenic in humans or animals or both. As listed in Appendix 1 of chapter 7, arsenic and its compounds, cadmium, certain chromium compounds, and nickel and its compounds were categorized as human carcinogens. Beryllium, cadmium, and cisplatin are probable human carcinogens. Certain other metals may be carcinogenic, but the available information is insufficient to confirm this suggestion.

The aforementioned metals as well as several others might be carcinogenic through multiple mechanisms of action such as the substitution of  $\text{Ni}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Co}^{2+}$ , or  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$  for  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  in finger-loops of transforming proteins (Sunderman and Barber, 1988) and injury to cytoskeleton by certain metals (Chou, 1989) that affects fidelity of the polymerase involved in DNA biosynthesis. The carcinogenicity of arsenic involves oxidative stress and induction of the cascade of heat shock proteins (Bernstam and Nriagu, 2000)

### Immune Function

Exposure to certain metals may result in inhibition of immune functions (Sweet and Zelikoff, 2001). Other metals such as beryllium, chromium, nickel, gold, platinum, and zirconium may induce hypersensitivity reactions. The clinical manifestations and mechanism of action are listed in Table 1.

### Nervous System

Because of its susceptibility, the nervous system is a common target for heavy metals. However, even with the same metal, its physicochemical form often determines the nature of the toxicity. As noted above, metallic mercury vapor and methyl mercury readily enter the nervous system and induce toxic effects. Inorganic mercury compounds are unlikely to enter the nervous system in significant amounts and thus usually are not neurotoxic. Similarly, the organic compounds of lead are mainly neurotoxic, whereas inorganic lead compounds affect the synthesis of heme first. However, at much higher levels of exposure, they may induce encephalopathy, and in young children a moderate level of exposure to these compounds may result in a deficit of mental functions. Other neurotoxic metals include copper, triethyltin, gold, lithium, and manganese. For additional information, see Bondy and Prasad (1988).

### Kidney

The kidney, as the main excretory organ in the body, is also a common target organ. Cadmium affects the renal proximal tubular cells, producing urinary excretion of small molecule proteins, amino acids, and glucose. In addition, inorganic mercury

**Table 1** Hypersensitivity Reactions to Metals

Metal	Type of reaction <sup>a</sup>	Clinical features	Mechanism of reactions
Platinum, beryllium	I	Asthma, conjunctivitis, urticaria, anaphylaxis	IgE reacts with antigen on mast cell/basophil to release vasoreactive amines
Gold, salts of mercury	II	Thrombocytopenia	IgG binds to complement and antigen on cells, resulting in their destruction
Mercury vapor, gold	III	Glomerular nephritis, proteinuria	Antigen, antibody, and complement deposit on epithelial surface of glomerular basement
Chromium, nickel Beryllium, zirconium	IV	Contact dermatitis Granuloma formation	Sensitized T cells react with antigen to cause delayed hypersensitivity reaction

<sup>a</sup>For descriptions see section on "Hypersensitivity and Allergy," chapter 11, page 170.

compounds, lead, chromium, and platinum, also induce kidney damage, mainly in the proximal tubules (see Chap. 14).

### Respiratory System

The respiratory system is the primary target organ of most metals following occupational exposure. There are several types of responses. Many induce irritation and inflammation of the respiratory tract; the parts affected depend on the metal and the duration of exposure. With acute exposures, chromium affects the nasal passage, arsenic the bronchi, and beryllium the lungs. Prolonged exposure may produce fibrosis (aluminum, iron), carcinoma (arsenic, chromium, nickel), or granuloma (beryllium). These effects are included in Appendix 1 of Chapter 12 and Table 2 of Chapter 24.

### METALS OF MAJOR TOXICOLOGICAL CONCERN

Lead, mercury, arsenic, and cadmium are metals of major health concern because of their impact on large numbers of people resulting from environmental pollution as well as the serious nature of their adverse effects. Several other metals also pose serious toxicological problems.

## Mercury

### General Considerations

The elemental form of mercury (Hg) exists in liquid form. It is released from the earth's crust through degassing. It is also present in the environment as inorganic and organic compounds. Elemental Hg may be converted to inorganic compounds by oxidation and revert to elemental Hg by reduction. Inorganic Hg may become organic Hg through the action of certain anaerobic bacteria, and degrade to inorganic Hg slowly.

A variety of anthropogenic activities may raise its levels in the environment. Among these activities are mining, smelting (to produce metals from their sulfide ores), burning of fossil fuel, and production of steel, cement, and phosphate. Its principal users include the chloralkali plants, paper-pulp industry, and electrical equipment manufacturers. These uses fortunately have decreased in recent years.

The Hg level in the ambient air is extremely low. The level in water in unpolluted areas is about 0.1  $\mu\text{g/L}$ , but it may be as high as 80  $\mu\text{g/L}$  near Hg ore deposits. Its level in food, except fish, is very low, generally in the range of 5 to 20  $\mu\text{g/kg}$ . Most fish contain higher levels; the levels in tuna and swordfish usually range from 200 to 1000  $\mu\text{g/kg}$ .

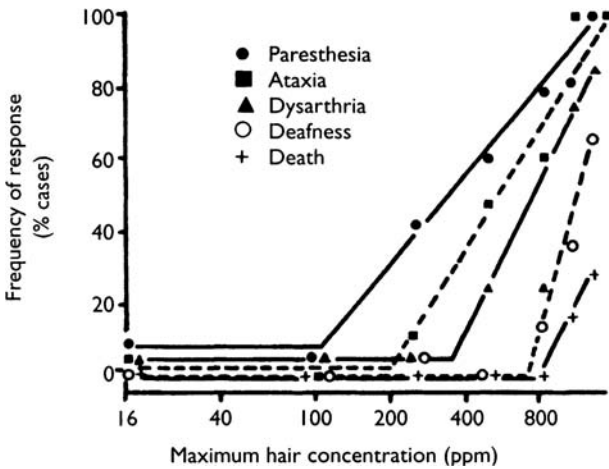
### Toxicity

Because of the massive outbreaks of poisoning from consuming grain treated with mercury fungicide or fish contaminated with methyl mercury (Appendix 2 of Chap. 1), extensive investigations were conducted. The populations studied ranged from "normal" subjects to those fatally poisoned. Table 2 lists some of these population groups. The "fishermen" were exposed to higher than normal levels but showed no signs of poisoning. Those involved in the Niigata episode were exposed to smaller intakes than those in the Iraq episode, and hence the latency in Niigata was generally two to three years, whereas those in Iraq was two to three months.

These studies revealed that the adverse effects are related to the nervous system, which is extremely sensitive to this toxicant and readily invaded by it. Paresthesia is usually the earliest symptom. Constricted visual field is

**Table 2** Daily Intake of Methyl Mercury by Certain Populations

Population	Daily intake ( $\mu\text{g}$ )	
	Average	Range
"Normal"	–	1–20
Fisherman	300	Up to 1000
Niigata	1500	250–5000
Iraq	4500	Up to 12,000



**Figure 2** The frequency of signs and symptoms of methyl mercury poisoning in adult victims in Iraq plotted according to the estimated maximum hair concentration. Hair samples were not available for all patients and are estimated based on the patient's history of exposure, observed blood levels, and blood half-times, and a hair-to-blood concentration ratio of 250 to 1. *Source:* From Clarkson (1987).

pathognomonic. At higher levels of exposure, ataxia, dysarthria, deafness, and eventually death occur. Figure 2 shows graphically the dose–response and dose–effect relationships. Pathologically, the major damage is atrophy in the occipital lobe, the cerebellar folia, and calcarine cortex. There are also degenerative changes in the axons and myelin sheaths of peripheral nerves.

From these studies it was concluded that methyl mercury poisoning would be unlikely if the daily intake corresponds to a blood level of 20  $\mu\text{g}/\text{dL}$  and a hair level of 50  $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$  (WHO, 1976). Other studies indicated that fetal brain is much more susceptible to methyl mercury than that of adults. This difference is due to the ease of transport across the placenta, the preferential uptake by the fetal brain, and the inhibitory action on cell division and cell migration, both of which are essential in the proper development of fetal brain (Clarkson, 1991).

*Elemental Hg vapor* constitutes a hazard virtually only in occupational settings. Its target organ is also the CNS. The usual symptoms are tremors and mental disturbances. Among workers exposed to Hg vapor the triad of excitability, tremors, and gingivitis have long been observed (Goldwater, 1972). After a continual exposure to a time-weighted air concentration of 0.05  $\text{mg Hg}/\text{m}^3$ , sensitive workers may exhibit nonspecific (neurasthenic) symptoms, and at a concentration of 0.1 to 0.2  $\text{mg}/\text{m}^3$ , they may have tremors (WHO, 1976).

*Inorganic Hg salts* are either monovalent or divalent. The divalent mercuric chloride, the “corrosive sublimate,” is corrosive on contact. After ingestion, it causes abdominal cramps and bloody diarrhea, with corrosive ulceration,

bleeding, and necrosis of the G.I. tract. These effects are followed by *renal* damage, mainly necrosis and sloughing off of the proximal tubular cells, thereby blocking the tubules and producing oliguria, anuria, and uremia. It may also damage the glomerulus, possibly as a result of disturbed immune function. The monovalent salt calomel, the mercurous chloride, is less corrosive and less toxic. But mercurous chloride may produce the “pink disease,” characterized by *dermal* vasodilation, hyperkeratosis, and hypersecretion of the sweat glands. This effect is probably a hypersensitivity reaction, since it is not dose-related. Exposure to mercury results in increased susceptibility to infections as evidenced by immunosuppression, and enhanced allergic responses and autoimmune disease as evidenced by immunostimulation (Sweet and Zelikoff, 2001).

## Lead

### General Considerations

Lead is more ubiquitous than most other toxic metals. The environmental levels have been increasing because of lead mining, smelting, refining, and various industrial uses.

Generally, the Pb levels in soil range from 5 to 25 mg/kg, in ground water from 1 to 60  $\mu\text{g/L}$  and somewhat lower in natural surface water, and in air under 1  $\mu\text{g/m}^3$ , but may be much higher in certain workplaces and areas with heavy motor traffic.

The major industrial uses, such as fuel additives, and lead pigments in paints, which contributed greatly to the Pb levels in the environment, have been gradually phased out. However, its uses in storage batteries and cables have not been significantly reduced. Drinking water may be appreciably contaminated by Pb from the use of lead and PVC pipes. Glazed ceramic food-ware is another source of Pb, as noted in Chapter 19. For most people, the major source of their Pb intake is food, which contributes generally 100 to 300  $\mu\text{g/day}$ .

Infants and young children are likely exposed to a greater extent than adults, because of their habit of licking, chewing, or eating foreign objects, such as soil and flakes of old paints from the wall. As the immune system is immature in children, lead produces greater immunotoxic effects in children (Luebke et al., 2006a, 2006b), which can manifest as higher incidence of infections and asthma.

### Toxicity

The *hematopoietic system* is extremely sensitive to the effect of Pb. The main component of hemoglobin is heme, which is synthesized from glycine and succinyl coenzyme A (CoA), with pyridoxal phosphate as cofactor. After a number of steps, it finally combines with iron to form heme. The initial and final steps take place in the mitochondria, with the intermediate steps in the cytoplasm, as shown in Figure 1. Among the seven enzymes involved in these steps, five are susceptible to the inhibitory effect of Pb.  $\delta$ -Aminolevulinic acid dehydratase (ALAD) and heme synthetase (HS) are the most susceptible, whereas  $\delta$ -aminolevulinic

acid synthetase (ALAS), uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase (UROD), and coproporphyrinogen oxidase (COPROD) are less sensitive to inhibition by Pb. Only two of them are not affected, namely, porphobilinogen deaminase and uroporphyrinogen cosynthetase.

While clinical anemia is evident only when there is moderate exposure to Pb, with its level in blood around 50  $\mu\text{g/dL}$ , a number of other effects may be observed at much lower levels of exposure. For example, ALAD inhibition becomes perceptible at a BI-Pb level just over 10  $\mu\text{g/dL}$  and free erythrocyte porphyrins (FEP) at 20 to 25  $\mu\text{g/dL}$ . ALAD inhibition, and possibly FEP, may be considered as an indicator of exposure rather than an indicator of toxicity. The impaired heme synthesis may result in anemia that is hypochromatic and microcytic. The anemia may be due partly to the greater fragility of the erythrocyte membrane (WHO, 1977).

The *nervous system* is also one of the main target organs of Pb. After high levels of exposure, with BI-Pb level over 80  $\mu\text{g/dL}$ , encephalopathy may occur. There are damages to the arterioles and capillaries, resulting in cerebral edema, increased cerebrospinal fluid pressure, neuronal degeneration, and glial proliferation. Clinically this condition is associated with ataxia, stupor, coma, and convulsions. In children, this clinical syndrome may occur with a BI-Pb level of 70  $\mu\text{g/dL}$ . At still lower levels (40–50  $\mu\text{g/dL}$ ), children may exhibit hyperactivity, decreased attention span, and a lowering of IQ scores (Ernhardt et al., 1981). These subtle manifestations may be a result of impairment of the function of neurotransmitters and calcium ion. Peripheral neuropathy is characterized by wrist-drop and foot-drop, signs of damage to the motor nerves. Lead causes degeneration of Schwann cells followed by demyelination and possibly axonal degeneration. This syndrome occurs mainly among occupational workers.

Lead generally affects the kidney insidiously, resulting in chronic renal failure after long-term exposure. The proximal tubule is the main target. An early sign of lead toxicity on the kidney is the excretion of the lysosomal enzyme *N*-acetyl- $\beta$ -D-glucosaminidase (Verschoor et al., 1987). One characteristic of lead poisoning is the presence of lead “inclusion bodies” in the nucleus of tubular cells. These bodies consist of fibrillary lead-protein complexes.

#### Other Effects

*Carcinogenicity of Pb* has been demonstrated in kidneys of rodents, but there is little human data in this respect (IARC, 1980). Pb also adversely affects *reproductive functions*, mainly through its gametotoxicity in both male and female animals, resulting in low sperm counts, decreased sperm motility, sterility, abortion, and neonatal deaths.

Mercury exposure was associated with infertility as evidenced by luteal insufficiency and menstrual irregularities (Gerhard et al., 1998). Young children are likely to be exposed to higher levels of Pb, as noted above, and their immune system is still immature resulting in higher susceptibility to infections. Furthermore, infants and unborn fetuses are also more sensitive to the toxicity of this metal.

*Organic lead compounds* such as tetraethyl lead and tetramethyl lead are readily absorbed after inhalation and dermal exposures, and rapidly enter the CNS with ensuing encephalopathy. This hazard concerns essentially occupational workers, but not the general public, because the small amounts emitted from automobile exhaust readily degrade.

## Cadmium

### General Considerations

Cadmium occurs in nature mainly in lead and zinc ores, and is thus released near the mines and smelters of these metals. Cadmium is used as a pigment (such as in ceramics), in electroplating, and in making alloys and alkali storage batteries. Its level in the air is usually in the range of nanogram per cubic meter, but may amount to several milligrams per cubic meter in certain workplaces. The level in water is very low (around 1  $\mu\text{g/L}$ ) except in contaminated areas. Most foods contain trace amounts of cadmium. Grains and cereal products usually constitute the main source of Cd.

Although meat, poultry, and fish have relatively low levels of Cd, liver, kidneys, and shellfish have much higher levels. The environmental levels are raised by smelting and industrial uses. An additional source is the use of sludge as a food crop fertilizer.

Apart from these environmental sources, humans may be exposed to Cd through cigarette smoking: a pack a day may double the Cd intake. Extensively decorated and improperly fired ceramic food-ware is another source of Cd (see Chap. 19). Occupational exposure occurs mainly in smelters.

### Toxicity

The *acute* effects of Cd exposure result mainly from local irritation. After ingestion, the clinical manifestations are nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain; after inhalation, the lesions include pulmonary edema and chemical pneumonitis.

Cadmium is excreted slowly with a half-life of about 15 to 30 years. After chronic exposure, *kidney* lesions predominate. The primary site of action is the proximal tubules. Damage to these tubules generally occurs when the Cd level in the kidney reaches 200  $\mu\text{g/g}$ , the "critical concentration." This tubular damage results in their inability to reabsorb small-molecular proteins, the major one of which is  $\beta_2$ -microglobulin. Other proteins include retinol-binding protein, lysozyme, ribonuclease, and immunoglobulin light chains (Lauwerys et al., 1979). Similarly, aminoaciduria is another result of damage to tubular cells that normally reabsorb the amino acids filtered through the glomeruli. Other related effects are glycosuria and decreased tubular reabsorption of phosphate.

At later stages, there may be hypercalcinuria, which, probably in conjunction with altered bone metabolism, may lead to *osteomalacia*. However, the connection between Cd and Itai-Itai disease, characterized by chronic renal disease and bone

deformity, reported in Toyama, Japan, where the Cd level in rice was high (see Appendix 2 of Chap. 1), has not been firmly established (Nomiya, 1980).

Effects on the *respiratory system* result from inhalation exposure. Chronic bronchitis, progressive fibrosis of the lower airway, and rupture of septae between alveoli lead to emphysema.

Other effects include *hypertension*, which may be the result of sodium retention, vasoconstriction, and hyperreninemia. *Carcinoma* of the prostate has been reported among occupational workers (Kipling and Waterhouse, 1967).

## Other Metals

### Arsenic

Although arsenic is a ubiquitous metalloid, its levels in water and ambient air are generally low. The major source of human exposure is food, which contains somewhat less than 1 mg/kg. However, its level in seafood may reach 5 mg/kg.

In certain parts of Taiwan, South America, and Bangladesh, the water may contain hundreds of milligrams of arsenic per liter. In these areas, the inhabitants may suffer from dermal hyperkeratosis and hyperpigmentation. A more serious condition is gangrene of lower extremities, the *blackfoot disease*, resulting from peripheral endarteritis (Lin et al., 1998; Chowdhury et al., 2000).

*Cancer* of the skin and liver is also observed in those areas, as well as among patients who had been taking Fowler's solution ( $KAsO_2$ ) as a therapy for leukemia (Bernstam and Nriagu, 2000). Cancer of the lung may occur among workers exposed to As in copper smelters and plants that manufacture As-containing pesticide (Pinto et al., 1978; Enterline et al., 1987; Viren and Silvers, 1994). Unlike other human carcinogens, As has not been shown to be carcinogenic to laboratory animals, but was found to produce developmental toxicity as evidenced by malformations, growth retardation, and death (Golub et al., 1998). Furthermore, mutagenesis tests have been essentially negative.

Other effects include toxicity to *liver* parenchyma, resulting clinically in jaundice in early stages and in cirrhosis and ascites, and carcinoma later. *Acutely*, very large doses of As compounds induce G.I. damage with vomiting and bloody diarrhea, muscular cramps, and cardiac abnormality (WHO, 1981). Exposure to excessive amounts of As may interfere with heme formation as evidenced by the increased urinary excretion of porphyrins (Xie et al., 2001).

### Beryllium

Beryllium is released into the environment mainly through combustion of fossil fuel and is used in ceramic plants and in making alloys. Beryllium and its alloys have a number of applications in nuclear, space, and other industries.

The major toxic effect is *berylliosis*, resulting from long-term inhalation exposures. This disease of the lung is characterized by granulomas, which in time become fibrotic tissues. These lesions reduce the number of alveoli and consequently pulmonary function.



After dermal contact, beryllium produces *hypersensitivity reactions* of the skin. The reaction is cell-mediated, and therefore delayed (type IV allergy). The soluble compounds of Be induce papulovesicular lesions, whereas the insoluble compounds induce granulomatous lesions.

Beryllium was shown to be carcinogenic to several species of animals (Kuschner, 1981). Epidemiological data suggest that Be is a human carcinogen (IARC, 1994).

### Chromium

Chromium occurs in ores. Mining, smelting, and industrial uses tend to increase its environmental levels. It is used in making stainless steel, various alloys, and pigments. Fossil-fuel-powered plants and cement-producing plants are also sources of environmental pollution. However, its levels in air, water, and food are generally very low. The major human exposure is occupational.

Chromium is a human carcinogen, inducing lung cancers among workers exposed to it. The carcinogenicity is generally attributed to the hexavalent  $\text{Cr}^{6+}$ , which is corrosive and water insoluble. It has been suggested that  $\text{Cr}^{6+}$ , which is more readily taken up by cells, converts to  $\text{Cr}^{3+}$  intracellularly. The trivalent Cr ion, which is more active biologically, binds with nucleic acid and initiates the carcinogenesis process. It should be noted that there is no clear evidence to correlate occupational chromium exposure with increased incidence of cancer in the United Kingdom (Rowbotham et al., 2000). It is worth noting that chromium is present in cigarettes and it was postulated that the rise in cancer incidence in chromium workers was due to the smoking component. The  $\text{Cr}^{6+}$  is corrosive and produces *ulceration* of the nasal passages and skin. It also induces *hypersensitivity reactions* of the skin. Acutely, it induces *renal tubular necrosis*.

### Nickel

Nickel occurs in ores. Smelting and industrial uses tend to increase its levels in the environment. Its many industrial uses include storage batteries, electrical contacts and similar devices, electroplating, and as catalysts. It is also emitted from coal gasification.

Nickel is a human carcinogen among occupational workers. Nasal cancer appears to be the predominant type of neoplasm. Ni also induces cancer of the lung, larynx, stomach, and possibly also the kidney.

It is one of the most common causative agents of dermal hypersensitivity reactions among the general public. The reactions usually follow contact with Ni-containing metal objects such as coins and jewelry.

## RISK/BENEFIT CONSIDERATIONS

The metals discussed in the previous section offer certain benefits because of their industrial and minor medical uses. However, they pose serious toxicological risks either to the population at large or specific occupational workers. On the

other hand, there are two groups of metals that are more valuable. One group, the essential metals, is required in certain physiological functions, and the other is used for a variety of medical purposes. These three groups of metals are different in risk/benefit considerations.

### Toxic Metals

The general population is at risk to these metals mainly through *food*. Tolerances, or equivalents, are established for various foodstuffs to ensure that the total intake will not exceed the amount that is considered acceptable from a toxicological point of view.

However, more targeted action is taken in certain cases. For example, the main source of methyl mercury is fish. The levels in swordfish range from about 0.5 to 1.2 ppm, and in tuna from 0.2 to 0.5 ppm, whereas those in most other kinds of fish are 0.1 ppm or lower. The permissible levels for methyl mercury set by most nations range from 0.4 to 1 ppm. Assuming a daily consumption of 200 g fish, the intake of methyl mercury would not exceed 0.2 mg. An intake at this level is considered unlikely to induce methyl mercury toxicity (WHO, 1976). The safety is provided by the fact that most of the fish samples contain much less methyl mercury than the 1 ppm permitted. The Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives and Contaminants established a "tolerable intake" of 0.2 mg/wk, thus allowing a safety factor of 7, which the Committee considered adequate in this case (WHO, 1972). The rationale was the availability of the exceptionally extensive data obtained from populations exposed to the full gamut of intake levels, ranging from "normal" to questionably poisoned, minimally poisoned, seriously poisoned, and fatally poisoned (Table 2), as well as the fact that most of the investigations were thoroughly conducted and properly reported. Second, fish was considered as an important source of nutrients, which should not be discarded for minimal or nonexistent risks. The intake was set on a weekly basis because fish is consumed, in many parts of the world, once a week.

Similarly, targeted action has been taken with respect to Cd in rice in Japan, where rice is the main source of this contaminant. Permissible levels of release of Pb and Cd from ceramic food-ware have been established internationally (WHO, 1979) and in many nations. See also Chapter 19.

There are also tolerances for toxic metals such as As, Cd, and Pb in water and foods for the protection of the health of consumers.

Occupational workers are likely exposed to higher levels of toxic metals in mining, smelting, manufacturing, and similar occupations. The main routes of entry to the body are the skin and respiratory tract. For their protection, threshold limit values of toxicants in air are established. For additional information, see Chapter 23.

### Essential Metals

*Selenium* is a typical element that is toxic at high levels of intake and induces a deficiency syndrome when the intake is too low.

Human *overexposure* to Se has been observed in China as well as in a few isolated regions in the Americas. The clinical manifestations include hair loss, nail pathology, and tooth decay. In animals overexposure induces more severe ill effects including retarded growth, liver necrosis, enlargement of spleen and pancreas, anemia, and various disorders of reproductive function.

*Deficiency* of Se results in muscular dystrophy in sheep and cattle, exudative diathesis in chicken, and liver necrosis in swine and rats. In rats it may also produce reproductive failures, vascular changes, and cataracts. Selenium is a component of glutathione peroxidase, which is responsible for the destruction of  $H_2O_2$  and lipid peroxides. Its function is therefore closely related to that of vitamin E, the biological antioxidant. This close relation is reflected in the fact that the minimal intake of Se in rats is 0.01 mg/kg, but if there is also a vitamin E deficiency, an intake of 0.05 mg/kg will be needed.

It was only in the late 1970s that Se was recognized as an essential element in humans. In certain regions in China, where the Se levels were low in soil and food, a special type of *cardiomyopathy* was noted. It was known as Keshan disease because it was first observed there. The Se levels in the blood, urine, and hair of the inhabitants were low. As expected, the blood glutathione peroxidase activity was also low. When they were given a sodium selenite supplement, the incidence of this endemic cardiopathy dropped sharply. There is also an endemic *osteoarthropathy* observed in China. It is known as Kashin–Beck disease, and is believed to be due to Se deficiency; however, the evidence of its etiology is not as strong as that of Keshan disease. Selenium deficiency associated with muscular pain has been reported from New Zealand.

For the general population, the Se exposure is essentially from food, especially cereals. The average daily intake of Se of inhabitants in areas where there were cases of Keshan disease was about 0.011 mg, whereas in areas where there were cases of selenosis, it was about 5 mg (Yang et al., 1983). It has been estimated that there is about a 100-fold margin between the highest no-toxic-effect level and the lowest level at which deficiency syndrome is avoided. However, this margin is subject to the influence of various modifying factors. For example, vitamin E deficiency increases the toxicity as well as the physiological requirements of Se, thus effectively reducing the margin. Methyl mercury increases the effect of Se deficiency, whereas inorganic mercury increases the toxicity of methylated Se compounds. A hypothetical dose–response (all effects) relationship of Se is depicted in Figure 1 of Chapter 4, which shows that ill effects are induced when the dose is too low (curve A), whereas other ill effects are induced when the dose is too high (curve B). Furthermore, because of the great individual variations in susceptibility resulting from host and environmental factors, it is not clear whether there is a dose that can be considered as devoid of deficiency as well as toxic effect on a population basis. Additional details on various aspects of the Se problem and reference citations may be found in a WHO document (WHO, 1987).

*Cobalt*, *copper*, and *iron* are all essential metal elements required in the proper development of erythrocytes. Iron is a component of hemoglobin, and Cu

facilitates the utilization of Fe in the synthesis of hemoglobin. Thus deficiency of either metal results in hypochromatic, microcytic anemia. Cobalt is a component of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, which is required in the development of erythrocyte. Its deficiency results in pernicious anemia.

Excessive intake of Co results in polycythemia, an overproduction of erythrocytes, and cardiomyopathy. The heart lesion was observed under special conditions, as discussed in Chapter 25. Excess Cu storage in the body is not a result of overexposure to Cu but rather a genetic disorder (Wilson's disease). Copper is accumulated in brain, liver, kidney, and cornea. Clinical manifestations are thus related to disorders of these organs. Overexposure to Fe may result from excessive intake of Fe or frequent blood transfusion. The excess Fe is deposited as hemosiderin mainly in liver, producing liver dysfunction.

Occupational exposure to Co induces respiratory irritation and dermal hypersensitivity reactions. Certain Fe industry workers have been reported as having pneumoconiosis and increased lung cancer incidence. Acute oral poisonings have been reported after consuming improperly canned vegetable juices containing excessive amounts of Cu and after taking large doses of Fe supplement medications. The clinical manifestations relate mainly to G.I. irritation.

Other essential metals include manganese and molybdenum, which are cofactors in a number of enzyme systems such as phosphorylase, xanthine oxidase, and aldehyde oxidase. However, these metals are so plentiful in the human diet that no cases of deficiency syndrome have been reported. These metals have a variety of industrial uses, notably in making high-temperature-resistant steel alloys. Occupational exposure to Mn results in pneumonitis acutely, and encephalopathy chronically. Overexposure to Mn in animals orally induces G.I. disturbances followed by fatty degeneration of liver and kidney.

Zinc is the cofactor in scores of metalloenzymes and is therefore an essential element. Deficiency of Zn thus induces a great variety of effects on the nervous system, hematopoietic system, skin, liver, eye, testis, etc. Zinc is readily excreted, and excessive intake by the oral route is thus unlikely to induce toxic effects. Occupational exposure to Zn<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> fume results in "metal fume fever" (Goyer, 1996).

## Metals Used in Medicine

### Therapeutic Agents

A number of metal compounds have been used in medicine. For example, compounds of Hg have been used as diuretics and vaccines. Because of their toxicity, their uses have been discontinued. Those that are less toxic include compounds of aluminum as antacid, bismuth as astringent, gold for rheumatoid arthritis, lithium for mental depression, platinum complexes as antitumor agents, and thallium as depilatory. They may produce toxic effects on the nervous system (e.g., Al, Bi, Li, Th), kidneys (e.g., Bi, Au, Li), skin (e.g., Au, Pl), and cardiovascular and

G.I. systems (e.g., Li, Th). Although used as antitumor agents, Pl complexes may induce tumors.

#### Other Uses

Aluminum in hemodialysis for chronic renal failure has resulted in fatal neurologic syndrome. The use of barium and gallium, in conjunction with X-ray, as a radiopaque agent and radioactive tracer has proved to be relatively safe. However, accidental ingestion of soluble Ba salts has resulted in serious G.I., muscular, and cardiovascular disturbances. Therapeutic use of radiogallium has resulted in disease conditions related to radioactivity. Of special interest is titanium. It is inert and resistant to corrosion and thus has been used widely in surgical and dental implants. It is present in trace amounts in a variety of foods of plant origin, and titanium dioxide has been used as a color additive because of its low toxicity.

#### REFERENCES

- Berlin CM, Kacew S, Lawrence R, et al. (2002). Criteria for chemical selection for programs on human milk surveillance and research for environmental chemicals. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 65, 1839–1851.
- Bernstam L, Nriagu J (2000). Molecular aspects of arsenic stress. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 293–322.
- Bondy SC, Prasad KN (1988). *Metal Neurotoxicity*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Chou IN (1989). Distinct cytoskeletal injuries induced by As, Cd, Co, Cr, and Ni compounds. *Biomed Environ Sci* 2, 358–365.
- Chowdhury UK, Biswas BK, Chowdhury RT (2000). Groundwater arsenic contamination in Bangladesh and West Bengal. *Environ Health Perspect* 108, 393–397.
- Clarkson TW (1981). Dose–response relationships for adult and prenatal exposures to methyl mercury. In: Bery GG, Maillie HD, eds. *Measurements of Risk*. New York, NY: Plenum Press, 111–130.
- Clarkson TW (1987). Metal toxicity in the central nervous system. *Environ Health Perspect* 75, 59–64.
- Clarkson TW (1991). Methyl mercury. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 16, 20–21.
- Enterline PE, Henderson VL, Marsh GM (1987). Exposure to arsenic and respiratory cancer: A reanalysis. *Am J Epidemiol* 125, 929–938.
- Ernhardt CB, Landa B, Schnell NB (1981). Subclinical levels of lead and developmental deficits: A multivariate follow-up reassessment. *Pediatrics* 67, 911–919.
- Fowler BA, Abel J, Elinder CG (1984). Structure, mechanism and toxicity. In: Nriagu J, ed. *Changing Metal Cycles and Human Health*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.
- Furst A (1987). Relationships of toxicological effects to chemical forms of inorganic compounds. In: Brown SS, Kodama Y, eds. *Toxicology of Metals*. Chichester, UK: Halstead Press.
- Gerhard I, Monga B, Waldbrenner A, et al. (1998). Heavy metals and infertility. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 54, 593–611.
- Goering PL, Mistry P, Fowler BA (1987). Mechanism of metal toxicity. In: Haley TJ, Berndt WO, eds. *Handbook of Toxicology*. New York, NY: Hemisphere.
- Goldwater LJ (1972). *Mercury: A History of Quicksilver*. Baltimore, MD: York Press.

- Golub MS, Macintosh MS, Baumrind N (1998). Developmental and reproductive toxicity of inorganic arsenic: Animal studies and human concerns. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 199–241.
- Goyer RA (1996). Toxic effects of metals. In: Klaassen CD, ed. Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 691–736.
- IARC (1980). Monograph on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risks of Chemicals to Humans. Some Metals and Metallic Compounds, vol. 23. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- IARC (1994). Monograph on the Evaluation of Risks to Humans. Cadmium, Mercury, Beryllium and the Glass Industry, vol. 58. Lyons, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- Jaworski JK (1978). The Effects of Lead in the Canadian Environment. Ottawa, Canada: National Research Council Canada.
- Kipling M, Waterhouse J (1967). Cadmium and prostatic carcinoma. *Lancet* 1, 730–731.
- Kuschner M (1981). The carcinogenicity of beryllium. *Environ Health Perspect* 40, 101–106.
- Lauwerys RR, Roels HA, Poncket JP, et al. (1979). Investigations on the lung and kidney function in workers exposed to cadmium. *Environ Health Perspect* 28, 137–146.
- Lin T-H, Huang Y-L, Wang M-Y (1998). Arsenic species in drinking water, hair fingernails and urine of patients with blackfoot disease. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 53, 85–93.
- Luebke RW, Chen DH, Dietert R, et al. (2006a). The comparative immunotoxicity of five selected compounds following developmental or adult exposure. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 9, 1–26.
- Luebke RW, Chen DH, Dietert R, et al. (2006b). Immune system maturity and sensitivity to chemical exposure. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 69, 811–825.
- Maines MD, Kappas A (1977). Metals as regulators of heme metabolism. *Science* 198, 1215–1221.
- Min KS, Nakatsubo T, Fujita Y, et al. (1992). Degradation of cadmium metallothionein *in vitro* by lysosomal proteases. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 113, 299–305.
- Nomiyama K (1980). Recent progress and perspectives in cadmium health effects studies. *Sci Total Environ* 14, 199–232.
- Pinto SS, Henderson V, Enterline PE (1978). Mortality experience of arsenic exposed workers. *Arch Environ Health* 33, 325–331.
- Rowbotham AL, Levy LS, Shuker LK (2000). Chromium in the environment: An evaluation of exposure of the UK general population and possible adverse health effects. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 145–178.
- Squibb KS, Fowler BA (1984). Intracellular metabolism of circulating cadmium–metallothionein in the kidney. *Environ Health Perspect* 54, 31–35.
- Sunderman FW Jr, Barber AM (1988). Fingerloops, oncogenes and metals. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 18, 267–288.
- Sweet LI, Zelikoff JT (2001). Toxicology and immunotoxicology of mercury: A comparative review in fish and humans. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 4, 161–205.
- Verschoor M, Wibowo A, Herber R, et al. (1987). Influence of occupational low-level lead exposure on renal parameters. *Am J Ind Med* 12, 341–351.
- Viren JR, Silvers A (1994). Unit risk estimates for airborne arsenic exposure: An updated view based on recent data from two copper smelter cohorts. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 20, 125–138.

- Wang RY, Needham LL (2007). Environmental chemicals: From the environment to food, to breast to the infant. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 10, 597–609.
- WHO (1972). Evaluation of Certain Food Additives and the Contaminants Mercury, Lead and Cadmium. Tech Rep Ser 505. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1976). Mercury. Environmental Health Criteria 1. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1977). Lead. Environmental Health Criteria 3. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1979). Ceramic Foodware Safety. Document HCS/79.7. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1981). Arsenic. Environmental Health Criteria 18. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1987). Selenium. Environmental Health Criteria 58. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Xie Y, Kondo M, Koga H, et al. (2001). Urinary porphyrins in patients with endemic chronic arsenic poisoning caused by burning coal in China. *Environ Health Prevent Med* 5, 180–185.
- Yang G, Wang S, Zhou R, et al. (1983). Endemic selenium intoxication of humans in China. *Am J Clin Nutr* 37, 872–881.





## Over-the-Counter Preparations

### CONTENTS

General Remarks	325
Prevalence in Society	326
Adverse Consequences	327
References	330

### GENERAL REMARKS

Pharmaceutical agents required by law to be prescribed to patients are called prescription drugs. However, over the years there have been an escalating number of products available to treat various ailments for which a written prescription is not necessary. This latter group of compounds is termed as over-the-counter (OTC) drugs. The OTC drugs are believed to be relatively safe and effective in the view of the general public simply because the regulatory agencies allow these drugs to be sold without medical advice. It is the popular belief that if a drug needs to be prescribed then it must be regulated, as there are inherent adverse effects. However, the public does not know that many of these OTC products have not undergone extensive clinical testing. Although it may be laudable to treat serious illnesses and make available the compounds that are prescribed and required for these purposes, one must question the trend toward easy access of an uneducated public to more OTC drugs that are self-administered and have not undergone proper testing.

It is safe to assume with respect to OTC drugs that the public

- (i) is generally overwhelmed and confused by the wide array of products available;
- (ii) will probably use those that are most heavily advertised;

- (iii) will use these drugs inadvertently and inappropriately in some cases; and
- (iv) may be subjected to adverse effects.

(Kacew, 1999)

A paradox exists with respect to public awareness and drug use. De Jongvan den Berg et al. (1992, 1993) found that increased awareness of adverse drug effects led to a decrease in the use of prescription drugs during pregnancy. However, because of the perception that OTC drugs are safe, there was a disproportionate rise in the quantity of OTC medications such as laxatives and vitamins, which were self-administered. From an epidemiological point of view, the population most at risk for adverse effects from OTC drugs is children, resulting from the absence of safety caps, attractive packages, administration of overdoses by parents, etc. It is worthwhile to note that Kacew (1992, 1997) clearly demonstrated that pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are different between children and adults, which consequently was associated with differences in responsiveness to drugs. Thus, prediction of therapeutic effectiveness based on adult data can lead to grave consequences in the child (Kogan et al., 1994; Smith and Kogan, 1997).

### **PREVALENCE IN SOCIETY**

In 1989, the American public spent approximately \$10 billion on an estimated 300,000 OTC products to medicate themselves for self-diagnosed ailments ranging from acne to warts, colds, headaches, upset stomach, constipation, etc. (Koda-Kimble, 1992). These 300,000 products represent about 700 active ingredients in various forms and combinations. It is thus apparent that many are no more than “me too” products advertised to the public in ways that suggest that there are significant differences between them. Almost \$2 billion per year is spent by the American public on cough and cold remedies (Rosendahl, 1998). There are more than 800 OTC preparations for the common cold (Lowenstein and Parrino, 1987), over 100 for treatment of diarrhea (Dukes, 1990), over 200 different systemic analgesic products, almost all of which contain aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid), paracetamol (acetaminophen), salicylamide, phenacetin, ibuprofen, or a combination of these agents as primary ingredients (Leist and Banwell, 1974). OTC drugs can be made different from one another in the following ways:

- (i) the addition of questionable ingredients such as caffeine or antihistamines;
- (ii) creation of an identity by brand names chosen to suggest a specific use of strength (“feminine pain,” “arthritis,” “maximum,” “extra”); or
- (iii) indication of their special dosage form (enteric-coated tablets, liquids, sustained-release products, powder, seltzers).

Hence, the consumer could utilize a product without the realization that an analgesic agent was being ingested (Kacew, 1994).

OTC preparations also contain excipients and/or inactive ingredients such as dyes, sweeteners, flavorings, or preservatives. The so-called “hidden ingredients”

in OTC products may on their own initiate adverse effects or potentiate the actions of the active components (Golightly et al., 1998; Kumar et al., 1993). The findings that excipients cause adverse effects, including skin disorders, gastrointestinal upset, and cardiovascular abnormalities, clearly indicate that OTC drugs should not be used merely due to the improper perception of safety from adverse effects.

The enormity and severity of OTC drug usage in our society have received little, if any, attention. In addition to the economics, it has been estimated that 70% of illnesses, predominantly in the adult population, are treated with OTC agents (Knapp and Knapp, 1972; Conn, 1991; Chrischelles et al., 1992). However, of greater concern is the fact that 48% to 63% of children, a population known to be far more susceptible to drug-induced adverse effects (Lock and Kacew, 1988; Kacew, 1997) received OTC drugs during a two-week period (Dunnell and Cartwright, 1972; Kovar, 1994) and that approximately 40% of these children received at least two preparations (Kogan et al., 1994; Smith and Kogan, 1997).

It is worthwhile noting that during pregnancy, both mother and fetus are equally exposed to a chemical, but the risk of fetal toxicity far exceeds that of the mother or neonate (Kacew, 1997, 1999). Hence, the presumption of safety for the mother cannot be applied with certainty to the fetus. The hair cream *Le Kair* contains estrogens (Koda-Kimble, 1992) and presumably, if used appropriately does not produce toxicity. However, there have been reports that the use of estrogenic cosmetics resulted in gynecomastia in the child (Kacew, 1999). Although a correlation between estrogenic OTC products and fetal toxicity has not been examined, it is known that estrogens are teratogenic (Lock and Kacew, 1988; Safe, 1998). It should be noted that various foods are estrogenic (Safe, 1998) and thus the combination of certain foods and OTC products may potentially affect fetal development. This latter scenario is further compounded, as there are numerous environmental estrogenic contaminants to which a pregnant mother is inadvertently exposed on a daily basis (Shore et al., 1993). Since estrogens are lipophilic and accumulate in tissue fat, the potential for fetal exposure to excess estrogens is dependent on diet and environment. These compounds can certainly convert a relatively safe OTC into a toxic agent.

## ADVERSE CONSEQUENCES

As a general rule, all drugs, including OTC preparations, should be avoided whenever possible. High-risk subpopulations have been identified, including children and geriatrics. Of even greater risk is the use of OTC in pregnancy where the fetus is the target (Hays and Pagliaro, 1987; Karboski, 1992). Although it is falsely perceived that OTC preparations are virtually without any adverse fetal consequences, the reverse may be the case. Palatnick and Tenenbein (1998) recently reported a case of fetal death in a 17-year-old, 37-week-pregnant girl who had ingested aspirin daily for one month. Autopsy of the fetus revealed petechiae of lungs, heart, thymus, and kidneys. Clearly, the amount of aspirin taken was excessive but the drug was also readily available. Aspirin is not contraindicated for the

treatment of headaches during pregnancy (Underhill, 1994), but it is stressed that aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory products should be avoided during the third trimester (Bonati et al., 1990; Koren et al., 1998). It is of interest that ingestion of aspirin during the first 20 weeks of gestation does not significantly affect IQ at four years of age (Klebanoff and Berendes, 1988). These confusing messages are relayed to the public with the recommendation that even though aspirin can be taken safely during pregnancy, paracetamol should be used as the drug of choice.

Under pressure from the pharmaceutical industry, a number of prescribed drugs have been switched to OTC status (Fletcher et al., 1995). Although the effects of the antidiarrheal agent loperamide on fetal outcome have not been established, administration of this drug to infants produced paralytic ileus and persistent drowsiness in 20% of cases (Motala et al., 1990). The recent inclusion of the antiulcerogenic histamine blocker cimetidine in the OTC list is a further example of a drug with potential effects on the fetus and easy public accessibility. The finding that cimetidine concentrations in neonatal plasma exceeded those in the mothers suggested that there was substantial uptake by the fetus (Somogi and Gugler, 1983). The fact that cimetidine is known to inhibit hepatic microsomal enzymes and was reported to produce fetal liver toxicity when used in late pregnancy (Glode et al., 1980) indicates that self-administration of this drug for reflux esophagitis during pregnancy could have adverse consequences. This could be of particular concern if a pregnant epileptic mother with impaired liver function were to ingest cimetidine; plasma concentrations of anticonvulsants would be increased, with adverse consequences for the fetus. In patients that are utilizing tricyclic antidepressants for treatment of depression, cimetidine potentiates the actions of the antidepressant resulting in cardiovascular abnormalities, hallucinations, vomiting, and hypotension. In the elderly, cimetidine causes confusion, which could have dire consequences, as this population tends to be more forgetful.

A number of current OTC products are associated with adverse consequences. Industry has applied pressure to make certain drugs more accessible and, because of a presumed history of safety and the public perception that self-administered therapies will hasten recovery, even more compounds will be transferred from prescription to nonprescription status (Splinter et al., 1997). Consequently, a larger assortment of OTC drugs will be available to the pregnant mother and geriatric populations. Indeed, Rubin et al. (1993) reported that OTC preparations were used 1.5 times more often than prescription drugs during pregnancy; this figure is presumably underestimated because they failed to include vitamins in their study. It is disturbing to note that approximately 50% of products taken during pregnancy are OTC medications (Rayburn et al., 1982). With aging, there is also an increased use of drugs.

Clearly, some pregnant women are self-medicating themselves during a period of fetal vulnerability. Although it is stressed that pregnant women should not drink or smoke, these activities still occur during pregnancy. Indeed, the maternal characteristics associated with increased OTC medication use were Caucasian,

smoking more than 20 cigarettes per day and drinking alcohol (Buitendijk and Bracken, 1991). Hence, it is likely that despite warnings to the contrary, pregnant women will also use OTC medications, the choice of which is expanding. An example of this problem arises with the use of imidazolines as topical vasoconstrictors for nasal decongestion. These compounds are used for sinusitis, colds, and allergic rhinitis, and are known to produce CNS depression, bradycardia, hypotension, and miosis (Liebelt and Shannon, 1993). There is a lack of clinical data regarding the use of these compounds in high-risk subpopulations, yet the potential for adverse effects is quite serious as these drugs produce vasoconstriction.

The misconception that frequent bowel movements are essential has resulted in the misuse of cathartics amongst some women, especially the geriatric populations. Saline cathartic magnesium sulfate induces hypotonia, CNS, and respiratory depression. Bulk forming laxatives can produce cramping, nausea, and result in fluid loss and electrolyte imbalance. In patients with congestive heart failure, this type of OTC product is contraindicated.

Ingestion of a proper diet is sufficient to provide the necessary requirement for vitamins and iron. However, the erroneous belief that vitamin supplements provide extra energy and create a feeling of "well-being" has resulted in the ingestion of quantities of vitamins vastly in excess of the recommended dietary allowance. This widespread nutritional self-medication promoted through effective massive advertising can have dire consequences in susceptible populations. Vitamin A in the fetus is associated with spontaneous abortion, hydrocephalus, and cardiac anomalies, while in the adult there are menstrual irregularities, exophthalmos, and skin hyperpigmentation. With vitamin D, hypercalcemia occurs in the adult and is manifested as anorexia, fatigue, kidney dysfunction, and aortic stenosis. In the fetus, hypervitaminosis D results in elfin facies, mental retardation, and aortic stenosis. Liver dysfunction, jaundice, and hemorrhage occur as a result of excessive vitamin K intake. Excessive iron intake results in vomiting, cyanosis, and circulatory collapse. In the fetus, there are congenital anomalies and gastrointestinal upset. This reiterates the fact that essential nutritional OTC in excess is not safe. The use of OTC mixtures of vitamins and minerals is not effective in abolishing iron deficiency anemia and this practice should be discouraged. Although there is an increased demand for iron in pregnancy, the prophylactic use of iron to correct any deficiency should be carried out with caution.

An issue that still remains to be considered is the interaction between two OTC preparations or between a prescribed medication and an OTC preparation. In a situation where a mother is being treated for a peptic ulcer with cimetidine, it is conceivable that there is simultaneous consumption of large quantities of tea (theophylline). Cimetidine, by preventing the metabolism of theophylline, results in increased theophylline concentrations and potentially a higher risk of toxicity. Aspirin displaces oral hypoglycemic agents from protein binding sites, which can lead to severe manifestations in diabetes. Another example is the ingestion of iron to correct iron deficiency anemia. If the mother is ingesting iron plus a multivitamin preparation, the latter preparation interferes with iron

**Table 1** Select OTC Preparations: Their Adverse Effects and Susceptible Populations

Susceptible populations	OTC preparation	Adverse effects
Pregnant women	Aspirin	Fetal death with internal hemorrhage
	Cimetidine	Liver toxicity
	Imidazolines	Mental depression, hypertension, miosis
	Vitamin A	Spontaneous abortion, hydrocephalus, cardiac anomalies
	Vitamin D Vitamin K	Mental retardation, hemorrhage Liver dysfunction
Infants	Loperamide	Paralytic ileus, persistent drowsiness
Geriatrics	Saline laxatives	Hypotonia, CNS, and respiratory depression
	Bulk laxatives	Cramping, nausea, fluid loss, electrolyte imbalance
General	Hyperglycemic drugs and aspirin	Aggravation of diabetes
	Multi-vitamin preparation + Fe	Interference of Fe absorption
	Cimetidine + tea	Cimetidine interferes with metabolism of theophylline

absorption. Consequently, less iron is available and the hematological response is impaired.

The omnipresence of OTC preparations and concerted advertising may be a fact of life; however, increased awareness of the dangers associated with the use of self-medication must be stressed. Table 1 lists examples of OTC preparations that have been reported to cause adverse effects.

## REFERENCES

- Bonati M, Bortolus R, Machetti F, et al. (1990). Drug use in pregnancy: An overview of epidemiological (drug utilization) studies. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 38, 325–328.
- Buitendijk S, Bracken MB (1991). Medication in early pregnancy: Prevalence of use and relationship to maternal characteristics. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 165, 33–40.
- Chrischelles EA, Foley DJ, Wallace RB, et al. (1992). Use of medications by persons 65 and over; data from the established populations for epidemiologic studies of the elderly. *J Gerontol* 47, M137–M144.
- Conn VS (1991). Older adults: Factors that predict the use of over-the-counter medication. *J Adv Nurs* 16, 1190–1196.

- De Jong-van den Berg LTW, Van Den Berg PB, Haaijer-Ruskamp FM, et al. (1992). Handling of risk-bearing drugs during pregnancy: Do we choose less risky alternatives? *Pharm Weekbl Sci* 14, 38–45.
- De Jong-van den Berg LTW, Waardenburg CM, Haaijer-Ruskamp FM, et al. (1993). Drug use in pregnancy: A comparative appraisal of data collecting methods. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 45, 9–14.
- Dukes GE (1990). Over-the-counter anti-diarrheal medications used for the self-treatment of acute non-specific diarrhea. *Am J Med* 88, 24S–26S.
- Dunnell K, Cartwright A, eds. (1972). *Medicine Takers, Prescribers and Hoarders*. New York, NY: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Fletcher P, Stephen R, Du Pont H (1995). Benefit/risk considerations with respect to OTC descheduling of loperamide. *Arzheimittelforschung* 45, 608–613.
- Glode G, Saccar CL, Pereira GR (1980). Cimetidine in pregnancy and apparent transient liver impairment in the newborn. *Am J Dis Child* 134, 87–88.
- Golightly LK, Smolinske SS, Bennett ML, et al. (1998). Pharmaceutical excipients: Adverse effects associated with “inactive” ingredients in drug products (part II). *Concepts Toxicol Rev* 3, 209–240.
- Hays DP, Pagliaro LA (1987). Human teratogens. In: Pagliaro LA, Pagliaro AM, eds. *Problems in Pediatric Drug Therapy*. Hamilton, IL: Drug Intelligence Publications, 51–191.
- Kacew S (1992). General principles in pharmacology and toxicology applicable to children. In: Guzelian PS, Henry CJ, Olin SS, eds. *Similarities and Differences Between Children and Adults*. Washington, D.C.: ILSI Press.
- Kacew S (1994). Fetal consequences and risks attributed to the use of over-the-counter (OTC) preparations during pregnancy. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther* 32, 335–343.
- Kacew S (1997). General principles in pediatric pharmacology and toxicology. In: Kacew S, Lambert GH, eds. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology of Human Development*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Kacew S (1999). Effect of over-the-counter drugs on the unborn child. *Pediatr Drugs* 1, 75–80.
- Karboski JA (1992). Medication selection for pregnant women. *Drug Ther* 22, 53–61.
- Klebanoff MA, Berendes HW (1988). Aspirin exposure during the first 20 weeks of gestation and IQ at four years of age. *Teratology* 37, 249–255.
- Knapp DA, Knapp DE (1972). Decision-making and self-medication between medication and preliminary findings. *Am J Hosp Pharm* 29, 1004–1012.
- Koda-Kimble MA (1992). Therapeutic and toxic potential of over-the-counter agents. In: Katzung BG, ed. *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology*. Norwalk, CT: Appleton and Lange.
- Kogan MD, Pappas G, Yu SM, et al. (1994). Over-the-counter medication use among preschool aged children in the United States. *J Am Med Assoc* 272, 1025–1030.
- Koren G, Pastuszak A, Ito S (1998). Drugs in pregnancy. *N Engl J Med* 338, 1128–1137.
- Kovar MG (1994). Use of medications and vitamin-mineral supplements by children and youths. *Public Health Rep* 100, 470–473.
- Kumar A, Rawlings RD, Bearman DC (1993). The mystery ingredients: Sweeteners, flavorings, dyes, and preservatives in analgesic/antipyretic, antihistamine/decongestant, liquid theophylline preparations. *Pediatrics* 91: 927–933.
- Leist ER, Banwell JG (1974). Products containing aspirin. *N Engl J Med* 291, 710–712.

- Liebelt EL, Shannon M (1993). Small doses, big problems: A selected review of highly toxic common medications. *Pediatr Emerg Care* 9, 292–297.
- Lock S, Kacew S (1988). General principles, in pediatric pharmacology and toxicology. In: Kacew S, Lock S, eds. *Toxicologic and Pharmacologic Principles in Pediatrics*. Washington, D.C.: Hemisphere Publishing, 1–15.
- Lowenstein SR, Parrino TA (1987). Management of common cold. *Adv Intern Med* 32, 207–234.
- Motala C, Hill ID, Mann MD, et al. (1990). Effect of loperamide on stool output and duration of acute infectious diarrhea in infants. *J Pediatr* 117, 467–471.
- Palatnick W, Tenenbein M (1998). Aspirin poisoning during pregnancy: Increased fetal sensitivity. *Am J Perinatol* 15, 39–41.
- Rayburn W, Wible-Kaut J, Bledsoe P (1982). Changing trends in drug use during pregnancy. *J Reprod Med* 27, 569–575.
- Rosendahl I (1998). Expense of physician care spurs OTC, self-care market. *Drug Topics* 132, 62–63.
- Rubin JP, Ferencz C, Loffredo C (1993). Use of prescription and nonprescription drugs in pregnancy. *J Clin Epidemiol* 46, 581–589.
- Safe S (1998). Dietary estrogens: An overview (abstract). *J Toxicol Sci* 42, 352.
- Shore LS, Gurevitz M, Shemesh M (1993). Estrogen, an environmental pollutant. *Bull Environ Contam Toxicol* 51, 361–366.
- Smith MBH, Kogan MD (1997). Over-the-counter medication use and toxicity in children. In: Kacew S, Lambert GH, eds. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology of Human Development*. Washington, D.C.: Taylor & Francis.
- Somogi A, Gugler R (1983). Clinical pharmacokinetics of cimetidine. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 8, 463–495.
- Splinter M, Sagraves R, Nightengale B, et al. (1997). Prenatal use of medications by women giving birth at a university hospital. *South Med J* 90, 498–502.
- Underhill R (1994). OTC products (correspondence). *Pharm J* 253, 112.



## Environmental Pollutants

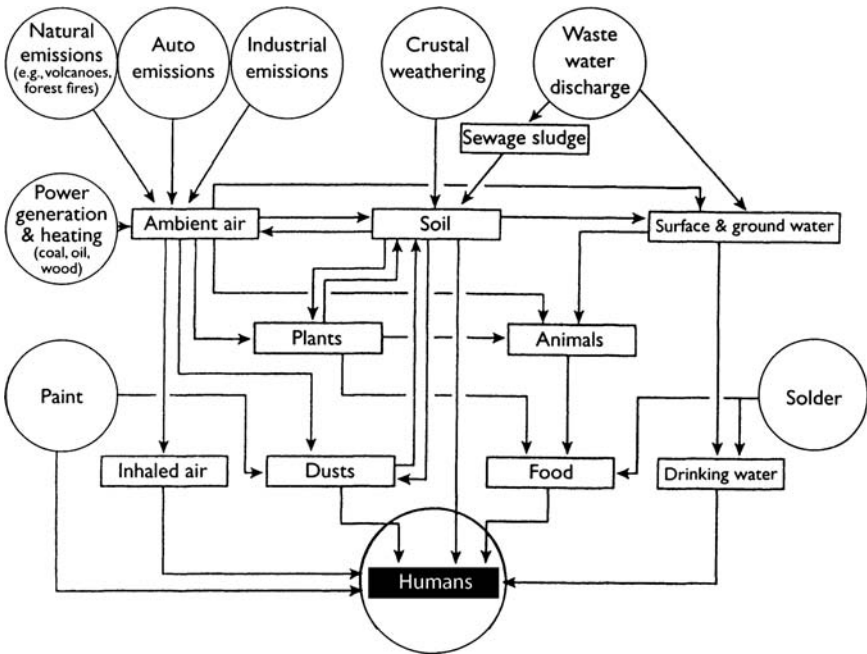
### CONTENTS

General Remarks	334
Air Pollutants	335
Introduction	335
Past Disasters	335
Current Condition	335
Outdoor Pollutants	335
Reducing-Type of Pollutants	335
Diverse Effects	336
Photochemical Oxidants	336
Composition and Sources	336
Adverse Effects	337
Indoor Air Pollutants/"Sick Building Syndrome"	337
Formaldehyde	338
Asbestos	338
CO, NO <sub>2</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , and Suspended Particle Matter (PM)	339
Others	339
Water and Soil Pollutants	339
General Considerations	339
Synthetic Persistent Chemicals	340
PCB	340
PBB	340
TCDD	341
Other Organic Chemicals	341
Inorganic Ions	341
Nitrates	341
Phosphates	341

Fluoride	342
Arsenic	342
Cyanotoxins/Eutrophication	342
Neurotoxins	342
Microcystins	342
References	343

**GENERAL REMARKS**

The environment consists of air, water, and soil; biota is sometimes included as one of the environmental media. Toxic substances may originate from any one medium; however, they are generally transported to other media. Humans are exposed to environmental pollutants from a variety of pathways. Figure 1 illustrates the transportation of lead to humans, via air, water, food, dusts, etc. The lead that entered the human bodies is returned to the environment via excreta, refuse, dumps, incinerators, etc. Many other pollutants also have complex routes of environmental transport and affect humans. A number of more important pollutants are briefly described in this chapter.



**Figure 1** Environmental pathways of human exposure to lead. *Source:* From OECD (1993).

## AIR POLLUTANTS

### Introduction

#### Past Disasters

Several episodes of severe air pollution affecting the health and lives of large numbers of people have been reported. The notable ones occurred in Mense Valley, Belgium (December 1930); Donora, Pennsylvania (October 1948); London, England (December 1952); Los Angeles, California (August or September 1942, 1952, 1955); and Piscataway, New Jersey (September 1971). These episodes fell into two categories. One type occurred in winters, especially during the night, when domestic burning of coal was an important source of pollution, and the other occurred in summers, during daytime, when photooxidation of automobile exhaust was the major source of pollutants. In either case, the meteorological conditions, low wind and high barometric pressure, kept the pollutants at ground level. The major effects were related to distress of respiratory and, to a lesser extent, cardiovascular systems. A number of deaths were reported, mainly from strains on preexisting diseases or deficiencies in these systems (Waldbott, 1978).

#### Current Condition

As a result of these tragic events, measures have been taken to reduce the extent of air pollution. Nevertheless, the health problem remains, although somewhat abated. For example, Mar et al. (2000) reported that elevated levels of CO and NO<sub>2</sub> in Phoenix were associated with increased total nonaccidental mortality, and increased cardiovascular mortality was associated with higher levels of CO, NO<sub>2</sub>, SO<sub>2</sub>, and particulate matter (PM). Similar observations in other cities are cited in a review (Dominic et al., 2005; Krewski et al., 2003).

The most important anthropogenic sources in many developed nations are automobiles (Krewski and Rainham, 2007). Other sources include combustion (coal, natural gas, fuel oil, incineration of refuse), metallurgical industry (see Chap. 21), and chemical industry (solvents, chemical intermediates, etc.).

### Outdoor Pollutants

#### Reducing-Type of Pollutants

#### Composition and Sources

The major pollutants are sulfur oxides and suspended particulate matter. The former include sulfur dioxide, sulfuric acid, and sulfates; the latter includes finely divided solids and liquids. Particles of 0.1 to 10  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter settle very slowly, with a velocity of  $8 \times 10^{-7}$  m/s to  $3 \times 10^{-3}$  m/s, while larger particles (1000  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter) settle at a velocity of 3.9 m/s (Fuchs, 1964). Thus, particles smaller than 10  $\mu\text{m}$  are suspended in air and are inhalable, as noted in Chapter 2.

The main sources of these pollutants are domestic burning of coal and other fuels for heating and cooking and industrial combustion of these fuels to generate energy. Smelting of ores also generates these and other pollutants.

#### Diverse Effects

SO<sub>2</sub> is very soluble, hence it is readily absorbed in the nose and upper respiratory tract, where it induces irritation. This is followed with thickening of the mucus layer in trachea and hypertrophy of goblet cells.

The irritation produces cough, expectoration, dyspnea, and bronchoconstriction. Respiratory functions are impaired, manifesting as decreased tidal volume, increased pulmonary resistance, and higher respiratory rate. Among exposed individuals, there is a rise in the incidence of respiratory tract infections, which may be attributable in part to an interference of the respiratory tract clearance mechanisms. Under normal conditions, this mechanism is responsible for removing bacteria and other particles from the tract. Aerosols of sulfuric acid, formed from SO<sub>3</sub>, are even more irritant than sulfur dioxide, which forms sulfurous acid (Costa and Amdur, 1996).

The effects of these sulfur pollutants are enhanced by the presence of suspended sulfur dioxide and smoke (suspended particulate matter) and produce deaths, especially among the elderly and those with preexisting diseases of the respiratory tract and heart, as those in Belgium (1930), Pennsylvania (1948), and London (1952).

Even at lower concentrations (e.g., SO<sub>2</sub>  $\geq$  500  $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^3$  and smoke  $\geq$  500  $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^3$ ), there is likely to be excess mortality among the elderly and the chronically sick. When exposure to these pollutants takes place at half of these concentrations, there is likely to be a worsening of existing respiratory disease (WHO, 1979). Willis et al. (2003) reported that an increased risk of cardiopulmonary mortality was correlated with atmospheric sulfur dioxide concentrations.

### Photochemical Oxidants

#### Composition and Sources

This group of air pollutants consists of nitrogen dioxide (NO<sub>2</sub>), ozone (O<sub>3</sub>), and a number of other oxides of nitrogen (N<sub>2</sub>O, NO, NO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>, and N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>). N<sub>2</sub>O is the most abundant among these chemicals, but it is generated by anaerobic processes in the soil and in the surface layer of the oceans, and hence is not an important air pollutant, as far as human health is concerned. The last three oxides of nitrogen can be formed from NO and/or NO<sub>2</sub>. However, their levels are very low and are not known to produce any harmful effects.

NO is the main oxide formed from man-made sources. However, after its discharge from the sources to the atmosphere, it reacts with O<sub>2</sub> to form NO<sub>2</sub>. This reaction is facilitated in the presence of ozone.

Ozone is the most ubiquitous photochemical oxidant. At times, it constitutes as much as 90% of the oxidants in smog. Ozone is also a natural constituent of the

upper atmosphere, formed by the photolysis of oxygen. Atmospheric circulation carries some to the lower levels.

The main sources of photochemical oxidants are automobiles and industrial combustion. Domestic heating and power stations also generate significant amounts. Ozone is also produced by a variety of high-voltage electrical equipment. Formaldehyde, which is one of the photochemical oxidants, will be discussed under section indoor air pollutants.

### Adverse Effects

In contrast to CO<sub>2</sub>, NO<sub>2</sub> is not very water soluble. It therefore passes through the upper respiratory tract to the terminal bronchioles and alveoli, where it forms nitric and nitrous acids. These acids are irritant and corrosive. Acute exposure produces pulmonary edema and congestion and damages ciliated epithelium and type I cells (see Chap. 12), which are then replaced by the less-sensitive nonciliated epithelial cells and cuboidal type II cells. Chronic exposure produces emphysema. Resistance to bacterial and viral infections is decreased (WHO, 1977).

After inhalation exposure, ozone reacts with organic matter in the respiratory tract. Similar to NO<sub>2</sub>, its main effects are on the epithelial cells of the nasal cavity, terminal bronchioles, and alveoli, affecting the more susceptible ciliated epithelial cells and type I cells. The endothelia surrounding these structures are also damaged, resulting in pulmonary edema. Chronic exposure results in emphysema, atelectasis, focal necrosis, and sometimes bronchopneumonia. In the nasal mucosa there is destruction of the epithelial lining and release of cytokines and consequent inflammatory processes develop (Nikasinovic et al., 2003). Resistance to bacterial and viral infection is decreased. Because of the oxidative activity of ozone, vitamin C decreases its toxicity, whereas vitamin E deficiency has the opposite effect (WHO, 1978).

Apart from their toxic effects on the respiratory tract, these air pollutants also produce eye irritation in adults (see Chap. 16). Recently, focus of air pollutants has concentrated on neonates, infants, and children (Foos et al., 2008). It is well established that the lung is not mature and full development of architecture and functionality does not occur until age 18. Children have a larger lung surface area per kilogram and under normal circumstances breathe a greater amount of air. Further the immune system is still immature. Thus maternal exposure to air pollutants during pregnancy results in fetal loss, while infant exposure was correlated with a higher frequency of mortality. The effect of air pollutants on children is an increased incidence of cough, bronchitis, and asthma.

### **Indoor Air Pollutants/“Sick Building Syndrome”**

In recent years, the importance of indoor pollutants has become increasingly appreciated. The more efficient insulation of modern buildings, resulting in inadequate ventilation and in the use of certain insulation materials, has intensified the

problem. Some of the more important pollutants and reactions are described below. Additional details are provided in articles by Karol (1991) and Samet (1993).

### Formaldehyde

This organic chemical is a product of photooxidation of natural and man-made hydrocarbons. Formaldehyde is more important as a component of urea formaldehyde foam insulation material, which has been widely used in mobile homes and, to a lesser extent, in conventional houses. Because of its volatility and toxicity, it has been a significant indoor air pollutant.

Formaldehyde is water soluble, and irritates the eyes, nose, and upper respiratory tract. At higher concentrations, it also affects the bronchioles and alveoli, and induces pulmonary edema and pneumonia. The dose–effect relationship is listed in Table 1. In addition, it has been reported to cause nasal cancers in rodents, while in humans there is an increased incidence of micronucleated buccal and mucosal cells (Liteplo and Meek, 2003). Some studies reported evidence of genetic defects in humans.

### Asbestos

Asbestos is a naturally occurring silicate fiber. Because of its heat and electrical insulation properties, it has been widely used in houses, ships, automobiles, etc. Workers in certain occupations are the main population at risk. However, the general public may also be exposed to it through the air and, to a lesser extent, the drinking water because it is used as a water filter (Paustenbach et al., 2004).

After inhalation, asbestos enters the alveoli and produces parenchymal asbestosis consisting of fibrosis and asbestos bodies (Vallyathan et al., 1998). It may pierce the alveoli and produce pleural asbestosis. It also produces lung carcinoma, the incidence of which is significantly higher among cigarette smokers (Vallyathan et al., 1998). Mesothelioma is a rare type of malignant tumor,

**Table 1** Acute Human Health Effects of Formaldehyde at Various Concentrations

Reported effects (ppm)	Formaldehyde concentration
None reported	0.0–0.05
Neurophysiologic effects	0.05–1.5
Odor threshold	0.05–1.0
Eye irritation <sup>a</sup>	0.1–2.0
Upper airway irritation	0.10–25
Lower airway and pulmonary effects	5–30
Pulmonary edema, inflammation, pneumonia	50–100
Death	>100

<sup>a</sup>As measured by the determination of optical chronaxy, electroencephalography, and sensitivity of dark-adapted eyes to light. The low concentration (0.01 ppm) was observed in the presence of other pollutants that may have been acting synergistically.

Source: From NRC, Committee on Aldehydes (1981).

which may originate from the pleural and peritoneal surfaces after inhalation and ingestion, respectively.

The asbestos fibrosis appears to result from its entering the cells (macrophages and lymphocytes), breaking the lysosomal membrane, and releasing hydroxylases. It produces tumors either by carrying carcinogenic hydrocarbons into the body or by acting as cocarcinogen (Vallyathan et al., 1998).

#### CO, NO<sub>2</sub>, SO<sub>2</sub>, and Suspended Particle Matter (PM)

These substances exist indoors as well as outdoors. In fact, this type of indoor air pollution may be more important than that which exists outdoors. This is because people in general spend more time indoors and because domestic heating may involve burning coal or other fuel without adequate ventilation. However, the predominant source of air pollutants arises from vehicular generation (Krewski and Rainham, 2007).

#### Others

Various volatile organic compounds are present in offices and homes, arising from paints, adhesives, cleaners, cosmetics, furnishings, and printed materials. In addition, there are many types of biological material such as bacteria, viruses, fungi, fungal spores, and dandruff. These substances may induce allergic reactions. The mixture of pollutants produces a garnet of reactions, which has been named "Sick Building Syndrome." The common symptoms of this syndrome include irritation of eyes, nose, and throat, headaches, fatigue, and nasal congestion (Samet et al., 1988).

## **WATER AND SOIL POLLUTANTS**

### **General Considerations**

Various pollutants are discharged into environmental media. Those that predominate in the air are described in the preceding section. Others are discharged in wastewater as effluent, or stored in dump sites. Generally these will contaminate both the water and soil.

Water and soil contaminants include pesticides and metals, which have been discussed in Chapters 21 and 22. Asbestos is also an important environmental pollutant. Its major health hazard is related to inhalation exposure as outlined in the preceding section. It is also present in water because of various mining, milling, and industrial uses as well as its use in filter pads for wine, beer (Paustenbach et al., 2004).

A great variety of organic chemicals, including some solvents and pesticides, have been detected in water, and most of these are present at extremely low levels. However, some of them are more persistent. In addition, a number of inorganic ions may also present health hazards. Both of these groups are described below.

Drugs are released into water from human urine. Hormonal steroids are released into water from livestock and produce endocrine disruption.

### Synthetic Persistent Chemicals

#### PCB

Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) are manufactured by the progressive chlorination of biphenyl. Commercial products are mixtures of biphenyl with a different degree of chlorine substitution. These products have a variety of uses in electric insulators, and rubber and paper industries, as plasticizers. PCB are stable, and hence persistent in the environment with levels in water ranging from 0.5 to 500 ppb, depending on the extent of contamination. PCB are lipophilic, and thus bioaccumulate in aquatic organisms; fish caught from certain lakes contain 520 ppm PCB. Because of extreme persistence and toxicity, many nations have suspended or restricted their use. However, they will remain in the environment for a long time.

PCB, being lipophilic, are stored in adipose tissue and secreted in milk. PCB are a potent inducer of microsomal enzymes (Hu and Bunce, 1999). As a result, they enhance the metabolism of steroids such as estradiol and androsterone, a fact that may account for some of their effect on reproductive function. Because of this effect on enzymes, they can modify the toxicity of other chemicals and act as a promoter of carcinogenesis.

PCB exert a variety of toxic effects in animals. For example, they induce hepatic adenoma and carcinoma. Among the *reproductive functions* affected are lengthened estrus cycles and decreased frequency of implanted ova in mice, lowered fertility in mink and Rhesus monkey, and reduced hatchability of eggs in birds. On the *immune system*, they produce atrophy of lymphoid tissue in chickens and in rabbits, and suppress a variety of humoral and cell-mediated immunity functions.

An outbreak of poisoning occurred in Japan in 1968, resulting from consumption of rice oil contaminated with PCB, which affected more than 1000 people. The major clinical manifestations were chloracne, hyperkeratosis, and darkening of skin. Immunosuppression was also noted. Various subjective symptoms were reported, such as numbness of the limbs, coughing, expectoration, general fatigue, and eye discharge. There may also be an increase of liver and lung cancer among the male patients.

#### PBB

Polybrominated biphenyls (PBB) are used as fire retardants. They gained notoriety because of a large-scale contamination of cattle feed in Michigan in 1973. The beef was contaminated with PBB (Weber and Greim, 1997). They are similar to PCB in many aspects, such as biotransformation, storage, and effects on reproduction, carcinogenesis, immune system, and skin (chloracne).



## TCDD

2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin (TCDD) attracted wide attention after its accidental release from a factory in Seveso, Italy, in 1976. While its level in water is low, it is important toxicologically because of its extreme potency. Furthermore, TCDD is a contaminant of other chemicals, notably the herbicide 2,4,5-T, which was extensively used as a defoliant in the Vietnam War. TCDD is extremely toxic, with LD<sub>50</sub>s ranging from 0.0006 to 0.115 mg/kg in different species of animals (NRC, 1977).

TCDD is a potent inducer of microsomal enzymes, by binding to a specific receptor (Hu and Bunce, 1999). TCDD is a potent carcinogen (2 ppb in rats), inducing cancers in a variety of organs such as liver, respiratory tract, and oral cavity (Kociba et al., 1977). At somewhat higher doses, it is hepatotoxic, immunosuppressive, teratogenic, and fetotoxic. In humans, the predominant effect of TCDD is chloracne. It has not been reported to be carcinogenic in humans despite its extremely potent carcinogenicity in rats (Zack and Suskind, 1980).

## Other Organic Chemicals

*Phthalate esters* are extensively used in plastics and are widely distributed in the environment, especially water. Their acute toxicity is low, but DEHP [di(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate] was shown to be carcinogenic and adversely affect reproductive functions in animals (Conference on Phthalates, 1982). *Trihalomethanes* are formed through the chlorination of water. These chemicals comprise chloroform, bromodichloromethane, dibromochloromethane, and bromoform. They are found in drinking water from less than 0.1 to 311 ppb. Among them, chloroform had the highest concentration. At high doses, these chemicals are hepatotoxic, cause reproductive and developmental effects, and may be carcinogenic (Teuschler et al., 2004).

## Inorganic Ions

### Nitrates

The increase of nitrates in soil and water results mainly from intensive application of fertilizers, but also from wastes (excreta) of humans and farm animals. They are converted to nitrites in soil, water, and the G.I. tract through microbial action. Nitrites induce methemoglobinemia, thus reducing the oxygen-carrying capacity of hemoglobin as noted in Chapter 4. Furthermore, they may react with certain amines to form nitrosamines, most of which are carcinogenic (Chaps. 7 and 19).

### Phosphates

These substances arise mainly from fertilizers and detergents. They have very low toxicity, but their presence in a body of stagnant water results in excessive growth of algae. The algae reduce the oxygenation of the water, resulting in fish

kill. Certain “algae,” the cyanobacteria, contain hepatotoxins and neurotoxins (see below).

### Fluoride

The natural level of fluoride in water varies greatly, depending on the location. Industrial activities may also raise its level. While fluoride has been added to water to about 1 ppm to reduce dental cavity formation, excessive levels in water (10 ppm) are likely to produce fluorosis. The enamel on the teeth is weakened, resulting in surface pitting. Changes in the bones, including osteosclerosis and exostoses, usually affect the spine and produce knee deformity known as genu valgum. At lower levels of fluoride intake, chalky-white patches appear on the surface of the dental enamel. These patches are then stained yellow or brown and give rise to the characteristic “mottled” appearance (Dean, 1942).

### Arsenic

In certain areas of Taiwan, South America, and Bangladesh, high levels of arsenic have been reported to be associated with blackfoot disease, a peripheral vascular disorder resulting in gangrene. Arsenic also produces skin lesions and possibly visceral cancers, especially the liver (see Chap. 21).

## Cyanotoxins/Euttrification

Euttrification occurs in lakes and ponds when there are excessive amounts of phosphorus. In general, this results from runoffs contaminated with fertilizers and detergents. Algae tend to thrive in such waters. Some of the algae produce cyanotoxins. Three groups of cyanotoxins are now recognized: one affects the nervous system, the second termed as cylindrospermosin inhibits protein synthesis are cytotoxic, while the third termed as microcystins inhibits protein phosphatases in the liver (Chorus et al., 2000; Zurawell et al., 2005).

### Neurotoxins

The most important among them is saxitoxin, also known as paralytic shellfish poison. Human exposure to saxitoxin is through consumption of contaminated shellfish. The toxin acts by blocking conduction of nerve impulse thereby inducing muscle paralysis (see Chaps. 17 and 19).

### Microcystins

The other type comprises microcystins and nodulins. These toxins are hepatotoxic to wild and domestic animals (Zurawell et al., 2005). In an epidemiological study in several areas in China, Chorus et al. (2000) found a positive correlation between the use of surface water and high rates of primary liver cancer. Subsequently, Wang and Zhu (1996) showed that an extract of *Microcystis aeruginosa* (a major species of cyanobacteria) promoted cell transformation of Syrian hamster embryo cells which had been exposed to a genotoxic carcinogen. It is thus evident that the

extract is a carcinogen promoter. Gilroy et al. (2000) showed that a “health food product,” made of blue-green algae, was contaminated with microcystins, more than 70% of the samples tested contained  $\geq 1$  mg/kg.

In 1996 in Caruaru, Brazil, 100 patients suffered acute liver failure from the use of partially treated municipal water for kidney dialysis. More than half of the patients died. The cause of the outbreak has now been attributed to certain cyanotoxins (Chorus et al., 2000).

## REFERENCES

- Chorus I, Falconer IR, Salas HJ, et al. (2000). Health risks caused by freshwater cyanobacteria in recreational waters. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 3, 323–347.
- Conferences on Phthalates (1982). Proceedings of the Conference. *Environ Health Perspect* 45, 11–51.
- Costa DL, Amdur MO (1996). Air pollution. In: Klaassen CD, ed. Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 857–882.
- Dean HT (1942). The investigation of physiological effects by the epidemiological method. *Am Assoc Adv Sci* 19, 23–31.
- Dominic F, Mcdermott A, Daniels M, et al. (2005). Revised analyses of the National Morbidity Mortality and Air Pollution study: Mortality among residents of 90 cities. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 68, 1071–1092.
- Foos B, Marty M, Schwartz J, et al. (2008). Focusing on children's inhalation dosimetry and health effects for risk assessment: An introduction. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 71, 149–165.
- Fuchs NA (1964). *The Mechanisms of Aerosol*. Oxford, UK: Pergamon Press, 28.
- Gilroy DJ, Kauffman KW, Hall RA, et al. (2000). Assessing potential health risks from microcystin toxins in blue-green algae dietary supplement. *Environ Health Perspect* 10, 435–449.
- Hu K, Bunce NJ (1999). Metabolism of polychlorinated dibenzo-*p*-dioxins and related dioxin-like compounds. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 2, 183–210.
- Karol MH (1991). Allergic reactions to indoor air pollutants. *Environ Health Perspect* 95, 45–51.
- Kociba RJ, Keyes DG, Beyer JE (1977). Results of a two-year chronic toxicity and oncogenicity study of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 46, 279–303.
- Krewski D, Burnett RT, Goldberg MS, et al. (2003). Overview of the reanalysis of the Harvard six cities study and American Cancer Society of particulate air pollution and mortality. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 66, 1507–1551.
- Krewski D, Rainham D (2007). Ambient air pollution and population health: Overview. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 70, 275–283.
- Liteplo RG, Meek ME (2003). Inhaled formaldehyde: Exposure estimation, hazard characterization and exposure response analysis. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 6, 85–114.
- Mar TF, Norris GA, Koenig JQ, et al. (2000). Associations between air pollution and mortality in Phoenix, 1995–1997. *Environ Health Perspect* 108, 347–353.
- Nikasinovic L, Momas I, Seta N (2003). Nasal, epithelial and inflammatory response to ozone exposure: A review of laboratory-based studies published since 1985. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 6, 521–568.

- NRC (1977). *Drinking Water and Health*. Washington, D.C.: National Research Council, National Academy of Sciences.
- NRC, Committee on Aldehydes (1981). *Formaldehyde and Other Aldehydes*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
- OECD (1993). *Risk Reduction Monograph No. 1: Lead Background and National Experience with Reducing Risk*. Paris, France: Organization for Economic Cooperation.
- Paustenbach DJ, Finley BL, Lu ET, et al. (2004). Environmental and occupational health hazards associated with the presence of asbestos in brake linings and pads (1900 to present): A state of the art review. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 7, 25–80.
- Samet JM (1993). Indoor air pollution: A public health perspective. *Indoor Air* 3, 219–226.
- Samet JM, Marbury MC, Spengler JD (1988). Health effects and sources of indoor air pollution. Part II. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 137, 221–242.
- Teuschler LK, Rice GE, Wilkes CR, et al. (2004). A feasibility study of cumulative risk assessment methods for drinking water disinfection by-product mixtures. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 67, 755–777.
- Vallyathan V, Green F, Ducatman B, et al. (1998). Roles of epidemiology, pathology, molecular biology and biomarkers in the investigation of occupational lung cancer. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 91–116.
- Waldrott GK (1978). *Health Effects of Environmental Pollutants*. St. Louis, MO: C.V. Mosby.
- Wang HB, Zhu HG (1996). Promoting activity of microcystins extracted from waterbloom in SHE cell transformation assay. *Biomed Environ Sci* 9, 46–51.
- Weber LW, Greim H (1997). The toxicity of brominated and mixed-halogenated dibenzo-*p*-dioxins and dibenzofurans: An overview. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 50, 195–215.
- WHO (1977). *Oxides of Nitrogen*. *Environ Health Criteria* 4. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1978). *Photochemical Oxidants*. *Environ Health Criteria* 7. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1979). *Sulfur Oxides and Suspended Particulate Matter*. *Environ Health Criteria* 8. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Willis A, Jerrett M, Burnett RT, et al. (2003). The association between sulfate air pollution and mortality at the county scale: An exploration of the impact of scale on a long-term exposure study. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 66, 1605–1624.
- Zack JA, Suskind RR (1980). The mortality experience of workers exposed to tetrachlorodibenzodioxin in a trichlorophenol process accident. *J Occup Med* 22, 1–114.
- Zurawell RW, Chen H, Burke JM, et al. (2005). Hepatotoxic cyanobacteria: A review of the biological importance of microcystins in freshwater environments. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 8, 1–37.

## Occupational Toxicology

### CONTENTS

General Remarks	346
Exposure Limits	346
Definitions	347
Scientific Basis	347
Tests in Animals	347
Human Data	348
Assessment of Permissibility	348
Occupational Toxicants	348
Organic Solvents	348
General Effects	349
Specific Effects	350
Other Effects	351
Metals	351
Pesticides	352
Miscellaneous Toxicants	353
Particulate Matter	353
Gases	353
Plastics	354
Monitoring	354
Workplace Monitoring	354
Biological Monitoring	355
Effects	355
Exposure	355
References	355
Appendix 1 Acute Pesticide Toxicity, General Signs, and Symptoms in Humans	357

## GENERAL REMARKS

As noted in previous chapters, humans are exposed to a variety of substances, by ingestion, inhalation, and dermal contact. Unlike the general populations, however, workers are often exposed to much higher levels of specific toxicants. Such exposures may well result in adverse effects. In fact, as early as 1775, Pott observed that chimney sweeps having been exposed to soot, developed cancer of the scrotum. Rehn discovered in 1895 that bladder tumors occurred among workers in aniline dye factories.

In the late 19th century, certain societal changes prompted the development of a variety of new occupations. One of the changes was the introduction of powerful machinery to facilitate many mining activities. While the machinery increased the output of mining, it also increased the airborne dusts to which miners were exposed.

Another major change was the invention of internal combustion machines, which increased air pollution from motor vehicles. To fuel these vehicles, large amounts of petroleum were produced. In fact, the excess petroleum became an excellent source of new chemicals. These petrochemicals, along with other raw materials, found uses in the production of clothing, furniture, construction material, household, and office commodities, as well as in paints, pesticides, solvents, pharmaceuticals, etc. These and other changes in society increased the number of occupational workers as well as the variety of substances to which the workers are exposed.

Workers engaged in the production, processing, or utilization of these substances are thus exposed to some chemical hazards. The severity of the adverse effects, however, depends not only on the nature of the substance but also on the level and duration of the exposure. Occupational toxicology is thus intended to assess the “permissible” levels of exposure, for a specified duration, to the toxicants encountered in workplaces. For the protection of the workers, the concentrations of the toxicants in the workplaces are to be maintained at or below their corresponding permissible levels. It should be noted that occupational exposure is not in a vacuum. A worker can be exposed to more than a single chemical, leading to mixture effects. Furthermore, a worker who smokes or drinks, or suffers from a chronic illness such as diabetes or on a chronic medication regime may be more susceptible than the nonsmoking worker to the same chemical.

## EXPOSURE LIMITS

Unlike food additives and most medications which, if too toxic, may be readily prohibited for use, occupational toxicants, in general, cannot be eliminated, that is, they are dependent on the job for a salary. To protect the health of occupational workers, permissible (“safe”) limits of exposure are assessed.

## Definitions

Permissible limits of exposure are existent in many countries. In the United States, a yearly booklet listing the threshold limit values (TLV) is published by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists since 1946 (ACGIH, 2000). The limits refer to airborne concentrations of substances. They represent conditions under which “nearly all workers may be repeatedly exposed day after day without adverse effects.” The list includes solvents, metals and their compounds, pesticides, and others. There are three categories of TLV:

1. TLV-TWA (time-weighted average) refers to the time-weighted average concentration for a normal eight-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek.
2. TLV-STEL (short-term exposure limit) refers to the short-term exposure limit to which workers may be exposed. It is defined as a 15-minute TWA exposure. This limit is set mostly to avoid irritation and narcosis, but also to avoid chronic or irreversible tissue damage. The short-term exposure is acceptable provided that the TLV-TWA is not exceeded.
3. TLV-C refers to the ceiling that should not be exceeded during any part of the working exposure.

These limits are expressed in terms of parts per million (ppm) and/or milligrams per cubic meter ( $\text{mg}/\text{m}^3$ ). Since 1 mole of an ideal gas at  $25^\circ\text{C}$  and 760 mmHg occupies 24.45 L, the following equation can be used to convert the limits: parts of vapor/million parts air (ppm) =  $\text{mg}/\text{m}^3 \times 24.45/(\text{molecular weight of the solvents})$ .

The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) published a list of “permissible exposure limits” (PEL) which are essentially similar to the TLV of ACGIH. There are other occupational exposure limits such as the maximum allowable concentration (MAC). However, the TLV published by ACGIH have been widely accepted, even outside of the United States.

## Scientific Basis

The permissible levels of exposure are assessed on the basis of relevant test results in experimental animals as well as in clinical observations and epidemiological studies in humans.

### Tests in Animals

These include the various types of tests described in previous chapters. However, with occupational toxicants, the major routes of exposure are the respiratory tract and skin. After inhalation, gases and vapors may exert effects locally, and may also be absorbed. Large particulate matters and liquid droplets ( $>10 \mu\text{m}$ ) do not enter the respiratory tract and affect the nasal mucosa; very small particles ( $<0.01 \mu\text{m}$ ) are likely to be exhaled. Those within the range of 0.01 to  $10 \mu\text{m}$  may be absorbed from the respiratory tract and exert systemic effects and may also induce local effects in the lungs.

Skin is relatively impermeable to most chemicals, but some may be absorbed in sufficient quantities to induce systemic effects. Some toxicants may produce local irritation and hypersensitization.

After absorption, a toxicant is distributed to various parts of the body. Depending on its nature, a small or large portion of it may be stored. In general, it is excreted as it is or after undergoing biotransformation. In general, this process renders the toxicant more water soluble, hence more excretable. However, some chemicals undergo bioactivation, especially in the liver and become more toxic. For additional information on bioactivation, see Chapter 3.

Although all organs and systems may be adversely affected by occupational toxicants, the most commonly affected targets, apart from the respiratory tract and skin, are the nervous system, the liver, and the kidneys. In addition, potential adverse effects on the immune system, reproductive function, and fetal development merit special attention.

#### Human Data

To obtain relevant data from humans, a variety of studies may be used. The *case-controlled study* is generally used to unravel the etiology of a specific adverse effect. For example, Cole et al. (1972) observed a higher rate of lower urinary tract cancer among workers engaged in the manufacture of dyestuff, rubber, and leather. This observation provided a basis for further confirmatory studies.

*Epidemiological studies* are more elaborate, and usually provide more precise information. Prospective studies are usually carried out to confirm a suspected cause–effect relationship, and/or to provide more precise quantitative data. Retrospective studies involve analysis of clinical data obtained in exposed workers versus a group of unexposed cohort, matched for age, gender, and such lifestyle as smoking and alcohol consumption.

#### Assessment of Permissibility

With adequate and relevant animal and human data, a “no-observed-adverse-effect level” (NOAEL) can generally be assessed. The permissible exposure level can be obtained by applying an appropriate “safety factor” to the NOAEL. A detailed description of the procedure used in Europe to assess the permissible levels of exposure to pesticides was described by de Raat et al. (1997). Procedures used in the United States, Canada, Germany, and the Czech Republic are outlined in a WHO document (WHO, 2000).

## OCCUPATIONAL TOXICANTS

### Organic Solvents

Solvents comprise a variety of organic chemicals such as aromatic hydrocarbons [e.g., chloroform, carbon tetrachloride (CCl<sub>4</sub>)], alcohols, or glycols, and their ethers. These chemicals are used extensively in paints, inks, thinners, adhesives,



**Table 1** Toxic Effects and TLV-TWAs of Certain Organic Solvents

Organic solvents	Toxic effects	TWA (ppm)
Benzene	Leukemia	0.5
Carbon disulfide	CNS, neuropathy	10
Carbon tetrachloride	Liver	5
Chloroform	CVS, liver, kidney, CNS	10
Dioxane	Skin	20
<i>n</i> -Hexane	Neuropathy, CNS irritation	50
Methanol	Neuropathy, vision CNS	200
Methyl <i>n</i> -butyl ketone	Neuropathy	5
Methylene chloride	CNS, anoxia	50
Toluene	CNS, skin	50
Trichloroethylene	CNS, liver	50

Source: From ACGIH (2000).

pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, etc. Some solvents are used mainly for dry-cleaning clothes and degreasing machinery. Their manufacture and use in industry may pose health hazards to occupational workers. In addition, some of them become components of household products, thereby constituting potential health hazards to the consumer. Their toxic effects are outlined below, and summarized along with their TLV-TWA in Table 1.

### General Effects

Most of the solvents exert certain nonspecific effects. These include irritation at the site of contact, and depression of CNS.

### Irritation

At room temperature solvents are in the liquid form. When they are in contact with skin, irritation may occur. As they are volatile, inhalation of their vapors may produce irritation of the nasal epithelium and respiratory tract, and they may also produce eye irritation and watering.

### CNS Depression

At sufficiently high levels of exposure, a consistent effect of solvents is CNS depression. The clinical manifestation begins with disorientation, giddiness, and euphoria. The last-named effect is responsible for abuse of some of these chemicals. The syndrome may progress to paralysis, unconsciousness, and convulsions. Death may ensue.

The mechanism of action is not clear, but well over half a century ago, Meyer (1937) observed that the narcosis (CNS depression) was related to the solubility of these substances in lipid and was not related to their chemical structure, and hence suggested that narcosis resulted from CNS cell dysfunction following solubilizing of the solvents in the cell membrane.

### Interaction

As noted above, most solvents may undergo biotransformation and may elevate the activities of cytochrome P-450 isozymes. Since solvents are often present in mixtures, interaction between them may occur. For example, a solvent, such as benzene, may potentiate the adverse effects of others by enhancing their bioactivation. On the other hand, the toxicity may also be decreased with certain mixtures. For example, toluene may reduce the toxicity of benzene by competitively inhibiting the bioactivation enzyme systems (Andrews et al., 1977). These effects are dependent on normal liver function but become skewed in an alcoholic. The presence of drugs will also affect solvent biotransformation. It is worth noting that there are gender differences and in general men appear to be more susceptible to chemical-induced alterations compared to women.

### Specific Effects

Apart from the general effects described above, a variety of specific effects may follow exposure to solvents. The diversity of these effects is a result of different reactive metabolites being formed. Some of the specific effects are described below.

### Liver

As noted in Chapter 13, ethanol is a common cause of fatty liver and liver cirrhosis. These effects likely result from the direct toxicity of ethanol and nutritional deficiency commonly present among alcoholics. Various chlorinated hydrocarbons may produce a variety of liver damages. These include fatty liver as well as liver necrosis, cirrhosis, and cancer. The liver lesions are induced by reactive metabolites of these solvents. For example, the likely metabolite of carbon tetrachloride is trichloromethyl radical, that of chloroform is phosgene, and those of halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons, such as bromobenzene, are their epoxides (Reid and Krishna, 1973). However, the recurrent cytotoxicity and chronic tissue regeneration may be the cause of carcinogenicity.

### Kidneys

As noted in Chapter 14, certain chlorinated hydrocarbons, such as chloroform and carbon tetrachloride, are nephrotoxic in addition to being hepatotoxic. At lower levels of exposure, the renal effects are related to tubular functions, such as glycosuria, amino aciduria, and polyuria. At higher levels, there may be cell death along with elevated BUN and anuria. In humans,  $\text{CCl}_4$  affects mainly kidneys when the route of exposure is inhalation, whereas liver is the major target organ when the chemical is ingested. Ethylene glycol is nephrotoxic because of its direct cytotoxicity as well as the blocking of the proximal tubules with the formation of crystals of its metabolite, calcium oxalate.

### Nervous System

Apart from their effects on CNS, as noted above, aliphatic hydrocarbons and certain ketones such as *n*-hexane and methyl *n*-butyl ketone also affect the peripheral nervous system. The clinical manifestation of this polyneuropathy begins with

numbness and paresthesia, as well as motor weakness of both hands and feet. These effects then involve both arms and legs. Pathologically, it is characterized by distal axonopathy (Chap. 17). The reactive metabolite of these two solvents is 2,5-hexanedione (Krasavage et al., 1980).

### Hematopoietic System

Benzene is an outstanding example of a solvent affecting this system. It depresses bone marrow in animals and humans, thereby decreasing the circulating erythrocytes, leukocytes, and thrombocytes. In humans exposed to benzene, leukemia has been reported (Snyder, 2000).

### Carcinogenesis

As noted above, a number of chlorinated hydrocarbons are known to produce liver tumors. Benzene is carcinogenic in animals and produces leukemia in humans. In addition, dioxane is also a liver carcinogen and produces nasopharyngeal cancers (Andrews and Snyder, 1996).

Diethylene glycol induced bladder tumors in rats fed large doses of the solvent. In all the tumor-bearing rats, there were bladder stones that were composed of calcium oxalate, a metabolite of this chemical (Fitzhugh and Nelson, 1946). This solvent has thus been considered a secondary carcinogen (Chap. 7). Chloroform was reported to induce renal tumors only in male rats and mice (Meek et al., 2002) but appears not to be relevant for humans.

### Other Effects

*Testicular degeneration* and *cardiovascular (CV) abnormalities* have been observed in animals exposed to ethylene glycol monoethyl ether. Methanol may damage the *retina* through its metabolite and affect mainly the part that is responsible for central vision. Methylene chloride produces CNS depression and irritation to the eye and skin. However, it also induces *carboxyhemoglobinemia*, because CO is formed in the biotransformation (WHO, 1984). Chloroform may induce *cardiac arrhythmia*, probably as a result of sensitization of the myocardium to epinephrine. This is one of the reasons why chloroform has been discontinued as a general anesthetic.

It should be noted that certain solvents are practically nontoxic. For example, propylene glycol possesses low toxicities, with LD<sub>50</sub> values of 32 and 18 mL/kg in rats and rabbits, respectively, and rats fed this solvent at 1.8 mL/kg for two years showed no adverse effects. This chemical has thus been used as a food additive.

### Metals

Metals are mined, smelted, refined, and processed for a great variety of uses. Workers are therefore exposed to metals and their compounds in many occupations. The target organs and the nature of toxicity, as described in Chapter 21, depend on the metal and its chemical form. For example, elemental mercury vapor produces excitability, tremors, and gingivitis. On the other hand, the divalent mercuric

**Table 2** Toxic Effects and TLV-TWAs of Toxic Metals

Metals	Toxic effects	TWA (mg/m <sup>3</sup> )
Arsenic	Cancer (lung, skin)	0.01
Beryllium	Cancer (lung), berylliosis	0.002
Cadmium	Cancer (lung, prostate), kidney lesions	0.01
Metal fume fever		
Chromium, metal and Cr III	Skin, irritation	0.5
Cr VI, soluble	Cancer, liver, kidney	0.05
Cr VI, insoluble		0.01
Lead	CNS, G.I., blood, kidney, reproduction	0.05
Mercury		
Alkyl	CNS	0.01
Aryl	CNS, neuropathy, eye, kidney	0.1
Inorganic and elemental	CNS, neuropathy, eye	0.025
Nickel, elements	Skin	1.5
Soluble compounds	CNS, skin	0.1
Insoluble compounds	Cancer (lung)	0.2

Source: From ACGIH (2000).

chloride is corrosive on contact, whereas the monovalent mercurous chloride causes dermal vasodilatation, hyperkeratosis, and hypersecretion of the sweat gland.

Table 2 lists the main toxic effects and/or target organs as well as the TLV-TWAs of a number of toxic metals. Additional details are provided in Chapter 21.

## Pesticides

Pesticides are widely used in agriculture and in public health programs to control vector-borne diseases. There are several types of pesticides, that is, insecticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and fumigants.

The organochlorine insecticides include aldrin, chlordane, DDT, lindane, and methoxychlor. Their major adverse effects are on the CNS and liver. The organophosphorus insecticides, such as azinphos-methyl, diazinon, malathion, methylparathion, and parathion, inhibit acetylcholinesterase (AChE). The inhibition of AChE in the central, peripheral, and autonomic nervous systems produces a variety of adverse effects, as described in Chapter 20. Carbaryl, a carbamate insecticide, also inhibits AChE, but its effects are short-lived.

The herbicides 2,4-D and diquat irritate the skin. Paraquat is stored in the lungs, hence it produces lung edema. The TLV-TWA for this chemical is therefore much lower. The fungicide thiram produces skin irritation and may disturb reproductive function. The fumigant metam sodium produces allergic dermatitis and exacerbates asthma. The irritant effects are attributed to account for the observed neurotoxicity (Pruett et al., 2001).

**Table 3** Toxic Effects and TLV-TWAs of Certain Pesticides

Pesticides	Toxic effects	TWA (mg/m <sup>3</sup> )
Aldrin	Liver	0.25
Azinphos-methyl	AChE inhibition	0.2
Carbaryl	AChE inhibition	0.5
Chlordane	CNS, liver lesion	0.5
2,4-D	Skin irritation	10
DDT	CNS, liver lesion	1
Diazinon	AChE inhibition	0.1
Diquat	Irritation of eye, skin	0.5
Lindane	CNS, liver lesion	0.5
Malathion	AChE inhibition	10
Methoxychlor	CNS, liver lesion	10
Methylparathion	AChE inhibition	0.2
Paraquat	Lung edema, kidney, liver	0.5
Parathion	AChE inhibition	0.1
Thiram	Skin irritation, reproduction	1

Source: From ACGIH (2000).

Table 3 lists the main toxic effects and/or target organs as well as the TLV-TWA of the above-mentioned pesticides. Additional details on their toxicity are provided in Chapter 20. Their acute toxicity in humans is listed in Appendix 1.

### Miscellaneous Toxicants

#### Particulate Matter

As noted above, particulate matter of sizes in the range of 0.01 to 10  $\mu\text{m}$  are readily inhaled and exert adverse effects. A notable example is asbestos. It was widely used to provide thermal and acoustic insulation as well as fire protection, but produces pulmonary fibrosis (asbestosis), and cancers of the bronchus and mesotheliomas of the pleura and peritoneum (Vallyathan et al., 1998). Its TLV-TWA is "1 fiber/cm<sup>3</sup>" (ACGIH, 2000).

Other common particulate matter includes coal dust, kaolin, silica, and talc. All these substances may induce pulmonary fibrosis (Vallyathan et al., 1998). Coke oven emissions cause tracheobronchial cancers (Vallyathan et al., 1998). Tobacco smoking enhances the toxic effects of particulate matters, such as asbestos (see Chap. 5) and cement dust (Table 4).

#### Gases

A number of gases, such as CO, CO<sub>2</sub>, NO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>3</sub>, and SO<sub>2</sub> are encountered in certain occupational settings. However, these also occur in the general environment, hence they are described in Chapter 23.

**Table 4** Prevalence of Respiratory Symptoms in Cement Workers

Cement dust exposure	Smoking history	Prevalence of respiratory symptoms (%)	Ratio
–	–	1.6	1
–	+	3.3	2
+	–	9.0	5.6
+	+	11.7	7.3

Source: From Lu and Gu (1989).

### Plastics

There are many types of plastics. They are polymerized monomers, with molecular weights generally in the range of 10,000 to 1,000,000 Da, hence are inert and nontoxic. However, some monomers are toxic. For example, vinyl chloride was reported to induce hepatic malignant tumors (angiosarcomas) amongst exposed workers (Creech and Johnson, 1974). Vinyl chloride may also produce cancer in the lung, skin, and lymphatic and hematopoietic tissues (WHO, 1999). Acrylamide, unlike other monomers, is readily absorbed through the skin and may induce peripheral neurotoxicity. After absorption it releases cyanide and induces CNS toxicity (Drew, 1993).

Among the additives, the catalyst benzoyl peroxide was found to promote the cancer on mouse skin initiated by genotoxic carcinogen (Slaga et al., 1981). Phthalates, used as plasticizers, produce proliferation of peroxisomes, thereby acting as nongenotoxic carcinogens (Rao and Reddy, 1987).

Toluene diisocyanate is used in the manufacture of flexible polyurethane foams, surface coatings, fibers, sealants, and adhesives. It is a potent irritant to the eyes, skin, and especially respiratory system, producing allergic asthma. There is an immunologic component in this syndrome with an increased immunoglobulin E (Karol et al., 1994).

## MONITORING

To ensure that the specified permissible exposure limits are complied with, both the workplace and some workers are monitored.

### Workplace Monitoring

In general, using appropriate instruments, the air is monitored for concentrations of air-borne pollutants. These include gases, vapors, dusts (total, inhalable, and respirable), fibers, liquid droplets, and smokes. For details see, for example, Gray (1993).

## Biological Monitoring

Workers exposed to the same workplace environment may not be equally affected by, or even equally exposed to, the toxicants. This is due to differences in age, gender, body build, diet, medication, disease state, etc. In addition, there are differences in work intensity and duration, temperature, humidity, coexposure to other chemicals, etc. (ACGIH, 2000). ACGIH has therefore published a number of biological exposure indices. The commonly used methods involve monitoring of the exposure to the toxicants or their biological effects.

### Effects

Inhibition of acetylcholinesterase in whole blood or plasma is a reliable, sensitive indicator of exposure to organophosphorus insecticides, such as parathion and methylparathion, and the carbamates, such as carbaryl.

Zinc protoporphyrin is a sensitive indicator of a minimal effect of lead. Carboxy-hemoglobin is an indicator of the effect of CO.

### Exposure

The levels of lead and mercury in blood are good indicators of the extent of exposure to these metals. The level of mercury in urine is also useful. As the volume of urine varies greatly from day to day and between different individuals, the level of mercury in urine is expressed in terms of  $\mu\text{g/g}$  of creatinine, since a fairly constant amount of creatinine is excreted daily. The extent of exposure to benzene and carbon disulfide is also determined in urine and expressed in terms of  $\mu\text{g/g}$  of creatinine.

Another type of monitoring measures the biochemical reaction products, such as mercapturic acids (*N*-acetyl-L-cysteine *S*-conjugates) in urine. This procedure has shown to be useful in monitoring benzene, acrolein, acrylamide, acrylonitrile, trichloroethane, etc. (DeRoos et al., 1998).

## REFERENCES

- ACGIH (2000). 2000 Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Biological Exposure Indices. Cincinnati, OH: Publications Office, American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.
- Andrews LS, Lee EW, Witmer CM, et al. (1977). Effect of toluene on metabolism, disposition, and hematopoietic toxicity of (3H) benzene. *Biochem Pharmacol* 26, 293–300.
- Andrews LS, Snyder R (1996). Toxic effects of solvents and vapors. In: Klaassen CD, ed. *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- Cole P, Hoover R, Friedell GH (1972). Occupation and cancer of the lower urinary tract. *Cancer* 29, 1250.
- Creech JL, Johnson MN (1974). Angiosarcoma of the liver in the manufacture of PVC. *J Occup Med* 16, 150–151.

- de Raat WK, Stevenson H, Hakhert BC, et al. (1997). Toxicological risk assessment of worker exposure to pesticides. Some general principles. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 25, 204–210.
- DeRooij BM, Commandeur JNM, Vermeulen NPE (1998). Mercapturic acids as biomarkers of exposure to electrophilic chemicals: Applications to environmental and industrial chemicals. *Biomarkers* 3, 239–303.
- Drew R (1993). Toxicity of plastics. In: Stacey NH, ed. *Occupational Toxicology*. London, UK and Bristol, PA: Taylor & Francis.
- Ecobichon DJ (1999). *Occupational Hazards of Pesticide Exposure*. Philadelphia, PA: Taylor & Francis.
- Fitzhugh OG, Nelson AA (1946). Comparison of the chronic toxicity of triethylene glycol with that of diethylene glycol. *J Ind Hyg Toxicol* 28, 40–43.
- Gray C (1993). Occupational hygiene-interface with toxicology. In: Stacey NT, ed. *Occupational Toxicology*. London, UK and Bristol, PA: Taylor & Francis, 269–293.
- Karol MH, Tollerud DJ, Campbell TP, et al. (1994). Predictive value of airways hyper-responsiveness and circulating IgE for identifying types of responses to tolerance diisocyanate inhalation challenge. *Am J Respir Cont Care Med* 143, 611–615.
- Krasavage WJ, O'Donoghue JL, DiVincenzo GD, et al. (1980). The relative neurotoxicity of methyl *n*-butyl ketone, *n*-hexane and their metabolites. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 52, 433–441.
- Lu PL, Gu XQ (1989). New challenges for occupational health services facing economic reform in China. *Biomed Environ Sci* 2, 17–23.
- Meek ME, Beauchamp R, Long G, et al. (2002). Chloroform: Exposure estimation, hazard characterization and exposure–response analysis. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 5, 283–334.
- Meyer KH (1937). Contributions to the theory of narcosis. *Faraday Soc Transl* 33, 1062–1064.
- Pruett SB, Myers LP, Keil DE (2001). Toxicology of metam sodium. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 4, 207–222.
- Rao MS, Reddy JK (1987). Peroxisome proliferators and cancer: Mechanisms and implications. *Carcinogenesis* 8, 631–636.
- Reid WD, Krishna G (1973). Centrolobular hepatic necrosis related to covalent binding of metabolites of halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons. *Exp Med Pathol* 18, 80–99.
- Slaga TW, Klein-Szanto AJP, Triplett LL, et al. (1981). Skin promoting activity of benzoyl peroxide, a widely used free radical generating compound. *Science* 213, 1023–1025.
- Snyder R (2000). Overview of the toxicology of benzene. *J Toxicol Environ Health A* 61, 339–346.
- Vallyathan V, Green F, Ducatman B, et al. (1998). Roles of epidemiology, pathology, molecular biology and biomarkers in the investigation of occupational lung cancer. *J Toxicol Environ Health B* 1, 91–116.
- WHO (1984). Methylene chloride. *Environ Health Criteria* 32. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1999). Vinyl chloride. *Environ Health Criteria* 215. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (2000). Human exposure assessment. *Environ Health Criteria* 214. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.



**Appendix 1** Acute Pesticide Toxicity, General Signs, and Symptoms in Humans

Pesticide	Symptoms and signs
<b>Insecticides</b>	
Organophosphates, carbamates	<p><i>Mild:</i> Headache, dizziness, perspiration, lacrimation, salivation, blurred vision, tightness in chest, twitching of muscles in eyelids, lips, tongue, face.</p> <p><i>Moderate:</i> Abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, bronchial hypersecretions, bradycardia or tachycardia, muscle (skeletal) spasms, tremors, general weakness.</p> <p><i>Severe:</i> Pinpoint pupils, profuse sweating, urinary and/or fecal incontinence, mental confusion, pulmonary edema, respiratory difficulty, cyanosis, progressive cardiac and respiratory failure, unconsciousness leading to coma.</p>
Organochlorines	<p><i>Mild:</i> Systemically, toxic action is confined to the central nervous system with stimulation resulting in dizziness, nausea, vomiting, headache, disorientation.</p> <p><i>Moderate to severe:</i> Hyperexcitability, apprehension, weakness of skeletal muscles, incoordination, tremors, seizures, coma, and respiratory failure (progressive clinical findings related to severity of poisoning).</p>
Pyrethroids	<p>Generally of low toxicity but can cause irritation of oral and nasal mucosa. Some agents cause dermal tingling, stinging, or burning sensation followed by numbness (paresthesia). Facial contamination results in lacrimation, pain, photophobia, congestion, and edema of eyelids and conjunctiva.</p> <p>Ingestion of large amounts may cause salivation, epigastric pain, nausea, vomiting, headache, dizziness, fatigue, coarse muscular twitching in limbs, convulsive seizures, loss of consciousness.</p>
<b>Herbicides</b>	
Bipyridyls	<p>Irritation of nose and throat, hemorrhage, eye irritation with conjunctivitis and corneal stripping, skin irritation, dermatitis.</p> <p>Ingestion results in initial signs of ulceration of tongue, throat, and esophagus; sternal and abdominal pain; general muscular pain; vomiting; and diarrhea. After 48–72 hr, signs of renal and hepatic damage (oliguria, jaundice), respiratory difficulty (cough, dyspnea, tachypnea, pulmonary edema), and progressive respiratory failure.</p>
Phenoxyacids	<p>Generally of low toxicity but, during handling, may cause irritation of eye, nose, throat, and skin. Ingestion may cause gastroenteritis, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea. Respiratory symptoms include burning sensation, cough, chest pain. Muscle weakness and muscle twitching may be encountered, and central nervous system signs include dizziness, weakness, anorexia, and lethargy.</p>

**Appendix 1** (Continued)

Pesticide	Symptoms and signs
Ureas	
Triazines	
Chloroaliphatics	
Arylcarbamates	
Fungicides	
Dithiocarbamates	Generally of low toxicity but local contamination of skin may cause itching, rash, and dermatitis. Ingestion of large amounts may cause nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and muscle weakness. The dithiocarbomates exert a disulfiram-like effect in the presence of alcohol, causing flushing, sweating, dyspnea, hyperpnea, chest pains, hypotension.
Phenolics	
Chlorobenzenes	
Benzimidazoles	
Thiophanates	
Rodenticides	
Fluorinated agents	Accidental rodenticide poisoning is difficult to achieve because agents are packaged as baits attractive only to the pest. When ingested, these agents may cause nausea, vomiting, intestinal cramps, diarrhea, excitation, abnormal cardiac rhythms, muscle spasms, seizures. The anticoagulants require laboratory assessment of coagulation status and treatment with vitamin K <sub>1</sub> .
Zinc phosphide	
Strychnine	
α-Naphthylthiourea	
Anticoagulants	

Source: From Ecobichon (1999).

## Toxicologic Evaluation

### CONTENTS

Introduction	360
Importance and Reasonableness	360
Historical Development	360
Major Approaches	361
Acceptable Daily Intake (ADI/RfD)/Safety Assessment	362
Definition and Usage	362
Procedures for Estimating ADIs	363
Collection of Adequate Relevant Data	363
No-Observed-Adverse-Effect Level (NOAEL)	363
Safety Factors	364
Assessment of Exposure Acceptability	365
Margin of Safety	365
Mathematical Models/Risk Assessment	365
Estimation of Risks	365
Definition	365
Risks Levels and Virtual Safety	366
Commonplace Activities and Their Risks	366
Models for Estimating Risk/VSD	367
Probability Models	367
Mechanistic Models	367
Other Variation	369
Risk Assessment	369
Other Procedures	370
Noncarcinogenic Chemicals	370
Carcinogenic Chemicals	370
Chemicals with Questionable Data	370
Secondary and Nongenotoxic Carcinogens	371

International Activities in Toxicological Evaluation	371
Chemicals in Food	371
Other Chemicals	371
References	373
Further Reading	375

## INTRODUCTION

### Importance and Reasonableness

Descriptions in prior chapters make it abundantly clear that chemicals differ greatly in the nature and potency of their toxicity. Because human exposure to chemicals is not always avoidable (it may even be desirable in certain cases), toxicological evaluation of many chemicals must be carried out to determine the level of exposure (or intake in the case of food and water) under which no risk is likely to occur. A comprehensive review by Paustenbach (2000) covers risk assessment. Because of the gaps in our knowledge, it is prudent to be conservative in assessing the safety/risk. But when undue caution is incorporated into the process, the public may be denied chemicals of great value and society may be burdened with unnecessary economic costs, such as pollution prevention measures and environmental cleanup. Therefore the most important function of toxicology is to establish the scientific basis for regulating the use (and disposal) of chemicals without undue human health hazards or undue cost.

### Historical Development

Around the turn of the century, industrialization and urbanization prompted people to move from their farms to cities. Away from the farm, they had to consume stored and processed food. Food adulteration became a serious problem. In the United States, the first U.S. Food and Drug Act was enacted in 1906. Similar action was taken in several other countries. At that time, health hazards were based essentially on *qualitative* assessment; the mere presence of a toxic substance in food was considered adulteration, and “adulterated” food was banned outright.

To permit judicious use of food additives, Lehman and Fitzhugh of the U.S. FDA initiated in 1954 *quantitative* assessment by the use of a “100-fold margin of safety” approach. This assessment of food additives stipulated that “the chemical additive should not occur in the total human diet in a quantity greater than 1/100 of the amount that is the maximum safe dosage in long-term animal experiments” (Lehman and Fitzhugh, 1954).

Although this margin of 100 seemed reasonable for food additives, it could not be applied to other chemicals, such as contaminants and pesticide residues, whose levels in food are not readily controllable. Furthermore, it would be impracticable on an international level: there would be marked differences among nations, both in dietary pattern and technological usage. The Joint FAO/WHO Expert

Committee on Food Additives therefore coined, in 1961, the term *acceptable daily intake* (ADI). Later that year, this term was adopted by the Joint FAO/WHO Meeting on Pesticide Residues.

In 1977, the U.S. National Research Council (NRC) extended the concept to the assessment of contaminants in water, and EPA extended it to pollutants in air, with slight variation in the terminology.

In carcinogenic chemicals the Delaney Amendment of 1958 to the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act stipulates that any chemical that has been shown to be carcinogenic in man or animal shall not be used as a food additive. For other chemicals such as veterinary drugs, the concept of “negligible residues” was introduced to regulate carcinogenic chemicals. As will be seen in subsequent sections, these measures were no panacea. Mathematical models were then devised to estimate doses that could be considered as “virtually safe” (Mantel and Bryan, 1961).

NRC (1983) divided the management of risk assessment into the following steps:

1. *Hazard identification*, scrutinizing all relevant toxicological and related data to identify the hazard associated with a chemical.
2. *Dose–response assessment*, determining the relationship between the magnitude of the exposure and the probability of health effects.
3. *Exposure assessment*, determining the extent of human exposure.
4. *Risk characterization*, estimating the nature and magnitude of human risk, and the uncertainty of the estimate.

## MAJOR APPROACHES

At high enough doses, all chemicals exhibit toxic effects. As the dose is reduced, the severity of the effects as well as the responses diminishes. For a majority of the chemicals, there are threshold doses below which they will not elicit adverse effects. There are a variety of reasons for the thresholds. The chemical in question may not reach the site of action because of its limited absorption and distribution or its prompt elimination. Metabolic detoxication often plays an important role. Furthermore, repair and regeneration of affected cells and excess functional capacity may overcome/compensate any minor, temporary effects.

The “safety” of such chemicals can be estimated by using the “acceptable daily intake” approach, which involves identification of the most sensitive, yet *appropriate*, indicator of adverse effect and the application of a suitable safety factor to the no-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL) to compensate for potential differences between animals and humans, and between the relatively small number of test subjects and the large human population which are more heterogeneous.

Genotoxic carcinogens, on the other hand, probably have no threshold doses. The rationale is that a cancer cell can be induced by a single change in the cellular genetic material, and the cancer cell has the capacity of self-replicating. Therefore, theoretically, a single molecule of such a chemical can induce a cancer. In the

absence of threshold doses, it would be impossible to identify a no-adverse-effect level, thus rendering the ADI approach impracticable. Mathematical models have been designed to estimate, from the dose–response relationship and a variety of assumptions, a “virtually safe dose,” exposure to which would result in an extremely small risk, say  $10^{-6}$  (one risk in a million).

## ACCEPTABLE DAILY INTAKE (ADI/RfD)/SAFETY ASSESSMENT

### Definition and Usage

As has already been noted, the term ADI was coined by the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives in 1961 (WHO, 1962a). It has been adopted by the Joint FAO/WHO Meeting of Experts on Pesticide Residues (WHO, 1962b). This term has been used at all subsequent meetings of these two international expert bodies in their toxicologic evaluation, and reevaluation, of large numbers of food additives and pesticides that leave residues in food. The term has also been adopted by a number of other bodies in the toxicological evaluation of chemicals in food, water, etc., as a basis for setting standards, for example, U.S. EPA (Cotruvos, 1988).

ADI is defined as “the daily intake of a chemical which, during an entire lifetime, appears to be without appreciable risk on the basis of all the known facts at the time.” It is expressed in milligrams of the chemical per kilogram of body weight (mg/kg). It is worth noting that the ADI is qualified by the expressions “appear to be” and “on the basis of all the known facts at the time.” This caution is in keeping with the fact that it is impossible to be absolutely certain about the safety of a chemical and that the ADI may be altered in the light of new toxicologic data.

Toxicologic evaluations of food additives and pesticides, in terms of ADIs by these international expert bodies, have been used by the regulatory agencies in many countries as an important consideration in the formulation of national regulations. ADIs have also been used collectively by national authorities in the framework of the Codex Alimentarius Commission. The Commission is an inter-governmental body with more than 150 countries as members. Its principal function is to elaborate international food standards for the protection of the health of the consumer and to facilitate international food trade. These food standards contain provisions for food additives that are accepted by the Commission only when ADIs have been allocated by the Expert Committee on Food Additives. The latter goal is achieved through the removal of “noneconomic” trade barriers based on unjustified claims of health hazards alleged to be associated with certain additives or pesticides. Additional details about the Codex Alimentarius Commission are given in an article by Lu (1988). The close relationship between the Commission, member governments, academia, and industry are shown in Figure 3.

There are a number of variations of the terminology. For instance, in dealing with food contaminants, the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives in 1972 coined the term “provisional tolerable weekly intake.” The procedure used

in arriving at such intakes is identical to that for ADIs. The Committee, however, felt that, unlike food additives, which serve certain useful purposes, contaminants do not. Therefore they are not acceptable but merely “tolerable.” Furthermore, the intakes were expressed in terms of “weekly” because the contaminants dealt then (mercury, lead, and cadmium) were cumulative, and vary (especially mercury) in the *daily* intake, but less so on a *weekly* basis.

Another variation is used by U.S. EPA, which assesses “Reference Doses” (RfD) instead of ADIs, by using essentially the same procedure, except that the safety factor is called “uncertainty factor.” It might be noted that the term ADI is widely used on an international level as well as by regulatory agencies in many nations, including U.S. FDA.

### Procedures for Estimating ADIs

The following steps are involved in estimating ADIs:

#### Collection of Adequate Relevant Data

As noted in previous chapters, chemicals possess different toxicity. Consequently, a great variety of toxicity studies must be done (see Chap. 19). Furthermore, pharmacokinetic studies facilitate the assessment of the effects on humans from findings obtained in experimental animals. In addition, the data must be obtained from *relevant* studies. For example, findings of epithelial hyperplasia in the forestomach of rats given an irritant fumigant by gavage have little, if any, bearing on the possible adverse effects on humans consuming food that has been fumigated by the fumigant (see Lu and Coulston, 1996).

The assessment of certain chemicals required less data for establishing their ADIs. Examples are food additives obtained from edible animals, plants, and microbes. The extent of testing and the reasons thereof have been described by WHO (1987).

#### No-Observed-Adverse-Effect Level (NOAEL)

This is the maximum dose level that has not induced any sign of toxicity (adverse effect) in the most susceptible but appropriate species of animals tested, and using the most sensitive indicator of toxicity. As a rule, this level is selected from a long-term study. However, certain signs of toxicity, such as cataract, delayed neurotoxicity, and effects on reproduction, are demonstrable in short-term studies. The NOAEL is not necessarily an absolutely no-effect level; rather it is a “no-observed-adverse-effect-level,” because the use of a more sensitive indicator of toxicity or a more susceptible animal species may reveal a lower NOAEL. Hence these chemicals are re-assessed whenever significant new toxicologic data become available. In addition, an effect might well be demonstrable if a sufficiently large number of animals were used in the tests. However, using experimental data and mathematical extrapolation, Lu (1985) and Lu and Seilken (1991) showed that increasing the number of animals would only reduce the NOAEL slightly. It

should also be noted that part of the safety factor is intended to compensate for the limited number used in most tests.

On the other hand, certain effects are generally considered as physiologic, adaptive, or otherwise "nontoxic." These effects are therefore excluded in establishing the NOAEL. For example, liver enlargement may result from stimulation in the activity of hepatic mixed-function oxidases and the *de novo* protein synthesis in the smooth endoplasmic reticulum. A decrease of body weight may follow reduced food consumption, which in turn may be a result of unpalatability of the chemical. Feeding large amounts of inert substances such as mannitol and cellulose derivatives may cause diarrhea and malnutrition. However, before disregarding these effects in evaluating the toxicity of a chemical, care must be taken to ensure that these are not manifestations of toxicity. Additional studies may have to be done to elucidate the nature of the effect. These various points have been elaborated in several WHO reports and summarized in a review article (Lu, 1988).

### Safety Factors

To extrapolate from the NOAEL in animals to an acceptable intake in humans, a safety factor of 100, originally proposed by Lehman and Fitzhugh (1954), is generally used. This factor is intended to allow for differences in sensitivity of the animal species and humans, to allow for wide variations in susceptibility among the human population, and to allow for the fact that the number of animals tested is small compared to the size of the human population that may be exposed (WHO, 1958, 1974a; Food Safety Council, 1973).

Although the factor 100 is often used, the WHO expert committees have used figures that ranged from 10 to 2000. The size of the safety factor is determined according to the nature of the toxicity. In addition, a larger figure is used to compensate for slight deficiencies in toxicity data, such as relatively small numbers of animals on test. On the other hand, minimal, reversible, and inconsequential effects such as slight inhibition of acetylcholinesterase by an organophosphorus pesticide may justify the use of a smaller safety factor. In addition, available human data may warrant the use of a smaller figure, for example, 10, since they obviate the need for interspecies extrapolation.

Biochemical data relating to the absorption, distribution, and excretion of the toxicant and its biotransformation (detoxication and bioactivation) in various species of animals and in humans are often useful in determining the size of the safety factor. These and other bases for altering the safety factor are elaborated in two WHO documents (WHO, 1987, 1990). The reasons for the use of different safety factors by WHO in the evaluation/re-evaluation of the 230 pesticides in the past three decades are noted and explained in a recent review (Lu, 1995).

Some toxicologists prefer the use of individual uncertainty (safety) factors in extrapolating from a NOAEL to the corresponding reference dose (RfD). These usually include a factor of 10 for intraspecies differences, a 10 for interspecies differences, a 10 for NOAEL derived from short-term toxicity studies, etc. (Dourson and Stara, 1983).



### Assessment of Exposure Acceptability

The ADI is used as a yardstick to check the acceptability of the proposed uses. This is done by comparing the ADI with the “potential daily intake” (PDI). PDI is the sum of the products of the amounts of the food (calculated on the basis of the average per capita consumption) and the permitted use levels of the additives in them.

$$\text{PDI} = (F_1 \times L_1) + (F_2 \times L_2) + (F_3 \times L_3) \dots$$

where  $F_1, F_2, F_3, \dots$  are per capita consumption of food commodities and  $L_1, L_2, L_3, \dots$  are use levels of food additives or maximum residue levels of pesticide residues or other contaminants.

If the PDI exceeds the ADI, the use levels may be lowered or some of the uses may be deleted. The Commission follows the same procedure in accepting the maximum limits for pesticide residues in food. The use of the “PDI” and other estimated intakes by WHO in assessing the acceptability of food additives and pesticides is provided in some detail in a WHO document (1989), and summarized by Lu and Seilken (1991).

#### Margin of Safety

The ADI approach is not designed to provide quantitative information on the risks involved at intakes higher than the ADI. This is because of the wide “gray area” between the NOAEL and the ADI. However, the margin of safety between the estimated intake and the ADI is sometimes used to indicate the degree of confidence in the safety at a specified intake.

### MATHEMATICAL MODELS/RISK ASSESSMENT

As discussed in Chapter 7, there are genotoxic and nongenotoxic carcinogens. It is generally agreed that there are probably no thresholds for genotoxic carcinogens. In view of the theoretical absence of threshold doses and in the absence of a reliable procedure to determine a threshold for a carcinogen for an entire population, estimating the levels of risk has been considered to be more appropriate.

### Estimation of Risks

#### Definition

Risk has been defined as the expected frequency of undesirable effects arising from exposure to a pollutant. It may be expressed in absolute terms as the risk due to exposure to a specific pollutant. It may also be expressed as a relative risk, which is the ratio of the risk among the exposed population to that among the unexposed (WHO, 1978).

The term was first adopted by the International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP, 1966) in evaluating the health hazards related to ionizing

radiation. The use of this term stems from the realization that often a clear-cut “safe” or “unsafe” decision cannot be made.

### Risks Levels and Virtual Safety

Estimation of risks involves development of suitable dose–response data and extrapolation from the observed dose–response relationship to the expected responses at doses occurring at actual exposure situations. A number of mathematical models have been proposed for this purpose. Such models are also used to estimate the dose that is expected to be associated with a specific level of risk.

Mantel and Bryan (1961) first introduced the concept of virtual safety. The term was defined as a probability of carcinogenicity of less than 1/100 million ( $10^{-8}$ ) at a statistical assurance level of 99%. The U.S. FDA, however, found that the doses associated with such a low risk level were too small to be enforceable in most actual situations and thus adopted a risk level of  $10^{-6}$  (FDA, 1977). These levels of risk are so low that the doses associated with them are referred to as virtually safe doses (VSD).

### Commonplace Activities and Their Risks

In order to place the risk levels in perspective, risks associated with certain commonplace activities and natural occurrences are sometimes cited. Table 1 includes a number of estimates of such risks. The risks in Table 1, apart from lightning, are considerably greater than  $10^{-6}$ . Estimates of risks associated with other common activities and occupations have been compiled by others, for example, Wilson (1980)

The acceptability of a risk depends on, apart from its magnitude, the nature of the activity. In general, risks associated with voluntary, pleasurable, and/or beneficial activities, such as smoking and driving, are more acceptable to the individual. On the other hand, risks associated with activities that are perceived as

**Table 1** Estimated Risks for Certain Activities and Natural Occurrences

Activity	Risk <sup>a</sup>
Smoking (10 cigarettes/day)	1/400
All accidents	1/2000
Driving (16000 km/yr)	1/5000
All traffic accidents	1/8000
Work in industry	1/30,000
Natural disasters	1/50,000
Being struck by lightning	1/1,000,000

<sup>a</sup>Risk is expressed as probability of death of an individual for a year of exposure and is given in round figures.

Source: From Royal Commission on the Environment (1976). By permission of the Controller of Her Majesty’s Stationery Office, London.

having no benefit and those that are not controllable by the individual tend to be rejected, such as food colors suspected of being carcinogenic.

### Models for Estimating Risk/VSD

A number of mathematical models have been developed for the purpose of estimating risk. In general, they involve extrapolating from the observed dose response to either of the following:

1. The risks at a specific exposure level.
2. The “risk specified dose” (RSD) is the dose associated with a specified risk. When the specified risk is low enough, for example,  $10^{-5}$  or  $10^{-6}$ , the dose associated with it is generally known as the VSD.

#### Probability Models

As noted above, Mantel and Bryan (1961) first introduced the concept of virtual safety, and developed a model based on the assumption that the responses (tumor formation) will be the same as most other quantal (all-or-none) toxicologic responses, namely, normally distributed among the subjects.

This S-shaped dose–response curve can be straightened, as described in Chapter 6, by plotting the points on a *probit* basis. Variations of this probit model include *logit* and *Weibull*. These are also known as “tolerance models,” as they are based on the probability of individuals in a population whose tolerances to the carcinogen will be exceeded.

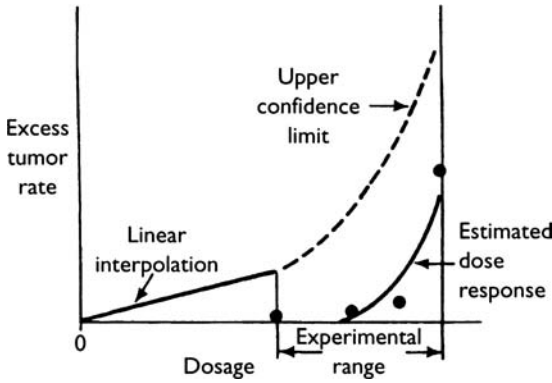
#### Mechanistic Models

Several other models have been designed based on presumed mechanisms of action of carcinogenesis. The *one-hit* model assumes that a critical hit in a cell by a carcinogen may induce a cancer through initiation, promotion, and progression. On the other hand, the *multihit* model assumes that several hits are required for a response to occur. The *multistage* model is built on the assumption that the induction of a carcinogenic response follows random biological events, the time rate of occurrence of each event being in linear proportion to the dose rate.

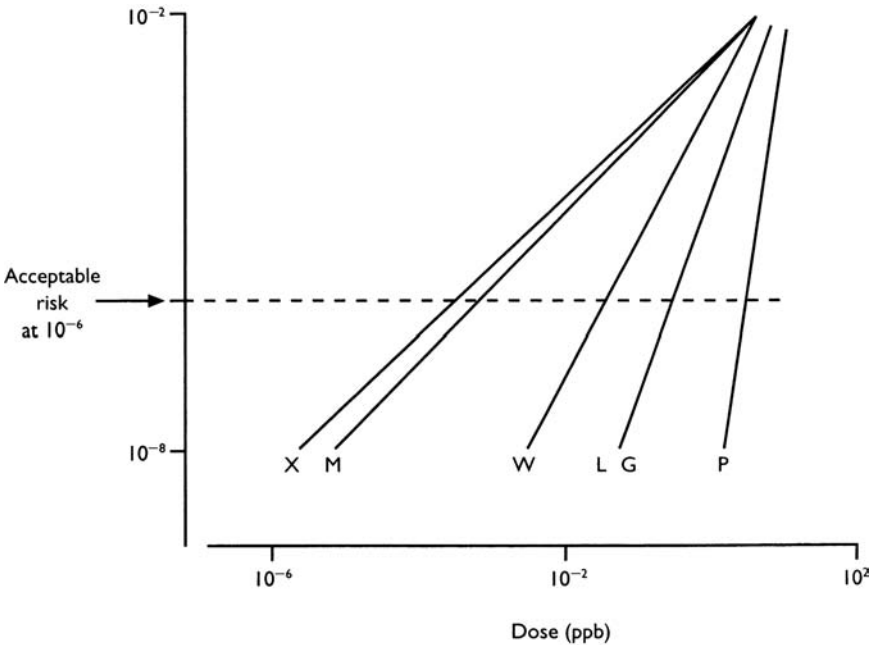
The conservativeness of these models is achieved through the use of upper confidence limits to responses on the risk estimated, shallow slopes, or the lower confidence limits on the VSD estimated. Figure 1 shows the observed responses, the upper confidence limit, and the linear interpolation.

Several U.S. regulatory agencies, including EPA (1986), use the linearized multistage model (Anderson, 1986). With this model, it is presumed that no threshold dose exists, a multistage process is involved in chemical carcinogenesis, and the time rate of occurrence of each event is linearly proportional to the dose.

Based on a set of aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> carcinogenesis data, low-dose extrapolation was done with various models. The marked difference among them is clearly visible in Figure 2. The one-hit and multistage models yielded the most conservative



**Figure 1** Linear extrapolation showing the observed responses, the upper confidence limit of the response at the lowest experimental dose, and the linear interpolation. *Source:* From Gaylor and Kodell (1980).



**Figure 2** The low dose–response relationships based on a set of aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> data, using different models: X, one-hit; M, multistage; W, Weibull; L, logit; G, multihit; and P, probit model. *Source:* From Krewski and Van Ryzin (1981).

estimates, whereas the probit model yields the least conservative figure. According to the calculations of the Food Safety Council (1980), the VSDs at a risk of  $10^{-6}$  are  $3.4 \times 10^{-5}$  ppb (one-hit),  $7.9 \times 10^{-4}$  (multistage),  $4.0 \times 10^{-2}$  (Weibull), 0.28 (multihit), and 2.5 (probit), respectively.

In addition, *physiologically based pharmacokinetic* (PB-PK) modeling has been developed to utilize toxicokinetic differences between the test animals and humans. For example, the target concentration of dichloromethane was about 150-fold higher in mice than in humans; these data provided a much lower, probably more realistic estimate of the risk of this toxicant (Andersen et al., 1987). For additional examples, see Andersen and Krishnan (1994), and Dallas et al. (1995). A modified version, the *biologically based pharmacodynamic* model, also incorporates data on the interaction of the toxicant with tissues and the response of the tissues (Conolly and Andersen, 1991). Although such modeling has certain advantages, it involves complex mathematical equations, and the fact that the physiological parameters regarding various species and strains, disease states, and the like are often ill defined.

#### Other Variation

The *time-to-response*, instead of the response itself, has also been proposed for the use in the mathematical models (Chand and Hoel, 1974; Sielken, 1981). The importance of this approach has been pointed out by the SOT ED<sub>01</sub> Task Force (1981). *Background responses*, that is, those occurring also among the unexposed, are often observed. They can also be incorporated into mathematical models (Hoel, 1980).

The response of an organism to a toxicant is related to the dose and the duration of exposure. It is also affected by *competing risks*. Kalbfleisch et al. (1983) proposed mathematical models that will take these three factors into account.

Since many carcinogens require bioactivation, the importance of incorporating *metabolic data* in evaluating their risks is obvious. For example, vinyl chloride is carcinogenic after bioactivation. Gehring et al. (1978) showed that the tumor incidence in rats exposed to various concentrations of this chemical was proportional to the metabolized amount rather than the exposure concentration (Table 2).

#### Risk Assessment

Risk assessment is done by estimating the risk associated with a toxicant at an ascertained level of exposure, using an appropriate mathematical model described above. Where the risk level is low, for example,  $10^{-6}$  or lower, the exposure might be considered acceptable. However, where the risk is higher, various *risk management* decisions may have to be taken. The options consist of lowering the exposure level, shortening the exposure duration, suspending the manufacture/use of chemical, and others.

**Table 2** Correlation Between Exposure Concentration of Vinyl Chloride (VC), Metabolism, and Induction of Hepatic Angiosarcoma in Rats

Exposure concentration (ppm of VC)	µg of VC/L of air	µg of VC metabolized	Percentage liver angiosarcoma
50	128	739	2
250	640	2435	7
500	1280	3413	12
2500	6400	5030	22
6000	15,360	5003	22
10,000	25,600	5521	15

Source: From Gehring et al. (1978).

## OTHER PROCEDURES

### Noncarcinogenic Chemicals

Not all chemicals require the whole gamut of toxicologic testing as described for estimating ADIs. For example, for chemicals to which humans are not likely to be exposed to an appreciable extent, such as indirect food additives and certain pesticides, a *toxicologically insignificant amount* may be estimated on the basis of toxicologic data that include at least 90-day feeding studies in two species of mammals, and by the use of a larger safety factor (generally 1000) (NAS, 1965). Variations of this principle have been adopted by U.S. FDA and EPA administratively.

Furthermore, a *decision to reject a chemical* may be made on much more limited data, especially in the course of developing new chemicals. Such data include extreme acute toxicity, positive response in short-term mutagenesis tests, or undesirable features in biochemical studies or short-term feeding studies in animals.

As discussed in the next section, most, if not all nongenotoxic carcinogens are assessed by the ADI approach.

### Carcinogenic Chemicals

#### Chemicals with Questionable Data

The Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives at its second meeting (WHO, 1958) recommended that "no proved carcinogen should be considered suitable for use as a food additive in any amount." This principle has been followed at subsequent meetings of the Committee and at the Joint FAO/WHO Meetings on Pesticide Residues in not allocating ADIs to proved carcinogens. *Temporary or conditional ADIs*, however, have been estimated for chemicals with equivocal carcinogenicity data, such as nitrites and amitrole. On the other hand, *discontinuation* of the use of chemicals without essential functions has been recommended. The basis for the decisions on these and other such chemicals has been reviewed

and summarized (Lu, 1979). The principle of considering both the soundness of the carcinogenesis data and the usefulness of the chemical is consistent with the policies of many national regulatory agencies (e.g., Somers, 1986).

### Secondary and Nongenotoxic Carcinogens

The concept of *secondary carcinogens*, which induce tumors only after certain noncarcinogenic effects, has been accepted by many toxicologists. For example, a WHO scientific group (WHO, 1974b) pointed out that the urinary bladder cancers in rats treated with Myrj 45 (polyoxyethylene monostearate) were caused by the bladder calculi rather than by the chemical directly and that a NOEL can therefore be established. A variety of other types of nongenotoxic carcinogens have been discussed in Chapter 7. Many investigators (e.g., Reitz et al., 1990) have suggested that the predominant mechanism whereby a chemical elicits a carcinogenic response should be considered in extrapolating laboratory data to humans.

## INTERNATIONAL ACTIVITIES IN TOXICOLOGICAL EVALUATION

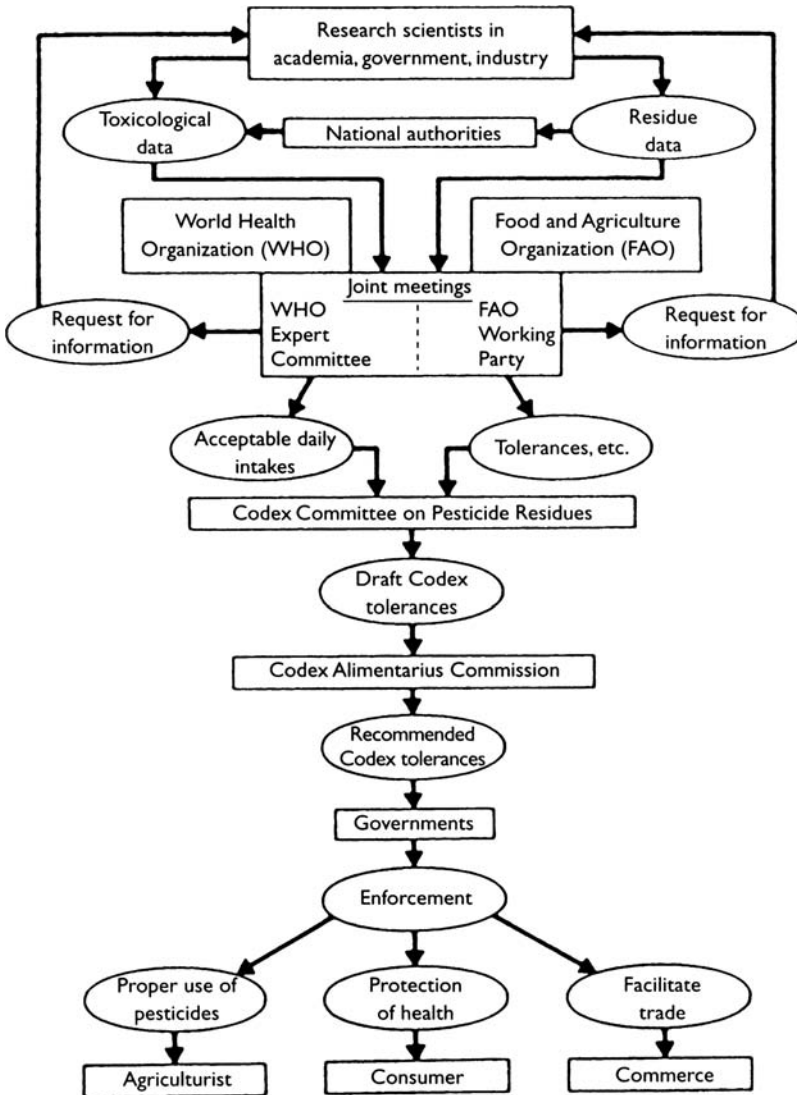
### Chemicals in Food

As noted in Chapter 19, the World Health Organization (WHO) and the Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations (FAO) have jointly established the Joint FAO/WHO Expert on Food Additives and Contaminants (JECFA) and the Joint FAO/WHO Meeting on Pesticide Residues (JMPR). JECFA deals with food additives, contaminants, and residues of veterinary drugs, and JMPR deals with residues of pesticides.

The principles of evaluation followed by these two expert bodies, culminating in the assessment of ADIs, are described in details in two WHO documents (WHO, 1987, 1990). An outline of the principles, along with the historical background of these expert bodies, is provided in an article by Lu (1988). In this article, Lu emphasized two factors contributing to the wide acceptance of the ADIs assessed by JECFA and JMPR. First, there exists a close collaboration between these expert bodies and the research scientists in academia, government, and industry. Second, the ADIs assessed by these expert bodies are used as a basis in the elaboration of international food standards, the Codex Alimentarius. Figure 3 depicts the relationship between JMPR and research scientists and that between JMPR and the Codex Alimentarius Commission. Similar relationships exist for JECFA. Copies of the Codex Alimentarius and the Procedural Manual of the Codex Alimentarius Commission are available from FAO, Rome, Italy.

### Other Chemicals

WHO, in conjunction with UNEP (United Nations Environment Program), and ILO (International Labor Organization) have compiled, evaluated, and published more than 200 documents in the "Environmental Health Criteria" series. In general, they deal with subjects such as identity, sources of human exposure, environmental



Relationship between the various organizations concerned with the evaluation and control of pesticide residues

**Figure 3** The elaborate procedure involved in the allocation of ADIs and tolerances (maximum residue levels) of pesticides (or other food chemicals) by the expert committee as well as the inputs from worldwide research scientists are depicted in the upper part of the diagram. The lower part outlines the role of the governments of member states of the intergovernmental organization, the Codex Alimentarius Commission, as well as their impact on the consumer and others. A similar arrangement exists for the handling of food additives and contaminants. *Source:* From Lu (1988).



transport, environmental levels, and human exposure, kinetics, and metabolism in animals and humans, effects on laboratory animals and in vitro systems, effects on humans, and evaluation of human health risks. These topics are critical reviews and summaries of the literature, and citations of references. These documents are thus a good source of toxicological and related topics on environmental and occupational toxicants.

As air, water, and soil are not traded internationally, definitive toxicological assessments are, in general, not included in these documents.

## REFERENCES

- Andersen ME, Clewell HJ, Gargas ML, et al. (1987). Physiologically based pharmacokinetics and risk assessment process for methylene chloride. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 87, 185–205.
- Andersen ME, Krishnan K (1994). Physiologically based pharmacokinetics and cancer risk assessment. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(suppl. 1), 103–108.
- Anderson P (1986). Ninth Symposium on Statistics and the Environment. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.
- Chand N, Hoel W (1974). A comparison of models for determining safe levels of environmental agents. In: Proschan F, Serfling RJ, eds. *Reliability and Biometry*. Philadelphia, PA: SIAM, 681.
- Conolly RB, Andersen ME (1991). Biologically based pharmacodynamic models: Tools for toxicological research and risk assessment. *Ann Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 31, 503–523.
- Cotruvos JA (1988). Drinking water standards and risk assessment. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 8, 288–299.
- Dallas CE, Chen XM, Muraledhara S, et al. (1995). Physiologically based pharmacokinetic model useful in prediction of the influence of species, dose, and exposure route on perchloroethylene pharmacokinetics. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 44, 301–317.
- Dourson ML, Stara JF (1983). Regulatory history and experimental support of uncertainty (safety) factors. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 3, 224–238.
- FDA (1977). Chemical compounds in food-producing animals: Criteria and procedures for evaluating assays for carcinogenic residues in edible products of animals. *Fed Regul* 42(35), 10412–10437.
- EPA (1986). Guides for carcinogenic risk assessment. *Fed Regul* 51, 33992–34003.
- Food Safety Council (1973). Proposed system for food safety assessment. *Food Cosmet Toxicol* 16, 1–136.
- Food Safety Council (1980). Proposed system for food safety assessment. *Food Cosmet Toxicol* 16(suppl. 2).
- Gaylor DW, Kodell RL (1980). Linear interpolation algorithm for low dose risk assessment of toxic substances. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol* 4, 305–312.
- Gehring PJ, Watanabe PC, Park CN (1978). Resolution of dose–response toxicity for chemicals requiring metabolic activation: Example vinyl chloride. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 44, 581–591.
- Hoel DG (1980). Incorporation of background in dose–response models. *Fed Proc* 39, 73–75.
- ICRP (1966). Recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological Protection. ICRP Publication No. 9. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

- Kalbfleisch JD, Krewski D, van Ryzin J (1983). Dose–response models for time to response toxicity data. *Can J Stat* 11, 25–49.
- Krewski D, Van Ryzin J (1981). Dose–response models for quantal response toxicity data. In: Csorgo M, Dawson D, Rao JNK, Shilah E, eds. *Statistical and Related Topics*. New York, NY: Elsevier/North Holland.
- Lehman AJ, Fitzhugh OG (1954). 100-Fold margin of safety. *Q Bull Assoc Food Drug Officials U.S.* 33–35.
- Lu FC (1979). The safety of food additives. The dynamics of the issue. In: Deichman WB, ed. *Toxicology and Occupational Medicine*. New York, NY: Elsevier/North-Holland.
- Lu FC (1985). Safety assessment of chemicals with thresholded effects. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 5, 460–464.
- Lu FC (1988). Acceptable daily intakes: Inception, evolution and application. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 8, 45–60.
- Lu FC (1995). A review of the acceptable daily intakes of pesticides assessed by WHO. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 21, 352–364.
- Lu FC, Coulston F (1996). A safety assessment based on irrelevant data. *Ecotoxicol Environ Saf* 33, 100–101.
- Lu FC, Seilken RL (1991). Assessment of safety/risk of chemicals: Inception and evolution of the ADI and dose–response modeling procedures. *Toxicol Lett* 59, 5–40.
- Mantel N, Bryan WR (1961). “Safety” testing of carcinogenic agents. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 27, 455–470.
- National Academy of Sciences (NAS) (1965). Report on “No Residue” and “Zero Tolerance.” Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.
- National Research Council (1977). *Drinking Water and Health*, vol. 1. Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences.
- National Research Council (1983). *Risk Assessment in the Federal Government: Managing the Process*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
- Paustenbach DJ (2000). The practice of exposure assessment: A state-of-the-art review. *J Toxicol Environ Health Part B* 3, 179–291.
- Reitz RH, Mendrala AL, Corley R, et al. (1990). Estimating the risk of liver cancer associated with human exposure to chloroform. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 105, 443–459.
- Sielken RL Jr (1981). Re-examination of the ED01 study: Risk assessment using time. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 1, 88–123.
- Somers E (1986). The weight of evidence: Regulatory toxicology in Canada. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 6, 391–398.
- SOT ED01 Task Force (1981). Re-examination of the ED01 Study. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 1, 26–128.
- WHO (1958). *Procedures for the Testing of Intentional Food Additives to Establish Their Safety in Use*. Second Report. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 144.
- WHO (1962a). *Evaluation of the Toxicity of a Number of Antimicrobials and Antioxidants*. Sixth Report. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 228.
- WHO (1962b). *Principles Governing Consumer Safety in Relation to Pesticide Residues*. Report of a Joint FAO/WHO Meeting on Pesticide Residues. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 240.
- WHO (1974a). *Toxicological Evaluation of Certain Food Additives with a Review of General Principles and of Specifications*. Seventeenth Report. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 539.

- WHO (1974b). Assessment of the Carcinogenicity and Mutagenicity of Chemicals. Report of a WHO Scientific Group. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 546.
- WHO (1978). Principles and Methods for Evaluating the Toxicity of Chemicals. Environmental Health Criteria 6. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1987). Principles for the Safety Assessment of Food Additives and Contaminants in Food. Environ Health Criteria No. 70.
- WHO (1989). Guidelines for Predicting Dietary Intakes of Pesticide Residues. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- WHO (1990). Principles for the Toxicological Assessment of Pesticide Residues in Food. Environ Health Criteria 104.
- Wilson R (1980). Risk-benefit analysis for toxic chemicals. *Ecotoxicol Environ Safety* 4, 370–383.

## **FURTHER READING**

- Crump KS (1984). A new method for determining allowable daily intakes. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 4, 854–871.
- Dourson ML, Lu FC (1995). Safety/risk assessment of chemicals by different groups. *Biomed Environ Sci* 8, 1–13.
- EPA (1989). Biological Data for Pharmacokinetic Modeling and Risk Assessment. EPA/600/3–90/019, Washington, D.C.
- FDA (1971). Food and Drug Administration Advisory Committee on Protocols for Safety Evaluation: Panel on Carcinogenesis report on cancer testing in the safety evaluation of food additives and pesticides. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 20, 419–438.
- Hart RW, Fishbein L (1985). Interspecies extrapolation of drug and genetic toxicity data. In: Clayson DB, Krewski D, Munro I, eds. *Toxicological Risk Assessment*, vol. I. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Munro IC (1988). Risk assessment of carcinogens: Present status and future direction. *Biomed Environ Sci* 1, 51–58.
- National Academy of Sciences (NAS) (1984). *Toxicity Testing: Strategies to Determine Needs and Priorities*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.
- Ramsey JC, Gehring PJ (1980). Application of pharmacokinetic principles in practice. *Fed Proc* 39, 60–65.
- WHO (1957). General Principles Governing the Use of Food Additives. First Report of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 129.



# Chemical Index

- Abamectin, 295  
Acetaminophen, 38  
Acetone, 113, 227  
Acetazolamide, 143  
2-Acetylaminofluorene, 40  
Acetylaminofluorene (AAF), 67, 127, 197  
Acetylate sulfanilamide, 68  
Acetylcholine (ACh), 289, 292–293  
Acetylcholinesterase (AChE), 55, 289, 292, 293, 352, 355  
    inhibitors, 74, 226  
Acetyl coenzyme A, 35  
Acetylsterases, 34  
Acetyl ethyl tetramethyl tetralin (AETT), 243  
Acetylsalicylic acid, 16  
Acetylsulfapyridine. *See* Sulfapyridine  
Acid phosphatase, 206  
Acids, 227  
Acridine, 214  
Acrylamide, 228, 241, 242, 243, 354  
Acrylamide-A, 251  
Acrylonitrile, 278, 292  
ACTH, 237  
Actinomycin, 169, 243  
Actinomycin D, 143  
Actinomycin-M, 251  
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 52, 191  
Adenylate cyclase activity, 204  
ADH, 205  
Adrenergic  $\beta$ -receptor agonists, 261, 265  
Adriamycin. *See* Doxorubicin  
AETT-M, 251  
Aflatoxins, 169, 189, 193, 197, 279, 282  
    aflatoxin B, 106  
    aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub>, 38, 71, 101, 197  
    aflatoxin-8,9-epoxide, 102, 279  
Agar, 285  
Aglycone, 39  
A<sub>h</sub> receptors, 172  
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT), 93, 193  
Alanosine-N, 251  
Albumin, 93, 204, 308  
Alcohol, 143, 240  
Alcohol dehydrogenase, 40  
Alcohol-N, T, 251  
Aldehyde dehydrogenase, 40  
Aldicarb, 290, 302  
Aldrin, 282, 302, 352, 353  
Algae, 341, 342  
Alginic acid, 285  
Aliphatic nitriles, 39  
Aliphatic oxidation, 33  
Alkalies, 227  
Alkali metals, 274  
Alkaline earth metals, 274  
Alkaline phosphatase (AP), 93, 193, 206  
Alkylating agents, 232  
Alkyl epoxides, 106  
Alkyl mercury compounds, 281  
Alloxan, 227  
Allyl alcohol, 197  
Allylamine, 260  
Aluminosis, 184  
Aluminum, 181, 240, 310, 320, 321  
    abrasives, 184  
    dust, 184  
Aluminum-N, 251  
Amaranth, 21, 285  
Amine oxidation, 33  
Amino acid nitrogen, 295  
Amino acids, 19, 309  
Aminoazo dyes, 38, 104  
Aminobenzoic acid derivatives, 214, 215  
7-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 237  
Aminoglycosides, 203, 204  
 $\Delta$ -Aminolevulinic acid dehydratase, 308  
 $\Delta$ -Aminolevulinic acid hydratase (ALAD), 305, 313  
 $\Delta$ -Aminolevulinic acid synthetase (ALAS), 305, 313–315  
6-Aminonicotinamide, 144, 244  
6-Aminonicotinamide-BV, 251

- Aminotriazole. *See* Amitrole  
Amitriptyline, 197  
Amitrole, 291, 294  
Ammonia, 179, 184  
Amoxicillin, 169  
Amphotericin-B, 203, 204, 262  
Anabolic agents, 279  
Anatoxin-C, 251  
Anatoxin-S, 243  
Androgen-binding proteins (ABP), 255  
Androgens, 143  
Angiotensin, 178  
Aniline, 67  
    disposition of, 17  
    tumors, 8  
ANIT ( $\alpha$ -naphthylisocyanate), 191  
Anthracene, 214  
Anthracycline antibiotics, 262  
Anthraquinone dyes, 214  
Antibiotics, 279  
Anticaking agents, 285  
Anticholinesterases, 232  
Anticoagulants, 216, 359  
Antigen-presenting cells (APC), 167  
Antimetabolites, 57  
Antineoplastic drugs, 260  
Antipyrine, 68  
ANTU ( $\alpha$ -naphthylthiourea), 292  
Aromatic amines, 35, 106  
Aromatic carboxylic acids, 35  
Aromatic hydrocarbon toluene, 159  
Aromatic hydroxylation, 33  
Arsenate, 169  
Arsenic, 108, 179, 184, 263, 310, 316, 342, 352  
    contamination, 281  
Arsenic, 342  
Arsenic-BV, 251  
Arsenic trioxide, 169, 292  
Arthropods (jellyfish), 215  
Artificial sweeteners, 285  
Arylacetic acids, 35  
Arylcarbamates, 359  
Aryl epoxides, 106  
Arylesterases, 34  
Aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase (AHH), 75  
Aryl-substituted acrylic acids, 35  
Asbestos, 181, 182, 184, 338–339  
    fibrosis, 339  
Asbestos, 338–339  
Ascorbic acid, 285  
Aspartame, 285  
Aspartate, 237  
Aspirin, 327, 328, 329, 330  
Atrazine, 102  
Atropine, 226  
Azaserine, 197  
Azathioprine, 108, 169  
Azide, 239  
Azide-N, 251  
Azinphosmethyl, 68, 290, 302, 352, 353  
Azo dyes, 19  
Azorubine, 285  
  
BaP-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide, 104  
BaP-7,8-epoxide, 104  
Barbiturate-N, 251  
Barbiturates, 238  
Baygon. *See* Propoxur  
Benomyl, 291  
Benzene, 19, 38, 57, 76, 102, 169, 349, 350  
Benzimidazoles, 359  
Benzo(a)pyrene (BAP), 38, 75, 104, 169, 218, 257  
Benzoates, 171  
Benzocaine, 214  
Benzoic acid, 285  
    disposition of, 17  
Benzyl penicillin, 279  
Beryllium, 169, 171, 180, 184, 189, 197, 214, 309, 310, 316–317, 352  
Bicarbonate ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ), 202  
Bilirubin, 194  
Biogenic amines, 178  
Bipyridyls, 291, 358  
Bismuth, 320  
Black widow spider venom, 242  
Bleomycin, 182  
Blue asbestos (crocidolites), 181  
Boron compounds, 180  
5-BrdU (5-bromo-deoxyuridine), 132  
Brominated vegetable oils (BVO), 260, 262, 277  
Bromobenzene, 191, 193, 197, 203  
Bromobenzene epoxide, 37  
Bromotrichloromethane, 39  
Brown F.K., 262  
BSP, 194  
BTEX. *See* Xylene  
Busulfan, 182, 226, 227, 256  
Butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA), 67, 276, 285  
Butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT), 276, 285

- Cadmium, 203, 257, 281, 282, 305, 307, 309, 352  
  effects on the respiratory system, 316  
  and hypertension, 316  
  occurrence in nature, 315  
  toxicity, 315–316
- Cadmium oxide, 181, 184
- Calcium (Ca), 19, 204, 274
- Calcium citrate, 285
- Calcium gluconate, 285
- Captan, 214, 291
- Captopril, 169
- Ca<sup>2+</sup> pump, 190
- Carbamate insecticides, 290
- Carbamate insecticides, 292
- Carbamates, 358  
  propham, 291
- Carbamazepine, 197
- Carbarsone, 197
- Carbaryl, 169, 172, 290, 295, 302, 352, 353
- Carbides, 184
- Carbofuran, 169, 290
- Carbon dioxide, 337
- Carbon disulfide, 197, 228, 349
- Carbon disulfide (CS<sub>2</sub>), 264
- Carbon monoxide, 19, 239, 244, 263, 339
- Carbon monoxide, 339
- Carbon monoxide-N, 251
- Carbon tetrabromide, 190
- Carbon tetrachloride (CCl<sub>4</sub>), 19, 38, 39, 53, 74, 144, 189, 190–192, 193, 197, 203, 204, 349
- Carboxy-hemoglobin, 355
- Carboxylesterases, 34
- Carbamide, 260
- Cardiotonic drugs, 260
- Carotene, 285
- Carrageenans, 18
- Casein, 308
- Cataractogenic chemicals, 232
- Cathepsin, 155
- Ca<sup>2+</sup> transporting ATPase, 55
- Cellulose derivatives, 285
- Cement dust, 353
- Cephaloridine, 203, 204
- Chloracne, 216
- Chloramphenicol, 70, 262
- Chlordane, 169, 302, 352, 353
- Chlordecone, 295
- Chlorfenvinphos, 290, 302
- Chlorine, 179, 184
- Chloroaliphatics, 359
- Chlorobenzenes, 359
- 4 [3(7-Chloro-5,11-dihydrodibenz  
  *[b,e]*[1,4]-oxyazepin-5-YL)propyl]-1-  
  piperazineethanol dichloride,  
  232
- Chlorofenvinphos, 39
- Chloroform, 19, 68, 169, 190, 193, 197, 203, 204, 217, 349
- Chlorophenoxy compounds, 291
- Chlorophyll, 285
- Chloropicrin, 292
- Chloropropham, 291
- Chloroquine, 52, 182, 227
- Chlorothiazides, 214, 215
- Chlorphentermine, 182
- Chlorpromazine, 191, 193, 197, 214, 215, 232, 278
- Chlorpropamide, 214
- Chlorthiazide, 197
- Chocolate, 171
- Cholinesterases, 34
- Chondroitin sulfates, 212
- Chromium, 104, 169, 184, 203, 214, 309, 310, 317, 352
- Cigarette smoke, 181  
  oxidative stress induced by, 186
- Cimetidine, 328, 329, 330
- Ciquatoxin, 280
- Cisplatin, 203, 309
- Clioquinol, 228, 242
- Clioquinol-A, 251
- Coal dust, 184, 353
- Coal tar derivatives, 214, 215
- Cobalt, 260, 305, 319
- Cocaine, 143
- Coke oven emissions, 184, 353
- Concanavalin A, 173
- Copper, 215, 309, 319
- Coproporphyrinogen oxidase (COPROD), 314
- Corrosive agents, 58
- Corticosteroids, 169, 172, 197, 226, 232
- Cotton dust, 184
- Creatine kinase (CK), 93
- Creatinine, 93
- C-S lyase, 205
- Cyanide, 239, 244
- Cyanide-N, BV, 251
- Cycasin, 39, 106, 189, 197
- Cycloheximide, 197

- Cyclohexylamine, 39, 256, 276  
Cyclophosphamide, 169, 182  
Cyclosporin, 203, 205  
Cyclosporin A, 108  
Cy lindrosp ermosin, 342  
Cytochalasin B, 189  
Cytochrome-linked monooxygenases (oxidases), 33  
Cytochrome P-450 (CYP-450) enzymes, 155, 178, 188, 191, 204, 350  
Cytotoxicants, 107
- 2,4-D, 169, 352, 353  
Daunorubicin, 262  
DDT, 22, 70, 71, 72, 75, 169, 242, 256, 257, 289, 292, 294, 295, 296, 302, 352, 353  
DDT-C, 251  
Decalin, 68–69, 203  
Deoxynivalenol, 57, 169, 204, 280  
Desferal, 232  
Detergents, 227  
Dialkyl nitrosamines, 197  
Diazepam, 169, 197  
Diazinon, 290, 302, 352, 353  
1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane (DBCP), 256, 294  
Dicarboximides, 291  
Dichlorobenzene, 197  
2,6-Dichloro-4-nitroaniline, 232  
Dichlorvos, 302  
Dieldrin, 22, 70, 169, 171, 193, 282, 302  
Diesel exhaust particles, 106  
Di(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate, 108  
Diethyl pyrocarbonate (DEPC), 276  
Diethylstilbestrol, 107, 169  
Diethylstilbestrol (DES), 24, 49, 140, 143, 146, 279  
Diethyl sulfate, 127  
1,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D<sub>3</sub>, 205  
Diisopropyl fluorophosphate (DFP), 55, 293  
Dimercaprol (BAL), 305  
Dimethoate, 290, 302  
Dimethylnitrosamine, 131, 189, 197  
Dimethylnitrosamine (DMN), 205  
Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), 21, 114, 227, 232  
Dimethylthiocarbamates, 291  
Dinitro-*o*-cresol (DNOC), 291  
Dinitrophenol, 56, 69  
2,4-Dinitrophenol (DNP), 226, 232  
Dinocap, 295  
Dinoseb, 143  
Dioxane, 349  
Dioxins, 154, 193  
Diphenylhydantoin, 143. *See* Phenytoin  
Diphtheria toxin, 243  
Diphtheria toxin-M, 251  
Dipterex. *See* Trichlorfon  
Diquat, 169, 189, 197, 232, 291, 295, 352, 353  
Disulfoton, 290, 302  
Disulfuram, 228  
Di-Syston. *See* Disulfoton  
Dithiocarbamates, 359  
Doxorubicin, 169, 240, 262  
Doxorubicin-N, 251
- Elemental phosphorus, 292  
Emetine, 260  
B-Endorphin, 237  
Endrin, 302  
Entero-Vioform. *See* Clioquinol  
EPN-A, 251  
Ergot, 69, 280  
Ergot alkaloids, 263  
Erythromycin, 169, 193  
Erythromycin estolate, 197  
Erythromycin lactobionate, 191  
Estradiol, 107, 197, 257  
Estrogen, 155  
Ethacrynic acid, 197  
Ethambutol, 228  
Ethanol, 39, 40, 159, 193, 197, 260  
Ethidium bromide, 243  
Ethidium bromide-M, 251  
Ethinyl estradiol, 191  
Ethionine, 189, 197  
Ethylbenzene, 76  
Ethylene, 19  
Ethylene-bis-dithiocarbamates, 291  
Ethylenediamine, 214  
Ethylene dibromide, 292  
Ethylene dibromide (EDB), 294  
Ethylene glycol, 66  
Ethylmethane sulfonate, 131  
Ethylnitrosourea, 71, 127
- Febantel, 278  
Fenbendazole, 278  
Fenithrothion, 39  
Fenofibrate, 108  
Fentichlor. *See* 2,2-thiobis(4-chlorophenol)



- Ferbam, 291  
Flavones, 72  
Flxacilin, 169  
Fluoride, 342  
Fluorinated agents, 359  
Fluoroacetamide, 292  
Fluoroacetic acid, 56  
Fluorocarbons, 262  
5-Fluorouracil, 19, 144, 169  
Folic acid, 192  
Folpet, 291  
Formaldehyde, 338  
Fumonisin B, 193, 197  
Fumonisin B<sub>1</sub>, 280  
Furazolidone, 260  
Furosemide, 38, 197  
Fusarium solani, 180
- Galactosamine, 197  
Galactose-1-phosphate uridylyl transferase, 227  
Gentamicin, 204  
Glazing agents, 285  
Glucose, 309  
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G-6-PD),  
93, 144  
deficiency, 56, 68  
Glucuronide conjugates, 23–24  
Glutamate, 237, 240  
Glutamate-N, 251  
Glutathione, 188, 191  
Glutathione conjugation, 35–36  
Glutathione S-transferases, 50  
Glycine, 35, 237  
Glycols, 203, 205  
Glycosides scillaren- A and -B, 292  
Glyphosate, 295  
Gold, 169, 171, 182, 203, 204, 264, 309, 310,  
320  
Gossypol, 257  
Guanethidine, 257  
Guthion. *See* Azinphosmethyl
- Halogenated hydrocarbons, 106, 159, 204  
Halogenated salicylanilides, 214  
Haloperidol, 257  
Halothane, 39, 169, 192, 197  
Heme synthetase (HS), 313  
Heptachlor, 232, 302  
Herbicides, 291, 358  
Hexacarbons, 242  
Hexachlorobenzene (HCB), 169, 291  
Hexachlorobutadiene, 203  
damages, 205  
Hexachlorophene, 244, 256  
Hexachlorophene-M, BV, 251  
Hexane, 227  
Hexobarbital, 66, 69  
Holocrine, 216  
Hyaluronic acid, 212  
Hydralazine, 169, 263  
Hydrazides, 35  
Hydrazines, 35  
Hydrocyanic acid (HCN), 56  
Hydrogen fluoride, 184  
Hydroquinone, 68, 203  
Hydroxychloroquine, 227  
5-Hydroxytryptamine, 33  
25-Hydroxy-vitamin D<sub>3</sub>, 205  
Hyperglycemic drugs, 330
- IDPN-A, 251  
IgD immunoglobulins, 167  
IgE antibody, 215  
IgG-producing plaques, 173  
IgM immunoglobulins, 167  
Imidazolines, 329, 330  
 $\beta,\beta$ -Iminodipropionitrile (IDPN), 240  
Imipramine, 197  
Immunoglobulin A, 204  
Immunoglobulins (Ig family), 168  
Immunoglobulin E, 354  
Immunosuppressants, 172  
Immunosuppressive drugs, 108  
Indigotine, 285  
Indoles, 72  
Indomethacin, 197  
Insecticides, 358  
Interleukins (IL), 168  
Intramuscular injection, 18  
Intraperitoneal injection, 18  
Iodoacetic acid, 232  
Ionizable toxicants, 17  
Ipomeanol, 180  
4-*Ipomeanol*, 53  
Iproniazid, 75, 191, 197  
Iron, 19, 310, 319–320  
Iron oxides, 185  
Isocyanates, 185  
Isoniazid, 35, 75, 191, 197, 244  
Isopropanol, 74

- Isoproterenol, 261  
<sup>132</sup>I-triolein, 174
- Kainic acid-N, 251  
 Kaloyanides, 204  
 Kanamycin, 52, 204  
 Kaolin, 185, 353
- Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), 93, 207  
 Lactones, 106  
 Lead, 8, 19, 169, 203, 243, 244, 263, 281, 282, 305, 307, 352  
   carcinogenicity of, 314  
   environmental levels, 313  
   exposure on infants and young children, 313  
   human exposure, 334, 355  
   and kidney functions, 314  
   levels, in milk, 157–158  
   major industrial uses, 313  
   and nervous system, 314  
   organic compounds, 315  
   other effects, 314–315  
   toxicity, 313–314  
 Lead-MS, 251  
 Lecithin, 285  
 Leptophos, 293  
 Leptophos-A, 251  
 Lindane, 302, 352, 353  
 Linuron, 257  
 Lipids, 57  
 Lipopolysaccharide, 128  
 Lithium, 260, 309  
 Lithocholate, 189  
 Loperamide, 328, 330  
 Losulazine, 257  
 Lysolecithin-M, 251  
 Lysozyme, 155, 315
- Magnesium (Mg), 204, 274  
 Magnesium sulfate, 329  
 Malathion, 290, 293, 295, 302, 352, 353  
 Maltase, 206  
 Mancozeb, 294  
 Maneb, 169, 291, 294  
 Manganese, 309, 320  
 Mannitol, 16  
 Melanin, 52  
 Melphalan, 182  
 Mepazine, 197  
 Mephentyoin, 232  
 6-Mercaptopurine, 169, 197  
 Mercapturic acids, 355  
 Mercuric chloride, 351–352  
 Mercury, 171, 203, 204, 263, 282, 352  
   anthropogenic activities, 311  
   chloride, 238  
   compounds, 244  
   daily intake and effect, 311  
   elemental form of, 311  
   human exposure, 355  
   levels, in milk, 156–157  
   poisoning, 5  
   toxicity, 311–313  
   vapor, 310  
 Methacholine, 60  
 Methandrolone, 197  
 Methanol, 349  
 Methimazole, 197  
 Methionine, 192  
   enkephalin, 237  
   sulfoximine, 232  
 Methomyl, 290  
 Methotrexate, 169, 182  
 Methoxsalen, 232  
 Methoxychlor, 257, 302, 352, 353  
 2-Methoxyethanol, 169  
 Methoxyflurane, 197, 203, 205  
 Methoxy-psoralens, 215  
 Methylazoxymethanol, 39  
 Methylcholanthrene, 169  
 3-Methylcholanthrene (3-MC), 75, 128, 257  
 Methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT), 8  
 Methyldopa, 169  
 A-Methyldopa, 197  
 Methylene chloride, 349  
 4,4-Methylenedianiline, 228  
 Methylenetetrafolate reductase, 50  
 3-Methylindole, 36  
 Methyl mercury, 28, 51, 169, 228, 240, 305  
   poisoning, 156, 308  
 Methyl mercury-N, BV, 251  
 Methylmethane sulfonate (MMS), 256–257  
 Methyl *n*-butyl ketone, 228, 349  
 Methyl *n*-butyl ketone-A, 251  
 Methylsulfoxime, 244  
 Methysergide, 260  
 Mevinphos, 290, 302  
 Microcystins, 190, 342  
 B<sub>2</sub>-Microglobulin, 315

- Mimosine (leucenol), 232  
Minoxidil, 263  
Mipaflox, 293  
Mirex, 295  
Mitomycin, 182  
Mitomycin C, 124  
Molybdenum, 320  
Monoamine oxidase, 33  
Monocrotaline, 180, 263  
Monosaccharides, 19  
Monosodium glutamate (MSG), 171, 277  
Mucopolysaccharides, 212
- Nabam, 291, 294  
*N*-acetylcysteine (mercapturic acid) derivatives, 35  
*N*-acetyl-L-cysteine *S*-conjugates, 355  
*N*-acetyl transferases, 35  
NAD, 191  
NADH methemoglobinemia reductase, deficiency of, 50  
NADP, 191  
NADPH cytochrome P-450 reductase, 32  
Naphthalene, 232  
2-Naphthylamine, 67, 112  
A-Naphthylisocyanate, 193  
A-Naphthylthiourea, 359  
*N*-arylsuccinimides, 203  
Neomycin, 204, 214  
*N*-heterocyclic compounds, 291  
*N*-hexane, 228, 248, 349  
*N*-Hexane-A, 251  
*N*-hydroxy derivatives, 104  
Nickel, 169, 171, 172, 185, 214, 309, 310, 317, 352  
Nickel carbonyl, 180  
Nicotine, 69, 257  
Nicotine-C, 251  
Nissl substances, 240  
Nitrates, 276, 341  
Nitric oxide (NO), 237, 264  
Nitrilotriacetic acid (NTA), 107  
Nitrites, 276  
Nitrobenzol, 228  
Nitrogen dioxide (NO<sub>2</sub>), 336–337  
Nitrogen mustards, 169, 257  
Nitrogen oxides, 19  
Nitrosamides, 106  
Nitrosamines, 68, 106, 144, 276  
Nitrosoureas, 106  
*N*-methylcarbamic acid, 290  
*N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea (MNU), 53  
*N,N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET), 66, 298–300  
N(Nitrosomethyl)urea, 197  
Nodulins, 342  
Nomifensine, 169  
*N*-Phenyl-β-hydrazinopropionitriles, 232
- O<sub>6</sub>-alkyl-guanine, 53  
O-aminophenol, 67  
Ochratoxin A, 106, 280  
Ochratoxins, 169, 280  
*O*-ethyl-*o*-(4-nitrophenyl) phenyl phosphonothioate (EPN), 293  
Olefins, 38  
Oleoresins, 285  
Omethoate, 39  
Orange RN, 277  
Organic solvents, 227, 348–351  
Organic solvents, 227  
Organic solvents-A, 251  
Organic tin compounds, 169  
Organochlorine insecticides, 70, 281, 290, 295, 352  
Organochlorine (OC) insecticides, 292  
Organochlorine pesticides, 172  
Organochlorines, 358  
Organomercurials (thimerosal), 214  
Organophosphate AChE inhibitor, 61  
Organophosphate insecticides, 293  
Organophosphate pesticides, 143, 292  
Organophosphates, 358  
Organophosphorus insecticides, 39, 68, 239  
Organotin-N, 251  
Organotins, 240  
Ornithine carbamoyl transferase (OCT), 193  
Ouabain, 71, 244  
Oxalic acid, 66–67. *See* Glycols  
Oxfendazole, 278  
Oxides of nitrogen, 185  
Oxyphenisatin, 197  
Oxyphenylbutazone, 182  
Oxytetracycline, 279  
Oxytocin, 237  
Ozone (O<sub>3</sub>), 185, 336–337
- P*-aminohippuric acid (PAH), 207  
*P*-aminophenol, 67  
*P*-Aminosalicyclic acid, 193, 197  
Papaverine, 197

- Paracetamol, 328  
Paradichlorobenzene, 232  
Paraquat, 39, 57, 169, 182, 240, 291, 295, 353  
Parasympatholytic agents, 226  
Parathion, 39, 68–69, 302, 352, 353  
Parathion-methyl, 290, 302  
*P*-bromophenol, 38  
*P*-chlorophenylalanine, 227  
Penicillamine, 169, 204  
Penicillin, 169, 171, 205, 264  
Pentachloronitrobenzene (PCNB), 291  
Pentachlorophenol (PCP), 169, 291  
Perchloroethylene, 159, 180, 185  
Perfluorooctanoic acid (PFOA), 169  
Perfluorooctanesulfonate (PFOS), 169  
Permethrin, 298–299  
Perphenazine, 197  
Phalloidin, 189  
Phenanthrene, 214  
Phenindione, 197  
Phenobarbital, 75, 128  
Phenol, 217  
Phenolics, 359  
Phenolsulfonphthalein (PSP)  
  excretion test, 207–208  
Phenothiazines, 214, 260  
Phenoxyacids, 358  
Phenylbutazone, 182, 197  
Phenytoin, 193, 197, 260  
Phosgene, 185  
Phosphates, 285, 341–342  
3'-Phosphoadenosine-5'-phosphosulfate, 35  
Phosphorus, 189, 190, 197  
Phthalate esters, 341  
Phthalates, 354  
Phthalimide derivatives, 291  
Phytohemagglutinin, 173  
Piperonyl butoxide, 75, 290  
Plant extracts, 285  
Platinum, 169, 171, 215, 309, 310  
Poison ivy, 214  
Poison oak, 214  
Polybrominated biphenyls (PBB), 38, 169, 340  
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB), 22, 38, 72, 75, 128, 197, 216, 282, 340  
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB), 169  
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH), 75, 106, 257  
Polycyclic hydrocarbons, 102, 112  
Polyribocytidylic acid, 232  
Polyriboninosinic acid, 232  
Polystyrene latex, 19  
Ponceau 2R, 277  
Potassium (K), 274  
*P*-Phenylenediamine, 214  
Practolol, 169  
Primaquine, 68  
Probable carcinogenic chemicals, 121  
Probenecid, 23, 169  
Procainamide, 169  
Procarcinogens, 106  
Procyimdone, 295  
Prolactin, 155  
Promazine, 197  
Promethazine, 214  
Prontosil, 34  
Propellants, 285  
Propionic acid, 285  
Propoxur, 302  
Propoxur, 290  
Propranolol, 216  
Propylene glycol, 260  
Prostaglandins, 178  
Proteins, 192  
Psoralens, 124, 215  
Puromycin, 197, 203  
Putrescine, 33  
Pyrethroids, 169, 358  
Pyrethroids-C, 251  
Pyridine, 214  
Pyridostigmine bromide (PB), 298, 299  
Pyrrolizidine alkaloids, 39, 106, 197  
  
Quartz, 180  
Quietidine (1,4-bis(phenylisopropyl)-piperazine·2HCl), 232  
Quinine, 169  
  
Radiogallium, 321  
Radon, 109  
Rapeseed oil, 260, 262  
Retinoic acid, 61  
Retinoids, 143  
Retinol-binding protein, 315  
Riboflavin, 285  
Rodenticides, 67, 292, 359  
Rotenone, 243, 290

- Saccharin, 275, 285  
excretion rate, 28
- Sadenosylmethionine (SAM), 35
- Safrole, 72, 106, 197
- Saline laxatives, 330
- Saxitoxin, 242, 280, 342
- Saxitoxin-C, 251
- Schradan (octamethyl pyrophosphoramidate), 70
- Selenium, 318–319  
deficiency, 319  
exposure, 319
- Serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST or SGOT), 93
- Sevin. *See* Carbaryl
- Silica, 185, 353
- Silicone, 156
- SKF 525 A, 75
- Smog, 226, 227
- Sodium arsenite, 169
- Sodium fluoroacetate, 292
- Sodium (Na), 19, 274
- Sorbic acid, 285
- Sorbitol dehydrogenase (SDH), 193
- Spermatozoa, 255, 257
- Spironolactone, 257
- Steroids, 197
- Streptomycin, 182, 204, 262
- Streptozotocin, 227, 232
- Strontium-90, 53
- Strychnine, 359
- Styrene, 57, 104
- Substilisin, 169
- Succinyl coenzyme A (CoA), 313
- Sugars (glucose, galactose, xylose), 232
- Sulfaethoxy-pyridazine, 232
- Sulfanilamide, 34, 197, 214
- Sulfapyridine, 203, 205
- Sulfate, 191
- Sulfate conjugates, 23
- Sulfate esters, 106
- Sulfites, 169, 171
- Sulfonamides, 22, 35, 197, 205, 215, 264
- Sulfur dioxide (SO<sub>2</sub>), 19, 182, 185, 277, 285
- Sulfur oxides, 335–336, 339
- Suspended particulate matter, 335–336, 339
- Talc, 185, 353
- Tannic acid, 189, 197
- Tartrazine, 171, 277, 285
- Taurocholate, 189, 191
- Tellurium-BV, M, 251
- Temik. *See* Aldicarb
- Tetanoplasmin, 242
- Tetanoplasmin-C, 251
- 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin (TCDD), 55, 61, 147, 169, 172, 216, 341
- Tetrachloroethane, 190, 197
- Tetracyclines, 189, 197, 203, 215, 262
- 12,0-Tetradecanoyl phorbol 13-acetate (TPA), 61, 169
- Tetraethyl lead, 307, 315
- Tetramethyl lead, 315
- Tetrodotoxin, 242, 280
- Tetrodotoxin-C, 251
- Thalidomide, 8, 143, 145–146
- Thallium, 19, 226, 228, 232
- Thallium-A, 251
- Thallium sulfate, 292
- Thiabenzazole, 197
- Thiazides, 214
- Thioacetamide, 197, 232
- Thioamides, 106
- Thiobarbituric acid (TBA), 194
- Thiobenzazole, 291
- 2,2-Thiobis(4-chlorophenol), 214
- Thiopental, 16
- Thiophanates, 359
- Thiuridazine, 197
- Thioureas, 292
- Thiram, 291, 352, 353
- Thyroxine, 155
- Tin, 185, 305
- T-independent antigens, 173
- Titanium, 305, 321
- Tolbutamide, 169
- Toluene, 76, 182, 227, 349, 350  
maternal exposure to, 159
- Toluene diisocyanate (TDI), 169, 171, 181, 213, 354
- Trenbolone acetate, 279
- Triazines, 359
- Trichlorfon, 290, 302
- Trichloroethene, 171
- Trichloroethylene, 38, 74, 169, 189, 197, 349
- Trichlorofon, 293
- Trichloromethyl radical •CCl<sub>3</sub>, 190
- 1,1,2-Trichloroethylene, 108
- Trichothecenes, 280

- Tricresyl phosphate, 239  
Tricyclic antidepressants, 260, 262  
Triethyltin, 243, 244, 309  
Triethyltin-M, BV, 251  
Triglycerides, 93, 190  
Trihalomethanes, 341  
2,4,6-Trinitrotoluene (TNT), 232  
Tri-*o*-cresyl phosphate, 228  
Tri-*o*-cresyl phosphate (TOCP), 248, 293  
Tri-*o*-cresyl phosphate (TOCP)-A, 251  
Triparanol, 182, 216, 226, 232, 243  
Triparanol-M, 251  
Tyrosine, 232
- UDP-glucuronyl transferase, 35  
Ureas, 359  
Urethane, 38, 197  
Uridine-5'-diphospho- $\alpha$ -dglucuronic acid, 35  
Uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase (UROD),  
314
- Valproic acid, 143, 197  
Vanadium, 185  
Vasopressin, 237  
Vegetable gums, 285  
Vinblastine, 257  
Vincristine, 241, 242
- Vincristine-A, 251  
Vinyl chloride, 38, 102, 193, 197, 278, 354  
Vioform. *See* Clioquinol  
Vitamin A, 329, 330  
    deficiency, 72  
Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, 192  
Vitamin D, 330  
Vitamin K, 292, 329, 330  
    deficiency, 194  
Vitamins A, 155  
Vitamins C, 308  
Vitamins D, 308  
Vitamins K, 155
- Warfarin, 292
- Xanthines, 72  
Xylene, 76, 180
- Zearalenone, 280  
Zinc, 320  
Zinc phosphide, 292, 359  
Zinc protoporphyrin, 355  
Zineb, 291, 294  
Ziram, 291  
Zirconium, 309, 310  
Zoxazolamine, 194, 197

# Subject Index

- Absorption, of toxicants, 19
- Acceptable daily intakes (ADIs), 273, 297
- Acetylation, 35
- Acidifying capacity test, for nephrotoxicity, 206
- Active transport, 18
- Additive, 74
- Adipose tissue, 22
- Alkali metals, 274
- Alkalies, 227
- Allergic reactions, 170–171, 181
- Alveolar air, 19
- Alveoli, 178
- Anabolic agents, 279
- Anaerobic metabolism, 52
- Analytical toxicology, 4
- Anaphylaxis, 170
- Animal models, in toxicity studies, 85
- Anoxia, 238–239, 349
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 200
- Antigen-presenting cells (APC), 167
- Antineoplastic drugs, 260
- Apoptosis, 104
- Appendix, 166
- Arc welder's lung, 185
- Area postrema, 238
- Aspergillus*, 128
- Aspergillus flavus*, 279
- Asthma, 70, 73, 152, 169, 179, 181, 185, 295, 352, 354
- Ataxia, 51, 88, 124, 243, 298–299, 308, 312, 314
- Atherosclerosis, 263–264
- Atypical hyperplasia, 115
- Autoimmune diseases, 171
- Autoimmune reactions, 166
- Autoimmune syndrome, 169
- Autopsy, 87
- Axonopathy, 238, 240–243, 297, 351
- Axons, 238, 240
  
- B cells (B lymphocytes), 167
  - deficiency, 174
- B lymphocytes, 173
- Bacillus subtilis*, 133, 181
- Bacillus thuringiensis*, 291
- Balkan endemic nephropathy, 203, 280
- Barbiturate coma, 239
- Basophils, 166
- Bauxite lung, 184
- Benign tumors, 115
- Bergsucht* (Paracelsus), 5
- Biliary passages, 188
- Bioaccumulation, 295–296
- Bioactivation, 32, 44–45, 53, 72, 106
- Biochemical asphyxia, 56
- Biochemical effects, of toxicants, 50
- Biologic membrane, 16
- Biomagnification, 295–296
- Biomarkers, 7
  - of carcinogenesis/human cancers, 120
- Biotransformation, of toxicants
  - complexity
    - sensitivity in children, 40–42
    - sensitivity in elderly, 42
  - general considerations, 32
  - phase I reactions
    - hydrolysis, 34
    - oxidation, 32–34
    - reduction, 34
  - phase II reactions
    - acetylation, 35
    - amino acid conjugation, 35
    - epoxide formation, 37–38
    - free radical and superoxide formation, 38–39
  - G.I. tract, 39
  - glucuronide formation, 35
  - glutathione conjugation, 35–36
  - methylation, 35
  - N-hydroxylation, 38
  - other pathways, 39
  - sulfate conjugation, 35
- Black-foot disease, 263, 308, 342

- Blockade, of renal and biliary tubules, 58
- Blood analysis, for nephrotoxicity, 207
- Blood clotting mechanism, 228
- Blood urea nitrogen (BUN), 93, 204
- Blood–brain barrier (BBB), 52, 56, 71, 237–238, 240, 243, 307
- Blood–nerve barrier (BNB), 238
- Blood–testis barrier (BTB), 256
- Bowman’s capsules, 200–202
- Breast cancer and lactation, 153
- Bulk laxatives, 330
- Carcinogenesis, 192–193, 197
  - categories
    - genotoxic carcinogens, 106
    - nongenotoxic carcinogens, 106–109
  - definition and identification, 101
  - evaluation, 114–117
  - evidences, 101–102
  - historical background, 100
  - human carcinogens, 109–110
  - mode of action
    - bioactivation, 103–104
    - conversion and progression, 105
    - initiation, 104
    - interaction with macromolecules, 104
    - promotion, 104–105
    - target organs, 109–110
    - tests for, 111–114
- Carcinogenicity, 293–294
- Carcinogenicity testing, 6
- Cardiac arrhythmias, 262
- Cardiovascular system
  - cardiotoxic drugs and chemicals, 260
  - structure, 260–261
  - testing for toxicity, 264–265
  - toxic effects of heart
    - cardiac arrhythmias, 262
    - cardiomyopathy, 261
    - interference with nucleic acid synthesis, 262
    - myocardial depression, 262
    - others, 262
  - toxic effects on blood vessels
    - degenerative changes, 263–264
    - endothelial damage, 263
    - fibrosis, 264
    - hypersensitivity reactions, 264
    - increased capillary permeability, 263
    - tumors, 264
    - vasoconstriction and vasodilatation, 263
- Carrier-mediated transport systems, 18–19
- Cell membrane derangement, 57
- Cell-mediated immunity, 172–173
- Cell-mediated system, 130
- Cell-membrane-associated antigens, 167
- Cellular damages, 179–180
- Cellular necrosis, 180
- Cellulose derivatives, 285
- Chemical antagonism, 74
- Chemical carcinogenesis, 101–103
- Chemical distribution, in organs
  - adipose tissue, 22
  - binding and storage, 22–23
  - blood–brain barrier, 21–22
  - bone, 23
  - into brain, 21
  - kidney, 22
  - liver, 22
  - placental barrier, 21
  - plasma proteins, 22
- Chemical poisoning, 13
- Chemosis, 233
- Chinese restaurant syndrome, 277
- Cholesterol, 93
  - diet, high, 260
- Choline, 192
- Cholinergic receptors (ChR), 58
- Chronic alcoholism, 244
- Chrysanthemum cinerariaefolium*, 290
- Ciliary body, 226
- Cirrhosis, 72, 191–193
- Clara cells, 53, 178, 180
- Clinical toxicology, 4
- Clostridium botulinum*, 242, 276, 280
- Clostridium tetani*, 242
- CNS damage, 239
- Codex Alimentarius Commission, 272, 373
- Coenzymes, 57
- Collagen, 56
- Competitive antagonism, 74
- Complement system, 168
- Concentration test, 206
- Conjunctiva redness, 233
- Conventional toxicology, 5
- Corundum smelter’s lung, 184
- Cyanobacterial blooms, 190
- Cystic fibrosis, 124



- Deafness, 51  
Death, 51  
Decalin-induced hyalin droplet nephropathy, 69  
Delayed effects, of toxicants, 147  
Delayed hypersensitivity, 172–173, 213  
Delayed neurotoxicity, 293  
Demyelination, 243  
Dendrites, 240  
*Derris elliptica*, 290  
Descemet's membrane, 224  
Desquamation, 214  
Desulfuration, 33  
Developmental toxicology  
  embryology, 140–142  
  evaluation of teratogenic effects  
    categories and relative significance, 147  
    extrapolation of humans, 148  
  historical background, 140  
  mode of action  
    deficiency of energy supply and osmolarity, 144  
    inhibition of enzymes, 144  
    interference with nucleic acids, 144  
    others, 144–145  
    oxidative stress, 144  
  teratogens, 142–143  
    of special interest, 145–146  
  testing procedures  
    administration of chemical, 146  
    animals, 146  
    observations, 146–147  
Dietary intakes, of pesticides, 297–298  
Dilution test, 206  
Direct food additives, 285  
Direct-acting carcinogens, 106  
Distal axonopathy, 241–242  
DNA adducts, 127  
DNA polymerases, 109  
Doppler flowmeter, 264  
Dose–response relationship, 87–89, 91, 116  
Down's syndrome, 124  
Draize test, 217, 229  
*Drosophila melanogaster*, 129, 131  
Dysarthria, 51  
  
Edema, 88, 97–98, 144, 179–180, 244–246, 262–263, 292, 295, 314, 337–338, 352–353, 358  
Edward's syndrome, 124  
Effective renal plasma flow (ERPF), 207  
  
Electromyography, 246  
Electrooculography, 230  
Embryology, 140–142  
Emphysema, 181  
Endocytosis, 18  
Endoneural edema, 244  
Endothelium, in brain, 237  
Environmental pollutants  
  air, 335–339  
  transportation of lead, 334  
  water and soil, 339–342  
Environmental toxicology, 4  
Enzymatic hydrolysis, 34  
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 173  
Eosinophils, 166  
Epoxidation, 33  
*Escherichia coli*, 128, 133  
Essential oils, 285  
Estrogen, 155  
Excretion, of toxicants  
  biliary, 24  
  glomerular capillaries, 23  
  in mother's milk, 24  
  lungs, 24  
  other routes, 24  
  sweat and saliva, 24  
  urinary, 23  
Extracellular edema, 244  
Eye irritation, grading of, 233  
Eye, toxicology of  
  evaluation, 231  
  site of effects  
    cornea, 224–226  
    iris, aqueous humor, and ciliary B, 226  
    lens, 226–227  
    optic nerve, 228  
    retina, 227–228  
  structure of, 223–224  
  testing  
    electrooculography, 230  
    gross examination, 229–230  
    histologic and biochemical examinations, 230  
    ophthalmoscopy, 230  
    visual perimetry, 230  
    visual-evoked responses, 230  
  
Facilitated diffusion, 18  
Fanconi's anemia, 124

- Fatty liver (steatosis), 189–190  
 Fertility index, 259  
 Fetal toxicity, 147  
 Fibroblast metaplasia, 226  
 Fibrotic lung lesions, 169  
 Filtration, 18  
 Flavor and Extract Manufacturers' Association (FEMA), 275  
 Fluorescent-plus-Giemsa technique, 132  
 Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 257  
 Food additives and contamination  
   classification, 272–273  
   contaminants  
     metals, 281–282  
     mycotoxins, 279–280  
     neurotoxins, 280–281  
   definition, 272  
   indirect  
     animal drug residues in human food, 278  
     packaging materials, 278  
     toxicologic testing and evaluation, 274–275  
   types, 275–277  
 Food allergies and lactation, 153–154  
 Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations (FAO), 373  
 Food colors, 256  
 Foreign cells (neoplasm), 165, 170  
 Forensic toxicology, 4  
 Frame-shift mutation, 126  
 Functional antagonism, 74  
 Functional effects, of toxicants, 49–50  
 Functional observational battery (FOB), 244–245  
  
 G-protein coupled receptors, 59  
 Ganglion cells, 224  
 Gap junction intercellular communication, 108  
 Gastrointestinal tract and toxicants, 19  
 Generally recognized as safe (GRAS), 272, 275, 278  
 Genu valgum, 342  
 German measles, 143  
 Gestation index, 259  
 Glial cells, 237  
 Globulin, 93  
 Glomerular filtration rate (GFR), 207  
 Glucans, 180  
 Glucuronidation pathways, 40  
 Glucuronide conjugates, 23–24  
  
*Gonyaulax*, 242  
 Good laboratory practice, 94–95, 97–98  
 Growth hormone, 237  
 Gulf War syndrome, 298–299  
  
 Hair loss, 216  
 Hard metal disease, 184  
 Helper cells, 167  
 Hematite miner's lung, 185  
 Heme synthetase (HS), 313  
 Hemolytic anemia, 68, 169, 171  
 Hepatic necrosis, 72  
 Hepatic triglyceride, 189  
 Hepatitis, 72, 169, 171  
 Hepatocarcinogenesis, 193  
 Hepatocellular carcinoma, 192  
 Hepatotoxicants, 193  
 Heritable translocation test, in mice, 133  
 Herpes simplex, 143  
 High-fat diet, 189  
 Hormone receptors, 59  
 Hormones, 107  
 Human glomerulonephritis nephropathy, 204  
 Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), during breast-feeding, 153  
 Human stratum corneum, 20  
 Humoral immunity, 173  
 Hyperosmolarity, 200  
 Hyperpigmentation, 214  
 Hypersensitivity reactions, 57, 170–171  
 Hypothalamus–pituitary–testis axis, 257  
 Hypoxia, 144, 261  
  
 Immune system, toxicology of  
   components of system  
     B cells, 167  
     Langerhans cells, 168  
     macrophages, 167–168  
     natural killer (NK) cells, 167  
     polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells, 168  
     soluble mediators, 168–169  
     T cells, 166–167  
   immunotoxicants  
     impact, 170–172  
     major, 169  
 Immunodeficiency, 166  
 Immunotoxicities  
   cell-mediated immunity, 172–173  
   functions of bone marrow, 174

- functions of macrophages, 174
- humoral immunity, 173
- immunocompetence tests, 172
- Immunotoxicity testing, 6
- Inhibitors, of enzymes, 144
- Intestine, 19
- Iris, 233
- Irreversible effects, of toxicants, 48–49
- Irritation, primary, 213, 217, 220–221
- Isolated heart, 265
- Itai-Itai disease, 9, 281
- Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives and Contaminants (JECFA), 273, 275, 373
- Joint FAO/WHO Meeting of Experts on Pesticide Residues (JMPR), 273, 373
- Kaolinosis, 185
- Keratinous cyst, 216
- Kidney, toxicology of
  - functional and morphologic examinations of, 205–207
  - mechanism of nephrotoxicants, 202–205
  - nature of toxicity, 208
  - nonexcretory functions, 202
  - production of urine, 200
  - structure of kidney, 200
  - tubular resorption and secretion, 202
- Klinefelter's syndrome, 124
- Kupffer cells, 187
- Lactation
  - adverse infant conditions protected by, 152
  - benefits
    - food allergies, 153–154
    - immune system, 153
    - protection from cancer, 153
    - psychological bonding, 154
  - biomarkers of exposure, 154–155
  - importance and necessity of, 151
  - incidence rate of, 152
- Lactation index, 259
- Langerhans cells, 168, 212
- Leber's optic neuropathy, 243
- Lethal dose (LD<sub>50</sub>), 296–297
  - determination, 86, 90
- Lethal intoxication, 6
- Lethal synthesis, 56
- Lethality, in demonstrating chemical interaction, 86
- Leucine enkephalin, 237
- Leukoencephalopathy, 239
- Level of concern (LOC), 274
- Levels of toxicants, in body, 27–28
- Leydig cells, 255
  - tumors, 257
- Limit test, 85
- Limited carcinogenicity tests, 111, 115
- Liver necrosis, 190–191
- Liver toxicology
  - clinical biochemical tests for, 193–194
  - complications, 188
  - effect on subcellular organelles in liver cells, 189
  - hepatotoxicants, 193
  - route of entry, 188
  - types of injury
    - carcinogenesis, 192–193
    - cholestasis, 191
    - cirrhosis, 191–192
    - fatty liver (steatosis), 189–190
    - liver necrosis, 190–191
    - viral-like hepatitis, 192
- Loop of Henle, 200, 205
- Lung cancer, 181–182
- Lupus erythematosus, 169
- Lymphocyte proliferation assay, 173
- Lymphoid hypoplasia, 174
- Lymphokines, 167
- Macrophages, 166–168, 212
- Malformations, 147
- Man-made refractory ceramic fibers, 182
- Maternal nutrient intake and infant development, 154
- Maximally tolerated dose (MTD), 113
- Maximization test, 217
- Mechanistic toxicology, 5
- Memory cells, 167
- Menopause, 258
- Metabolic imbalance, 143
- Metal fume fever, 352
- Metal toxicity, 351–352
  - arsenic, 316
  - beryllium, 316–317
  - biological indicators/biomarkers, 308

- Metal toxicity (*Continued*)  
 cadmium, 315–316  
 chromium, 317  
 common effects  
   carcinogenicity, 309  
   immune function, 309  
   kidney, 309–310  
   nervous system, 309  
   respiratory system, 310  
 factors affecting, 307–308  
 lead, 313–315  
 mercury, 311–313  
 nickel, 317  
 occurrence, 304  
 risk and benefit considerations, 317–321  
 site of action, 305–307  
 uses and human exposure, 304–305
- Metal-dependent enzymes, 57
- Metal–protein complexes, 307
- Metals, as therapeutic agents, 320–321
- Microbial tests in vitro, 128
- Microbial tests in vivo, 129
- Microcystis aeruginosa*, 342
- Microglia, 237
- Micronucleus test, 132
- Microsomal mixed-function oxidases (MFO),  
 72
- Microsomal oxidation, 33
- Microsomal reduction, 34
- Miliaria, 217
- Miner's disease, 5
- Mitochondria, 261
- Mitogens, 173
- Mixed-function oxidases (MFO), 33
- Modifying factors, of toxic effects  
 chemical interaction  
   as toxicologic tools, 75–76  
   characteristics of enzyme induction, 75  
   mechanism of action, 74–75  
   type of interaction, 73–74  
 environmental factors, 73  
 general considerations, 65–66  
 host factors  
   age, 69–72  
   diseases, 72–73  
   gender, hormonal status, and pregnancy,  
   68–69  
   nutritional status, 72  
   species, strain, and individual, 66–68
- Morphologic effects, of toxicants, 49–50
- Morphologic examination, for neurotoxicity,  
 245–246
- Motor examination, for neurotoxicity, 245
- Mouse spot test, 130
- Mucociliary escalator, 20
- Multi-vitamin preparation, 330
- Mutagenesis  
 categories of, 125–126  
 chromosomal effects  
   dominant lethal test in rodents, 133  
   heritable translocation test in mice,  
   133  
   in vitro tests, 131–132  
   in vivo tests, 132  
   insects, 131  
   sister chromatid exchange (SCE),  
   132–133  
 DNA repair and recombination  
   bacteria, 133  
   mammalian cells/UDS, 134  
   yeasts, 134  
 evaluation  
   selection of test systems, 135–136  
   significance of results, 136–137  
 gene mutations  
   eukaryotic microorganisms, 128  
   frame-shift mutation, 126  
   insects, 129  
   mammalian cells in culture, 129–130  
   microbial tests in vitro, 128  
   microbial tests in vivo, 129  
   prokaryotic microorganisms, 128  
   tests in mice, 130  
 health hazards, 124–125  
 tests, 6, 115  
   in vitro transformation of mammalian cells,  
   134  
   nuclear enlargement test, 134–135
- Myelin sheath, 237, 243
- Myelinopathy, 238
- Myocardial contraction, 261
- Myocardium, 261
- N-oxidation, 33
- Nasal cancer, 317
- Natural killer (NK) cells, 167
- NCI-Black Reiter (NBR), 69
- Neonates, metabolic characteristics of, 40
- Nephritis, 169, 171
- Nephrotoxicants, 7

- Nervous system, toxicology of  
behavioral studies, 246–248  
cells and appendages, 236–237  
central nervous system, 236  
evaluation, 248  
nerve barriers, 237–238  
neurotransmitters, 237  
peripheral nervous system, 236  
testing  
electrophysiologic examinations, 246  
functional observational battery (FOB),  
244–245  
morphologic examinations, 245–246  
neurologic examinations, 245  
toxic effects  
axonopathy, 240–243  
blood vessels and edema, 244  
glial cells and myelin, 243  
neuropathy, 238–240  
Neurologic examinations, for neurotoxicity, 245  
Neuronopathy, 238  
Neurons, 238  
Neuropathy, 239  
*Neurospora*, 128  
Neurotransmitter receptors, 59  
Neutropenia, 169, 171  
Neutrophils, 166  
NK-cell activity, 172  
No observed effect level (NOEL), 275  
No-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL), of  
the toxicant, 51, 84, 92, 94, 297  
Noncompetitive antagonism, 74  
Nongenotoxic carcinogens, 106–109  
Nonmicrosomal oxidations, 33  
Nonmicrosomal reductions, 34  
Nuclear enlargement test, 134–135  
Nucleic acids, 57  
Occupational toxicology, 4  
effects  
carcinogenesis, 351  
CNS depression, 349  
hematopoietic system, 351  
interactions, 350  
irritation, 349  
kidneys functions, 350  
liver functions, 350  
nervous system, 350–351  
testicular degeneration and cardiovascular  
(CV) abnormalities, 351  
exposure limits, 346–348  
monitoring, 354–355  
toxicants  
gases, 353–354  
metals, 351–352  
organic solvents, 348–351  
particulate matters, 353  
pesticides, 352–353  
plastics, 354  
Oculo-cutaneous syndrome, 169  
Oncosuppressor genes, 104  
Oocyte depletion, 257–258  
Ophthalmoscopy, 230  
Oral contraceptives, 232  
Organogenesis, 140–141  
Osmolarity, of urine, 206, 208  
Over-the-counter (OTC) products, 9  
adverse consequences, 327–330  
perceptions about, 326  
prevalence in society, 326–327  
public awareness, 325–326  
Oxidative deamination, 33  
Oxidative processes, 32–33  
Oxygen transport, 56  
P-oxidation, 33  
Paired feeding, 93  
Paresthesia, 51  
Parkinson's disease, 240, 243  
Passive diffusion, 16–17  
Patch test, 217–218  
Peanuts, 171  
Peroxidation, of polyenoic fatty acids, 57  
Peroxisome proliferators, 61, 108  
Pesticides, toxicology, 352–353  
adverse effects of pesticides, 288–289  
categories of pesticides  
fumigants, 292  
fungicides, 291  
herbicides, 291  
insecticides, 289–291  
rodenticides, 292  
Gulf War syndrome, 298–300  
occupational exposure to, 289  
properties  
bioaccumulation, 295–296  
biomagnification, 295–296  
carcinogenicity, 293–294  
hypersensitivity reactions, 295  
on nervous system, 292–293

- Pesticides, toxicology (*Continued*)  
 potentiation mechanism, 293  
 renal effects, 295  
 teratogenicity and effects on reproductive functions, 294–295  
 testing, evaluation and control, 296–298  
 value of pesticides, 288
- Peyer's patches, 166
- Photosensitization reaction, 58
- Physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models, 25–27
- Physiologically based toxicokinetic (PBTK) models, 26
- Pinocytosis, 18–19
- Plant extracts, 285
- Plaque-forming cells (PFC), 173
- Plasma cells, 167
- Plasma proteins, 22
- Plasticizers, 240, 354
- Pneumoconiosis, 184, 185
- Polyuria, 204
- Prickle cells, 212
- Primary irritation index, 217
- Probable carcinogenic chemicals, 121
- Prostaglandins, 178
- Proteinuria, 206
- Proximal axonopathy, 240–241
- Psychological bonding and breast-fed infants, 154
- Pulmonary fibrosis, 180–181
- Pulmonary hypertension, 180
- Raising agents, 285
- Ranvier, nodes of, 237
- Reactive oxygen species (ROS), 104
- Reduction processes, 34
- Reflex examination, for neurotoxicity, 245
- Regulatory toxicology, 4
- Relative potency, 89
- Renal diseases, 73
- Renal erythropoietic factor (REF), 205
- Renal prostaglandins, 205
- Reproductive capacity testing, 6
- Reproductive system  
 cells and organs, 254–255  
 pharmacokinetics, 256  
 process and organs, 254  
 toxicants and effects  
 female, 257–258  
 male, 256–257  
 testing, 258–260
- Respiratory system  
 defense mechanisms, 178  
 functions, 178  
 inhalation toxicology, 178  
 structure, 178  
 toxicants and effects  
 absorption of toxic gases, 179  
 on upper respiratory tract, 182  
 pulmonary effects, 179–182, 184–185  
 routes of exposure, 182  
 systemic effects, 179
- Respiratory tract disorders, 73
- Retina, 227–228
- Reversible effects, of toxicants, 48–49
- Risk assessments, 5
- Risk characterization, 5
- Rodenticide, 67
- Rodenticides, 292, 359
- S-dealkylation, 33
- S. typhimurium*, 136
- Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, 128
- Saccharomyces*, 128
- Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, 134
- Salmonella typhimurium*, 128
- Salmonella*/microsome gene-mutation test, 135
- Salmonella*/microsome test, 136
- Saxidomas giganteus*, 242
- Schizosaccharomyces*, 128
- Schwann cells, 237, 241, 244
- Sebaceous glands, 20, 216
- Secondary carcinogens, 109
- Sensitization reactions, 213, 217–218
- Shaver's disease, 184
- Sick Building Syndrome, 338–339
- Sickle-cell anemia, 124
- Siderotic lung disease, 185
- Silver finisher's lung, 185
- Sister chromatid exchange (SCE), 132–133
- Skin, 20–21
- Skin toxicology  
 structure of skin, 212  
 types of toxic effects  
 cutaneous cancer, 216, 218  
 on epidermal adnexa, 216–217  
 phototoxicity and photoallergy, 213–215, 218

- primary irritation, 213, 217, 220–221
- sensitization reaction, 213, 217–218
- urticarial reactions, 215, 218
- Solid-state carcinogens, 108
- Specific locus test, 130
- Stomach, 19
- Strain-related differences, in drug-induced responses, 79
- Stratum corneum, hydrated, 20
- Sweat glands, 217
- Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 50, 171
- T cells, 166–167
- T-cell-mediated immune response, 215
- T-cells
  - deficiency, 174
- T-independent antigens, 173
- Talcosis, 185
- Tay-Sachs disease, 124
- Teratogenesis, 159
- Teratogens, 142–143
  - in animal models, 150
  - of special interest, 145–146
- Thrombocytopenia, 169, 171
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 294
- Tolerance level, of pesticides, 297
- Toxic effects. *See also* Modifying factors, of toxic effects
  - general considerations, 48
  - mechanisms of action, 53–55
  - molecular targets
    - coenzymes, 57
    - lipids, 57
    - nucleic acids, 57
    - others, 57–58
    - proteins, 55–57
  - receptors
    - functional categories, 58–59
    - historical notes, 58
    - significance, 61
    - structure and signal transduction, 59–61
  - spectrum
    - allergic and idiosyncratic reactions, 50
    - graded and quantal responses, 50–51
    - immediate and delayed effects, 49
    - local and systemic effects, 48
    - morphologic, functional, and biochemical effects, 49–50
    - reversible and irreversible effects, 48–49
  - target organs
    - biotransformation, 53
    - distribution, 52
    - repair mechanism, 53
    - selective uptake, 52–53
    - sensitivity of the organ, 52
- Toxicity studies
  - acute
    - data evaluation, 87–89
    - dosage and number of animals, 87
    - experimental design, 86
    - multiple endpoint evaluation, 87
    - observations and examinations, 87
    - route of administration, 86–87
    - uses of LD<sub>50</sub> Values and signs of toxicity, 89–91
  - categories, 84
  - good laboratory practice, 94–95, 97–98
  - importance of selection of rat strains, 85
  - short-term and long-term evaluation, 94
    - experimental design, 91–92
    - laboratory tests, 93
    - observations and examinations, 93
    - postmortem examination, 93–94
  - usefulness, 84
- Toxicokinetics, 26
- Toxicologic evaluation
  - acceptable daily intake (ADI/RfD)/safety assessment
    - allocation of, 374
    - assessment of exposure acceptability, 367
    - definitions and usage, 364–365
    - estimating procedure, 365–366
  - approaches, 363–364
  - carcinogenic chemicals, 371–373
  - historical development, 362–363
  - international perspective, 373–375
  - mathematical models, 369–371
  - noncarcinogenic chemicals, 371
  - risk assessment, 371
  - risk estimation, 367–369
  - significance, 362
- Toxicologic testing, 6
- Toxicology
  - challenges and successes, 8–9
  - contributions to other sciences, 4
  - definition and purpose, 3–4
  - developmental improvements, 6–8
  - early developments, 5–6

- Toxicology (*Continued*)  
  future prospects, 10–11  
  other considerations, 9  
  scope and subdisciplines, 4–5  
  U.S. laws, 12
- Toxoplasmosis, 143
- Tracheobronchial cancers, 353
- Transport maximum (T<sub>m</sub>), 206
- Travelers' diarrhea, 228, 242
- Tumor incidence, 115–116
- Tumor necrosis factor, 169
- Tumorigenesis, 257
- Tumors, of blood vessels, 264
- Two-stage process, of carcinogenesis, 107
- U.S. EPA cancer risk assessment guidance  
  recommendations, 40
- U.S. Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act,  
  272
- Uncoupling agents, 56
- Unscheduled DNA synthesis (UDS), 134
- Urinalysis, 93  
  for nephrotoxicity, 206–207
- Urine, production of, 200
- Urticaria, 170
- Urticarial actions, 215
- Urticarial reactions, 215, 218
- UV rays, 215
- Vasoconstriction, 263
- Vasodilators, 260
- Very low density lipoprotein (VLDL), 190
- Viability index, 259
- Viral-like hepatitis, 192
- Viral-like hepatitis (drug-induced), 197
- Visual perimetry, 230
- Visual-evoked responses, 230
- Voltage-gated conductance channels, 60
- Weak acids, 19
- Weight of evidence scheme, 101–102
- Wilson's disease, 320
- World Health Organization (WHO), 373
- Xenobiotic detoxication, 178
- Xeroderma pigmentosa, 124



## Toxicology

### about the book...

Decades of toxicology research and teaching experience are compiled in the authoritative and highly awaited new edition of this classic text. For the utmost in reader convenience and comprehension, **Lu's Basic Toxicology** uses easy-to-understand terminology, and separate subject and chemical indexes.

Providing clarity and insight into this rapidly evolving subject, this guide provides new information on:

- over-the-counter preparations
- lactation
- occupational toxicology

Written by two key opinion leaders in toxicology, this text also covers the essentials of:

- why chemicals target specific organs and systems, and commonly used procedures for assessing risk associated with these chemicals
- chemicals that cause: cancer, mutations, congenital malformations, and organ or system specific effects
- host and environmental factors that modify the effects of specific chemicals, including: food additives; pesticides; metals; pollutants in air, water, and soil; and toxicants encountered in workplaces

### about the authors...

FRANK C. LU is Consulting Toxicologist in Food Additives, Pesticides, and Environmental Chemicals, Consulting Toxicology, Miami, Florida, USA, and Managing Editor of the journal *Biomedical and Environmental Sciences*. Dr. Lu's work in the field of toxicology has been recognized on numerous occasions. He was a recipient of the International Achievement Award from the International Society of Pharmacology and Toxicology. He also received the Magnolia Award from the Shanghai Municipal Government for his work in the advancement of preventive medicine, specifically in the promotion of occupational safety and environmental health. In addition, the Frank C. Lu Foundation for Advancement of Preventive Medicine was established in China to honor him. In conjunction with his work in toxicological testing and assessment, Dr. Lu has also taught toxicology courses in several countries, notably Canada, China, UK, and the US.

SAM KACEW is Professor of Toxicology and Scientist of the Institute of Population Health Risk Assessment, the University of Ottawa, Ottawa, Canada. He is Editor-in-Chief of the *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health* and Associate Editor of *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*. Dr. Kacew is also Member of the Committee on Toxicology of the National Academy of Sciences, as well as Member of the Advisory Expert Committee of the Canadian Network of Toxicology Centres. He is the author of over 100 papers, reviews, and book chapters, and has been a peer reviewer for the Environmental Protection Agency and the National Institutes of Health. Dr. Kacew has received numerous awards, including the Achievement Award of the Society of Toxicology of Canada, the Colgate-Palmolive Visiting Professorship Award, and the Public Communications Award of the Society of Toxicology.

*Printed in the United States of America*

**informa**

healthcare

[www.informahealthcare.com](http://www.informahealthcare.com)

52 Vanderbilt Avenue  
New York, NY 10017

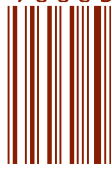
Telephone House  
69-77 Paul Street  
London EC2A 4LQ, UK

H9311

ISBN 978-142009311-7



9 0003



9 781420 093117